

# **Live Sports Commentating: A Comparative Study of Cricket, Football, Horse Racing and Tennis Commentaries**

Thesis  
presented to the Faculty of Arts and Social Sciences  
of the University of Zurich  
for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy

by lic. phil. Aleksandar Popov

Accepted in the spring semester 2019 on  
the recommendation of Prof. em. Dr. Udo Fries and Prof. Dr. Daniel Schreier

Zurich, 2019

## **Abstract**

The aim of this doctoral thesis is to investigate the linguistic features of spoken English sports commentating. Sports commentary is a combination of narration and entertainment, and an easily recognisable form of communicating information to a mass audience. By examining a corpus of 160,000 words transcribed from live cricket, football, horse racing and tennis commentaries broadcast on UK television and radio, a quantitative and qualitative study is carried out for the purpose of determining the effects of three factors on the language produced by sports commentators: the nature of the sport, the nature of the broadcast medium and developments over time, defined by the interval between two sets of recordings (1996–2002 and 2013–2015). The analysis of formal aspects and distinctive linguistic features in the context of four textual dimensions will show that these three factors exert an influence on the language of the commentaries. However, the effects vary depending on the level of commentary. The level of play-by-play reporting appears to be largely unaffected by sport, broadcast medium or developments over time. Therefore, the findings of this investigation and analysis will support the conclusion that play-by-play sports commentating can be classified as a register of its own.

## Table of Contents

Abstract	
1.	Introduction – Aim and Scope ..... 5
2.	Previous research ..... 8
2.1.	Linguistic features, lexicon and sociolinguistic aspects ..... 8
2.2.	Sports commentating as a register ..... 10
2.3.	Implications for the present study ..... 11
3.	Material ..... 13
4.	Method ..... 16
4.1.	Basic principles ..... 16
4.2.	Procedure ..... 16
5.	Introduction to cricket, football, tennis and horse racing ..... 18
5.1.	Cricket ..... 19
5.2.	Football ..... 20
5.3.	Tennis ..... 22
5.4.	Horse racing ..... 23
5.5.	Summary ..... 24
6.	Characteristics of sports commentating ..... 27
6.1.	The sports commentators ..... 27
6.2.	The audience ..... 28
7.	Analysis ..... 31
7.1.	Formal characteristics ..... 32
7.1.1.	Average number of words per minute ..... 32
7.1.2.	Levels of commentating ..... 38
7.2.	Involved v detached style ..... 44
7.2.1.	1 <sup>st</sup> and 2 <sup>nd</sup> person pronouns ..... 44
7.2.1.1.	Overall analysis of 1st and 2nd person pronouns ..... 44
7.2.1.2.	Distribution analysis of 1 <sup>st</sup> and 2 <sup>nd</sup> person pronouns ..... 50
7.2.1.3.	Summary of 1 <sup>st</sup> and 2 <sup>nd</sup> person pronouns ..... 51
7.2.2.	Adverbs of time and place ..... 52
7.2.2.1.	Overall analysis of adverbs of time and place ..... 52
7.2.2.2.	Distribution analysis of adverbs of time and place ..... 56
7.2.2.3.	Summary of analysis of adverbs of time and place ..... 57
7.2.3.	Pronoun ‘it’ ..... 58
7.2.3.1.	Overall analysis of pronoun ‘it’ ..... 58
7.2.3.2.	Distribution analysis of pronoun ‘it’ ..... 61
7.2.3.3.	Summary of analysis of pronoun ‘it’ ..... 61
7.2.4.	Discourse particles ..... 63
7.2.4.1.	Overall analysis of discourse particles ..... 63
7.2.4.2.	Distribution analysis of discourse particles ..... 66
7.2.4.3.	Summary of analysis of discourse particles ..... 66

7.2.5.	Passives .....	67
7.2.5.1.	Overall analysis of passives .....	67
7.2.5.2.	Distribution analysis of passives .....	71
7.2.5.3.	Summary of analysis of passives.....	71
7.3.	Integrated vs. fragmented style .....	72
7.3.1.	Nominalisations.....	72
7.3.1.1.	Overall analysis of nominalisations.....	72
7.3.1.2.	Distribution analysis of nominalisations .....	74
7.3.1.3.	Summary of analysis of nominalisations.....	74
7.3.2.	Word length.....	75
7.3.2.1.	Overall analysis of word length.....	75
7.3.2.2.	Distribution analysis of word length .....	78
7.3.2.3.	Summary of analysis of word length.....	78
7.3.3.	Participles.....	79
7.3.3.1.	Overall analysis of participles .....	79
7.3.3.2.	Distribution analysis of participles.....	81
7.3.3.3.	Summary of analysis of participles .....	82
7.3.4.	Prepositional phrases.....	83
7.3.4.1.	Overall analysis of prepositional phrases .....	83
7.3.4.2.	Distribution analysis of prepositional phrases.....	86
7.3.4.3.	Summary of analysis of prepositional phrases .....	87
7.3.5.	Adjectives.....	88
7.3.5.1.	Overall analysis of adjectives.....	88
7.3.5.2.	Distribution analysis of adjectives.....	90
7.3.5.3.	Summary of analysis of adjectives .....	91
7.4.	Sports commentating features.....	92
7.4.1.	Routines.....	92
7.4.1.1.	Overall analysis of routines .....	92
7.4.1.2.	Distribution analysis of routines.....	95
7.4.1.3.	Summary of analysis of routines .....	96
7.4.2.	Disfluencies.....	97
7.4.2.1.	Overall analysis of disfluencies.....	97
7.4.2.2.	Distribution analysis of disfluencies .....	99
7.4.2.3.	Summary of analysis of disfluencies .....	100
7.4.3.	Ellipsis.....	101
7.4.3.1.	Overall analysis of ellipsis .....	101
7.4.3.2.	Distribution analysis of ellipsis .....	105
7.4.3.3.	Summary of analysis of ellipsis.....	106
7.4.4.	Use of aspect .....	107
7.4.4.1.	Overall analysis of use of aspect .....	107
7.4.4.2.	Distribution analysis of use of aspect.....	110
7.4.4.3.	Summary of analysis of use of aspect .....	111
7.4.5.	Use of present progressive .....	112

7.4.5.1.	Overall analysis of use of present progressive .....	112
7.4.5.2.	Distribution analysis of use of present progressive .....	114
7.4.5.3.	Summary of analysis of use of present progressive.....	115
7.4.6.	Inversion of subject and predicate .....	116
7.4.6.1.	Overall analysis of inversion of subject and predicate .....	116
7.4.6.2.	Distribution analysis of inversion of subject and predicate .....	119
7.4.6.3.	Summary of analysis of inversion of subject and predicate .....	119
7.5.	Prosody .....	120
7.5.1.	Increased volume.....	120
7.5.1.1.	Overall analysis of increased volume .....	120
7.5.1.2.	Distribution analysis of increased volume.....	123
7.5.1.3.	Summary of analysis of increased volume .....	124
7.5.2.	Increased tempo.....	125
7.5.2.1.	Overall analysis of increased tempo.....	125
7.5.2.2.	Distribution analysis of increased tempo.....	128
7.5.2.3.	Summary of analysis of increased tempo .....	128
7.5.3.	Increased tempo and volume .....	129
7.5.3.1.	Overall analysis of increased tempo and volume .....	129
7.5.3.2.	Distribution analysis of increased tempo and volume .....	131
7.5.3.3.	Summary of analysis of increased tempo and volume .....	132
7.5.4.	Paralinguistic features .....	133
7.5.4.1.	Overall analysis of paralinguistic features.....	133
7.5.4.2.	Distribution analysis of paralinguistic features .....	135
7.5.4.3.	Summary of analysis of paralinguistic features.....	135
8.	Conclusion.....	136
8.1.	Findings .....	136
8.2.	Suggestions for further research .....	139
9.	Bibliography .....	140
10.	Appendix .....	156
Acknowledgements		

# 1. Introduction – Aim and Scope

Sports commentating, defined by Ferguson (1983: 155f.) as ‘the oral reporting of an ongoing activity, combined with provision of background information and interpretation’, is at the centre of this study. Commentaries and widely used expressions, such as ‘Oh I say!’ – the catchphrase of Dan Maskell, who was famous for commentating on tennis matches during the Wimbledon Grand Slam tournament for over four decades (Maskell 1989: 1) – can become iconic. Maskell’s phrase has been associated with tennis commentary for many years. Similarly, the remark ‘They think it’s all over. It is now.’ (Wolstenholme 1996: 1) will trigger a comparable feeling of nostalgia for many British people. It was famously uttered by Kenneth Wolstenholme in the final moments of the 1966 World Cup final as England scored the fourth goal in the football match to clinch the World Cup and the crowd started spilling onto the grass in celebration.

According to Crystal et al. a commentary is simply ‘a spoken account of events which are actually taking place’ (1969: 125). Sports commentating, however, is instantly recognisable. It is a combination of narration, objectivity and entertainment. Anyone even vaguely interested in sports will have no difficulty in categorising a sample of speech taken from a television or radio broadcast on a sports event as part of a sports commentary. Besides the subject matter that is reported on, the type of speech used by sports commentators is marked by a set of distinctive features, generally thought to be characteristic of sports commentaries. Using these typical features as a cornerstone, and adding others, the following thesis will be verified in the scope of this paper: the effects of the nature of the sport and the nature of the broadcast medium on the language produced by commentators vary depending on the level of commentating.

In order to verify this thesis, the following questions will be answered:

- What effect does the nature of the sport have on the language produced by the sports commentators?
- What effect does the nature of the broadcast medium have on the language produced by the sports commentators?
- How did the language produced by the sports commentators change over a period of 20 years?

Cricket, football, tennis and horse racing have been chosen for investigation for this study for two reasons. First, they are the oldest team events to be played on British soil (Hargreaves 1986: 17; 23) and thus have a very long tradition of sports broadcasting. The first radio reports of cricket and football matches, for instance, were broadcast in the 1930s, while

in 1937, the FA Cup final, the Wimbledon tennis tournament and cricket matches from Lord's were all screened by the BBC (Hargreaves 1986: 138f.; Robb 2012: 22). Furthermore, cricket, football, tennis and horse racing all remain ubiquitous in current television and radio sports programmes. Second, these sports differ on many levels and hence lend themselves to a comparative study. Consequently, this will allow for meaningful conclusions to be drawn.

The scope of the present investigation comprises only sports commentaries recorded from UK radio and television channels. Some are state-sponsored channels, such as the BBC, and some are private channels, such as Sky Sports. Furthermore, all of the texts report on cricket, football and tennis matches, and horse races as they occur, that is to say they are live sports commentaries. This excludes all other forms of sports reporting, such as highlights of matches or races broadcast after the event has taken place or sport-related chat shows that analyse and discuss certain parts of a sporting event in detail.

A range of linguistic aspects has been selected for the comparison of the texts, with the aim of drawing comprehensive conclusions about cricket, football, tennis and horse racing sports commentaries on television and on the radio. Nonetheless, the investigation is limited in that it comprises three formal aspects and 20 linguistic features to be examined. The linguistic features have been chosen in such a way that they represent four different textual dimensions. Biber (1988: 55) defines textual dimensions as 'bundles of linguistic features that co-occur in texts because they work together to mark some common underlying function'. Each dimension will be analysed with the help of four to six linguistic features which are characteristic of the dimension in question.

The four textual dimensions indicate involved/ vs. detached, integrated/ vs. fragmented styles of speech as well as the use of typical features of sports commentating and prosodic features. The degree of involvement or detachment illustrates the relation of the speaker to the audience and the events reported on (Chafe 1982: 45); the more concerned the speaker is about the subject matter, the more involved the style of speech will be. Integration and fragmentation, on the other hand, both denote the amount of information included in texts (Biber 1988: 43), that is to say the more complex, coherent and carefully elaborated a text is, the more integrated it is. The third dimension, typical sports commentating style, is based on prior research in the field of sports broadcasting. The high or low frequency of features known to be prominent in sports commentating style (cf. Crystal et al. 1969; Ferguson 1983) marks how representative a text is of what is considered sports commentating style. Finally, the dimension of prosody characterises the prosodic involvement of the sports commentator; sports commentaries containing a high number of certain prosodic markers are classed as featuring an active speech

style, whereas the opposite is true for sports commentaries with a rather restrained prosody. Three of the four textual dimensions to be examined are based on syntactic features, while the fourth dimension is based on prosodic features. The scope of this investigation does not comprise any lexical or semantic features of sports commentating.

The aim of this study is to determine whether the character of cricket, football, tennis and horse racing, and the nature of television and radio broadcasting influence the sports commentators' language with regard to the four aforementioned textual dimensions. Furthermore, the texts will not only be compared in their entirety, but individual passages will also be examined in relation to each other so as to discover whether differences can be observed across the sports commentaries in general or only in certain sections. For instance, televised cricket commentaries might differ from televised tennis commentaries in certain aspects when the entire corpus is examined. However, comparing only certain parts of cricket and tennis TV commentaries might not necessarily yield the same results.



## 2. Previous research

### 2.1. Linguistic features, lexicon and sociolinguistic aspects

Characterising sports commentaries in terms of certain linguistic features and deviations from standard English usage has been the topic of a number of linguistic studies. Crystal et al.'s (1969) analysis of live radio commentary of a cricket match was the first of its kind and remains one of the most comprehensive studies in this particular field. Despite their limited corpus, Crystal et al. isolate many features particular to sports commentating, which were later corroborated (cf. Hoyle 1989, 1991, 1993; Severin 1982) or further elaborated on (cf. Green 1980, 1982; Trouvain et al. 2000; Reaser 2003; Krone 2005; Makarova 2008). Among these are prosodic features, e.g. variety in pitch, speed and volume, grammatical features, such as ellipsis and inversion of subject and verb, and lexical features, such as specialist vocabulary. Moreover, Crystal et al. examine the semantic structure of the commentary and observe that there are different passages in the text: 'informative' parts relating to the actions on the cricket pitch and 'descriptive' parts providing background information (1969: 143).

Ferguson's 1983 study, in which he investigates the speech of radio announcers of baseball matches and other American sports, was the next milestone in sports commentating research. Ferguson finds the same linguistic features in different sports commentaries. His analysis subsequently went on to serve as a basis for other linguists' work: Hoyle (1989, 1991, 1993), for instance, examines the sports commentating abilities of young boys along Ferguson's lines and substantiates his above-mentioned register theory. The framework of Ferguson's study is based on Crystal et al. (1969), yet he also draws on other studies with regard to some features of sports commentating, for example, Hirtle (1967) and Scheffer (1975) for tense usage and Green (1980) for inversions. Ferguson also coins the term 'SAT' (sports announcer talk) (1983: 153) and identifies new features, such as result expressions and routines of counting the points in a game.

At the same time, research into the specialist vocabulary of sports reporting began to develop and was the focus of many lexical studies. Trübner (1985), Montgomerie et al. (1989) and Palmatier et al. (1989) cover several different sports in their studies, whereas others restrict themselves to one specific sport: Burgschmidt (1971) concerns himself with cricketing expressions in general and verbs in particular; Mikos (1979) and Schiffer (1992) study tennis, Jackson et al. (1983) and Arthurs (1984) investigate football, Franklin (1985) examines baseball, Arthurs (1988) and Kuiper et al. (1985) analyse ice hockey, Kuiper et al. (1990; 2009) look at horse racing, Pawley (1991) focuses on cricket and Desmarais et al. (2009) study rugby.

More recently, the focus has been moved away from lexical items and placed on the effects specialist lexicons have on the texts, concentrating on semi-fixed phrases and conventionalised functions (Jellis 2006; Pedersen et al. 2007; Maguire et al. 1999; Hundley 2004; Leigh et al. 2004; Seddon 2004; Reinardy et al. 2008; Chovanec 2008; Lewandowski 2009; Schmidt 2009; Challenger 2012; Taborek 2012; Yegorova 2017).

Other studies have examined the job and tasks of sports commentators (Tanaka-Ishii et al. 1998; Bruce 2005; Chovanec 2009) and the economic impact and influence of sports commentating (Rowe 2004; Boyle 2011; Scherer et al. 2013). The parasocial interaction – a term coined by Horton et al. (1956) – that occurs during broadcasts has also been investigated. These studies analysed the identification of the audience with sports commentators. In particular, they focused on the physical separation of the audience from the broadcaster and examined sports reporting as a narrative and its impact on the audience (Hansen 1999; Martinez 1999; Eastman et al. 1999, 2000, 2001; Carmeli 2001; Beentjes et al. 2002; Billings et al. 2002, 2004; Bishop et al. 2003; Gerhardt 2006; Desmarais et al. 2008).

In the aforementioned studies, the characterisation of sports commentaries in terms of syntactic, prosodic and lexical features is at the centre of the investigation. A limited number of comparisons between broadcasts of different sports have been carried out, focusing on a few select linguistic features. Crystal et al. (1969) compare spells of activity and non-activity in cricket and football matches, and found associations to the prosody of football and cricket commentaries. Scheffer (1975) examines tense usage and concludes that a radio broadcast of a boat race contains more verbs in the progressive aspect than a comparable broadcast reporting on a football match. Furthermore, he points out that football broadcasters tend to avoid using the present progressive when describing the actual playing action. Close (1977) discusses the same findings and states that the constant movement in a boat race, as opposed to the quick actions in football, favours the use of the present progressive. More recently, Kuiper (2000, 2004, 2009) and Lewandowski (2008) draw comparisons between different sports with the focus on similarities in terms of lexical items and similar patterns of use.

Studies comparing the two different broadcast media – television and radio – are also scarce. Again, Crystal et al. (1969: 125f.) were the first to deal with this aspect, albeit only briefly. They point out that radio and TV broadcasters do not necessarily commentate in the same way: due to the lack of images, radio broadcasters have to ‘recreate [...] a chain of activity as it is developing’ (126), whereas TV broadcasters ‘explain any bits of activity that do not explain themselves’ (125). In his noteworthy study on the language of horse racing, Burgschmidt (1983: 106) also mentions TV and radio sportscasts. In his opinion, the basic

difference between the two types of media lies in the fact that the radio sports commentator's need to convey all the excitement of the race is much greater than that of a TV broadcaster, because the listeners cannot see the race. Without providing statistical evidence, Burgschmidt (1983: 106) also states that radio sports commentators tend to produce more words in a given space of time than their counterparts from television. More recently, Rowe (2004), Vierkant (2008), Kern (2010) and Rodero (2012) investigated the effect of broadcast media on sports commentaries and Tolson states that it is mistaken to argue there is a 'congruence' [sic] between these media [TV and radio]' (2016: 15).

Recently, a third broadcast medium of sports commentating has become the subject of linguistic studies: live scripted online sports commentary. Media outlets have started to provide online coverage of live events in the shape of a series of contributions written in real time at a minute-by-minute rate. This variety of sports commentating language began to receive more attention as regards linguistic research approximately ten years ago, most notably by Chovanec (2008, 2018).

## 2.2. Sports commentating as a register

The number of studies examining specialised languages, often labelled registers, has increased markedly in the last four decades. A wide variety of registers has been identified and analysed, most of them being registers of written English, while spoken English has long been neglected in terms of register studies (Gläser 1990: 255). The language of sports had not been the subject of many register studies up until the late 1970s. Wallace (1977: 67; 1981: 256) was the first to define written sports commentaries as a register of written English, while Ferguson was the first to label sportscasting<sup>1</sup> a register of spoken English (1983: 156f.).

Historically, the question of what, if anything, within the language of sports constitutes a register of its own has not been solved. Wallace admits that there may be variation within a register and that the distinction between sports and other registers is 'not delicate enough' (1977: 67). That is to say there may be different registers within the field of sports commentating. This is the hypothesis of Ghadessy's study of 1988: Ghadessy (1988: 20) goes one step further than Wallace and defines written sports commentaries on football as a register of written English in its own right. Sager et al. state that the repertoire of expressive means used for communicating about football is arguably the world's biggest 'special language' (1980: 63). Zwicky, on the other hand, states that the 'utility of the label *register* [sic] is dubious' (1982:

---

<sup>1</sup> In this paper, the British English term 'sports commentating' will be used rather than the American English 'sportscasting'.

215f.) for the language of football. The ongoing discussion about the conflicting uses of the term ‘register’ does not concern this paper directly. The discussion does illustrate, however, that those specialised uses of English labelled ‘registers’ are assumed to have sub-registers or sub-sub-registers, particularly when examining spoken registers (Kalverkämper 1983: 128; Gläser 1990: 257; Lewandowski 2008: 25).

More recently, the discussion has focussed on what differentiates the terms ‘register’, ‘genre’ and ‘style’ from each other. There is a variety of argumentations and schools of thought on this subject. Essentially, a text can be considered from the perspective of register, genre or style. For the purpose of this paper, Biber et al.’s (2009) approach has been selected as it offers an unequivocal separation of register, genre and style as far as two key aspects of this study are concerned: linguistic characteristics – lexico-grammatical features – and the distribution of these characteristics. According to Biber et al., within both the register and style perspectives, linguistic features are ‘frequent and pervasive’ in ‘representative text excerpts’ (2009: 18). In the genre perspective, on the other hand, these characteristics ‘are used to structure complete texts’ (2009: 18). Genre studies are hence based on ‘the analysis of complete texts of the variety’ (2009: 18), which is not the case for most texts in the corpus of this study. What differentiates the register perspective from the style perspective, according to Biber et al., is that the lexico-grammatical features are not directly ‘functional’ but rather ‘attempts to achieve aesthetic effects’ (2009: 19) in the style perspective, whereas they ‘serve important communicative functions’ (2009: 18) in the register perspective. Taking into account the corpus of transcribed texts and the linguistic features selected for this paper, it is of value to select only the register perspective. Consequently, the relevant question to be answered in the scope of this study is whether any level of commentary examined constitutes a register according to the definition by Biber et al.

### **2.3. Implications for the present study**

The overview of previous research shows that the key questions to be pursued in this paper have not yet been tackled extensively. Lewandowski (2008) and Mathieson (2016) examined football commentaries from a register perspective. However, aside from Scheffer (1975), Ghadessy (1988), Montgomerie et al. (1989) and Hoyle (1991), all of the works discussed in this chapter are qualitative analyses rather than quantitative. Since Ferguson’s seminal study of 1983, the emphasis in studies of sports commentating has been on identifying linguistic features salient in sports commentating rather than on comparing different sports. Moreover, the quantitative comparison of radio and television broadcasts of the same sport has not been the

focus of linguistic studies.

The division of the recorded live broadcasts into three different levels of commentary lies at the heart of this study. Since Crystal et al.'s (1969) differentiation of sports commentaries into informative and descriptive levels of commentary, a number of studies have been concerned with dividing and sub-dividing texts produced by sports commentators (cf. ch. 7.1.2.). To date, quantitative comparisons of different levels of commentary have not been attempted.

### 3. Material

The corpus to be analysed comprises 160,000 words of spoken British English. All of the texts are excerpts from live broadcasts of cricket, football and tennis matches and horse races, with each sport accounting for 20,000 words. Both television and radio broadcasts were recorded, each supplying half the corpus, i.e. 40,000 words. The corpus can therefore be split into the following eight text types, containing 10,000 words each:

- TV cricket commentary
- radio cricket commentary
- TV football commentary
- radio football commentary
- TV tennis commentary
- radio tennis commentary
- TV horse racing commentary
- radio horse racing commentary.

First, the texts were recorded during the live broadcast, and were then transcribed using a particular set of rules for transcription (cf. 10. Appendix). As the nature of the texts, and the terminology and proper names in particular, is highly specific, no automated or IA-led conversion software was used for the transcription of the commentaries. The commentaries were transcribed manually in their entirety.

In order to render the corpus representative of cricket, football, tennis and horse racing commentaries, commentaries on a variety of events were recorded. With regard to the televised games, there is a choice of different TV channels – and hence different sets of commentators – with exclusive rights to broadcast certain games<sup>2</sup>. Broadcasts from BBC One, BBC Two, ITV, Sky Sports, Channel 4, Star Sports and Eurosport were recorded for the corpus. Regarding radio broadcasts, live coverage of cricket, football and tennis matches was recorded from BBC Radio 5, while the horse racing commentaries were recorded from two radio stations: Racing FM and BBC Radio 5.

The material was chosen according to the principles of ‘stratified random sampling’ laid out by Oakes (1998: 9f.), which allows for general conclusions to be drawn about differences

---

<sup>2</sup> Sky Sports, for instance, has exclusive live rights to show a certain number of live Premier League football matches each season and some of England’s cricket Test matches. Likewise, the BBC has the rights to broadcast live from the Wimbledon tennis tournament while Channel 4 and the BBC share the rights to some horse races.

between cricket, football, tennis and horse racing commentaries. Consequently, it was essential to include a variety of games, competitions and races in the corpus. The cricket recordings consist of both domestic (matches between English teams) and international matches (matches between national teams). Some recordings are of one-day matches and some are of so-called Test matches, which usually last for up to five days (cf. chapter 5.1.). Thus, different teams and players are reported on, and the two most popular forms of cricket are represented. Likewise, the football texts include different competitions and different teams. Both league games and cup competitions were recorded. In the English Premier League or FA Cup matches, English teams play against each other, while in the UEFA Cup and the Champions League games, different European teams are involved. In tennis, recordings from all four Grand Slam tournaments – Australian Open, Roland Garros, Wimbledon, US Open – were used along with recordings from smaller tournaments. Both men's and women's singles matches but no double matches were recorded. The excerpts of horse racing commentary were taken from a variety of races: long races, e.g. the Grand National or Royal Ascot, and short races of only a few minutes' duration. Equally, steeplechases – races which involve horses jumping over fences – and flat races – races without any obstacles – were used. All the recorded commentaries are from races that took place on a circular racecourse. No point-to-point races were recorded.

In order to be able to draw conclusions about the differences between the use of language by TV and radio commentators, the texts needed to be chosen accordingly. By selecting TV and radio recordings of commentary on the same actions of play, it follows that the linguistic differences are inherent in the language used and cannot be accounted for by the content of the texts. To this end, radio and televised texts as similar in content as possible were chosen. It should be noted that the radio commentators utter more words in a given space of time than their colleagues on television (Beard 1998: 77); consequently, 10,000 words of radio broadcasts do not cover as many actions on the pitch or course as 10,000 words of television commentary. Hence, it is not possible to record commentary of exactly the same part of every match or race on TV and on the radio. Nevertheless, a high degree of parallelism was achieved. Approximately three quarters of the events reported on in the radio commentaries of cricket, football and tennis matches are also reported on in the televised recordings. Of the remaining recordings, several cover the same game at a different stage or the same competition at a later stage. In horse racing, about two thirds of the radio recordings relate to the same races or races of the same competition as recorded from televised broadcasts.

Finally, almost the entire corpus consists of commentaries produced by a team of two commentators, whose roles will be explained at a later stage (cf. ch. 6.). Thus, the recorded

commentaries are similar in their degree of turn-taking and conversational flow. As exceptions to this rule, there are two types of passages that do not follow this pattern. On the one hand, as cricket and tennis matches sometimes last for hours – even days in the case of cricket – there is often a change of commentators at some stage during the match, i.e. one or both commentators are replaced by new speakers. During this changeover period, there is sometimes an opportunity for three or four commentators to be involved in a short conversation before the original commentator leaves the commentary box and the new reporters begin their commentary. In horse racing, on the other hand, only the long races, particularly the Grand National, are reported on by a team of commentators. The commentaries of all the other races are carried out by a single speaker.



## 4. Method

### 4.1. Basic principles

The present investigation is guided by the following basic principles: First, the main emphasis will be on a quantitative analysis of the corpus. The statistical evidence will be centred on frequency counts of all the linguistic features mentioned later in this chapter. This will yield statistics in the form of tables, which will serve as a basis for the investigation and analysis of linguistic differences between the text types. Statistical significance is determined using the online software provided by the University of Lancaster<sup>3</sup>. Both the chi-square and the log likelihood test will be used to establish whether differences between individual results are statistically significant. The term ‘significant’ will only be used to describe the statistical data if it meets the statistically and mathematically relevant criteria. Qualitative analyses will also be made, but only in relation to the examples quoted from the recordings. Second, the main approach of the analysis is synchronic. This means that the scores of all sports-related and linguistic features will be analysed in their totality. However, as the recordings are set almost 20 years apart, a diachronic comparison will also be carried out. Third, while the quantitative method is the fundamental basis for this study, it will be supported wherever possible by excerpts from the texts. Suitable examples from the corpus will be used frequently in order to illustrate the data presented in the tables and to underscore key aspects of the results. In order to clarify the underlying approach to this study, the structure of this paper will be presented in the following section.

### 4.2. Procedure

First, the four sports will be introduced. Apart from briefly explaining the sports’ fundamental structures and the way they are played, attention will be drawn to certain features relevant to the understanding of the analysis section and the transcriptions found at the end of this study (cf. ch. 10). Furthermore, those aspects of the sports that are likely to influence the results of the frequency counts will be identified.

Following on from this, a number of important characteristics of sports commentating will be highlighted. These include the circumstances of production and the conditions under which the commentaries are produced. In addition, the sports commentators’ roles, their tasks

---

<sup>3</sup> <http://corpora.lancs.ac.uk/sigtest/>

and the professional requirements they need to fulfil will be discussed. Similarly, the audience will be analysed in terms of the inherent knowledge required in order to be able to follow the commentary along with their expectations as regards the commentary content and the sports commentators' abilities.

The initial presentation is followed by the core section of this study: the analysis. To begin with, two basic aspects of the texts will be examined, namely the length and levels of commentary. These will be referred to throughout the analysis section of this paper, in particular in Table 4. The first aspect, the length of the commentaries, will be investigated along the following lines: total length of commentaries including and excluding pauses, and the rate or words per minute produced by the commentators. The second aspect is pivotal to this paper and to the verification of the thesis statement: it is the breakdown of the commentaries into three different categories – levels of commentary – in terms of their content: play-by-play reporting, the commentators' analysis of the events, and the provision of background information for the audience. These two aspects form the basis of the subsections in which the linguistic features of four textual dimensions and the distribution of these features within the commentaries will be analysed in detail.

## **5. Introduction to cricket, football, tennis and horse racing**

Aside from the popularity of cricket, football, tennis and horse racing in the UK, these sports are quite different in terms of their rules, dynamics and the manner in which they are played. The following sections will highlight some basic aspects of the sports by comparing them according to the same principles: rules, proceedings, roles of the protagonists, dynamics of the game or race. On the one hand, this part will serve to facilitate the understanding of the analysis section of this paper. On the other hand, these aspects of the four sports will be referred to in order to interpret the results of the frequency counts.

Except for a number of passages in the tennis commentaries, the sportspeople involved in the matches and races transcribed for this corpus are all male. Therefore, for reasons of practicality, the male expression has been used throughout this paper when referring to players and their roles, e.g. ‘batsman’ in cricket. This is in no way a sign of gender bias.

## 5.1. Cricket

There are three types of cricket matches in the current era: five-day cricket, one-day cricket and 20/20 cricket. The latter is the most modern variety and is played over the shortest period of time. The current corpus does not include commentary recordings of 20/20 matches. The matches recorded for the present study last either five days or one day – weather permitting. Five-day cricket is the traditional form of cricket and has been practised for centuries<sup>4</sup>, while one-day cricket, born in the 1980s, is a form of the game that is supposed to be more spectacular than the longer game. In both varieties, play is normally interrupted by several breaks; the actual time played is approximately seven hours per day.

Cricket is played on a large grass pitch of a slightly oval shape with the wicket in its centre. The wicket, a stretch of grass 22 yards long and 12 feet wide, is the key part of the pitch where the actions of bowling and batting take place. The outcome of a game depends on whether the bowler can get much turn, seam, real pace or great bounce out of a dry and grassless or low and slow wicket. In other words, the condition of the wicket influences the way the bowlers go about their play. As a consequence, the commentators often analyse the state of the pitch in great detail.

Each match involves two opposing teams comprising eleven players each. There are two tasks a team has to perform: bowling and batting. Team A bats when Team B bowls and vice versa. All eleven players of the bowling team are on the pitch simultaneously and one of them – the bowler – throws the ball at the batsman, i.e. the action of bowling, while the ten remaining players attempt to catch or collect the ball, i.e. the action of fielding. Meanwhile, the batting team is represented by just two players on the pitch at any given time, the batsman and his partner, who each stand at one end of the wicket.

The bowler throws the ball and tries to hit the wooden stumps, located at the end of the wicket, just behind the batsman. If he succeeds, the batsman is out and his innings have ended, the player leaves the pitch and is replaced by another member of the same team to bat. The batsman endeavours to hit the ball with his wooden bat as accurately and as far as possible. If the ball is caught before it touches the ground, the batsman is out; if not, he can run from his end of the wicket to his partner's end while his partner runs in the opposite direction. When both of them reach the other end of the wicket they have scored one run. The aim of the batting team is to score as many runs as possible without being bowled out, i.e. no more players are available to bat, while the aim of the bowling team is to get all members of the batting team out

---

<sup>4</sup> Tradition, conservatism and etiquette were three of the most frequently mentioned connotations that arose when Beard asked a group of students to brainstorm the connotations of the game of cricket (Beard 1998: 3).

as soon as possible without conceding too many runs. The side that scores the most runs wins the match. In one-day cricket, a limited number of overs – an over being six balls thrown at the batsman – is played. In five-day cricket, both teams have to bowl out ten members of the opposing team twice regardless of how many overs are bowled. If players remain not out after five days, the game is drawn and there is no winner.

In cricket, the actions on the pitch are mostly repetitive and always take place in the same order: first, the ball is bowled, then it is hit and, finally, it is collected or caught and thrown back to the bowler. There are, of course, subtleties in bowling and hitting the ball, and in the tactics of the game, but in terms of actions and movement there are hardly ever more than two of the 13 players on the pitch actively involved in the game at the same time. The duel between the bowler and the batsman is at the centre of attention while the other players' role is to collect the ball. Cricket is played in short bursts of action. No more than five seconds elapse between the moment the bowler releases the ball and the instant the fielder catches it or the batsman's running has finished.

Statistics and a particular system for keeping the score are integral parts of cricket. A report of *50 off [...] 47 balls with 9 fours* (App. I.B.1) means the batsman has scored 50 runs, nine successful hits – connections of the bat with the ball – resulting in four runs each, from a total of 47 balls bowled at him. When the Lancashire team are *48 for 2* (App. I.A.4) they have scored 48 runs and two of their men are out. The players have to bat and bowl individually, hence their performances can be measured easily. Since the final scores are often very high – a team can score 500 runs in a five-day match – the bowling and batting statistics allow for meaningful conclusions to be drawn about individual and team performances. Commentators often refer to these statistics.

The game itself has not changed much over the centuries. The introduction of one-day cricket added a degree of dynamism to the proceedings in general (Morgan 2016: 5f.). Today's players may be more professional in terms of their training regime, nutrition and salary, but the essential actions – bowling, batting and running – are performed in much the same way as before (Simpson 2006: 13).

## **5.2. Football**

A football match normally lasts 90 minutes unless it is a match in a cup competition and there is no winner after 90 minutes; in this case, 30 minutes of extra time are added. Football is played on a rectangular grass pitch, which is divided into two parts by a white line that crosses the

middle of the pitch at a perpendicular angle. Located at the centre of the short sides of the rectangle are two goals, which face each other across the length of the pitch. The overall aim is to score more goals than the opposing team. The goalkeeper is the only player allowed to handle the ball, and this only in a restricted area around the goal, the 18-yard box or penalty area, while the other players can only kick or head the ball. The two opposing teams are made up of eleven players each. Depending on their position on the pitch, the individual players have individual tasks: the attackers, or strikers, try to score goals, the midfielders try to create scoring opportunities for the strikers, and the goalkeeper and the defenders try to prevent the opposing strikers from scoring goals.

Football is an intense and fast game. It is also a very physical game since the players often face each other in one-to-one situations – tackles – where a certain degree of contact – pushing and shoving – is allowed. There is constant movement on the pitch. When a player is in possession of the ball and advances towards the opposition's goal, his teammates run into position to receive the ball from him, followed by the defending players of the other team, who try to intercept the pass. As soon as one team loses the ball, the other team can launch a swift counterattack or a quick break. Unless a player is injured or substituted, there are no long interruptions during the match. The ball can be played from one goal to the other within seconds, which means that all 22 players are constantly preparing for or involved in play. With all the players very much involved throughout the match, there is consequently a lot of variety in the game. The player in possession of the ball has many options as to where to play it so the spectators hardly ever see the same play patterns repeated.

In football, the use of statistics has increased in the last 15 years. Nowadays, some TV channels routinely incorporate statistics in their coverage or reports, providing information about shots on target, fouls committed, possession of the ball etc. These statistics relate to both the performance of a team as a whole and the performances of individual players. Football commentators currently make routine use of these statistics that are provided to them before the actual broadcast and during the event.

The game of football has undergone some major changes over the last 25 years. In the current era, players are physically fitter and more athletic. They cover far more distance on the pitch than players of previous generations and they also do so at greater speeds. As a result, the game itself has become faster; the players' athleticism has grown in importance (Cardenas 2014: 99). As far as football commentators are concerned, there are more events on the pitch to be reported on and fewer periods of slow-paced action. In addition, due to a substantial growth of the finances involved in marketing and broadcasting rights, the presence of the game of

football in the media has increased considerably (cf. Boyle 2011; Rowe 2004, 2011; Tolson 2016).

### **5.3. Tennis**

Tennis can either be played by either two (singles match) or four players (doubles match), with one or two players opposing each other respectively. For this paper, only singles matches – involving two players – have been transcribed. In contrast to cricket and football, singles tennis is an individual sport. A tennis match generally lasts between one and four hours cases. A match consists of game and sets. A game is won after one player has won four points and the opponent no more than two. Depending on the competition, a match is won after one player has won either two or three sets, i.e. more sets than their opponent. A set is won when one player has won six games and the opponent no more than four. If both players have five games apiece, the set ends at seven games. This also applies to a situation in which both players have won six games, in which case a tiebreak, a mini-set, is played to decide who wins the seventh and decisive game, and hence the set. Tiebreaks are very tense periods of play and the commentators are oftentimes able to transfer this tension and excitement to the audience through their commentary.

It is not surprising that with points, games, sets and matches to be won, the keeping of the score is crucial in tennis. The score changes with each ball that is played and the audience has to be kept up to date in order to understand the potential consequence the next point has on the outcome of the entire match. Statistics on the players' individual performance, such as the number of double faults or unforced errors, are often quoted as they provide the audience with grounds indicating why a match is being won or lost by a particular player. Additionally, it is straightforward to keep statistics on a singles tennis match as there are only two players involved.

In tennis, periods when the ball is in play alternate with spells when the players are preparing for the next point to be played or short breaks, which take place after two games have been played. Generally, and similarly to cricket, the ball is actually in play for less than half of the duration of the whole match. As a consequence, commentators do not have long spells of ongoing action to report on. When the ball is in play, however, tennis is a very fast game as the balls are often hit with great force, travelling at more than 100 km/h. It is possible for an individual point to last less than one second, i.e. when an ace – a player serves the ball so quickly that the opposing player is unable to get a touch on the ball – is played. The exchanges,

also labelled rallies in tennis commentating, can last up to approximately 20 seconds, during which the players often hit a variety of longer and slower balls. Tennis etiquette means the crowd remains quiet when the ball is being played; only after an exchange do they applaud. In contrast to football, there are no chants during play at a tennis match.

Over the last 25 years, the game of tennis has changed considerably on two levels. According to Lake, the average professional tennis player has become taller and heavier, and there have been '[a]dvances in the strength, stamina and agility shown by players' (2019: 9). As a consequence, 'the speed of play itself' (Lake 2019: 9) has increased markedly, meaning the aforementioned rallies have become faster and shorter as the balls are hit with greater force and velocity in the modern-day game. Whether this development has an effect on the commentary will be investigated in the analysis section of this study.

#### **5.4. Horse racing**

The objective of a horse race is quite simple: all competing horses with their jockeys endeavour to cross the finishing line first. A number of different races was transcribed for the corpus of this paper and the races differ in two ways: the length of the race and the obstacles on the racecourse. Some races only last between two and three minutes while others last up to fifteen minutes depending on the length of the racecourse and how many times the horses complete it. The flow of action is uninterrupted in horse racing from the moment the race begins until all of the competitors have completed the course. In most cases, the intensity builds up gradually, reaching its peak when the horses are on the final furlongs (220 yards or 200 metres) of the race and approaching the finishing line. There are, however, two exceptions: First, if a particular horse leads by a long way, the final few yards are only a formality and the win is a foregone conclusion. Second, a race can become hectic or even chaotic at the beginning or in the middle of the course if one of the leading horses or one of the favourites to win falls or unseats the jockey. Such a situation changes the dynamic of the entire race.

Unlike in cricket, football and tennis, there is no score to be tallied in horse racing as such apart from the order in which the horses are running. Statistics are kept about the horses' individual performances over the years and within the same season, but the speakers do not refer to them as often as in cricket, football and tennis. The reason for this is that the statistics about individual horses are less telling than those referring to teams or players in the other three sports. Horse racing does not feature leagues or tournaments involving the same horses. Horses are entered for certain races and not for others, which means it is difficult to make direct



comparisons of their performances. Only in a few select races, such as the Grand National, are you likely to find the top horses competing against one another.

Despite the lack of performance-based statistics, there is one piece of data that is mentioned frequently by the commentators: betting odds. Horse racing and betting are inextricably linked in the British psyche and the odds published by the bookmakers provide those who place bets – the punters – with a guideline as to which horses are more or less likely to win a race, as in the following example: ‘Too Forward at 11 to 4 jumping off in last place here could be a little bit of a surprise package’ (emphasis added) (App. I.G.10). The betting odds reflect each horse’s performance over the past few months and their suitability as regards the upcoming race, that is to say certain horses are more suited to running in longer races whereas others achieve better results when jumping hurdles. Betting odds are considered statistics for the purpose of this study (cf. ch. 7.4.1.).

Horse racing has not undergone any changes in terms of the procedure or rules governing the sport in the last 25 years. There has been development, however, in terms of the strength and speed of competing horses (Takahashi 2015: 44). The reasons for these advances in physical performance are manifold. Cassidy states that the administration of medication to enhance the horses’ performance is widespread (2013: 8f). According to Ross et al., ‘selective breeding, changes in track surfaces [...] and advances in veterinary care’ (2010: 1015) are responsible for the increased speed at which races are nowadays run.

## 5.5. Summary

In summary, there are some relevant differences between the four sports to be taken into account. Football differs from the other three sports in that the time frame within which a match has to be played is fixed. The final minutes of a football match can be very tense and hectic because, due to the brevity and intensity of the game, the final outcome can be changed within just a few minutes. In cricket, tennis and horse racing, a game or race ends after particular events have taken place, be that a number of runs scored, sets won or horses crossing the finishing line, rather than after a designated period of time has elapsed.

Regarding the results, tennis and horse racing are binary in that there are always winners and losers following the completion of the match or race respectively. In football, on the other hand, matches often conclude in a draw. Depending on the league standings or the result of the first leg in a European cup competition, for instance, a draw can be a good result for one of the two teams. In that case, their tactics will be adapted accordingly and the dynamics of the second match – or return leg – tend to be different. In cricket, draws are less common than in football

but they do still occur, even after a five-day match.

Cricket is, on the whole, the most static of the three ball sports. Skill takes precedence over athleticism, whereas in football and tennis, both skill and athleticism are equally important in order to achieve success. Most players on a cricket pitch do not change their position; running is done by two or three players for a short period at a time while the remaining players of the bowling team wait for the ball to potentially arrive in their area of the pitch. In football and tennis, the players never remain on the same spot for any length of time, with the exception, perhaps, of the goalkeeper in football.

In terms of movement of the ball, cricket is most repetitive as the ball is always thrown along the length of the wicket towards the batsman before it is then hit into another area of the pitch. Cricket is based on a series of bowling and hitting exchanges between two players. In tennis, the beginning of each exchange, i.e. the serve, is repetitive, but this is then followed by considerable variation in play in terms of the length of the exchange and the location of play, i.e. areas of the court covered. As regards football, on the other hand, the ball is never played around the pitch in the same way: with the players continuously altering their position, the direction, length, height and receiver of a pass changes frequently. Football is the only one of the three ball sports to feature a ball intentionally being passed from one player to another. Finally, horse racing is by its very nature repetitive in terms of the direction the horses are running in, but the movement and the pace of the horses in relation to each other, that is to say overtaking and being overtaken, is unpredictable.

Similarly, cricket and horse racing feature more predictable exciting moments when compared to football. In cricket, the moment the batsman hits or misses the ball and the instant the fielder catches or drops the ball are most crucial. In contrast, in football and tennis, an attempt to score a goal or point is most important. While goals and points in football and tennis respectively can be scored from virtually anywhere on the pitch or court, and in many different ways, the course of events in a game of cricket is fixed and repeated: bowling is followed by batting and catching. In horse racing, the excitement usually, and predictably, builds up towards the end of a race. Even though the degree of predictability of the outcome differs from one sport to another, it seems the level of enthusiasm among spectators when something extraordinary happens is equally high across all four sports: cricket, football, tennis and horse racing spectators are similarly delighted by a perfectly bowled ball, a well-taken goal, a perfectly executed serve and an outstanding run by an individual horse.

The behaviour of spectators, nevertheless, tends to differ according to the sport. In cricket and tennis, there are normally short bursts of applause and cheering followed by long

relatively silent spells. The crowds are generally rather reserved and the atmosphere is hardly ever hectic. In contrast, lasting periods of visceral excitement, shouting and singing inside football stadiums are very common. Similarly, there tends to be a great deal of excitement and noise among the crowd towards the end of a horse race.

The scoring systems of the four sports in question differ considerably. In horse racing, there is no score; in football, the score does not change very often; in tennis and cricket, the score changes regularly. Consequently, a single run in cricket is only one small part of a high final score, while a single goal can decide a football match and is thus carries far more significance. Statistics are most prominent in cricket and tennis commentaries, but feature slightly less in football. In horse racing, statistics do occur regularly, albeit mainly in the form of betting odds.

## 6. Characteristics of sports commentating

### 6.1. The sports commentators

Brief inspection of the transcriptions of the various broadcasts in the Appendix (ch. 10.) shows that, as a rule, the commentaries are produced by more than one person. Short horse races are the only exception; they are usually commented on by a single reporter. Contrastingly, several commentators are involved in commentary on longer races, such as the Grand National. Within the present corpus, the recordings of cricket, football and tennis matches all feature commentaries produced by more than one commentator; for example, a total of five different commentators report on the cricket match between Essex and Lancashire (cf. App. I.B.2). A more detailed examination of the texts shows that most of the sporting events recorded are initially reported on by a team of two sports commentators, who are then replaced by other sports commentators after a certain period of time. Owing to the extended duration of cricket matches, more commentators take part in cricket broadcasts than in football or tennis commentaries, where commonly two speakers cover the entire match.

The two sports commentators reporting as a team have to work in a well-coordinated manner in order to produce an interesting and informative broadcast. For this reason, they tend to perform different tasks. Arthurs (1984: 44f.), Balzer-Siber (2015: 5) and Hoyle (1993: 117) all identify the same two functions fulfilled by sports commentators: one of them, the ‘anchor-man’ (Arthurs 1984: 44), is responsible for the play-by-play account of the actions on the field of play, whereas his partner, the ‘colour-man’ (Arthurs 1984: 44) or ‘expert summariser’ (Beard 1998: 74), provides additional information and analyses the events of the match (Balzer-Siber 2015: 14).

The two sports commentators often have different backgrounds in terms of their professional careers. Normally, the anchor is an eloquently-spoken regular television or radio station reporter, such as Alan Green of BBC Radio (cf. commentator B, App. I.C.3), and the colour-person is a former player with extensive knowledge of the game, such as Mark Lawrenson, the former Liverpool FC defender (cf. commentator C, App. I.C.3). The analysis of the corpus has shown that the commentating teams are generally composed along these lines in football reporting, whereas the teams reporting on cricket sometimes consist of two ex-players, both of whom produce the play-by-play commentary and the match analysis<sup>5</sup>. In the UK, many sports commentators enjoy a certain level of notoriety and are recognisable to the

---

<sup>5</sup> Geoffrey Boycott (commentator B) and Tony Lewis (commentator A), for example, are both ex-cricketers (cf. App. I.A.2).

public for their work in general and their style of commentating in particular.

Commentators are hired to bring a certain amount of entertainment and dramatisation to the sports, either on TV or on the radio (Morris et al. 1985: 339). They are required to establish a sense of familiarity and a direct connection with the audience without the spectators being able to participate in person (Desmarais et al. 2008: 130). Within this process, the commentators' expertise and enthusiasm function as important tools of communication for television and radio channels, promoting and enhancing a sporting event and potentially increasing its audience due to the added value of the commentators' interpretations of on-field actions. The commentators use unique angles to engage the viewers and listeners by complementing an event with lively and entertaining commentaries while remaining factual at the same time. The simultaneous achievement of realism and entertainment is the commentators' main objective.

The commentary is usually produced in and transmitted from a small room called the commentary box, from which the two commentators enjoy a good view of the pitch, court or racecourse. They usually sit side by side, looking out towards the action. In the case of a television broadcast, the commentary box is equipped with a screen or multiple screens displaying the images that are simultaneously being broadcast to the TV audience, so that the commentators are also able to make reference to what the viewers are actually watching. In addition, there are screens available providing statistical and additional information.

Since the two sports commentators cover the game as a team, the broadcast inevitably has two functions: a one-way communication between the commentators and the audience, and a two-way conversation between the two speakers. This conversational quality of the sports commentaries may influence the results of the analysis section of this paper.

## **6.2. The audience**

It is difficult to characterise the audience of live sports broadcasts. The broadcasts included in this study can be listened to or watched in different ways and from varying perspectives: the sporting event can be followed in its entirety or for just a short period of time. The interest and emotional involvement of the audience varies considerably. The viewer or listener can either follow whichever event happens to be broadcast at the time or choose to follow a selected event, i.e. a match involving a preferred team or player. However, some general observations about the audience of sports broadcasts can still be made.

First, there has been little change in terms of popularity. Following sports events on TV or on the radio was equally widespread and popular when the recordings for this paper were

made (Boyle 2011: 12). Second, the average viewer or listener of a sports commentary is very likely to be acquainted with the sport, the events surrounding the sport and the main protagonists. A considerable amount of knowledge of the game is required in order to fully understand the reporter's commentary. It can be safely assumed that the majority of the audience is an initiated audience in this respect. Third, since the sports covered by this study are generally very popular in the UK, it can be assumed that a considerable proportion of the average audience watches or listens to sports broadcasts on a frequent basis (Boyle 2011: 13f.). Established programmes that are broadcast at regular intervals, such as *Match of the Day* on BBC One on Saturday evenings, the coverage of the England cricket team's summer and winter Test<sup>6</sup> series, the Wimbledon tennis tournament and the races at Ascot bring in consistently high viewing figures. In addition to this, football cup finals and other seasonal highlights have very high ratings on television and radio; these events also potentially attract viewers or listeners who are not regular followers of the sport.

Thus, together the audience and the commentators constitute a group since they share a strong interest in and a certain level of knowledge of the game. Beyond this, the commentator's voice is very familiar to many members of the audience because as regular listeners or viewers they have heard it often. The sports commentator's language is the only means of expressing the fact that the commentators and their audience belong to the same group. According to Bell, this 'declaration of identity' (1984: 192) or type of group code, is an integral part of media language. In sports broadcasting, the group code is primarily expressed by lexical means. The audience's extended knowledge of the game allows the commentator to produce a certain amount of technical vocabulary or jargon without having to provide explanations. Moreover, the commentators also assume that the audience is aware of the significance of an individual event within the frame of a league or cup competition or tournament. The language of sports broadcasts can be considered to be restricted in that it does not contain more elements than the average sports devotee needs for the understanding of the commentary as a whole (Hargreaves 1986: 151). Apart from the technical vocabulary, the commentators use metaphors and idioms, which do not make sense to an uninitiated viewer or listener (cf. Schiffer 1992: 61f.)<sup>7</sup>. As a result of the presupposition of insider knowledge and the use of specialised expressions, a layperson will find it challenging to understand the finer points of a sports commentary.

---

<sup>6</sup> A 'Test' is an international cricket game in which the teams of two countries play against each other.

<sup>7</sup> Interestingly, some sports idioms and metaphors have made their way into everyday English and have thereby extended their meaning, e.g. 'to be on the ball' from football (Palmatier et al. 1989: 123), 'to stonewall' from cricket (Nash 1993: 29) and 'red zone' from American football (Eskenazi 1993: 22).

A final point worth mentioning is the sports commentator's task or, conversely, the expectations of the audience. The sports commentators have to appeal to the audience in a general sense. Ideally, from the audience's point of view, commentators should be familiar, friendly and unfailingly well-informed guides. Beard (1998: 74) claims there is an assumption that commentators are 'analytical, critical, neutral in stance'. These considerable requirements clearly illustrate that merely being knowledgeable about the sport does not suffice – in the eyes (and ears) of the audience – in terms of being a good sports commentator. The ability to entertain the viewers and listeners is equally important, which explains why some commentators have acquired a certain degree of celebrity status. Sports commentators do not produce their commentary in a vacuum; what they say during televised or radio-reported sporting events is exercised in relation to powerful discursive foundations that are culturally grounded in international sport culture. Meân (2010: 69f.) states that viewers and listeners are very acquainted with basic sporting accounts. Therefore, the commentators aim to 'construct a narrative, in real time, that is attuned to the expectations and collective agenda of their broadcast audience' (Hansen 1999: 270). Similarly, Halone argues that commentators and their audiences must be 'in symbolic coexistence with each other' (2008: 28).

Besides appealing to the audience, the sports commentator is expected to fulfil two particular tasks. On the one hand, they have to describe the actions on the pitch, court or course as they are happening and, on the other hand, they have to analyse and comment on such. Due to the unpredictable nature of sports, the commentators' relaying of events is unscripted and spontaneous, with the aim of capturing the ongoing excitement of the sporting action. Hence, sports commentaries often lack the coherence – and sometimes sense – of written reports and prepared speeches in the aftermath of a sporting event. With respect to television and radio sports broadcasting, the two central tasks are not of the same importance. The emphasis in radio commentating is placed on communicating a complete chain of events to the listeners, rather than simply analysing the action. Beyond this, the audience expects the radio commentators to produce an almost unbroken flow of speech. On television, in contrast, the sports commentator's main task is to provide background information and to commentate on important and decisive actions, since the game could, in theory, be viewed without commentary. The subsequent analysis section of this paper (ch. 7.) will show whether these general assumptions also apply to the cricket, football, tennis and horse racing broadcasts analysed for this study.

## 7. Analysis

As outlined before (cf. ch. 4.2.), two formal characteristics – the length of the commentaries in terms of words per minute and the subdivision into three levels of commentary – will be established as a basis for the subsequent analysis. Next, the frequency counts of 20 linguistic features will serve to examine and compare the eight text types of 10,000 words each outlined above (cf. ch. 3.). Each of these features will be investigated as follows: first, the overall total scores of the frequency counts will be juxtaposed to establish whether there are differences between the sports or broadcast media. Subsequently, the recordings made between the years 1996 and 2002 and the years 2013 and 2015 respectively will be contrasted with the aim of discovering whether the 20-year gap between the two sets of recordings affected the language produced by the commentators. Finally, the frequencies at which the linguistic feature occurs within the separate levels of commentary, i.e. play-by-play, analysis, background, will be compared. In order to do so, the occurrences are weighted against the length of each level of commentary within a text type and the results will thus be comparable. Based on statistical approaches outlined for similar setups (Brezina 2018: 276; Hartmann 2013: 126), the weighting is calculated consistently with a factor of 100. Therefore, the results of the absolute count will be transformed into the distribution analysis, which will show how often a given linguistic feature occurs within 100 words of that level of commentary.

In the analysis section, the degree of involvement or detachment of the eight text types will be investigated first with the help of frequency counts of the following features: 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> person pronouns, adverbs of time and place, the pronoun ‘it’, discourse particles and passives. Subsequently, the texts’ position on the integration/fragmentation scale will be established using frequency counts of the following features: nominalisations, word length, participles, prepositional phrases and adjectives. Third, the frequency counts of the following features that are typical of sports commentating style will be discussed: routines, disfluencies, ellipsis, the use of present simple and progressive aspect and inversions. Finally, the rates of occurrence of the following prosodic features will be examined: increased volume, increased tempo and paralinguistic features. While the choice of linguistic features characterising the first two textual dimensions has been inspired by Biber (1986a, 1986b, 1988, 1994, 1995), Chafe (1982, 1985) and Staples et al. (2015), the features for the dimensions dealing with sports commentating style and prosodic features are based on the work of Chovanec (2018), Crystal et al. (1969) and Ferguson (1983).



## 7.1. Formal characteristics

### 7.1.1. Average number of words per minute

TABLE 1 TOTAL AVERAGE NUMBER OF WORDS PER MINUTE EXCLUDING PAUSES

type	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
total minutes	228	108	187	107	305	112	107	99
words / min.	87.7	185.2	107.0	186.9	65.6	178.6	186.9	202.0
total pauses	102	10	66	5	170	8	3	2
total speaking	126	98	121	102	135	104	104	97
effective words / min.	158.7	204.1	165.3	196.1	148.1	192.3	192.3	206.2

**Key:** total minutes = length of 20,000 word broadcast in minutes; words / min. = average number of words uttered per minute; total pauses = total length of pauses in minutes; total speaking: total speaking time in minutes excluding pauses; effective words / min. = average number of words uttered per minute excluding pauses.

Table 1 shows how much commentary time had to be recorded in order to obtain 20,000 words of commentary for each sport and text type. The difference between the two media is examined first. In general, there is a considerable difference: the TV recordings are substantially longer than the radio recordings with the exception of horse racing broadcasts. The difference between the two media is reflected by the length of the broadcasts and by the average number of words spoken in one minute of commentating. Horse racing broadcasts aside, the radio commentators utter between 178.6 and 186.9 words per minute compared to between 65.6 and 107 words per minute uttered by their counterparts from television. These figures include pauses. Excluding pauses, there is still a marked difference between the effective words per minute ratios, with radio texts ranging from 192.3 to 204.1 and TV texts ranging from 148.1 to 165.3 words per minute. The average speech rate of English-speaking adults is between 150 and 190 words per minute (Roderio 2012: 393).

The reason for the differing TV and radio figures lies in the way information is broadcast to the audience. The words used for the two types of audiences reflect the difference in broadcasting: the TV audience is typically referred to as ‘viewers’, while the radio audience is referred to as ‘listeners’. In other words, the radio audience lacks any visual input, sound is the only medium of communication. Therefore, the radio commentator’s flow of speech must not be interrupted for long in order to prevent silence, and hence a period without any information (Beard 1998: 64). The TV audience, on the other hand, can still watch the unfolding events while there is no spoken commentary. They are able to project certain information without

being provided with the spoken commentary (Gerhart 2014: 187). A closer look at the length of the pauses in the flow of commentating serves to illustrate this:

(1) EXAMPLE<sup>8</sup>

B: [2] [I]t's been a real setback for the England team [21] safely away over extra cover he just picked up two there [2] Caddick the fielder [12] 50 for Moin Khan and Mujtaba [70]

A: Both these batsmen

(App. I.A.1)

32 words are uttered in this excerpt and it takes the two TV commentators approximately two minutes to produce them because there are 107 seconds of silence. Pauses of one minute or longer, as in example (1), can occasionally be found in the TV texts, while pauses of between ten and twenty seconds occur very frequently. In the radio texts, on the other hand, pauses of four seconds or more occur only very rarely and the average pause is between one and two seconds long (cf. transcripts, ch. 10: Appendix.). The total length of pauses in Table 1 shows this difference. In cricket and football on TV, there are ten times as many minutes of silence as on the radio; in tennis, the total period of silence on TV is more than 20 times longer than on the radio.

A considerable number of actions are simply not described by the TV sports commentators, which is hardly ever the case on the radio. During pauses in TV commentating play obviously continues, however it is not commented on as the pictures often speak for themselves. In contrast, the radio sports commentators have to recreate the complete chain of events on the pitch or racecourse for their listeners because they cannot see any of the action. Bearing in mind that the average viewer or listener of a match or a race is acquainted with the game as such, there is no need for the TV commentator to analyse every action because they can often not supply much more information than the viewers already see. Consequently, the TV sports commentator tends to focus on decisive or extraordinary actions and to omit unspectacular events (Wilson 2000: 162):

---

<sup>8</sup> The quotations in the examples are always identical to the texts in the Appendix, i.e. they include all the symbols for pauses and prosodic features. If a passage is underlined and 'emphasis added' is given in parentheses, it means that the feature analysed in that quotation is highlighted; without 'emphasis added' in parentheses, it means that the passage is spoken faster than the rest (cf. 'conventions for the transcription': ch. 10: Appendix). The quotations also include the letter assigned to the sports commentator speaking, e.g. A, B, C, etc., in order to facilitate the finding of the passage in the Appendix.

## (2) EXAMPLE

A: Ferdinand this is beautiful SHEARER

(App. I.C.2)

## (3) EXAMPLE

A: Oh that's a good shot through mid-wicket under control

(App. II.A.3)

## (4) EXAMPLE

B: It's Neymar [1] it's game set and match Barcelona

(App. II.C.2)

## (5) EXAMPLE

B: Southgate [2] Ehiogu [2] Draper Taylor [1] Jansson was quicker [5] Nelson [1] Taylor [2] Yorke

(App. I.C.3)

In example (2), for instance, a spectacular action is described, while example (3) represents an unusual action, and the action in example (4) is decisive for the outcome of the game. Such actions either need explaining or cannot be left undescribed because the sports commentator is expected to convey some of the excitement of the game. In example (5), however, build-up-play is described and some of the actions – the passing of the ball from Southgate to Ehiogu, Draper and Taylor – are not reported on. The commentator only focuses on the important facts by mentioning the name of the player in possession of the ball. Passages of this type are found very frequently in football commentaries. In contrast, radio commentators have a tendency to provide more information in the same set of circumstances:

## (6) EXAMPLE

A: Neymar moving infield plays it back here's Dani Alves Dani Alves chips it in towards Neymar headed away and Juventus have it with Pirlo and now Vidal

(emphasis added) (App. II.D.2)

In example (6), the ball is moved between five different players, which is very similar to the situation commented on in example (5). However, the radio commentator supplies extra information to the listeners by elaborating on the direction of movement – ‘infield’ – or the type of pass – ‘chips’ or ‘headed’. The difference in total speaking time shown in Table 1 exemplifies this. The TV commentators require between 20 and 30 minutes more to produce 20,000 words compared to the radio commentators. The more detailed type of extra information shown in examples (2) to (5) is often not mentioned in televised commentaries. It is there for the audience to see and TV commentators decide not to mention every detail. A likely explanation for this is

the assumption TV commentators make about their audience. As far as TV commentators are concerned, there is a fine line between providing exciting and essential information, and stating the obvious. The results in Table 1 suggest that the latter tends to be avoided at the cost of silence during the commentary. Consequently, the following conclusion can be drawn: TV commentators assume that the viewers are knowledgeable in terms of the sport they watch. Therefore, the commentators are careful not to appear patronising thus avoiding overly detailed descriptions of the events.

This may also account for the slight differences observed between the televised cricket, tennis and football texts as shown in Table 1. Since cricket and tennis are more repetitive sports than football in terms of action type (cf. ch. 6.), fewer actions of the type in examples (2), (3) or (4) occur, which may explain why the frequencies of words per minute are lowest in tennis, followed by cricket and then football. Interestingly, the figure relating to televised tennis texts is lowest of all. A look at the transcript shows that tennis commentators on TV pause for longer than their colleagues who report on other sports.

#### (7) EXAMPLE

A: [...] almost impossible [79]

A: Dangerous times now for Andy Murray as Djokovic has knuckled down [2] 24 shots and Djokovic didn't look like he was going to miss one [2] important ten or 15 minutes now for Andy Murray can't go two sets down

B: No [18] er that's not wide enough [52]

A: SURGICAL precision from Djokovic

(App. II.E.1)

In this example, the two speakers utter a mere 51 words. The whole passage includes two long pauses of 79 seconds and 52 seconds respectively and lasts for 175 seconds, which corresponds to an average of 17.49 words per minute for this particular passage. This is an extraordinarily low rate compared to other results in Table 1. Similar passages are frequently found in this text type and in televised cricket commentaries as well, with pauses lasting up to almost two minutes (cf. App. I.A.1). The reason why the tennis commentators utter fewer words lies in the nature of the game. As mentioned above, cricket and tennis are similarly repetitive (cf. ch. 5) but the time of play between two games in tennis and two run-ups in cricket varies. The cricket commentators normally describe each run-up and the following attempt at hitting the ball, while the tennis commentators do not always mention every single serve at the beginning of a new exchange and sometimes wait until the end of the game when there is a longer break and there is a change of serve. This also explains why the biggest difference by far between the two media within the same sport is found in tennis, where the length of the televised broadcast is almost

three times the length of the radio broadcast.

The figures for horse racing in Table 1 are exceptional in several ways. First, as discussed, the TV commentaries of the three other sports take considerably longer to be produced than the radio texts of the same sport. This is true whether the pauses are included in the results or not. As regards horse racing, this difference is comparatively small. The reason for this lies in the almost complete absence of pauses. Within the horse racing commentaries of 20,000 words each, there is a total of three and two minutes of pausing respectively. The flow of speech by horse racing commentators is almost uninterrupted. In addition, the rate of speech is fast. The recommended speech rate for radio speakers is between 160 and 180 words per minute with rates between 170 and 190 words per minute considered as ‘moderately fast’. (Rodero 2012: 393). Unlike in cricket, football and tennis, the TV commentators cannot afford to pause in horse racing commentaries; the action is continuous and completely uninterrupted until the end. Hence, this is the reason why there is only a small difference between radio and TV horse racing commentaries. Most races happen to be exciting towards the end when the horses are approaching the finishing line. As a consequence, horse racing commentaries differ from commentaries on other sports in that there is a steady increase in tempo and pitch as the race progresses (Wilson 2000: 156).

Second, the rates observed in Table 1 are remarkably fast. 192.3 and 206.2 words per minute are clearly above average when compared with BBC radio recordings of an average 167.5 words per minute as found by Rodero (Rodero 2012: 399, 405). The horse racing TV commentators’ rate of speech is as fast as the radio commentators’ rate in other sports. The fact that all the participating horses are constantly moving provides the commentator with many opportunities to commentate. They have a choice of horses available to them to report on as the following example illustrates:

(8) EXAMPLE

A: Arabian Queen out in front by two or three lengths Yasmin in second Miss Temple City in third Found is a length off them in fourth position being moved to the outside for her challenge behind those is Irish Rookie and they're followed through by Sperry and Ervedya (emphasis added) (App. II.G.8)

In example (8), the TV commentator mentions seven different horses within a very short length of time starting with the leading horse and then moving down the line towards the slowest horses in the field. This is a very common pattern in horse racing commentaries and is very helpful for the commentators in ensuring an uninterrupted flow of speech.

Tables 2 and 3 disaggregate the results of Table 1 into older and more recent recordings.

TABLE 2 1996-2002 AVERAGE NUMBER OF WORDS PER MINUTE EXCLUDING PAUSES

type	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
total minutes	113	54	96	50	158	56	55	49
words / min.	88.5	185.2	104.2	200.0	63.3	178.6	181.8	204.1
total pauses	56	6	40	2	89	4	2	1
total speaking	57	48	56	48	69	52	53	48
effective words / min.	175.4	208.3	178.6	208.3	144.9	192.3	188.7	208.3

**Key:** total minutes = length of 10,000 word broadcast in minutes; words / min. = average number of words uttered per minute; total pauses = total length of pauses in minutes; total speaking: total speaking time in minutes excluding pauses; effective words / min. = average number of words uttered per minute excluding pauses.

TABLE 3 2013-2015 AVERAGE NUMBER OF WORDS PER MINUTE EXCLUDING PAUSES

type	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
total minutes	115	54	91	57	147	56	52	50
words / min.	87.0	185.2	109.9	175.4	68.0	178.6	192.3	200.0
total pauses	46	4	26	3	81	4	1	1
total speaking	69	50	65	54	66	52	51	49
effective words / min.	144.9	200.0	153.8	185.2	151.5	192.3	196.1	204.1

**Key:** total minutes = length of 10,000 word broadcast in minutes; words / min. = average number of words uttered per minute; total pauses = total length of pauses in minutes; total speaking: total speaking time in minutes excluding pauses; effective words / min. = average number of words uttered per minute excluding pauses.

Overall, the results do not differ greatly, but the rate of the televised tennis commentary is noteworthy. Beard's research shows that the number of words per minute in tennis commentating on TV dropped from 342 in the 1960s to 164 in 1996 (Beard 1998: 63f.) The results in Table 2 appear to show that this trend continued for a short while in the following six years, albeit at a much slower rate, reaching a nadir at 144.9 words per minute. In the following years the trend levelled off and, by the year 2015, there was a slight increase once again. A comparison of footage from the last 55 years clearly shows that the game of tennis has become faster and more athletic. The TV commentators' rate of speech decreased while the speed of the game increased. Due to this increase in dynamism the commentators possibly felt less pressure to entertain the viewers by filling the gaps between the action on the court with a constant commentary.

### 7.1.2. Levels of commentating

In live commentaries, the sports commentators' utterances can be classified into different levels according to game situations and content. Researchers have created a number of categories and sub-categories based on the commentary content. All previous studies have one particular level of commentating in common and that is the description of the action as it is happening – a so-called play-by-play commentary. In some studies, only a binary distinction is made between play-by-play and the remainder of the commentary (Ferguson 1983: 155f.; Kuiper 1996: 16; Mackenzie 2005: 122; Müller 2007: 165f.). Along with play-by-play, several researchers defined additional levels of commentating such as explanation, opinion and summarising (Crystal et al. 1969: 143f.; Delin 2000: 46). In his study of live football commentary, Mathieson (2016: 61) defined three levels of commentary. In this paper, a similar hybrid approach is employed using three levels of commentating defined as follows: first, a play-by-play category labelled 'action'<sup>9</sup>; second, a category called 'analysis' in which the events that have just happened are evaluated, explained or elaborated on including the current scores; third, a category named 'background information' that comprises all non-event related information such as additional information on the players, the weather, the pitch, previous games, races etc. Although the same criteria were applied consistently throughout the examination of the corpus, the division of the commentaries into these different parts is, to a certain degree, subjective and rather delicate in some cases.

The following examples illustrate the different levels of commentary as defined in this paper. Examples (9) and (10) are from the same passage by the same speaker:

#### (9) EXAMPLE

A: Here comes er Saqlain and that's another paddle-sweep attempt [1]

(App. I.B.1)

#### (10) EXAMPLE

A: So how did he get that easy single [1] just skipped down the pitch [1] put bat to ball you get one down to long

(App. II.A.2)

The sections describing action, as in example (9), are play-by-play commentaries of what is happening at the moment of speaking. Only the basic actions are described in these parts. Neither the details of how the action has been carried out nor its significance for the outcome

---

<sup>9</sup> The terms 'action' and 'play-by-play' are used synonymously in this paper even though 'play-by-play' does not apply to horse racing in the strictest sense. In all tables, the term 'action' is used.

of the match are mentioned. This is done in the sections of analysis, as in example (10). The commentator analyses the run that was scored by explaining how the bat connected with the ball and the direction the ball took as a result of that strike. Example (11) is a typical illustration of a background information section that deals with aspects closely or loosely related to the game.

(11) EXAMPLE

A: [...] this man in 1999 won the tournament in Auckland on the day that his brother his younger brother who was 15 died of cancer and he dedicated the win to his brother  
(App. I.E.1)

In this example, background information about one of the players is provided. The passage was uttered during a spell of non-action between two points. Table 4 shows the division of the commentaries into these three levels of commentating.

TABLE 4 TOTAL DIVISION OF TEXT: ACTION / ANALYSIS / BACKGROUND INFORMATION

type	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
action	1332	6.66	3830	19.15	4989	24.95	7450	37.25	497	2.49	4901	24.51	17694	88.47	17055	85.28
analysis	5183	25.92	3749	18.75	6840	34.20	5302	26.51	8363	41.82	6167	30.84	906	4.53	1446	7.23
background	13485	67.43	12421	62.11	8171	40.86	7248	36.24	11140	55.70	8932	44.66	1400	7.00	1499	7.50
total	20000	100	20000	100	20000	100	20000	100	20000	100	20000	100	20000	100	20000	100

**Key:** action = sports commentator reports on actions as they occur on the pitch; analysis = sports commentator analyses and reports on actions after they have occurred; background = sports commentator provides background information about the game, the players, the pitch, etc.; n = number of words.

Table 4 displays some interesting results. The cricket and tennis commentaries on TV contain by far the fewest action passages: only 2.49% for tennis and 6.66% for cricket, compared to more than 19% for all the other texts. The small percentage of utterances describing actions as they occur in tennis and cricket reaffirm the assumption that the above-mentioned repetitiveness of these two sports restricts sports commentators to a limited amount of play-by-play reporting. Entire overs in cricket or games in tennis are played without any actions being described as they happen (cf. App. I.E.4) and tennis broadcasters on television are even more unlikely to report on ongoing actions than their cricket-reporting counterparts. The reason for this may lie in the difference in length of ball exchange. In cricket, the action of bowling and subsequent batting take no more than a few seconds. In tennis, if a player serves an ace it only takes a split second. However, it often takes longer for a point to be won. An exchange can last up to half a minute during which time the point can be won at any time



through a mistake or a well-hit ball. Consequently, the commentators tend to wait until the point is decided and then analyse what has just happened in more detail rather than try to report on the ongoing exchange. This also explains why the rate of 41.82% for the analysis parts in the tennis texts on TV is significantly higher than the analysis scores of all other text types. The long breaks between games in tennis lend themselves to this kind of approach by commentators, who fill the gaps between the action on the court by analysing and providing background information.

The figures for horse racing differ considerably from all other transcripts. The action parts account for 88.47% and 85.28% depending on the medium, while the action parts in the three other sports make up a maximum of 37.25%. The nature of horse racing explains this difference. As has been shown in Table 1 horse racing commentators are the fastest speakers due to the fact that they have to report on an action that is uninterrupted from the moment the race starts to the moment the winning horse crosses the finishing line. Most races are action-packed in terms of horses overtaking each other, jumping over fences etc. There is hardly any time to analyse manoeuvres or provide any background information for the audience, hence the very low figures for these two parts.

Regarding the results of the action parts in the other sports, the score for the radio football texts is the highest of the remaining text types at 37.25%, followed by the score for the televised football texts. Again, the nature of the game serves as an explanation. After horse racing, football is next in terms of how much game time is actually spent playing. There are far fewer interruptions than in cricket and tennis. As a result, TV football commentators produce more utterances reporting on actions as they happen than cricket and tennis commentators on the radio.

The figures for background information are obviously linked to and a result of the figures for action and analysis. There is more background information given in the cricket texts than in any of the other texts. The figure for the televised cricket texts is particularly striking in this respect since 67.43% of the entire text does not actually relate to what is happening or has just happened on the pitch. It is not surprising, therefore, that of all the sports commentators, it is the cricket commentators who prove to talk about various subjects that are unrelated to the ongoing game, including cakes brought to their commentary box by spectators (cf. App.b.2 I.B.2) and posing for a calendar akin to the one featured in the film *Calendar Girls* (cf. App. II.B.2). In tennis too, approximately half the commentary time is also devoted to providing background information, which confirms the aforementioned observation: the intensity of the sport in question exerts an influence on the content of the commentary.

Let us examine the influence of the medium. Chovanec states that the visual aspect of televised broadcasts leads to a reduced proportion of play-by-play reporting compared to radio commentaries (Chovanec 2018: 48). The figures in Table 4 confirm Chovanec's finding with the exception of horse racing. In cricket, football and tennis, the radio commentators spend significantly more time commentating on ongoing events than the TV commentators. Conversely, the TV cricket, football and tennis commentators devote more time to analysing events than their colleagues from the radio stations.

Radio commentators are obliged to relay most actions on the pitch or court. The location of the ball is crucial as far as the listeners are concerned. Since the ball is being played or moved without the audience being able to see it, informing the listeners about its position takes precedence over other colour commentary. In football in particular, there may be no time for the radio commentators to analyse actions before the next series of actions takes place. With regard to television, there are many actions that do not require commentary. Viewers sitting in front of the television can be left to watch proceedings as they unfold on the pitch or the court for longer periods without much commentary. The pictures speak for themselves, leaving time for in-depth analysis and the provision of background information. There seems to be an understanding that the viewers are knowledgeable enough to interpret certain events without the aid of a commentator. In her study of football commentaries, Gerhart states that certain units of conversation are 'co-constructed between a viewer at home and a person on television' (2014: 182). On the radio, on the other hand, listeners depend on a detailed description of what is actually happening in order to recreate the version of events in their minds, hence the higher figures for action reporting. This trend seems to be equally prevalent in other types of sports reporting. In basketball reporting, for instance, radio texts have a significantly higher percentage of passages devoted to the play-by-play description of actions when compared to televised commentaries. As regards the latter, more evaluative statements providing background information can be observed (Reaser 2003: 307).

Tables 5 and 6 will show whether the figures for the older and newer recordings differ.

TABLE 5 1996-2002 DIVISION OF TEXT: ACTION / ANALYSIS / BACKGROUND INFORMATION

type	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
action	781	7.81	2207	22.07	2869	28.69	3392	33.92	173	1.73	2788	27.88	8442	84.42	7798	77.98
analysis	1885	18.85	1520	15.20	2569	25.69	1633	16.33	4554	45.54	3064	30.64	477	4.77	925	9.25
background	7334	73.34	6273	62.73	4562	45.62	4975	49.75	5273	52.73	4148	41.48	1081	10.81	1277	12.77
total	10000	100	10000	100	10000	100	10000	100	10000	100	10000	100	10000	100	10000	100

**Key:** action = sports commentator reports on actions as they occur on the pitch; analysis = sports commentator analyses and reports on actions after they have occurred; background = sports commentator provides background information about the game, the players, the pitch, etc.; n = number of words.

TABLE 6 2013-2015 DIVISION OF TEXT: ACTION / ANALYSIS / BACKGROUND INFORMATION

type	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
action	551	5.5	1623	16.23	2120	21.20	4058	40.58	324	3.24	2113	21.13	9252	92.52	9257	92.57
analysis	3298	33.0	2229	22.29	4271	42.71	3669	36.69	3808	38.08	3103	31.03	429	4.29	521	5.21
background	6151	61.5	6148	61.48	3609	36.09	2273	22.73	5868	58.68	4784	47.84	319	3.19	222	2.22
total	10000	100	10000	100	10000	100	10000	100	10000	100	10000	100	10000	100	10000	100

**Key:** action = sports commentator reports on actions as they occur on the pitch; analysis = sports commentator analyses and reports on actions after they have occurred; background = sports commentator provides background information about the game, the players, the pitch, etc.; n = number of words.

There are two discernible trends. One of them concerns the horse racing commentaries. The percentage of utterances reporting on the actual race rose in the 15 to 20 years between the two sets of recordings. The increase can be observed in both text types but is more marked in the radio commentaries. It seems that horse racing commentators are even more focused on the race proper than 15 to 20 years earlier. Horse racing has not gone through a fundamental change in the last 20 years. However, there has been some change: horses have become faster and, in turn, the races have become pacier (Takahashi 2015: 47f.; Sharman 2015). This may have led to the commentators having even less time to speak about things other than the actual race.

The other noteworthy change occurred in the football commentaries. In the analysis parts of both TV and radio commentaries, there was an increase in the word count. In both text types this increase was mainly at the cost of the background information parts. The increased pace of the game and athleticism of the players may also have contributed to this change. There is greater intensity on the pitch nowadays. On TV, the commentators can afford not to describe

every action. Therefore, the increased intensity results in commentators spending more time analysing. On the radio, most actions need to be described for the listeners and this is reflected in the increase in both action and analysis word counts shown in Tables 5 and 6.

## 7.2. Involved v detached style

### 7.2.1. 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> person pronouns

#### 7.2.1.1. Overall analysis of 1st and 2nd person pronouns

TABLE 7 TOTAL PERSONAL PRONOUNS (1<sup>ST</sup> PERSON AND 2<sup>ND</sup> PERSON PRONOUNS)

type pronoun	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
'I'	182	38.72	338	43.11	183	47.29	214	50.59	166	32.11	180	40.54	27	29.35	51	27.27
'me'	11	2.34	24	3.06	7	1.81	9	2.13	16	3.09	9	2.03	0	0.00	3	1.60
'my'	10	2.13	12	1.53	1	0.26	4	0.95	7	1.35	14	3.15	1	1.09	0	0.00
'we'	51	10.85	86	10.97	53	13.70	45	10.64	97	18.76	70	15.77	42	45.65	69	36.90
'us'	3	0.64	15	1.91	5	1.29	5	1.18	18	3.48	7	1.58	3	3.26	17	9.09
'our'	0	0.00	10	1.28	3	0.78	14	3.31	5	0.97	7	1.58	2	2.17	5	2.67
'you'	194	41.28	275	35.08	121	31.27	119	28.13	185	35.78	148	33.33	16	17.39	37	19.79
'your'	19	4.04	24	3.06	14	3.62	13	3.07	23	4.45	9	2.03	1	1.09	5	2.67
total	470	100	784	100	387	100	423	100	517	100	444	100	92	100	187	100

Key: pronouns = personal pronouns located in the texts.

1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> person pronouns denote a generally involved style (Biber 1986b: 5; Chafe 1985: 117) and interactiveness (Staples et al. 2015: 518). The pronouns in the above table are those that have been found in the texts examined; no occurrences of the reflexive pronouns 'myself', 'ourselves', 'yourself' and 'yourselves' have been found. 'I', 'me' and 'my' denote ego-involvement while the other pronouns in Table 7 denote involvement with an addressee.

An examination of the total numbers of pronouns per sport appears to confirm that there is a difference between the two text types of television and radio, with the exception of tennis. Generally, the style of radio commentaries is more involved than the televised commentaries. The difference is most marked in the cricket and horse racing broadcasts. Interestingly, there is a marked difference between these two sports: The highest total of 784 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> person pronouns has been recorded in the cricket texts, whereas the lowest total of 92 was counted in the horse racing texts.

In the preceding chapter it has been noted that cricket commentators on the radio tend to supply a considerable amount of information not directly related to the proceedings on the field. The following example serves to illustrate this:

## (12) EXAMPLE

B: Well you and I [1] you kind of invited me to play [1] in a festival at Papignon [...] in comes er Ilott and that's hit the pads missing leg-stump [...]

A: Yes two years ago I remember 'cause you were bowling there if I remember correctly

B: Yes I was [1] I'd like to think I was

(emphasis added) (App. I.B.2)

During a period in the match when there is no play, the two sports announcers, both ex-cricketers, are chatting about a friendly match they played in France two years ago. Their discussion is interrupted by the bowler running up and a ball being bowled - *in comes Ilott* ; they then continue talking about the past event. Such passages are almost exclusively found in this text type. The radio commentators are careful not to interrupt the flow of speech in order to avoid periods of silence. In cricket, this often leads to discussions which have little relevance to the actual match since there is a lot of time to be filled in between the short spells of action. As a result, the radio cricket texts show the highest degree of involvement with regards to 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> person pronouns. The sports commentators on television do not usually deviate as far from the game as those on the radio, where even legal cases, benefit funds and cakes<sup>10</sup> (cf. App. I.B.2) are discussed. Again, the fact that the TV commentators can let the pictures speak for themselves, as it were, and hence have no obligation to speak continuously explains this. They tend to speak less rather than to digress from the subject in question.

In horse racing, there are no interruptions in the race so there is no time for idle chatter (cf. Table 4), that is why the total of 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> person pronouns is by far the lowest of all four sports as shown in Table 7. And yet, the horse racing radio commentators use more than twice as many of these pronouns as their colleagues from the television department.

---

<sup>10</sup> In England, there is a curious tradition of spectators baking cakes for the radio commentators and taking these to the commentary box. This was started by Brian Johnston, who worked for the BBC for 48 years and was one of the early cricket commentators to gain celebrity status (Beard 1998: 60).

## (13) EXAMPLE

- A: [...] that was almost too agonising to watch for you  
 E: [laughing]  
 A: [laughing]  
 E: You know well I [laughter] am you know what an extraordinary night for Norman I think you know it's been a most extraordinary race and Smarty has run absolutely out of his skin but you know take nothing away from that winner you know it was a great race Pete  
 A: It was lovely to see the big jockeys [...]  
 E: Absolutely absolutely  
 A: I don't think I would have minded if the other had won and [...]  
 E: Yes Peter I think from the Canal Turn the jockeys quite clearly had a chat with one another and said [...]  
 A: OH I think there's another finisher [1] while we've been talking Blowing Wind is coming home [1] where he's come from I don't know I hope he jumped the last if he has  
 (emphasis added) (App. I.H.1)

In example (13), we find eight occurrences of *I*, of which four are *I think* or *I don't think*. In addition, there are six occurrences of *you*, of which five are *you know*, and one instance of *we*. This passage is very typical of the way radio commentators in horse racing report on a race in its closing stages. After the winning horse has crossed the finishing line the level of excitement drops sharply while the remaining horses are finishing the race. The commentators on television will then allow for some pauses or recapture and analyse the main events while the viewers are watching the remaining horses finish the race. On the other hand, the radio commentators are more likely to maintain the flow of speech by discussing the closing events at the end of the race with their commentating colleagues, which accounts for the higher degree of involvement observed.

The only sport where the television commentators use more 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> person pronouns than their counterparts in radio is tennis. Comparing the two text types, it is obvious that, in contrast to the other sports, there is hardly any reporting on ongoing actions in the televised tennis broadcasts: 97.51% is either analysis or background information passages (cf. Table 4). In these two passages the sports commentators are far more likely to interact and thus use more 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> person pronouns as in the following example:

## (14) EXAMPLE

- B: [...] that's what I say [2] I guess it's just not his personality [2] but they say it about Todd Martin too John he's had a couple of runs in the US Open when he's [2] looked like a guy you never saw he'd got fired up you saw that even at his previous match here at Wimbledon when he came through in five sets [2] to me he plays a lot better when he does so I think Tim would be a better player  
 (emphasis added) (App. I.E.1)

Commentator B even addresses his colleague, John, directly, which is a clear sign of a high

degree of involvement.

As far as the distribution of pronouns within the text types is concerned there are several similarities and some differences. Overall, 'I' is by far the most common pronoun, with figures ranging from 32.11% to 50.59% in all text types apart from horse racing, where the proportions of use of 'I' are lower. This pronoun marks ego-involvement (Chafe 1982: 46); the sports commentators seem to express their own key role very frequently. 'I' often occurs in connection with a verb expressing opinion, such as 'think' or 'believe', as shown in example (13). On the other hand, Table 7 shows that the horse racing commentators prefer to use 'we' rather than 'I'. 'We' accounts for 45.65% and 36.9% of the pronouns used in horse racing commentary on TV and radio respectively, whereas this proportion scores far lower in the other three sports.

(15) EXAMPLE

B: [...] now tailed off is Supreme Charm as we join Jim McGrath  
(emphasis added) (App. p. I.G.1)

(16) EXAMPLE

C: Brave Highlander has refused so we've just got Beau now from Red Marauder and Smarty  
(emphasis added) (App. p. I.G.1)

Examples (15) and (16) are typical examples of the usage of 'we' by horse racing commentators. Whenever the commentators change, which tends to be the case in longer horse races such as the Grand National, where each commentator observes only one stretch of the racecourse (cf. II.G.1), the phrase *we join* followed by the name of the next commentator - Jim McGrath in example (15) – is very common. The phrase *we've got* followed by the name of the horse, as displayed in example (16), occurs even more frequently. It is the commentators' favourite way of letting the audience know which horse is in which position. These two uses account for the high proportion of 'we' usage in horse racing texts whereas they are hardly found in cricket, football and tennis commentaries.

Finally, let us examine the remaining pronouns. The object forms 'me' and 'us' and the possessive forms 'my' and 'your' are only rarely found. The pronoun 'you' is worth looking at in more detail as it makes up between 30% and 40% of the pronouns used in the cricket, football and tennis texts and less than 20% in the horse racing broadcasts. Regarding 'you' it should be noted here that no distinction has been made between the subject and the object forms of this pronoun. 'You' often occurs when the sports commentators speak to each other and signals a high degree of involvement with the addressee (Chafe 1985: 117). However, some of these pronouns are indefinite personal pronouns referring to people in general rather than the fellow commentator, as in example (17):



## (17) EXAMPLE

B: [W]hen you're bowling well [1] you really need to get something for that good bowling  
(emphasis added) (old App. I.A.2)

The reason for the difference between the horse racing texts and the other text types is linked to the pronoun 'we'. As shown earlier in example (15), the horse racing commentators often hand over the commentary during the action, i.e. one commentator stops commentating and his colleague takes over and continues from that point in the race. It is less common for horse racing commentators to share a commentary, i.e. to take turns in reporting on the same part of the race, when compared to cricket, football or tennis commentators. That is to say turn taking is substantially less frequent. Due to this lack of interaction there are fewer occurrences of the pronoun 'you'. Again, the repetitiveness of cricket and the lack of action passages in the televised tennis texts serve to explain why these three text types display the highest rates of 'you' pronoun occurrences.

The following two tables will show whether the 15- to 20-year lapse between between the recordings accounts for any differences.

TABLE 8 1996-2002 PERSONAL PRONOUNS (1<sup>ST</sup> PERSON AND 2<sup>ND</sup> PERSON PRONOUNS)

type pronoun	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
'I'	94	44.55	160	50.16	109	53.17	100	47.39	99	38.08	66	39.29	22	28.57	49	32.45
'me'	8	3.79	8	2.51	2	0.98	3	1.42	5	1.92	4	2.38	0	0.00	3	1.99
'my'	6	2.84	2	0.63	1	0.49	1	0.47	4	1.54	4	2.38	1	1.30	0	0.00
'we'	25	11.85	36	11.29	21	10.24	29	13.74	49	18.85	36	21.43	37	48.05	47	31.13
'us'	1	0.47	9	2.82	5	2.44	5	2.37	4	1.54	2	1.19	0	0.00	7	4.64
'our'	0	0.00	5	1.57	1	0.49	9	4.27	1	0.38	3	1.79	2	2.60	4	2.65
'you'	70	33.18	85	26.65	63	30.73	57	27.01	90	34.62	50	29.76	15	19.48	37	24.50
'your'	7	3.32	14	4.39	3	1.46	7	3.32	8	3.08	3	1.79	0	0.00	4	2.65
total	211	100	319	100	205	100	211	100	260	100	168	100	77	100	151	100

**Key:** pronouns = personal pronouns located in the texts.

TABLE 9 2013-2015 PERSONAL PRONOUNS (1<sup>ST</sup> PERSON AND 2<sup>ND</sup> PERSON PRONOUNS)

type  pronoun	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
‘I’	88	41.71	178	55.80	74	36.10	114	54.03	67	25.77	114	67.86	5	6.49	2	1.32
‘me’	3	1.42	16	5.02	5	2.44	6	2.84	11	4.23	5	2.98	0	0.00	0	0.00
‘my’	4	1.90	10	3.13	0	0.00	3	1.42	3	1.15	10	5.95	0	0.00	0	0.00
‘we’	26	12.32	50	15.67	32	15.61	16	7.58	46	17.69	34	20.24	5	6.49	22	14.57
‘us’	2	0.95	6	1.88	0	0.00	0	0.00	14	5.38	5	2.98	3	3.90	10	6.62
‘our’	0	0.00	5	1.57	2	0.98	5	2.37	4	1.54	4	2.38	0	0.00	1	0.66
‘you’	124	58.77	190	59.56	58	28.29	62	29.38	95	36.54	98	58.33	1	1.30	0	0.00
‘your’	12	5.69	10	3.13	11	5.37	6	2.84	15	5.77	6	3.57	1	1.30	1	0.66
total	259	122.7	465	145.8	182	88.78	212	100.5	255	98.08	276	164.3	15	19.48	36	23.84

**Key:** pronouns = personal pronouns located in the texts.

While most scores show little change, there are two noticeable dissimilarities. One concerns the radio commentaries of cricket and tennis matches. In both text types, there is a significant increase in the number of 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> person pronouns used between 1996–2002 and 2013–2015, corresponding to approximately 45% in cricket and approximately 60% in tennis broadcasts. This difference is mainly due to an increase in the use of ‘you’ and ‘I’ in both sports. This suggests that over the years the degree of involvement has increased because there is more verbal interaction between the two commentators. In the sizeable gaps between bursts of action on the pitch or court, the exchanges between the commentators are more conversational than they used to be 20 years ago, as the following example shows:

(18) EXAMPLE

B: I have to say Jeff from up here in the commentary box you're rather better at the line calls than I am

A: Well I agree with you I think that hit the back of the line

(emphasis added) (App. II.F.2)

In example (18), there are six occurrences of either ‘I’ or ‘you’ within approximately ten seconds of commentary. This is typical of both cricket and tennis radio commentaries.

The second noticeable difference in Tables 8 and 9 concerns the horse racing commentaries. The total score in Table 7 is deceptive as there is a substantial difference between the two sets of recordings. The drop in 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> person pronouns from 1996–2002 to 2013–2015 is approximately 75% and mainly due to a drop in the frequency of use of ‘I’, ‘we’ and ‘you’ in both TV and radio commentaries. As mentioned in the preceding chapter, the speed of

action in horse racing has increased, which leads to more dynamic races and thus more positional changes during a race. This has an effect on the style of horse racing commentary. It becomes more factual and detached as illustrated in the lower scores of the more recent recordings.

Table 10 shows in which level of commentary the 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> person pronouns were found. Table 11, based on Tables 2 and 10<sup>11</sup>, shows how many 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> person pronouns occurred in the different levels of commentary per 100 words.

### 7.2.1.2. Distribution analysis of 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> person pronouns

TABLE 10 WEIGHTED DISTRIBUTION OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS  
(1<sup>ST</sup> PERSON AND 2<sup>ND</sup> PERSON PRONOUNS)

pronoun	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
n action	2	16	5	13	6	5	64	161
action frequency	0.15	0.42	0.10	0.17	1.21	0.10	0.36	0.94
n analysis	126	117	189	187	115	112	7	14
analysis frequency	2.43	3.12	2.76	3.53	1.38	1.82	0.77	0.97
n background	342	651	193	223	394	327	21	12
background frequency	2.54	5.24	2.36	3.08	3.54	3.66	1.50	0.80

**Key:** n = total number of words found in action / analysis / background level of commentary; action / analysis / background frequency = frequency per 100 words proportionally weighted against figures in Table 4.

Table 10 shows that the differences in terms of involvement vary between the levels of commentary. In the sections describing action, the differences are minimal. Across all text types, the frequency of 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> person pronouns per 100 words is between 0.15 and 1.21 words per 100 words, which is not statistically significant. The low scores suggest a low grade of involvement and the differences observed across the entire range of commentaries seem negligible in the action level of commentary. Even the horse racing commentaries that show a high degree of detachment overall (cf. Table 7) do not deviate from the scores of the other sports. In the passages devoted to analysis and background information, on the other hand, the differences are more marked and appear to confirm the scores of Table 7: The radio commentaries show a higher level of involvement especially in the case of cricket. Similarly, the horse racing commentaries are the most detached.

<sup>11</sup> Cf. ch.4 for all Tables dealing with the occurrence of linguistic features in the three levels of commentary (action/analysis/background information).

### **7.2.1.3. Summary of 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> person pronouns**

Overall, based on the scores for 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> person pronouns, the radio cricket broadcasts show the highest degree of involvement while the horse racing commentaries on TV are the most detached. The text type of radio broadcasts is generally more involved than the text type of televised broadcasts with the notable exception of the tennis broadcasts on TV. Ego-involvement, expressed by the pronoun 'I' is the most frequently found type of involvement in all text types apart from the horse racing reports, where two particular uses of 'we' alter the picture.

As regards the lapse in time between the recordings, the style of the radio, cricket and tennis commentators has become more involved over the years. Conversely, the language of the horse racing commentators, both on TV and on the radio, has become more detached over the same period of time.

The distribution analysis confirms most of the results of the overall analysis with one notable exception: In the action level of commentary, no significant difference between any of the text types can be found. Even the most extreme discrepancies from the overall analysis seem to disappear in the action level of commentary.

## 7.2.2. Adverbs of time and place

### 7.2.2.1. Overall analysis of adverbs of time and place

The following table will serve to show whether two other markers of involvement, adverbs of time and place (Biber 1988: 224), feature similarly in the corpus.

TABLE 11 TOTAL ADVERBS OF TIME AND PLACE

type adverbs	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
adv. of time	189	48.59	181	37.79	165	36.59	242	40.40	274	59.31	206	41.53	326	51.75	411	65.97
adv. of place	200	51.41	298	62.21	286	63.41	357	59.60	188	40.69	290	58.47	304	48.25	212	34.03
total	389	100	479	100	451	100	599	100	462	100	496	100	630	100	623	100

Key: adv. of time = total number of adverbs of time; adv. of place = total number of adverbs of place.

When comparing the total number of adverbs of time and place found, three figures stand out. Statistically, both of the horse racing text types and the radio football commentary show significantly higher scores than the other texts. Moreover, the totals derived from the horse racing commentaries do not seem to depend on the broadcast medium.

It is necessary to explain the significantly higher totals found in the horse racing texts. Horse racing is the only one of the four sports which is not a ball game; consequently, one would expect it to feature fewer place adverbs when compared with the ball games as the position of the ball is eminently important and often referred to with the help of place adverbs. A closer look at the horse racing texts reveals that certain adverbs account for a large proportion of the total.

#### (19) EXAMPLE

B: Murt's Man is the back marker at this stage with Manx Magic now they come on to the Chair fence this is number 15 The Last Fling asked for a big one at the Chair and he got it er Celibate over second with Supreme Charm then David's Lad travelling very well in fourth Majed next then Bindaree and Mely Moss then creeping up on the inside Ad Hoc getting closer Royal Predica and Blowing Wind then Spot Thedifference and Kingsmark going midfield they're still there as they pass us now Djeddah is still in the race  
(emphasis added) (App. I.H.7)

Example (19) shows the use of *now* and *then*. They are not used as time adverbs in a strict sense. *Then* merely functions as a means of letting the audience know in which order the horses are running: *Supreme Charm then David's Lad* or *Blowing Wind then Spot Thedifference* means that David's Lad and Spot Thedifference are trailing Supreme Charm and Blowing Wind

respectively. ‘Now’, on the other hand, is a means of telling the listeners that the focus of the commentary has shifted from the position of the horses to where exactly they are running on the racecourse: *Murt’s Man is the back marker at this stage with Manx Magic now they come on to the Chair fence*. The first part of this utterance tells us that *Murt’s Man* and *Manx Magic* are the last horses in the field and after the time adverb *now* we are told that the horses are approaching a fence called *Chair*.

(20) EXAMPLE

B: Circle of Wolves coming there it looks as if Sconced has done enough there as Stromness jumps well there and [...]

(emphasis added) (App. I.G.10)

(21) EXAMPLE

B: Too Forward at 11 to 4 jumping off in last place here could be a little bit of a surprise package here

(emphasis added) (I.G.10)

Examples (20) and (21) are typical of horse racing broadcasts. *Here* and *there* are not used to describe any precise location to the audience but rather to draw the audience’s attention to a particular part of the action. Depending on the race, there are normally between six and ten horses competing in the race, with the exception of the Grand National, where 40 horses take part. At the beginning of the race, and often throughout, the horses are running almost side by side with one horse overtaking another and then being overtaken again. Amidst all this action the commentators try to single out one specific event by using *here* and *there* to refer to it, as shown in the above examples. This particular use also explains why horse racing is the only commentary where the radio texts feature fewer place adverbs than the TV texts. The same use of *here* and *there* can be found in the radio texts but it is less common since the listeners cannot see what is happening on the racecourse. Without the visual support it is too complicated to describe as many changes in position as in the televised texts. Consequently, the radio reporters tend to focus more on the order in which the horses are running so as to assist the listeners in picturing the scene. In example (21), ordinal numbers are used to this effect rather than adverbs of place.

(22) EXAMPLE

A: Duke Street in front by a neck to Duke of Medina racing second a length and half back to Fast Scat racing third bustled along now Or So in fourth position and Dylan Storm now at the back

(emphasis added) (App. II.H.6)

In cricket, football and tennis, the radio texts contain more adverbs than the televised

texts. To a large extent, the difference stems from a high frequency of adverbs of place in the radio texts. Beard (1998: 78) makes a similar assertion when he states that place and time adverbials are more common in radio broadcasts than on television. Since the viewers can follow the ball with their own eyes, spatial references by the TV sports commentator are often not needed. The audience of a radio broadcast, on the other hand, depends on these references simply in order to follow the game by mentally recreating the movements of the ball.

(23) EXAMPLE

A: Here is Irani again bowls to Crawley Crawley comes forward he doesn't [1] he really props forward from the crease [...] and the ball goes [...] to Rollins  
(emphasis added) (App. I.B.2)

In example (23), for example, *Irani* bowls to *Crawley*, the opposing batsman. Using adverbs of place, the radio commentator then informs the listeners about the bowling, the batsman's actions and the direction the ball has taken. This kind of passage is very typical of a radio commentary and can rarely be found in a TV broadcast. When we study the TV commentary of the same game (cf. App. I.A.4), we realise that this scene is not even mentioned. In fact, the TV commentator has no reason to do so: no run has been scored, so the action is not relevant to the outcome of the game, and, in addition, the bowling and the batting actions are visible on the screen. In the radio texts on football, where possession of the ball is crucial and changes very often, there are consequently more place adverbs to be found than in the cricket and tennis commentaries (cf. Table 11). The passing, losing and winning of the ball in football requires a certain amount of information on location and direction to be provided by the commentator. The ball can potentially fall into the possession of any of the 22 players on the pitch within a short period of time. On the other hand, cricket and tennis are essentially based on an exchange between two players (cf ch. 5.3.).

This serves to explain the lowest of all adverb scores in the televised cricket texts. The location of the ball is less important in cricket than in football or tennis. What is crucial, however, is whether it hits the stumps or is caught by a fielder. This can be seen on the TV screen and need not be mentioned by the sports commentator. Naturally, the ball can also be seen on the screen in a football broadcast, but the sports commentator nevertheless often refers to its location because its movement and direction are far more varied and thus less predictable than in cricket. The movement and position of the ball are the most important subjects of report for the audience.

## (24) EXAMPLE

A: [T]he keeper's fists get it away for Rapid Vienna

(emphasis added) (App. I.C.4)

In passages such as example (24), the adverb of place is the crucial piece of information for the audience as, in this instance, *away* carries more meaning than denoting the direction the ball has taken. It also implies that the immediate danger has been averted for Rapid Vienna, which, from the audience's point of view, is crucial.

The following tables show whether the use of time and place adverbs changed over a 15- to 20-year period.

TABLE 12 1996-2002 ADVERBS OF TIME AND PLACE

type adverbs	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
time	97	54.80	96	43.64	73	38.22	97	37.02	139	58.40	118	46.27	145	40.73	192	59.63
place	80	45.20	124	56.36	118	61.78	165	62.98	99	41.60	137	53.73	211	59.27	130	40.37
total	177	100	220	100	191	100	262	100	238	100	255	100	356	100	322	100

Key: adv. of time = total number of adverbs of time; adv. of place = total number of adverbs of place.

TABLE 13 2013-2015 ADVERBS OF TIME AND PLACE

type adverbs	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
time	92	43.40	85	32.82	92	35.38	145	43.03	135	60.27	88	36.51	181	66.06	219	72.76
place	120	56.60	174	67.18	168	64.62	192	56.97	89	39.73	153	63.49	93	33.94	82	27.24
total	212	100	259	100	260	100	337	100	224	100	241	100	274	100	301	100

Key: adv. of time = total number of adverbs of time; adv. of place = total number of adverbs of place.

Two sets of results stand out. First, there was a significant increase across all adverbs in both football texts on TV and on the radio. The aforementioned pacier and more athletic nature of football is probably the reason for this increase. Beard (1998: 75) confirms that place adverbs are frequently found in football commentaries to refer to the position of the ball and the players. As there are 22 players on the pitch, fairly accurate information is needed, particularly in a fast-flowing game.



## (25) EXAMPLE

A: Here's Ramsey now Ramsey ran away from Hazard but then he was met by Ramires so he turned back keeps the ball for Arsenal Ozil to the left side and Monreal Monreal to Welbeck Welbeck now cutting infield

(emphasis added) (App. II.D.1)

Example (25) shows a typical use of the adverbs *here* and *now*. In football commentating, *here* is used very frequently to denote the start of an attacking move when a player receives the ball and is picking up pace with it. Similarly, the mention of *now* often announces a sudden change in the flow of the match or a potentially imminent goal-scoring threat. This use is comparable to the use of 'here' in cricket (cf. example (22)).

Second, a substantial decrease in place adverbs can be observed in the horse racing texts. The difference occurs in both text types but is more marked in the televised texts, where a drop of more than 50% can be observed between the older recordings and the texts from 2013–2015). Conversely, the number of time adverbs rose during the same period. What can be stated based on these recordings, therefore, is that a shift in the use of adverbs took place. Whether this shift is linked to faster horses and pacier races is difficult to ascertain.

### 7.2.2.2. Distribution analysis of adverbs of time and place

Besides the total number of adverbs, the division of time and place adverbs is also of interest when analysing the commentary.

TABLE 14 WEIGHTED DISTRIBUTION OF ADVERBS OF TIME AND PLACE

adverbs type	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
n action	59	212	208	394	14	179	580	560
action frequency	4.43	5.54	4.17	5.29	2.82	3.65	3.28	3.28
n analysis	116	90	151	86	214	143	24	24
analysis frequency	2.24	2.40	2.21	1.62	2.56	2.32	2.65	1.66
n background	214	177	92	119	132	174	26	39
background frequency	1.59	1.43	1.13	1.64	1.18	1.95	1.86	2.60

**Key:** n = total number found in action / analysis / background level of commentary; action / analysis / background frequency = frequency per 100 words proportionally weighted against figures in Table 4.

Table 14 shows that the trends observed in the overall results in Table 11 are evened out to some degree when the distribution of the adverbs is examined. Based on absolute numbers, the

horse racing texts featured the highest scores in Table 11. Analysing the action sections, however, it appears that the frequency of use of adverbs by horse racing commentators does not deviate from other text types. Indeed, the average horse racing scores per 100 words are even slightly lower than other text types, albeit not significantly. Furthermore, the differences between the TV and the radio figures observed in Table 11 are less pronounced in the action level of commentary.

The only text type that features a significant deviation is the televised tennis commentary. In the action parts, the TV tennis commentators use the fewest adverbs of time and place. The characteristics of the sport provide an explanation: there are only two protagonists and the game is played within a very limited and regulated space. As a consequence, there is little pressure on the TV commentators to provide spatial and temporal context for the audience.

### **7.2.2.3. Summary of analysis of adverbs of time and place**

On the whole, Table 11 indicates that the issue of involvement or detachment depends on both the broadcast medium – the radio texts feature a more involved style than the TV texts with the exception of horse racing – and the sport, with the horse racing texts showing the highest degree of involvement based on the use of adverbs. However, Table 14 puts the overall results into perspective. It indicates that if only the action level of commentary is taken into account, the difference in involvement decreases and, in the case of the horse racing texts, it disappears completely. In the action level of commentary, it is the tennis commentaries on TV that show the lowest rate of involvement due to the nature of the game and the visual input provided by the medium.

### 7.2.3. Pronoun ‘it’

#### 7.2.3.1. Overall analysis of pronoun ‘it’

TABLE 15 TOTAL PRONOUN ‘IT’

type pronoun	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
ball	123	28.54	147	27.12	182	35.48	215	41.19	58	14.22	168	40.38	0	0.00	0	0.00
it's X	0	0.00	2	0.37	42	8.19	29	5.56	11	2.70	6	1.44	93	48.95	67	31.75
others	308	71.46	393	72.51	289	56.34	278	53.26	339	83.09	242	58.17	97	51.05	144	68.25
total	431	100	542	100	513	100	522	100	408	100	416	100	190	100	211	100

**Key:** ball = pronoun ‘it’ referring to the cricket ball or football; ‘it’s X’ = commentator using this phrase to refer to a player or horse; others = pronoun ‘it’ referring to anything except the cricket ball or football.

Biber (1988: 43) states that the use of the pronoun ‘it’ is a marker of involvement. The frequencies of this pronoun found in the corpus thus reveal a number of findings. First, in each sport, the radio commentaries are more involved than the TV commentaries. This difference is minimal in the football, tennis and horse racing commentaries, but it is significant in the cricket texts.

#### (26) EXAMPLE

- C: [...] the pitches here it's vast square as it's called although it's a huge oblong  
 E: Yeah why do we call it a square it's not  
 C: I don't know well I suppose it's because in the old days when you only needed [1] four or five pitches it it would be a square it would be a square area and there are some grounds where  
 E: Let's call it for the change now Simon let's call it  
 C: Where they only use three or four pitches  
 E: Let's call it the oblong yeah let's call it that for the change from now on  
 (emphasis added) (App. II.B.1)

Example (26) illustrates a typical use of ‘it’ in the cricket commentaries on the radio. In this passage, the two commentators talk about the shape of cricket pitches and the terms used to describe the shape. Typically, this type of passage is found in sections of no play, i.e. between two balls being bowled. There is always a gap of up to half a minute between the completion of a bowling and hitting action and the next ball being bowled. The radio commentators need to fill this gap so as to avoid silence. The utterances used to fill these gaps tend to be more conversational than play-by-play reporting, and conversational style, in turn, is characterised by a high degree of involvement (Friginal 2017: 346).

Second, as far as the use of the pronoun ‘it’ is concerned, the horse racing commentaries are markedly less involved than the commentaries in the three other sports. Unlike cricket, horse

racing features a continuous flow of action and therefore very few interruptions that need to be filled with conversational utterances. If it was not for the large number of uses in the form of ‘it’s X’, the score would be even lower. This particular use is very common in horse racing commentating as a means to indicate which horse the commentator is referring to as in example (27):

(27) EXAMPLE

A: [...] and it's Supreme Hope who is moving on by three lengths now

(emphasis added) (App. II.H.14)

Third, the football texts feature the highest frequencies of ‘it’ used to refer to the ball. The difference between the radio football commentaries and the commentaries of the other sports is significant, while the totals recorded in the televised football texts is still higher than those of cricket, tennis and horse racing. The rapid movements of the ball and the sometimes hectic incidents on the football pitch may lead the football commentators to shorten their utterances:

(28) EXAMPLE

A: Giggs with the corner [2] hits it high towards David May got his header in okay but Ivanov’s there to knock it away for Rapid Vienna [2] Irwin playing it wide

(emphasis added) (App. I.C.4)

The events described between the two pauses in example (28) take place within two to three seconds – the ball is hit towards the goal, headed by *May* and knocked away by *Ivanov* – so it is easier for the commentator to use *it* instead of ‘the ball’ in order to follow the rapid pace of the game. Furthermore, ‘it’ often becomes a synonym for the ball in addition to being a pronoun. Strictly speaking, the first *it* in example (28) refers to *the corner*<sup>12</sup>. However, one cannot actually ‘hit’ a corner but only the ball, therefore, *it* refers to the ball that is being played towards the goal without the referent having been mentioned before. This particular use of ‘it’ can be observed in cricket, football and tennis texts. Biber states that the frequent use of the pronoun ‘it’ can lead to a quite inexplicit and imprecise style (1986a: 411). In the case of commentaries of ball sports this is not true as the audience is assumed to have a certain amount of knowledge of the game (cf. ch. 7.).

Tables 16 and 17 will show whether the use of the pronoun ‘it’ changed during the 15-

<sup>12</sup> Corner: an action in football whereby the attacking team plays the ball from one of two corners of the pitch nearest the opposing team’s goal (for rules and definitions cf IFAB: <http://theifab.com/laws>).

to 20-year lapse between the two sets of recordings.

TABLE 16 1996-2002 PRONOUN 'IT'

type pronoun 'it'	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
ball	60	29.85	78	30.59	92	33.33	93	34.44	42	18.83	129	55.60	0	0.00	0	0.00
it's X	0	0.00	1	0.39	20	7.25	16	5.93	6	2.69	4	1.72	58	47.54	42	32.06
others	141	70.15	176	69.02	164	59.42	161	59.63	175	78.48	99	42.67	64	52.46	89	67.94
total	201	100	255	100	276	100	270	100	223	100	232	100	122	100	131	100

**Key:** ball = pronoun 'it' referring to the cricket ball or football; 'it's X' = commentator using this phrase to refer to a player or horse; others = pronoun 'it' referring to anything except the cricket ball or football.

TABLE 17 2013-2015 PRONOUN 'IT'

type pronoun 'it'	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
ball	63	27.39	69	24.04	90	35.02	122	45.52	16	8.38	39	20.74	0	0.00	0	0.00
it's X	0	0.00	1	0.35	22	8.56	13	4.85	5	2.62	2	1.06	35	51.47	25	33.33
others	167	72.61	217	75.61	145	56.42	133	49.63	170	89.01	147	78.19	33	48.53	50	66.67
total	230	100	287	100	257	100	268	100	191	100	188	100	68	100	75	100

**Key:** ball = pronoun 'it' referring to the cricket ball or football; 'it's X' = commentator using this phrase to refer to a player or horse; others = pronoun 'it' referring to anything except the cricket ball or football.

One significant change is notable. Similarly to the case of adverbs of time and place (cf. ch. 7.2.2.), the horse racing results show a significant drop of approximately 50%. The style of the horse racing commentators from 20 years ago appears to have been more involved as far as the use of 'it' is concerned. It can be assumed that the somewhat more leisurely pace of the races at that time meant the commentators were under slightly less time pressure and, accordingly, employed more features associated with an involved style of speech.

### 7.2.3.2. Distribution analysis of pronoun ‘it’

TABLE 18 WEIGHTED DISTRIBUTION OF PRONOUN ‘IT’

type pronoun ‘it’	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
n action	13	88	129	231	11	71	160	165
action frequency	0.98	2.30	2.59	3.10	2.21	1.45	0.90	0.97
n analysis	174	129	254	158	201	173	15	24
analysis frequency	3.36	3.44	3.71	2.98	2.40	2.81	1.66	1.66
n background	244	325	130	133	196	172	15	22
background frequency	1.81	2.62	1.59	1.83	1.76	1.93	1.07	1.47

**Key:** n = total number found in action /analysis / background level of commentary; action / analysis / background frequency = frequency per 100 words proportionally weighted against figures in Table 4.

An examination of the action level of commentary reveals an interesting finding regarding the horse racing commentaries. The differences observed in Table 15 have disappeared. The horse racing figures are particularly interesting in this respect. Unlike the overall results in Table 15, where horse racing displayed the lowest degree of involvement by far, the figures relating to distribution do not stand out when we consider the action parts in isolation. Moreover, the sizeable overall difference between the televised cricket texts and horse racing texts has all but vanished.

The only significant difference remaining is between, on the one hand, the football commentaries on the radio and, on the other hand, both horse racing texts and the televised cricket texts. The frequent changes in possession of the ball and the necessity to keep the audience continuously informed about the position of the ball results in the radio football commentators using the pronoun ‘it’ more than any of their commentating colleagues, even in the action level of commentary.

### 7.2.3.3. Summary of analysis of pronoun ‘it’

This chapter has shown that in the sports commentaries analysed the pronoun ‘it’ is frequently used in a particular way: to refer to the ball in play and to indicate which player has or plays the ball or which horse is running in which position. Based on these premises, its use as a marker of involvement is therefore limited.

Nevertheless, some conclusions can be drawn. First, apart from horse racing, the medium exerts an influence on the use of ‘it’. In cricket, football and tennis, there are gaps in terms of on-going action. The obligation of the radio commentators to fill these gaps results in

a higher degree of involvement as regards the use of 'it'. Second, the nature of the sport also has an effect. As there are no gaps in terms of on-going action in horse racing and so the degree of involvement is correspondingly lower. Third, a closer analysis of the passages describing action reveals that the use of the pronoun 'it' is more uniform in this level of commentary. Live play-by-play reporting seems to largely negate the influence of medium and sport.

## 7.2.4. Discourse particles

### 7.2.4.1. Overall analysis of discourse particles

TABLE 19 TOTAL DISCOURSE PARTICLES

type disc. particles	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
‘well’	43	89.58	52	89.66	34	91.89	35	87.50	80	91.95	38	86.36	5	100.0	10	90.91
‘now’	4	8.33	4	6.90	3	8.11	2	5.00	5	5.75	2	4.55	0	0.00	0	0.00
‘anyway’	0	0.00	2	3.45	0	0.00	3	7.50	2	2.30	4	9.09	0	0.00	1	9.09
‘anyhow’	1	2.08	0	0.00	0	0.00	0	0.00	0	0.00	0	0.00	0	0.00	0	0.00
total	48	100	58	100	37	100	40	100	87	100	44	100	5	100	11	100

Key: disc. particles = discourse particles.

The results in Table 19 only partly follow the pattern that has so far been observed. Discourse particles also denote involved style (Biber 1988: 241; Chafe: 1985: 112f.). It is therefore no surprise to find that the radio scores are slightly higher than the TV scores. However, it is unexpected to find that the televised tennis texts feature the highest score, which is one of two statistically significant differences observed in Table 19. The second significant difference is the low figures relating to horse racing. This coincides with the findings concerning other markers of involvement (cf. Tables 11 and 15), where horse racing showed a lower overall grade of involvement. This is also the case as regards discourse particles. Horse racing commentators seem to have little time and opportunity to use discourse particles. The non-stop flow of action during the race does not allow for this.

Examining the results in more detail reveals that the vast majority of the total, at least 85% in all text types, consists of occurrences of the particle ‘well’. Biber (1988: 241) and Chafe (1982: 47) state that discourse particles mark involved style, but also observe their prominence – ‘well’ in particular – in conversations. This raises the question as to whether the televised tennis texts are more conversational, and thus include more discourse particles, than the other text types. The following example shows how ‘well’ is typically used:



## (29) EXAMPLE

A: [...] wonders who is it gonna be tomorrow [11]

B: Well it's Novak Djokovic who sits down

A: [...]

B: [...]

A: [...] just hope he can drive by for a pass [5]

B: Well that was a a bit of gift from Novak

A: [...]

B: [...]

A: [...] that's in the rear view now [33]

B: Well he'll be in there one day

(emphasis added) (App. II.E.4)

In this extract, speaker B starts three out of six statements by saying *Well* to start with. In all three utterances 'well' occurs after a lengthy pause and also following the completion an utterance by one of the two commentators. All text types feature a frequent use of 'well' in this position, with the tennis commentaries on TV displaying the highest rates (cf also App. II.E.1).

This very particular position of 'well' in the texts shows that the higher frequency of discourse particles found in the televised tennis texts does not indicate a higher degree of involvement in general but only in a limited sense: the tennis commentaries on TV can only be labelled to be more conversationally involved in terms of this particular use of the discourse particle 'well'.

TABLE 20 1996-2002 DISCOURSE PARTICLES

type disc. particles	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
'well'	30	85.7	25	89.29	14	100.0	19	86.36	56	93.33	17	89.47	4	100.0	10	90.91
'now'	4	11.43	3	10.71	0	0.00	1	4.55	2	3.33	1	5.26	0	0.00	0	0.00
'anyway'	0	0.00	0	0.00	0	0.00	2	9.09	2	3.33	1	5.26	0	0.00	1	9.09
'anyhow'	1	2.86	0	0.00	0	0.00	0	0.00	0	0.00	0	0.00	0	0.00	0	0.00
total	35	100	28	100	14	100	22	100	60	100	19	100	4	100	11	100

Key: disc. particles = discourse particles.

TABLE 21 2013-2015 DISCOURSE PARTICLES

type disc. particles	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
‘well’	13	100.0	27	90.00	20	86.96	16	88.89	24	88.89	21	84.00	1	100.0	0	0.0
‘now’	0	0.0	1	3.33	3	13.04	1	5.56	3	11.11	1	4.00	0	0.00	0	0.00
‘anyway’	0	0.0	2	6.67	0	0.00	1	5.56	0	0.00	3	12.00	0	0.00	0	0.00
‘anyhow’	0	0.0	0	0.00	0	0.00	0	0.00	0	0.00	0	0.00	0	0.00	0	0.00
total	13	100	30	100	23	100	18	100	27	100	25	100	1	100	0	0

Key: disc. particles = discourse particles.

The results of Tables 20 and 21 show two notable decreases. In cricket and tennis, the older recordings of both televised commentaries featured significantly more discourse particles than the more recent recordings. It seems that the cricket and tennis TV commentators used to have a somewhat more conversational approach 20 years ago compared to recent times. The reason for this is difficult to ascertain. It is unlikely to be due to the nature of the sports, since the procedures in cricket or tennis matches have hardly been accelerated (cf. ch. 5). The change might have been caused by the emergence and increasing availability of online live commentaries in the last 15 years. This added competition may have caused the TV commentators to slightly adapt their style.

A decrease of discourse particles can also be observed in the horse racing commentaries. It is only significant in the case of the radio commentaries, as the TV figures are too small to allow for any meaningful conclusions to be drawn. Nevertheless, the fact that the more recent horse racing recordings only feature one discourse particle between them is notable. This ties in with observations made in previous chapters: there is less time for horse racing commentators to deviate from the ongoing events and, therefore, they have adopted a style that tends to be on the detached side of the involvement-detachment scale.

### 7.2.4.2. Distribution analysis of discourse particles

TABLE 22 WEIGHTED DISTRIBUTION OF DISCOURSE PARTICLES

disc. particle	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
n action	5	1	3	4	2	0	1	4
action frequency	0.38	0.03	0.06	0.05	0.40	0.00	0.01	0.02
n analysis	17	8	18	16	39	21	0	3
analysis frequency	0.33	0.21	0.26	0.30	0.47	0.34	0.00	0.21
n background	26	49	16	20	46	23	4	4
background frequency	0.19	0.39	0.20	0.28	0.41	0.26	0.29	0.27

**Key:** n = total number found in action /analysis / background level of commentary; action / analysis / background frequency = frequency per 100 words proportionally weighted against figures in Table 4.

The distribution analysis of the action level of commentary reveals an almost complete levelling out of all the differences observed in the overall analysis. No significant deviations can be found. The time constraints and requirements of play-by-play reporting – constant updating of the audience on ongoing events – appear to prevent the commentators from using discourse particles in these sections of their commentaries. Another factor is the accompanying expectations of the viewers and listeners which are probably at the back of the commentators' minds: when decisive sporting actions are happening, the audience does not appreciate any language not directly related to the events, and this includes discourse particles.

### 7.2.4.3. Summary of analysis of discourse particles

In summary, several inferences can be made but their validity is restricted by the following: the vast majority of the discourse particles found in this corpus consists of the particle 'well'. Moreover, 'well' is very often used in the same manner, namely in utterance-initial position after a lengthy pause.

The nature of the sport affects the use of discourse particles, whereas the effect of the broadcast medium is less pronounced. Over the last 20 years, commentators on TV seem to have reduced their use of discourse particles. This also applies to horse racing commentators on the radio. However, all of these differences are cancelled out when only the action level of commentary is examined. The nature of play-by-play reporting appears to override all other influences.

## 7.2.5. Passives

### 7.2.5.1. Overall analysis of passives

TABLE 23 PASSIVES

type	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
passives	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
number of passives	113	137	147	197	56	68	184	129

**Key:** number of passives = number of passives found in the texts.

Passives denote a more abstract and thus detached style of commentary (Brinton 2015: 232). A comparison of the media shows that the radio texts tend to be more detached than the TV texts as far as cricket, football and tennis are concerned. The difference between the radio and TV commentaries on football is significant while there is a smaller margin of difference in cricket and tennis. This confirms earlier observations whereby radio commentaries have been found to be more involved than TV commentaries.

Horse racing is an exception in this regard as the TV score is significantly higher than the radio count. A closer examination reveals that two very specific uses of passive are responsible for this difference:

#### (30) EXAMPLE

C: Teaforthree followed by Oscar Time and then Balthazar King Auroras Encore and Soll Swing Bill Sea Bass and then On His Own followed by Tarquinis and Mumbles Head and Cappa Bleu as they go over another plain one Across The Bay has got a lead of about three lengths [2]

A: So as they go towards the one before Becher's Across The Bay is the leader by about three lengths being followed by Teaforthree

(emphasis added) (App. II.G.1)

Example (30) exemplifies the use of 'followed by', which is very common in the televised horse racing commentaries. A total of 62 instances have been counted compared to 33 in the radio texts. 'Followed by' is used to let the audience know in which order the horses are running. Even though there is visual input, this information is still vital as the horses and jockeys can only really be told apart by the colours and patterns of their caps, jerseys, horses' headgear, etc. It is difficult for the viewers to know each horse's colours, therefore, the commentators provide the necessary information by naming the horses and the order in which they are running. By using the passive in this context the sports commentator creates a time lag for identification. The focus is on the action first – *followed* – and then on the agent – the horse. While uttering *followed by* the commentator has a little bit of time to find out which horse is actually following

the preceding horse (Balzer-Siber 2015: 34).

Another feature particular to the televised horse racing commentaries is the use of the phrasal verb ‘pull up’.

(31) EXAMPLE

- A: [A] whole host of them pulling up Ballabriggs pulled up Weird AL pulled up Forpadytheplasterer has been pulled up and so too has Quel Esprit  
 B: And Joncol is another one who has also been pulled up and On His Own is gone er back in the field at Valentine's going over the one after Valentine's five out Across The Bay led Oscar Time Teaforthree Auroras Encore Tarquinis made a mistake Saint Are also made a mistake Harry the Viking is also being pulled up
- (emphasis added) (App. II.G.1)

In example (31), ‘pulled up’ is used in the passive voice three times within a short space of time. Incidentally, it is also used in the active voice twice by commentator A. 19 instances of its passive use were found in the TV commentaries while none occurred in the radio commentaries. In sum, the specific use of ‘followed by’ and ‘pulled up’ account for nearly half of all passive forms in the horse racing TV commentaries, which is the main reason for the high score of passives in this text type.

On the radio, on the other hand, the time constraints are even stricter than on TV. As a consequence, the commentators seem to prefer the use of ‘from’ to indicate the ranking rather than using ‘followed by’. Example (32) illustrates this use:

(32) EXAMPLE

- A: Daryl Jacob moving on by a length now from Until Winning in second but now coming in between runners is Wings Attract a positive move by Tom Messenger these three have gone on now from Who You For and then we have Charlie's Oscar so challenging now Wings Attract has GONE ON FROM ROMULUS DU DONJON
- (emphasis added) (App. II.G.14)

Whichever horse is mentioned after ‘from’ is trailing the horse or horses mentioned before ‘from’.

The following example serves to explain the highest figure in Table 23, the radio football commentaries:

## (33) EXAMPLE

A: [R]ight-footed ball played in headed up in the air [...] played towards the edge of the six yard area and hooked to safety [...] by Fernando Nelson but still not properly cleared  
 RIGHT-FOOTED SHOT driven in by Markus Lantz it's gotta be a goal kick to Aston Villa  
 (emphasis added) (App. I.D.2)

This type of passage, describing a hectic period of play, is much more common in football than in the other ball games. Four out of the six passives in example (33) are agentless, describing solely what happens to the ball. It would be difficult to convey the essential information of this passage in a shorter form. Using the active voice would require the agent to be named and hence lengthen the passage considerably. Moreover, the key question in this situation is whether the ball ends up in the goal or not, with the agents being of secondary importance.

The two 'by' passives in example (33) aptly illustrate the use of this type of passive in sports commentaries. Both of them occur when the possibility of a goal being scored seems to be more remote than earlier: first, *Fernando Nelson* kicks the ball *to safety*, i.e. away from his goal, and later, *Markus Lantz* misses the goal, which results in a *goal kick*. However, this usage raises the question of why the passive voice is used here at all since the use of the active voice is unlikely to make the passage any longer. The answer is that the passive construction gives the commentator the advantage of mentioning the agent, i.e. the name of the player directing the ball, at the end of the utterance, whereas the active voice requires the agent to be named at the beginning. The commentator is more often than not able to view and identify the action before they can identify the player. By using a 'by' passive, they can therefore delay the naming of the player, which allows them to speak about the action while they are concurrently trying to identify the player's name (Hoyle 1991: 445).

These two usages of the passive voice are particularly helpful for the radio commentators as they have to report on almost all of the actions on the pitch and have less time to recollect a player's name than the TV commentators, whose audience can identify some of the players itself. As far as the difference between football and the other ball games is concerned, the use of the 'by' passive offers an answer: in football, where the possession of the ball often changes very quickly, situations in which the commentator needs time to identify the player on the ball occur frequently. In cricket and tennis, on the other hand, this is not the case as most of the game is about the duel between the bowler and the batsman or the two players on court. Identifying the players is thus not an issue, even less so in tennis, where the same two players contest the entire match. Therefore, the structural differences between the three sports explain the higher number of passives observed in the football texts.

Finally, as Van Dijk points out, the passive voice can also be used to 'hide or downplay

the violent or other negative actions of state agents' (2015: 474). In sports, it is not a case of state agents being violent but rather players committing fouls:

(34) EXAMPLE

A: Neymar's in the mood now he's being fouled

(emphasis added) (App. II.D.2)

As football is the only sport included in the present corpus where fouls can be committed, it is an additional factor contributing to the high count of passives located<sup>13</sup>.

TABLE 24 1996-2002 PASSIVES

type passives	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
number of passives	58	63	78	96	29	35	76	50

Key: number of passives = number of passives found in the texts.

TABLE 25 2013-2015 PASSIVES

type passives	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
number of passives	55	74	69	101	27	33	108	79

Key: number of passives = number of passives found in the texts.

The comparison between the older and the more recent recordings yields one statistically significant difference. The passive voice is used more frequently in the more recent horse racing recordings both on TV and on the radio. This correlates with all other findings regarding involvement and detachment. The more recent commentaries appear to feature a more detached style than the older recordings. Again, the pacier nature of modern horse racing serves as an explanation. The faster the race, the less time is available for the commentators to produce utterances not directly related to the events on the racecourse.

<sup>13</sup> Van Dijk (2015: 474) mentions nominalisations in the same vein. However, in the present corpus only one instance of this type was found (B: That's silly from Vidal I think that's frustration for actually being at fault for the Barcelona goal) (emphasis added) (App. II.D.2).

### 7.2.5.2. Distribution analysis of passives

TABLE 26 WEIGHTED DISTRIBUTION OF PASSIVES

type passives	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
n action	10	69	76	132	0	25	164	114
action frequency	0.75	1.80	1.52	1.77	0.00	0.51	0.93	0.67
n analysis	45	19	37	37	29	22	4	9
analysis frequency	0.87	0.51	0.54	0.70	0.35	0.36	0.44	0.62
n background	58	49	34	28	27	21	16	6
background frequency	0.43	0.39	0.42	0.39	0.24	0.24	1.14	0.40

**Key:** n = total number found in action /analysis / background level of commentary. Occurrences where passives consisted of two parts (verb ‘be’ and past participle) were weighted as one word; action / analysis / background frequency = frequency per 100 words proportionally weighted against figures in Table 4.

The weighted distribution table displays results that hardly differ in the action level of commentary. The differences are minimal; any differences observed in the overall analysis of Table 23 have been evened out. Yet again, the nature of ongoing action reporting outweighs the effects the sport or the medium might have on the language of the sports commentators. Incidentally, this also applies to the analysis and background levels of commentary, where the distribution scores only show minimal differences.

### 7.2.5.3. Summary of analysis of passives

In sum, a number of statements can be made. First, the way football is played clearly influences the number of passive forms radio commentators employ. Second, horse racing features the most detached style regarding the usage of passive forms. However, two specific uses – of the verbs ‘follow’ and ‘pull’ – are largely responsible for this. Furthermore, the degree of detachment in horse racing commentaries has increased in the last 20 years. Lastly, purely relating ongoing actions to the audience overrides the effects the nature of the sport and broadcast media may have.



### 7.3. Integrated vs. fragmented style

#### 7.3.1. Nominalisations

##### 7.3.1.1. Overall analysis of nominalisations

Nominalisations, or nouns formed from other parts of speech, tend to occur predominantly in written language (Chafe 1982: 39f.) or elaborated style (Brinton 2015: 232). They serve as a device for integrating a large amount of information into few words, thereby expanding the complexity of idea units (Biber 1988: 227; Chafe 1985: 108; Staples et al. 2015: 518).

TABLE 27 TOTAL NOMINALISATIONS

type	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
nominalisations	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
number of nominalisations	225	180	180	172	152	103	140	182

**Key:** nominalisations = nouns formed from other parts of speech. Horses' names containing nominalisations (e.g. Celebration, Combination, Exultation) were excluded from this count.

Comparing the four sports shows that the tennis commentaries feature the least integrated style as far as nominalisations are concerned but despite this, the differences between the sports are not notably significant. However, examining the word counts<sup>14</sup> in more detail discloses one interesting finding. Whereas nominalisations are evenly distributed across the ball sports texts, one word occurs very frequently in the horse racing commentaries: The word 'length' was found 150 times in the horse racing texts, accounting for almost half of all nominalisations found. The following example illustrates why this word is ubiquitous in horse racing commentating.

#### (35) EXAMPLE

A: [B]ut he's got five lengths to make up and Cat Gary his jumping is warming up nicely he's got one more still to take he's about six lengths clear now from Minella Forfitness in second place Nick Schofield steals a peep over his shoulder he likes what he sees he's about eight lengths in front Minella Forfitness is trying to stay on in second there's a battle on for third The Society Man is outside Mesut final fence then Cat Gary could leap again at the last still six to seven lengths clear

(emphasis added) (App. II.H.13)

It is essential that the audience is informed about the distance between a specific horse and the

<sup>14</sup> For word counts, software available on the following website was used:  
[http://sporkforge.com/text/word\\_count.php](http://sporkforge.com/text/word_count.php).

preceding or following horse. When referring to the horses, as opposed to racecourses, the unit of measurement typically used is ‘length’. This particular use of ‘length’ explains why horse racing is the only sport where the radio commentaries feature more nominalisations than the televised texts. 106 occurrences of ‘length’ were found in the radio texts, while 44 were observed in the TV commentaries.

As has been stated above, the use of nominalisations is very common in written language, which is planned and more time-consuming to produce than spoken language. This may be the reason why nominalisations are used slightly more frequently by TV commentators. They have more time at their disposal to plan and formulate their utterances than their counterparts from radio and, consequently, they use more nominalisations. Since the radio reporters are under stricter time constraints and pressure to commentate comprehensively on all actions on the field (Müller et al. 2007: 169f.), they produce fewer nominalisations.

TABLE 28 1996-2002 NOMINALISATIONS

type	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
nominalisations	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
number of nominalisations	92	86	88	81	66	34	59	71

**Key:** nominalisations = nouns formed from other parts of speech. Horses’ names containing nominalisations (e.g. Celebration, Combination, Exultation) were excluded from this count.

TABLE 29 2013-2015 NOMINALISATIONS

type	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
nominalisations	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
number of nominalisations	133	94	92	91	86	69	81	111

**Key:** nominalisations = nouns formed from other parts of speech. Horses’ names containing nominalisations (e.g. Celebration, Combination, Exultation) were excluded from this count.

In every text type, the frequency of nominalisations increased between the years 1996–2002 and 2013–2015. In some commentaries – cricket on TV, and tennis and horseracing on the radio – the difference is statistically significant. This indicates a trend towards a higher degree of integrated style. As has been pointed out at the beginning of this chapter, these results would suggest that commentators nowadays try to include more information and more complexity than they used to 20 years ago. The competition that has arisen through the advent of live online text commentary might serve as an explanation but would have to be verified separately.

### 7.3.1.2. Distribution analysis of nominalisations

TABLE 30 WEIGHTED DISTRIBUTION OF NOMINALISATIONS

type nominalisation	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
n action	15	17	29	42	6	11	122	169
action frequency	1.13	0.44	0.58	0.56	1.21	0.22	0.69	0.99
n analysis	63	35	68	51	55	35	7	3
analysis frequency	1.22	0.93	0.99	0.96	0.66	0.57	0.77	0.21
n background	147	128	83	79	91	57	11	10
background frequency	1.09	1.03	1.02	1.09	0.82	0.64	0.79	0.67

**Key:** n = total number found in action /analysis / background level of commentary; action / analysis / background frequency = frequency per 100 words proportionally weighted against figures in Table 4.

As far as the use of nominalisations is concerned, the differences between the text types are minimal and insignificant in the action level of commentary. In the overall analysis (Table 27), the distinctions were small, and they are smaller yet in the passages describing action. The essence of play-by-play reporting appears to nullify other effects on the use of nominalisations by the sports commentators.

### 7.3.1.3. Summary of analysis of nominalisations

Overall, the eight types of sports commentary do not show marked differences in terms of nominalisations found. There is a tendency for TV commentators to use marginally more nominalisations than radio commentators. Nevertheless, the following findings are noteworthy: First, one of the key aspects of horse racing reporting has a major effect on the use of nominalisations. Using the word ‘length’ to inform the audience about the distances at which the horses are progressing through the race has been found to be very common in this text type. Second, there has been a marked shift towards more frequent use of nominalisations across all text types in the last 20 years. Third, the use of nominalisations appears to be quite uniform in the action level commentary.

Owing to their formation – usually the addition of a suffix – nominalisations are in most cases polysyllabic words, often consisting of three or more syllables. The fact that approximately the same number of nominalisations has been located all text types may thus indicate that no major differences are to be found regarding the average word length.

## 7.3.2. Word length

### 7.3.2.1. Overall analysis of word length

Longer words are thought to be more integrated as they convey more information and more specific, precise meanings than shorter words (Biber 1986b: 5; 1988: 238). According to Staples et al. (2015: 518) conversation texts contain ‘notably few [...] long words’.

TABLE 31 TOTAL AVERAGE WORD LENGTH

type word length	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
average syllables per word	1.35	1.35	1.40	1.42	1.34	1.35	1.38	1.36

**Key:** average syllables per word = average number of syllables per word.

TABLE 32 TOTAL WORD LENGTH ACCORDING TO SYLLABLES

type word length	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
1	14635	73.18	14649	73.25	14186	70.9	13921	69.61	14874	74.37	14617	73.09	14269	71.3	14516	72.58
2	4062	20.31	3935	19.68	4046	20.2	4138	20.69	3884	19.42	4144	20.72	4131	20.7	4094	20.47
3	1041	5.21	1155	5.78	1461	7.3	1607	8.04	941	4.71	1004	5.02	1325	6.6	1123	5.62
4	217	1.09	211	1.06	252	1.3	286	1.43	249	1.25	188	0.94	231	1.2	221	1.11
5	43	0.22	50	0.25	54	0.3	46	0.23	47	0.24	43	0.22	39	0.2	44	0.22
>5	2	0.01	0	0.00	1	0.0		0.00	5	0.03	4	0.02	5	0.0	2	0.02
total	20000	100	20000	100	20000	100	19998	100	20000	100	20000	100	20000	100	20000	100

**Key:** word length = number of syllables per word; > 5 = more than five syllables per word.

The overall differences in terms of word length are minor. The only tendency discernible is for the football and, to a lesser extent, horse racing commentators to produce a slightly higher number of long words. The reason for this may be players’ proper names and horses’ names. Proper names and names, such as *Milosevic* (App. I.C.3), *Cazorla* (App. II.C.1), *Unioniste* (App. II.G.3) or *Nefertiti* (App. II.H.3), occur frequently in these text types and are often made up of three or four syllables. Referring to the actors on the pitch or racecourse by their names is more common in football and horse racing broadcasts than in cricket and tennis, as it is less of a challenge for the audience to understand which players are actively involved at any given moment in the latter two sports. The following example illustrates the typical use of (proper) names in football reporting:

## (36) EXAMPLE

C: Staunton to Draper [1] now on the far side Townsend and Wright back to [1] the skipper Andy Townsend swept forward to Yorke controlled by Yorke back to Milosevic that's better play Taylor to Draper now

(emphasis added) (App. I.C.3)

In example (36), possession of the ball changes nine times within approximately 15 seconds, which prompts the commentator to announce these changes in possession. In cricket, on the other hand, not many changes in possession can be reported on: the ball is bowled, hit, caught and thrown back to the bowler, meaning it is hardly ever in contact with more than four players in one spell of action; in tennis, it is only ever two players.

TABLE 33 1996-2002 AVERAGE WORD LENGTH

type word length	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
average syllables per word	1.34	1.35	1.37	1.39	1.32	1.31	1.34	1.32

Key: average syllables per word = average number of syllables per word.

TABLE 34 1996-2002 WORD LENGTH ACCORDING TO SYLLABLES

type word length	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
1	7347	73.5	7348	73.48	7220	72.2	7109	71.09	7594	75.94	7444	74.44	7297	73.0	7432	74.32
2	2009	20.1	1953	19.53	2024	20.2	1996	19.96	1829	18.29	2132	21.32	2114	21.1	2006	20.06
3	524	5.2	576	5.76	629	6.3	751	7.51	418	4.18	355	3.55	499	5.0	475	4.75
4	100	1.0	100	1.00	103	1.0	126	1.26	128	1.28	52	0.52	75	0.8	71	0.71
5	19	0.2	23	0.23	24	0.2	17	0.17	26	0.26	15	0.15	12	0.1	15	0.15
>5	1	0.0	0	0.00	0	0.0	1	0.01	5	0.05	2	0.02	3	0.0	1	0.01
total	10000	100	10000	100	10000	100	10000	100	10000	100	10000	100	10000	100	10000	100

Key: word length = number of syllables per word; > 5 = more than five syllables per word.

TABLE 35 2013-2015 AVERAGE WORD LENGTH

type word length	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
average syllables per word	1.35	1.36	1.43	1.45	1.35	1.38	1.43	1.40

**Key:** average syllables per word = average number of syllables per word.

TABLE 36 2013-2015 WORD LENGTH ACCORDING TO SYLLABLES

type word length	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
1	7288	72.88	7301	73.01	6966	69.66	6812	68.12	7280	72.80	7173	71.73	6972	69.72	7084	70.84
2	2053	20.53	1982	19.82	2022	20.22	2142	21.42	2055	20.55	2012	20.12	2017	20.17	2088	20.88
3	517	5.17	579	5.79	832	8.32	856	8.56	523	5.23	649	6.49	826	8.26	648	6.48
4	117	1.17	111	1.11	149	1.49	160	1.60	121	1.21	136	1.36	156	1.56	150	1.50
5	24	0.24	27	0.27	30	0.30	29	0.29	21	0.21	28	0.28	27	0.27	29	0.29
>5	1	0.01	0	0.00	1	0.01	1	0.01	0	0.00	2	0.02	2	0.02	1	0.01
total	10000	100	10000	100	10000	100	10000	100	10000	100	10000	100	10000	100	10000	100

**Key:** word length = number of syllables per word; > 5 = more than five syllables per word.

Apart from cricket, the average word length increased during the 15- to 20-year gap between the recordings. The main factor behind this increase appears to be a higher frequency of three-syllable words in the newer recordings. This raises the question of proper names that was touched upon in the discussion of Table 32. Table 37 shows how many occurrences of proper names were found in each set of recordings.

TABLE 37 PROPER NAMES

type proper names	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
n 1996-2002	204	229	341	388	210	248	474	498
n 2013-2015	222	280	421	457	202	269	519	608
n total	426	509	762	845	412	517	993	1106

**Key:** n = number of proper names found.

The totals show two clear tendencies. On the one hand, mentioning proper names is significantly more common in football and horse racing commentary than in cricket and tennis broadcasts. More actors are involved and more changes in terms of possession of the ball or being in the lead occur in football and horse racing. Consequently, the commentators produce more proper names. The lack of visual input on the radio would explain why the frequency of

proper names is higher in the radio texts. For instance, numbers and players' names on the back of football shirts reduce the obligation of the TV commentator to include a name in his commentary as frequently as radio commentators.

On the other hand, modern commentators seem to use more proper names than their colleagues 20 years earlier. This increase is most significant in both the football and horse racing commentaries. As has been shown before, an increased dynamism in these two sports seems the most likely explanation.

### 7.3.2.2. Distribution analysis of word length

TABLE 38 DISTRIBUTION OF WORD LENGTH

type syllables per word	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
	n	n	n	n	n	n	n	n
action	1.28	1.27	1.31	1.34	1.27	1.29	1.38	1.35
analysis	1.35	1.35	1.41	1.45	1.33	1.35	1.42	1.40
background	1.35	1.37	1.45	1.49	1.35	1.37	1.41	1.39
overall average	1.35	1.35	1.40	1.42	1.34	1.35	1.38	1.36

**Key:** n = average length found in action / analysis / background level of commentary; action / analysis / background frequency = frequency per 100 words proportionally weighted against figures in Table 4.

As far as average word length is concerned, the action level of commentary features the shortest average word lengths and thus the most fragmented style. Given that this is the most intense spell of commentating, using monosyllabic or disyllabic words rather than longer words is probably a natural tendency. The nature of action reporting seems to reduce all other influences on the commentaries. However, the football and horse racing texts still feature slightly longer words. Mentioning proper names again serves as an explanation, as the identification of players and horses cannot be neglected even in hectic circumstances.

### 7.3.2.3. Summary of analysis of word length

On the integration-fragmentation scale there is little difference between the separate commentaries. Yet, one feature inherent in two sports accounts for some of the variance: the results hint at a slightly higher degree of integration in the football and horse racing texts, possibly largely due to the more frequent use of players' and horses' proper names. This effect remains in the action level of commentary, albeit to a lesser degree.

### 7.3.3. Participles

#### 7.3.3.1. Overall analysis of participles

TABLE 39 TOTAL PARTICIPLES

type participle	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
present	24	82.8	33	82.50	16	88.9	14	77.78	18	81.82	17	85.00	20	80.0	37	90.24
past	5	17.2	7	17.50	9	50.0	4	22.22	4	18.18	3	15.00	5	20.0	4	9.76
total	29	100	40	100	25	138.9	18	100	22	100	20	100	25	100	41	100

Key: present = present participles; past = past participles.

Participles are also regarded as integrative devices (Chafe 1985: 40). They are very common in planned texts (Biber 1988: 233; Chafe 1985: 41), contain a dense form of information (Hundt et al. 2012: 232) and are typical of ‘abstract’ style (Brinton 2015: 232). In the present study, two uses were excluded: first, progressive and perfect constructions that naturally require a present or past participle and, second, lexicalised words like ‘feeling’ or ‘interesting’ were considered participles<sup>15</sup>.

Table 39 features uniform results. The total scores generally seem low, hinting at a low overall degree of integration. None of the differences are statistically significant. Table 39 also shows that present participles constitute at least three quarters of all the participles located. The reason for the discrepancy between present and past participles lies in their use in sports commentating.

#### (37) EXAMPLE

A: [A]and here they come with Pique LEADING A BREAKOUT Messi on the ball  
(emphasis added) (App. II.C.2)

#### (38) EXAMPLE

B: [W]hen I was down there it was never that clear as sitting up here watching it what was going to happen  
(emphasis added) (App. II.B.2)

Present participles are more versatile than past participles (De Smet et al. 2015: 135f.). For instance, present participles can be used in reduced relative clauses as in example (37). Hundt et al. (2012: 231) label reduced relative clauses ‘a fuzzy category’ since there is some

<sup>15</sup> The cricket expressions *bowling* and *batting* are borderline cases in this respect. As their use as nouns is standard in cricket reporting, they were not considered participles in this paper.



speculation involved as to what the full version might have been. In this paper, the term is used nevertheless. The full clause would probably have been *Pique who is leading a breakout* (emphasis added). The relative pronoun and the auxiliary are omitted, leaving the present participle to represent the entire relative clause. Furthermore, as shown in example (38), present participles can replace temporal clauses. The full clause would possibly have been along the lines of *as when you are sitting here* (emphasis added). The conjunction, the personal pronoun and the auxiliary are left out, leaving the present participle to represent the whole clause. Past participles, on the other hand, are mostly reduced verb forms where the auxiliary has been omitted, as in example (39), where the full verb form would probably have been *has been unseated* (emphasis added).

(39) EXAMPLE

B: Wayward Prince unseated tailed off for the third last

(emphasis added) (App. II.G.2)

What all the above-mentioned uses of participles have in common is that they are post-modifying. Crucially, this allows the sports commentators to provide the very essential facts first and then, if there is time, add extra information.

TABLE 40 1996-2002 PARTICIPLES

type participle	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
present	7	70.0	5	62.50	5	71.4	4	80.00	3	60.00	2	66.67	2	66.7	2	66.67
past	3	30.0	3	37.50	2	28.6	1	20.00	2	40.00	1	33.33	1	33.3	1	33.33
total	10	100	8	100	7	100	5	100	5	100	3	100	3	100	3	100

Key: present = present participles; past = past participles.

TABLE 41 2013-2015 PARTICIPLES

type participle	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
present	17	89.5	28	87.50	11	61.1	10	76.92	15	88.24	15	88.24	18	81.8	35	92.11
past	2	10.5	4	12.50	7	38.9	3	23.08	2	11.76	2	11.76	4	18.2	3	7.89
total	19	100	32	100	18	100	13	100	17	100	17	100	22	100	38	100

Key: present = present participles; past = past participles.

Tables 40 and 41 show a clear diachronic shift in two areas. First, the more recent recordings feature a higher participle count than the older recordings in all text types; in most cases, the

difference is significant despite the low figures overall. As far as the use of participles is concerned, the sports commentators seem to have adopted a more integrated and condensed style of commentary during the 15- to 20-year lapse between the recordings. The amount of statistical and background information available to the commentators also increased during this period. Databases and statistical information became readily available and easier to incorporate, which may have led to the results observed in Tables 40 and 41.

Second, there has also been a change in the proportions of participles used. In comparison to 15 to 20 years ago, sports commentators nowadays tend to use more present participles. The difference is most marked in horse racing commentary:

(40) EXAMPLE

A: [A]s they race down the side of the course approaching the end of their third furlong  
(emphasis added) (App. II.G.8)

Passages such as in example (40) occur less frequently in the older recordings. It is less time-consuming for the commentator to use a participle in this situation rather than a full temporal clause. The dynamic nature of modern-day horse racing may lead to this increased use of present participles.

### 7.3.3.2. Distribution analysis of participles

TABLE 42 WEIGHTED DISTRIBUTION OF PARTICIPLES

participle	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
n action	0	4	3	7	0	2	22	39
action frequency	0.00	0.10	0.06	0.09	0.00	0.04	0.12	0.23
n analysis	8	13	11	7	9	6	0	1
analysis frequency	0.15	0.35	0.16	0.13	0.11	0.10	0.00	0.07
n background	21	23	10	4	13	12	3	1
background frequency	0.16	0.19	0.12	0.06	0.12	0.13	0.21	0.07

**Key:** n = total number found in action /analysis / background level of commentary; action / analysis / background frequency = frequency per 100 words proportionally weighted against figures in Table 4.

The results of the weighted distributions are homogeneous across all levels of commentary. Focusing on the action level of commentary, the sports commentators appear to use a similarly low number of present or past participles irrespective of the broadcast medium or the sport in question. As has been previously noted, play-by-play reporting seems to neutralise the effects the medium or sport may have on the commentary.

### **7.3.3.3. Summary of analysis of participles**

In short, this chapter shows that levels of integration and fragmentation do not differ based on the frequency counts of participles. However, some findings are noteworthy. The analysis of different commentaries indicates that, due to their versatility in terms of use, present participles are clearly preferred over past participles in sports commentating. Moreover, between 1996–2002 and 2013–2016, this preference and the frequent use of participles by sports commentators in general became more pronounced. It is possible that this was due to easier access to and increased availability of large amounts of statistical and background information. Finally, the action level of commentary features very little variation. Any, albeit small, differences observed in the overall scores are all but levelled out.

### 7.3.4. Prepositional phrases

#### 7.3.4.1. Overall analysis of prepositional phrases

TABLE 43 TOTAL PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES

type prep. phrase	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
at	159	6.96	158	7.34	128	5.69	100	4.26	142	6.40	178	8.11	140	5.53	156	5.80
by	36	1.57	76	3.53	123	5.47	148	6.31	37	1.67	26	1.18	157	6.21	136	5.05
for	250	10.94	215	9.98	209	9.29	195	8.32	185	8.34	148	6.74	104	4.11	111	4.12
from	98	4.29	93	4.32	137	6.09	172	7.33	81	3.65	184	8.38	124	4.90	130	4.83
in	341	14.92	328	15.23	360	16.01	348	14.84	368	16.59	257	11.71	522	20.63	419	15.57
of	373	16.32	292	13.56	330	14.67	293	12.49	372	16.77	322	14.67	271	10.71	421	15.64
off	76	3.32	139	6.45	51	2.27	53	2.26	33	1.49	56	2.55	35	1.38	40	1.49
on	141	6.17	142	6.59	197	8.76	214	9.13	190	8.57	194	8.84	349	13.79	260	9.66
out	88	3.85	98	4.55	56	2.49	84	3.58	80	3.61	70	3.19	100	3.95	91	3.38
to	403	17.63	399	18.52	360	16.01	479	20.43	433	19.52	396	18.04	242	9.57	413	15.35
towards	4	0.17	12	0.56	21	0.93	38	1.62	6	0.27	5	0.23	154	6.09	158	5.87
up	77	3.37	72	3.34	76	3.38	73	3.11	85	3.83	97	4.42	132	5.22	137	5.09
with	108	4.72	77	3.57	130	5.78	86	3.67	100	4.51	124	5.65	171	6.76	133	4.94
other preps	132	5.77	53	2.46	71	3.16	62	2.64	106	4.78	138	6.29	29	1.15	86	3.20
total	2286	100	2154	100	2249	100	2345	100	2218	100	2195	100	2530	100	2691	100

Key: prep. phrase = prepositional phrases.

Biber (1986a: 411), Brinton (2015: 232) and Staples et al. (2015: 509) all identify prepositional phrases – much like nominalisations and participles – as informational and integrating devices typical of elaborated style. The total counts in ball sports in Table 43 do not differ much. In contrast, the horse racing commentaries, and the radio broadcasts in particular, feature significantly higher scores. The reason for this result is rooted in the distinct use of certain prepositions. An examination of the individual preposition scores reveals that four prepositions – ‘in’, ‘on’, ‘towards’ and ‘up’ – display particularly high frequencies in the horse racing commentaries.

#### (41) EXAMPLE

A: Or So here is the last one on the back stretch [...] but racing up towards the line it's Duke Street who is going on to win the Welcome Back to Ludlow Juvenile Maiden Hurdle Duke Street wins to Duke of Medina in second [1] Fast Scat has finished in third  
(emphasis added) (App. II.H.6)

In example (41), all four prepositions occur within a short space of time. They are all inherent

in the nature of horse racing commentating. *Towards* and the combination *up towards* occur frequently and play an essential role in horse racing commentaries. It is one of the most effective ways of letting the audience know what the next stage of the race will be, for instance, the next hurdle, corner or the finishing line. The use of *on* in example (41) is also characteristic of this commentary type. Similarly to *towards*, it is used to pinpoint the location of the horses that are being reported on at that very moment. It is usually followed by naming a stretch of the racecourse, such as *the back stretch*, as in example (41). Lastly, the use of *in*, which represents the highest scores in Table 43, is illustrated in example (41). This specialised use of the preposition is predominantly found towards the very end of the race when the commentator announces the final rankings. Depending on how many horses finish a race, this can result in an accumulation of prepositional phrases starting with *in*.

TABLE 44 1996-2002 PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES

type pronoun	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
at	75	6.98	89	7.97	70	6.45	59	5.34	68	6.42	96	8.76	80	6.41	94	7.25
by	26	2.42	47	4.21	56	5.16	70	6.33	11	1.04	0	0.00	67	5.36	45	3.47
for	122	11.36	120	10.75	103	9.48	102	9.23	93	8.78	81	7.39	48	3.84	54	4.17
from	47	4.38	40	3.58	58	5.34	70	6.33	39	3.68	97	8.85	57	4.56	71	5.48
in	166	15.46	176	15.77	157	14.46	180	16.29	162	15.30	106	9.67	262	20.98	159	12.27
of	190	17.69	154	13.80	161	14.83	126	11.40	174	16.43	166	15.15	130	10.41	157	12.11
off	44	4.10	76	6.81	25	2.30	20	1.81	17	1.61	31	2.83	8	0.64	23	1.77
on	57	5.31	63	5.65	95	8.75	98	8.87	74	6.99	104	9.49	188	15.05	116	8.95
out	47	4.38	32	2.87	31	2.85	37	3.35	36	3.40	38	3.47	53	4.24	50	3.86
to	181	16.85	217	19.44	179	16.48	228	20.63	239	22.57	199	18.16	153	12.25	252	19.44
towards	1	0.09	1	0.09	5	0.46	26	2.35	0	0.00	3	0.27	42	3.36	57	4.40
up	29	2.70	32	2.87	39	3.59	34	3.08	45	4.25	51	4.65	67	5.36	77	5.94
with	46	4.28	33	2.96	54	4.97	37	3.35	57	5.38	60	5.47	76	6.08	73	5.63
other preps	43	4.00	36	3.23	53	4.88	18	1.63	44	4.15	64	5.84	18	1.44	68	5.25
total	1074	100	1116	100	1086	100	1105	100	1059	100	1096	100	1249	100	1296	100

Key: prep. phrase = prepositional phrases.

TABLE 45 2013-2015 PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES

type pronoun	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
at	84	6.93	69	6.65	58	4.99	41	3.31	74	6.38	82	7.46	60	4.68	62	4.44
by	10	0.83	29	2.79	67	5.76	78	6.29	26	2.24	26	2.37	90	7.03	91	6.52
for	128	10.56	95	9.15	106	9.11	93	7.50	92	7.94	67	6.10	56	4.37	57	4.09
from	51	4.21	53	5.11	79	6.79	102	8.23	42	3.62	87	7.92	67	5.23	59	4.23
in	175	14.44	152	14.64	203	17.45	168	13.55	206	17.77	151	13.74	260	20.30	260	18.64
of	183	15.10	138	13.29	169	14.53	167	13.47	198	17.08	156	14.19	141	11.01	264	18.92
off	32	2.64	63	6.07	26	2.24	33	2.66	16	1.38	25	2.27	27	2.11	17	1.22
on	84	6.93	79	7.61	102	8.77	116	9.35	116	10.01	90	8.19	161	12.57	144	10.32
out	41	3.38	66	6.36	25	2.15	47	3.79	44	3.80	32	2.91	47	3.67	41	2.94
to	222	18.32	182	17.53	181	15.56	251	20.24	194	16.74	197	17.93	89	6.95	161	11.54
towards	3	0.25	11	1.06	16	1.38	12	0.97	6	0.52	2	0.18	112	8.74	101	7.24
up	48	3.96	40	3.85	37	3.18	39	3.15	40	3.45	46	4.19	65	5.07	60	4.30
with	62	5.12	44	4.24	76	6.53	49	3.95	43	3.71	64	5.82	95	7.42	60	4.30
other preps	89	7.34	17	1.64	18	1.55	44	3.55	62	5.35	74	6.73	11	0.86	18	1.29
total	1212	100	1038	100	1163	100	1240	100	1159	100	1099	100	1281	100	1395	100

Key: prep. phrase = prepositional phrases.

In general, the use of prepositional phrases does not seem to have changed much when comparing the figures from the older with the newer recordings. Nevertheless, some changes occurred. For instance, the more recent televised cricket commentaries show a significant increase of prepositional phrases, with a marked rise in the use of ‘on’.

(42) EXAMPLE

B: Rahane he’s on 93 [1] 9 fours 4 sixes [21]

A: That’s how good that surface is [2] it was just a push [2] he’s such a smooth timer of the cricket ball Aiinkya Rahane whistles off the bat [3]

B: I wonder if he’s going to go the big way [1] one hit [1] he’s on 95

(emphasis added) (App. II.A.2)

The preposition *on* is followed by the number of runs an individual player, as in example (42), or a team have scored up to that point in the match. Today, TV cricket commentators appear to provide more scores than they used to 15 to 20 years ago (cf. also ch. 7.4.1.1), which results in a more frequent use of ‘on’. Another increase can be observed in the frequency of the preposition ‘of’ in the football commentaries on the radio.

## (43) EXAMPLE

A: Welbeck at the far side of the field just to the edge of the penalty area  
(emphasis added) (App. II.D.1)

Current football commentators on the radio use more spatial references than their colleagues did 15 to 20 years ago. The spatial reference illustrated in table (43) is very common and helps the listeners, who, it is assumed, are familiar with the organisation of a football pitch, create a mental image of where the action is taking place. The increased dynamism of the game results in more spatial references being produced by the commentators. The same applies to the horse racing texts. Faster horses and quicker races lead to more spatial references on the commentators' part. Therefore, a significant rise in the use of 'towards' can be observed.

### 7.3.4.2. Distribution analysis of prepositional phrases

TABLE 46 WEIGHTED DISTRIBUTION OF PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES

type prepositional phrase	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
n action	201	621	765	1102	76	745	2301	2451
action frequency	15.09	16.21	15.33	14.79	15.29	15.20	13.00	14.37
n analysis	932	634	1092	745	914	996	141	129
analysis frequency	17.98	16.91	15.96	14.05	10.93	16.15	15.56	8.92
n background	1153	899	392	498	1228	454	88	111
background frequency	8.55	7.24	4.80	6.87	11.02	5.08	6.29	7.40

**Key:** n = total number found in action / analysis / background level of commentary; action / analysis / background frequency = frequency per 100 words proportionally weighted against figures in Table 4.

The distribution analysis presents very consistent results. The weighted distribution scores for the action level of commentary differ only minimally. Horse racing, which featured the highest score in the overall analysis, no longer stands out; the sports commentators seem to use roughly the same number of prepositional phrases regardless of broadcast medium or sport. Both other levels of commentary, analysis and background information, present a larger variation between the different text types. As has been previously observed, the essence of play-by-play reporting seems to level out all other effects on the commentary.

#### **7.3.4.3. Summary of analysis of prepositional phrases**

Upon examining the use of prepositional phrases, no overall tendencies can be identified. Instead, notable results in terms of individual prepositions have been found. The nature of each sport in general leads to a highly specific use of certain prepositional phrases. Moreover, the increased intensity of action in football and horse racing has led to a more frequent use of certain prepositional phrases over the last 20 years. When analysing solely the action level of commentary, however, none of these differences is significant. Play-by-play reporting appears to neutralise the influence of sport, broadcast medium and time of recording.



### 7.3.5. Adjectives

#### 7.3.5.1. Overall analysis of adjectives

Biber (1986b: 5) states that a high frequency of adjectives is a marker of elaborated texts. Depending on their position, adjectives are markers of both integration and fragmentation. Used predicatively, as in example (44), they express state in the form of an assertion, whereas their attributive use, as in example (45), allows adjectives to express a state as a modification rather than an assertion (Chafe 1982: 41):

(44) EXAMPLE

E: [H]e's been aggressive

(emphasis added) (App.II.A.3)

(45) EXAMPLE

B: It's a good strike

(emphasis added) (App. I.C.2)

Biber (1988: 43, 237) states that attributive adjectives are highly integrative devices, while predicative adjectives tend to denote a more fragmented style. According to Staples et al. (2015: 518), adjectives generally 'have notably few occurrences' in conversation texts, while attributive adjectives in particular 'function to convey densely packed information'.

TABLE 47 TOTAL ADJECTIVES

type	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
attributive	741	72.2	629	72.47	708	73.3	633	76.08	594	66.15	752	76.11	586	86.7	580	83.21
predicative	285	27.8	239	27.53	258	76.7	199	23.92	304	33.85	236	23.89	90	13.3	117	16.79
total	1026	100	868	100	966	100	832	100	898	100	988	100	676	100	697	100

Key: attributive = attributive adjectives; predicative = predicative adjectives.

Table 47 presents the following results: The broadcast medium seems to have no effect on the number of adjectives produced by the commentators. In terms of totals, there is a difference between the ball sports and horse racing. The latter features significantly fewer adjectives than the former. It is the low score of adjectives used predicatively in horse racing commentating that accounts for the overall difference. While the ball sports do not vary considerably as regards the proportion of attributive and predicative adjectives, horse racing commentating features a higher proportion of attributive adjectives.

The fact that attributive adjectives, as opposed to predicative adjectives, are clearly preferred by sports commentators is endorsed by Ferguson's view that 'preposed adjectival constructions' (1983: 163) are very common in sports commentating. One reason for this is that the speaker needs more time to utter predicative adjectives. Although a number of elements are often omitted in sports commentating (cf. ch. 7.4.3.), omissions in constructions with predicative adjectives are rare. As a consequence, the speakers tend to produce the object, verb and adjective when using adjectives predicatively. This is not the case with regard to attributive adjectives, as in example (46):

(46) EXAMPLE

A: Well run indeed [6]\_excellent batting by Gallian [3]\_strong crack at the bat  
(emphasis added) (App. I.A.2)

Omissions of noun phrases and copulas, as in this example, are very common in sports reporting since they lend themselves very well to the fluent description of several actions that follow each other in rapid succession. The predicative use of *excellent* and *strong* would require more time in terms of production and, in addition, it would sound rather repetitive, as the verb 'to be' would have to be used twice. Consequently, adjectives used predicatively are not well suited to commentating on successive and continuous actions. Due to the nature of the sport, horse racing includes most successive and continuous actions, which accounts for the lowest figure of predicative adjectives across all sports.

TABLE 48 1996-2002 ADJECTIVES

type	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
attributive	382	73.3	363	75.00	352	79.6	377	78.54	376	72.17	511	81.24	356	87.5	292	80.44
predicative	139	26.7	121	25.00	90	20.4	103	21.46	145	27.83	118	18.76	51	12.5	71	19.56
total	521	100	484	100	442	100	480	100	521	100	629	100	407	100	363	100

Key: attributive = attributive adjectives; predicative = predicative adjectives.

TABLE 49 2013-2015 ADJECTIVES

type adjective	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
attributive	359	71.1	266	69.27	356	67.9	256	72.73	218	57.82	241	67.13	230	85.5	288	86.23
predicative	146	28.9	118	30.73	168	32.1	96	27.27	159	42.18	118	32.87	39	14.5	46	13.77
total	505	100	384	100	524	100	352	100	377	100	359	100	269	100	334	100

Key: attributive = attributive adjectives; predicative = predicative adjectives.

Tables 48 and 49 show a diachronic shift towards using fewer adjectives in all text types, except for the football commentaries on TV. This decrease can be mainly attributed to a drop in the numbers of attributive adjectives used. The modern sports commentators' texts appear to be less integrated and more fragmented than the texts recorded 20 years ago. Staples (2015: 518) suggests that using attribute adjective requires 'time for planning and revision'. The current higher levels of intensity in the sports in question probably mean there is less time available. Sports commentators have to produce more utterances on the spot and this is reflected in Tables 48 and 49.

### 7.3.5.2. Distribution analysis of adjectives

TABLE 50 WEIGHTED DISTRIBUTION OF ADJECTIVES

type adjective	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
n action	74	118	156	262	30	275	551	502
action frequency	5.56	3.08	3.13	3.52	6.04	5.61	3.11	2.94
n analysis	290	180	430	244	431	333	44	125
analysis frequency	5.60	4.80	6.29	4.60	5.15	5.40	4.86	8.64
n background	662	570	380	326	437	380	81	70
background frequency	4.91	4.59	4.65	4.50	3.92	4.25	5.79	4.67

Key: n = total number found in action / analysis / background level of commentary; action / analysis / background frequency = frequency per 100 words proportionally weighted against figures in Table 4.

The weighted distribution results do not display any significant differences as far as the action level of commentary is concerned. Analogous to the overall scores in Table 47, the horse racing texts feature fewest adjectives. However, in contrast to the overall results, the difference between the text types is much smaller in the action parts; statistically speaking, this is not significant. The characteristics and restrictions of play-by-play reporting seem to have an overriding effect on other factors that influence the manner in which adjectives are used.

### **7.3.5.3. Summary of analysis of adjectives**

Several conclusion can be drawn. First, the findings seem to contradict the observation made by Staples et al. mentioned at the beginning of this chapter (2015: 518). Contrary to their statement, a respectable number of adjectives was found. However, whether this is really a contradictory finding is debatable as Staples et al. based their statement on conversations. The definition of what constitutes a conversation vary (Fox et al. 2013: 728). Although most sports commentaries recorded in this corpus feature several speakers and turn-taking occurs frequently, it could be argued that they are not conversations in a strict sense.

Second, the broadcast medium seems to have no influence on the use of adjectives. Third, the time constraints sports commentators are working under appear, in general, to reduce the frequency of predicative adjectives. This trend is amplified by the nature of the particular sport, in this case horse racing, and the intensity of sports in the modern era in general. Finally, all of the above-mentioned effects are largely overridden by the requirements of play-by-play commentating.

## 7.4. Sports commentating features

### 7.4.1. Routines

#### 7.4.1.1. Overall analysis of routines

TABLE 51 TOTAL ROUTINES

type routine	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
score	75	52.45	95	44.60	18	20.00	42	32.06	120	54.05	201	77.31	292	60.5	388	57.06
statistics	59	41.26	90	42.25	47	52.22	55	41.98	77	34.68	40	15.38	34	7.04	108	15.88
time	9	6.29	28	13.15	25	27.78	34	25.95	25	11.26	19	7.31	157	32.51	184	27.06
total	143	100	213	100	90	100	131	100	222	100	260	100	483	100	680	100

**Key:** score = sports commentator provides current scoreline or ranking; statistics = sports commentator provides statistics about a player, a team or a horse; time = sports commentator tells viewers / listeners how much time has been played, how far the horses have run or how much time is left to be played or how far is left to be run.

The following examples from the same televised cricket commentary illustrate the use of ‘score’, ‘statistics’ and ‘time’ in Table 51:

(47) EXAMPLE

A: [I]t’s 37 for 1

(App. I.B.2)

(48) EXAMPLE

A: Gallian has 15 [1] Crawley has 11

(App. I.B.2)

(49) EXAMPLE

A: 18 overs have now been bowled

(App. I.B.2)

In example (47), the overall score is given, whereas in example (48), the sports commentator only provides the number of runs scored by two individuals, *Gallian* and *Crawley*. Utterances as in example (47) have been classified as ‘scores’, whilst those of the type in example (48) have been placed in the category of ‘statistics’<sup>16</sup>. Example (49) is an illustration of the routine of informing the audience about the amount of time played or left to be played. In football, the basic units used for this purpose are minutes; in cricket, the unit of time is an over; in tennis,

<sup>16</sup> Individual runs scored without the overall score being given, e.g. *One run for Michael Atherton* (App. I.A.2), have not been counted as they occur so often that they can be equalled to passes or shots in football, which have not been counted either.

the commentators refer to games or sets; and in horse racing, time is measured in furlongs or circuits (cf. ch. 6.).

In each of the four sports, the radio texts feature more routines than the televised texts. Tennis aside, all of the differences observed are significant. The supplementary information displayed on the television screen during sports broadcasts offers an explanation for these results. When these sporting events are televised, the following often appears on the screen: the current score, the number of overs, the number of sets played or various statistics, such as the performance of the bowlers and batsmen in cricket, the number of shots on or off target in football etc. Many routines are hence conveyed to the television audience without the commentator uttering a single syllable. The radio commentators, on the other hand, have to provide all of the information through speech, which results in the higher figures of routines in the radio texts in Table 51. This is a typical example from a radio cricket commentary:

(50) EXAMPLE

A: 95 for no wicket in the 13<sup>th</sup> over [1] Knight to 50 off [4] 47 balls with 9 fours  
(App. I.B.1)

This passage is virtually incomprehensible for a layperson. It is a summary of what has happened so far, informing the listener of the present overall score, the number of overs played, the number of runs *Knight* has scored so far and details of how he has scored these runs. This type of summary only seldom occurs in the televised cricket texts, since much of the information is already on the screen enabling the viewers to comprehend it without the aid of a commentary.

The differences between the totals of the individual sports are all significant. Not only does the broadcast medium have an effect on the use of routines but also the nature of the sport affects usage. The more often the score or ranking changes during a match or race, the higher the routine score of the sport in question is. At the top end of the scale is horse racing. In a typical race, there is a large number of changes in ranking as horses constantly overtake each other. At the bottom end of the scale is football. It is a low-scoring game in comparison to the other sports examined in this paper. The chances of a match ending in a 0-0 draw, for instance, are approximately 6% (Croucher 2004: 7).

With the exception of football, providing the score or ranking is the sub-category with the highest figure. The reason for this difference lies in the distinct scoring systems of the sports, or, more precisely, in their scoring procedures. Ferguson (1983: 165) points out that the routine of announcing the score is fundamental in baseball. As far as the scoring is concerned baseball,

cricket and tennis are similar in that the score changes frequently, even more so in cricket with scores of 400 runs or more being very common (cf. ch. 6.). In the analysis of prepositional phrases in chapter 7.3.4., it was found that certain phrases in cricket commentating are formulaic as regards reporting on the current score (cf. example (42)). In horse racing, the rankings change frequently with different horses leading the race, falling back and changing positions. In contrast, in an average game of football the score only changes between one and three times within the match, and therefore, the football commentators do not provide the current score as often as their counterparts in cricket, tennis and horse racing reporting.

In his study of baseball commentaries, Franklin states that statistics are an integral part of many sports commentaries (1985: 283). The cricket and football scores confirm this view. Both sports involve 22 players on the pitch, which offers ample opportunity for the commentators to provide statistics about the match in question. In tennis, this opportunity is far more restricted as there are only two players on the court, while the non-stop nature of horse racing appears to allow very little time to provide statistics.

Regarding the sub-category of time, the explanation for the low scores in the cricket and tennis commentaries is found in the nature of these sports. Unlike football, there is no time limit in tennis, while the time frame in cricket is fairly open. As a consequence, the commentators do not refer to how many units have been played as often as football commentators, who frequently refer to how much time has elapsed.

TABLE 52 1996-2002 ROUTINES

type routine	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
score	18	39.1	40	37.38	13	29.5	27	33.75	56	53.33	113	85.61	125	63.1	133	54.07
statistics	24	52.2	46	42.99	20	45.5	43	53.75	43	40.95	14	10.61	15	7.6	42	17.07
time	4	8.7	21	19.63	11	25.0	10	12.50	6	5.71	5	3.79	58	29.3	71	28.86
total	46	100	107	100	44	100	80	100	105	100	132	100	198	100	246	100

**Key:** score = sports commentator provides current scoreline or ranking; statistics = sports commentator provides statistics about a player, a team or a horse; time = sports commentator tells viewers / listeners how much time has been played, how far the horses have run or how much time is left to be played or how far is left to be run.

TABLE 53 2013-2015 ROUTINES

type routine	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
score	57	58.8	55	51.89	5	10.87	15	29.41	64	54.70	88	68.75	167	58.6	255	58.8
statistics	35	36.1	44	41.51	27	58.70	12	23.53	34	29.06	26	20.31	19	6.67	66	15.2
time	5	5.2	7	6.60	14	30.43	24	47.06	19	16.24	14	10.94	99	34.74	113	26.0
total	97	100	106	100	46	100	51	100	117	100	128	100	285	100	434	100

**Key:** score = sports commentator provides current scoreline or ranking; statistics = sports commentator provides statistics about a player, a team or a horse; time = sports commentator tells viewers / listeners how much time has been played, how far the horses have run or how much time is left to be played or how far is left to be run.

The comparison between the older and the more recent recordings shows one significant difference: in horse racing, there was a substantial increase of the use of routines during the gap between recordings. The increase is most notable in terms of the sub-categories ‘score’ and ‘time’. This means that commentators nowadays refer more frequently to the order in which the horses are running and the distance they have covered or are yet to cover. Add to this the fact that horses in the current era are faster and stronger than 20 years ago. Moreover, in terms of performance the differences between the individual horses have decreased (Takahashi 2015: 44f.). This results in a general increase in pace in horse racing and, crucially, it leads to more changes in position during horse races. This has led to a general improvement in pace in horse racing and, crucially, results in more changes in position during horse races. The results in Tables 52 and 53 reflect this development in horse racing.

#### 7.4.1.2. Distribution analysis of routines

TABLE 54 WEIGHTED DISTRIBUTION OF ROUTINES

type routine	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
n action	12	17	8	72	6	25	442	619
action frequency	0.90	0.44	0.16	0.97	1.21	0.51	2.50	3.63
n analysis	28	70	10	21	84	106	17	8
analysis frequency	0.54	1.87	0.15	0.40	1.00	1.72	1.88	0.55
n background	103	126	72	100	132	129	24	53
background frequency	0.76	1.01	0.88	1.38	1.18	1.44	1.71	3.54

**Key:** n = total number found in action / analysis / background level of commentary; action / analysis / background frequency = frequency per 100 words proportionally weighted against figures in Table 4.

The distribution analysis of routines presents one noteworthy result. Unlike many of the



linguistic features examined so far, the nature of action or play-by-play reporting does not nullify other effects as regards the use of routines. The radio horse racing texts display a significantly higher frequency than the other sports commentaries, as do the televised horse racing texts, albeit to a lesser degree. This suggests that using routines is such an integral part of horse racing commentating that it remains a significant feature despite the time constraints and hectic nature of play-by-play reporting.

#### **7.4.1.3. Summary of analysis of routines**

The examination of the use of routines has revealed a number of findings: First, the broadcast medium affects the sports commentators' use of routines. The visual input provided by television in terms of score, statistics and time leads to a less pronounced use of routines by TV commentators. Second, the character of the sport, particularly the frequency at which changes in scores or rankings occur, has an impact on the use of routines. This effect appears to be so strong that it neutralises the influence of play-by-play reporting. Third, the diachronic comparison seems to show that the increased dynamism of horse racing is reflected in the use of routines by the commentators.

## 7.4.2. Disfluencies

### 7.4.2.1. Overall analysis of disfluencies

TABLE 55 TOTAL DISFLUENCIES

type disfluency	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
hesitations	131	65.17	139	48.60	78	47.85	196	56.00	167	54.58	190	54.60	74	69.8	123	75.00
hedges	36	17.91	45	15.73	31	19.02	35	10.00	49	16.01	34	9.77	7	6.6	16	9.76
repetitions	27	13.43	75	26.22	41	25.15	100	28.57	76	24.84	97	27.87	14	13.2	15	9.15
corrections	1	0.50	12	4.20	6	3.68	9	2.57	6	1.96	12	3.45	3	2.8	2	1.22
unfinished u.	6	2.99	15	5.24	7	4.29	10	2.86	8	2.61	15	4.31	8	7.5	8	4.88
total	201	100	286	100	163	100	350	100	306	100	348	100	106	100	164	100

**Key:** hesitations = interjection ‘er’; hedges = ‘at about’, ‘something like’, ‘more or less’, ‘almost’, ‘maybe’, ‘perhaps’, ‘sort / kind of’ (excluding ‘sort’ / ‘kind’ as true nouns) (list from Biber 1988: 240); corrections = self-correction: commentator revises a statement immediately after its utterance, involving syntax or content; unfinished u. = unfinished utterance: 1. commentator starting a new topic before finishing the syntactic unit; 2. commentator interrupted by colleague.

According to Burgschmidt (1983: 109), disfluencies, as shown in Table 55, are very common in spoken sports commentaries. Hesitations are generally found in a variety of spoken text types (Kjellmer 2003: 172; Tottie 2011: 174f.). They are the most frequently used type of disfluency in the present corpus. A comparison of the totals per sport shows that disfluencies feature most prominently in tennis commentating, whereas the horse racing commentators produce them least frequently. The difference stems from an infrequent use of hesitations and repetitions in horse racing commentating. It appears that the ongoing action of horse racing does not allow for repetitions. The commentators cannot afford to produce the same word twice as this would mean not reporting on essential events. The fact that disfluencies are most frequently found in tennis broadcasts – the commentary that is under least time pressure – suggests that the absence of time constraints leads to a more frequent use of disfluencies. The following examples illustrate the use of repetitions in tennis commentaries:

(51) EXAMPLE

B: I’ll tell you as a as a as a player as a former player when you are in this situation  
(emphasis added) (App. II.E.3)

(52) EXAMPLE

A: [T]he scoreline is very very different to last year when when Murray played Nadal and was utterly thrashed er at the moment it it it feels as if a straight sets defeat is inevitable  
(emphasis added) (App. II.F.1)

In both situations, the level of commentary is one of background information and yet a substantial number of disfluencies are produced. The TV and the radio commentator are not reporting on ongoing actions. In fact, the players are not even playing in this instance, rather they are preparing to start the next game. Repetitions and hesitations occur frequently in passages of this type when the commentators are filling the gaps between spells of action.

The total numbers of disfluencies present the following result: the radio texts contain more disfluencies than the televised texts. Aside from the tennis texts, the differences are significant. A large part of this difference originates in the higher numbers of hesitations found in the radio texts. Radio commentators seem to be more prone to producing hesitations: situations as in the following example are more frequently produced by radio commentators.

(53) EXAMPLE

B: It was a great run by er Svensson he got er to the by-line a great left-footed shot and er the Newcastle keeper has done brilliantly there

(emphasis added) (App. I.D.1)

The radio broadcaster's need to produce a constant stream of commentary results in the use of *er* in order to provide a short period of time in which to decide on the formulation of the following utterance. In contrast, TV commentators are aware that the viewers can follow the ball, players or horses on the screen and, therefore, more events can be left unreported in television commentary.

TABLE 56 1996-2002 DISFLUENCIES

type disfluency	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
hesitations	92	76.0	88	54.32	61	56.0	121	67.22	86	68.25	123	71.51	58	75.3	104	75.91
hedges	17	14.0	23	14.20	16	14.7	13	7.22	15	11.90	8	4.65	2	2.6	13	9.49
repetitions	10	8.3	30	18.52	21	19.3	30	16.67	14	11.11	24	13.95	7	9.1	12	8.76
corrections	0	0.0	9	5.56	5	4.6	7	3.89	4	3.17	8	4.65	3	3.9	2	1.46
unfinished u.	2	1.7	12	7.41	6	5.5	9	5.00	7	5.56	9	5.23	7	9.1	6	4.38
total	121	100	162	100	109	100	180	100	126	100	172	100	77	100	137	100

**Key:** hesitations = interjection 'er'; hedges = 'at about', 'something like', 'more or less', 'almost', 'maybe', 'perhaps', 'sort / kind of' (excluding 'sort' / 'kind' as true nouns) (list from Biber 1988: 240); corrections = self-correction: commentator revises a statement immediately after its utterance, involving syntax or content; unfinished u. = unfinished utterance: 1. commentator starting a new topic before finishing the syntactic unit; 2. commentator interrupted by colleague.

TABLE 57 2013-2015 DISFLUENCIES

type disfluency	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
hesitations	39	48.8	51	41.13	17	31.48	75	44.12	81	45.00	67	38.07	16	55.2	19	70.4
hedges	19	23.8	22	17.74	15	27.78	22	12.94	34	18.89	26	14.77	5	17.2	3	11.1
repetitions	17	21.3	45	36.29	20	37.04	70	41.18	62	34.44	73	41.48	7	24.1	3	11.1
corrections	1	1.3	3	2.42	1	1.85	2	1.18	2	1.11	4	2.27	0	0.0	0	0.0
unfinished u.	4	5.0	3	2.42	1	1.85	1	0.59	1	0.56	6	3.41	1	3.4	2	7.4
total	80	100	124	100	54	100	170	100	180	100	176	100	29	100	27	100

**Key:** hesitations = interjection ‘er’; hedges = ‘at about’, ‘something like’, ‘more or less’, ‘almost’, ‘maybe’, ‘perhaps’, ‘sort / kind of’ (excluding ‘sort’ / ‘kind’ as true nouns) (list from Biber 1988: 240); corrections = self-correction: commentator revises a statement immediately after its utterance, involving syntax or content; unfinished u. = unfinished utterance: 1. commentator starting a new topic before finishing the syntactic unit; 2. commentator interrupted by colleague.

The diachronic comparison between the two sets of recordings reveals a decrease in the number of hesitations across all text types. The reduction in this figure is most significant in the horse racing commentaries. As has been shown earlier, the language of horse racing commentating has undergone some changes in the last 25 years. Due to the increased intensity of horse races there is less scope for the commentators to discuss matters alongside the ongoing events of the race. The analysis of the overall data from Table 55 seems to indicate that the number of disfluencies is inversely proportionate to the time constraints under which the commentators are working. These, in turn, became stricter between 1996–2002 and 2013–2016, and might therefore be responsible for the decrease in the number of disfluencies in horse racing commentaries. The weighted distribution analysis will show whether this assumption can be supported by additional statistical data.

#### 7.4.2.2. Distribution analysis of disfluencies

TABLE 58 WEIGHTED DISTRIBUTION OF DISFLUENCIES

type disfluency	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
n action	8	27	19	141	12	55	96	129
action frequency	0.60	0.70	0.38	1.89	2.41	1.12	0.54	0.76
n analysis	45	53	54	64	96	89	1	15
analysis frequency	0.87	1.41	0.79	1.21	1.15	1.44	0.11	1.04
n background	148	206	90	145	198	204	9	20
background frequency	1.10	1.66	1.10	2.00	1.78	2.28	0.64	1.33

**Key:** n = total number found in action / analysis / background level of commentary; action / analysis / background frequency = frequency per 100 words proportionally weighted against figures in Table 4.

The distribution analysis features two noteworthy results. On the one hand, and comparable to findings of other distribution analyses in this paper, the figures are uniform within the three levels of commentary. The effects of play-by-play reporting seem to level out the overall differences. On the other hand, examining the figures within the individual text types reveals that the background information passages feature the highest frequencies within each text type. In studies by Jameson et al. (2010: 192), Mackenzie (2005: 122f.) and Müller et al. (2001: 27) it was found that disfluencies tend to be produced by speakers in situations of cognitive stress and that time pressure did not affect the use of disfluencies. The results collated in the present corpus suggest the same: time pressure does not affect the use of disfluencies. On the contrary, the commentators produce more disfluencies in the sections where time constraints are less pronounced. In the present corpus, the above-mentioned cognitive stress seems to be higher in the analysis and background information passages where the commentators tend to fall into conversation with each other rather than engage in play-by-play reporting (cf. example 51).

#### **7.4.2.3. Summary of analysis of disfluencies**

The following conclusions can be drawn regarding the use of disfluencies: It appears that sports commentators produce disfluencies in utterances not directly related to the ongoing events on the pitch, court or racecourse. Furthermore, the demands of the medium result in the radio commentators producing more disfluencies than TV commentators. It is necessary for the radio commentators to avoid pauses and produce a constant flow of commentary, which is achieved by filling gaps with disfluencies. Lastly, the increased dynamism of modern-day sports, and horse racing in particular, leads to a less frequent use of disfluencies.

### 7.4.3. Ellipsis

#### 7.4.3.1. Overall analysis of ellipsis

TABLE 59 TOTAL ELLIPSIS

type ellipsis	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
subject	52	15.71	20	9.09	42	7.97	31	7.09	20	6.45	20	4.98	3	0.7	4	0.88
copula	25	7.55	17	7.73	65	12.33	38	8.70	15	4.84	24	5.97	106	24.5	115	25.39
subject+copula	183	55.29	80	36.36	249	47.25	128	29.29	214	69.03	210	52.24	61	14.1	33	7.28
auxiliary	35	10.57	47	21.36	104	19.73	96	21.97	36	11.61	78	19.40	214	49.4	226	49.89
main verb	23	6.95	42	19.09	52	9.87	103	23.57	20	6.45	58	14.43	27	6.2	36	7.95
others	13	3.93	14	6.36	15	2.85	41	9.38	5	1.61	12	2.99	22	5.1	39	8.61
total	331	100	220	100	527	100	437	100	310	100	402	100	433	100	453	100

**Key:** ellipsis = missing elements; subject = sentence-initial subject (name, noun phrase or subject pronoun); subject + copula = sentence-initial subject (name, noun phrase or subject pronoun) and copula; auxiliary = auxiliary verb; main verb = any verb except copula or auxiliary verb; others = any element except for subject, copula, auxiliary or main verb.

Ellipsis was one of the first features to be attributed to the language of sports commentating (Crystal et al. 1969: 139f.; Burgschmidt 1971: 92–96; Ferguson 1983: 158–160). It occurs frequently in live sports reports (Krone 2005:13f.) and, as Hoyle's study (1993: 118f.) of boys' sports commentating abilities illustrates, is generally regarded as characteristic of sports commentating. Although it is possible for a wide range of syntactic elements to be omitted<sup>17</sup>, the meaning of the utterances is never vague for the average listener or viewer, whose knowledge of the game enables them to fill in the missing elements. The following examples illustrate how the various elements included in Table 59 are omitted:

#### (54) EXAMPLE

A: Svensson [2] and he's taking him on [3]\_good SAVE [1]\_got down very sharply  
(emphasis added) (App. I.C.2)

#### (55) EXAMPLE

A: Duke Street over in front only by a half length Duke of Medina shaken up but so too Duke Street  
(emphasis added) (App. II.H.6)



<sup>17</sup> Certain common structures were considered to be standardised use rather than ellipsis, such as ways of expressing the score in cricket, e.g. *348 for 6* (App. I.A.1), the ball being passed from one player to another in football, e.g. *Clark [2] Ferdinand [4] Gillespie [4] Shearer* (App. I.C.2), the ball being served in tennis, e.g. *serve out wide from Djokovic* (App. II.F.2), or horses clearing hurdles in races, e.g. *over the first takes it safely* (App. 2.G.12).

## (56) EXAMPLE

A: Ljungberg now for Halmstad right edge of the penalty area  
 (emphasis added) (App. I.D.1)

Often, as in example (54), the article is also omitted; a reasonable expansion would possibly be as follows: [*it's a*] *good SAVE*<sup>18</sup>. The other element omitted in example (54) is a noun phrase, in this case most probably [*the keeper*]. Example (55) is an illustration of copular ellipsis with two instances within a few seconds of commentary. The first omission may be a copular 'be' or main verb omission. The audience assumes that *Duke Street* does something situationally acceptable, as in *Duke Street [is] over* or *Duke Street [jumps] over*. In example (56), the position of *Ljungberg* is [*on the*] *right edge of the penalty area*. This example is categorised as 'others' in Table 59. Omissions of prepositions make a passage particularly hard to understand for the uninitiated audience due to the fact that several different prepositions might – grammatically speaking – be suitable (Burgschmidt 1971: 93). Blakemore defines the filling in of missing information as 'fleshing out the semantic representation of an utterance' (1992: 59). Based on the context and the utterances produced prior to the ellipsis, the audience completes the missing information. According to Haselow, ellipses are often 'situational or context-controlled' (2017: 219). In sports reporting in particular, the understanding of utterances containing ellipsis requires a thorough knowledge of the game and the layout of the pitch, court or racecourse.

According to Table 59, the omission of subject + copula is the most frequent in all text types, with the exception of one sport. In the horse racing commentaries, copular 'be' omission represents the highest score. Wilson's analysis of live sports commentaries showed the same result: most cases of ellipsis were copular 'be' deletions followed by sentence-initial ellipsis (2000: 158). Example (55) illustrates this type of ellipsis. Ferguson also states that copular 'be' omission mid-sentence is common in horse racing (1983: 160). The reason why horse racing commentators do not omit the subject as often as the commentators in the other three sports is most likely down to the nature of horse racing. In ball sports, the focus tends to be on the player performing a throwing, kicking or hitting action. The ball then passes to another player. In many situations, the commentator is not required to name the players involved in the action as the informed audience is familiar with the players and the patterns of the game. Even though horse racing is based on the principle of 'first past the post', the focus of the commentary does not solely lie on the winning horse. Some part of the commentary is devoted to each of the participating horses, even in races such as the Grand National where up to 40 runners take part. As a consequence, the subjects of sentences – the horses' names – cannot be easily dropped.

<sup>18</sup> In this chapter, the [ ] sign encloses what is  in the author's view  most likely to have been omitted.

There is a danger of misunderstanding and confusion on the part of the audience.

Table 59 also reveals a difference in terms of the total numbers of omissions found in the four sports. Football and horse racing feature more cases of ellipsis than cricket and tennis. Knowledge of the game is not a viable explanation for this finding as it can be assumed that all four audiences are equally acquainted with the relevant sport and are hence able to understand the commentary despite a certain amount of omissions. Consequently, the different mechanisms of the sports must account for the difference in number of omissions.

(57) EXAMPLE

B: Dwight Yorke in the six yard area Milosevic just outside Staunton coming to the near post  
[1] Ehiogu up at the back of the 18 yard area [2] a pushing and shoving match at the moment  
[3] cleared Draper Wright [1] still five waiting

(emphasis added) (App. I.C.3)

Example (57) is a description a corner being taken in a football match: the majority of the players are positioning themselves in front of the goal while the ball is hit towards them, cleared and about to be played in front of the goal again. Due to the many players involved and the rapid movement of the ball, the sports commentator only provides the bare facts, i.e. the players' names and their positions, and omits copulas, auxiliaries and main verbs. Whereas situations of this type are common in football and horse racing, they rarely occur in cricket and tennis. Football and horse racing can thus be said to present many more opportunities for the omission of certain linguistic elements. This, in turn, explains the difference between the sports presented in Table 59. Wilson confirms that 'the urgency of the [horse] race requires a high level of abbreviated commentary' (2000: 157).

The broadcast medium does not seem to have an impact on the use of ellipsis. However, when comparing the four sports in this corpus there does seem to be a trend: commentators of faster-paced sports show a stronger tendency to produce ellipses. Cricket displays the lowest totals, while football and horse racing are at the other end of the scale. Wilson concludes that ellipsis frequently occurs when short bursts of sporting action that 'require possibly brief, but entirely unbroken, stretches of commentary' are commentated on (2000: 156). The football total in Table 59 seems to confirm Wilson's finding.



TABLE 60 1996-2002 ELLIPSIS

type	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
subject	18	11.0	10	8.06	29	9.6	21	8.75	11	5.88	10	4.55	1	0.4	2	1.04
copula	12	7.3	13	10.48	47	15.6	28	11.67	9	4.81	16	7.27	74	30.6	59	30.57
subject+copula	82	50.0	52	41.94	138	45.8	87	36.25	127	67.91	111	50.45	57	23.6	29	15.03
auxiliary	21	12.8	33	26.61	65	21.6	58	24.17	24	12.83	47	21.36	92	38.0	82	42.49
main verb	21	12.8	12	9.68	17	5.6	36	15.00	14	7.49	32	14.55	17	7.0	18	9.33
others	10	6.1	4	3.23	5	1.7	10	4.17	2	1.07	4	1.82	1	0.4	3	1.55
total	164	100	124	100	301	100	240	100	187	100	220	100	242	100	193	100

**Key:** ellipsis = missing elements; subject = sentence-initial subject (name, noun phrase or subject pronoun); subject + copula = sentence-initial subject (name, noun phrase or subject pronoun) and copula; auxiliary = auxiliary verb; main verb = any verb except copula or auxiliary verb; others = any element except for subject, copula, auxiliary or main verb.

TABLE 61 2013-2015 ELLIPSIS

type	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
subject	34	20.4	10	10.42	13	5.75	10	5.08	9	7.32	10	5.49	2	1.0	2	0.8
copula	13	7.8	4	4.17	18	7.96	10	5.08	6	4.88	8	4.40	32	16.8	56	21.5
subject+copula	101	60.5	28	29.17	111	49.12	41	20.81	87	70.73	99	54.40	4	2.1	4	1.5
auxiliary	14	8.4	14	14.58	39	17.26	38	19.29	12	9.76	31	17.03	122	63.9	144	55.4
main verb	2	1.2	30	31.25	35	15.49	67	34.01	6	4.88	26	14.29	10	5.2	18	6.9
others	3	1.8	10	10.42	10	4.42	31	15.74	3	2.44	8	4.40	21	11.0	36	13.8
total	167	100	96	100	226	100	197	100	123	100	182	100	191	100	260	100

**Key:** ellipsis = missing elements; subject = sentence-initial subject (name, noun phrase or subject pronoun); subject + copula = sentence-initial subject (name, noun phrase or subject pronoun) and copula; auxiliary = auxiliary verb; main verb = any verb except copula or auxiliary verb; others = any element except for subject, copula, auxiliary or main verb.

The diachronic comparison shows a slight trend towards a less frequent use of ellipsis in most text types in the more recent recordings, excepting the horse racing commentaries on the radio. This result runs counter to the other text types: the 2013–2015 recordings feature more instances of ellipsis than the older recordings. The aforementioned steady level of fast-paced action is probably more pronounced nowadays, which may lead to more ellipses.

## (58) EXAMPLE

A: VENT DE FORCE WEAKENING TRIP TO PARIS IMPROVING TO THE FAR SIDE  
 GETTING INVOLVED ALSO BATHYRHON LEANING ON KINGFISHER  
 SIMENON STAYING ON MIZZOU DOWN THE OUTSIDE TRIP TO PARIS ON  
 THE INSIDE FORGOTTEN RULES BATHYRHON SIMENON GETTING  
 INVOLVED

(emphasis added) (App: II.H.5)

Example (58) demonstrates a typical use of ellipsis in horse racing commentary on the radio. The auxiliary is omitted five times within approximately ten seconds of commentary. According to Tables 60 and 61 this particular case of ellipsis is far more commonly found in the more recent recordings. It tends to occur in passages where the horses are running neck-and-neck and thus the commentator's speech rate is very high. The increased pace of today's races possibly leads to more passages of this kind.

### 7.4.3.2. Distribution analysis of ellipsis

TABLE 62 WEIGHTED DISTRIBUTION OF ELLIPSIS

type ellipsis	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
n action	82	102	364	311	33	254	392	390
action frequency	6.16	2.66	7.30	4.17	6.64	5.18	2.22	2.29
n analysis	94	45	108	43	200	77	19	44
analysis frequency	1.81	1.20	1.58	0.81	2.39	1.25	2.10	3.04
n background	155	73	55	83	77	71	22	19
background frequency	1.15	0.59	0.67	1.15	0.69	0.79	1.57	1.27

**Key:** n = total number found in action / analysis / background level of commentary; action / analysis / background frequency = frequency per 100 words proportionally weighted against figures in Table 4.

The weighted distribution analysis shows a distinct difference between the action level of commentary and the two other levels in the ball sports. The commentators are more likely to produce ellipses during play-by-play reporting than during analysis or provision of background information. Wilson reached the same conclusion in his examination of live golf commentary: spells of fast-moving action can be differentiated from spells of slower-paced action by the use of ellipsis (2000: 150f.).

In contrast, the horse racing commentaries show little difference between the action and analysis levels of commentary. The explanation for this lies in the sequence of horse racing commentaries. Typically, the action level of commentary takes up more than 85% of the total

commentary (cf. Table 4). This usually covers the entire race from start to finish, possibly interspersed with a few short comments that can be ascribed to the analysis and background information level. Towards the end of the race, the commentating speed and volume increase. Once the winning horse has crossed the finishing line, the commentators often analyse certain parts of the race while the remaining horses are coming in to finish their race. It is worth noting that the commentating speed and volume do not fall sharply; rather, there is a gradual reduction in speed and volume. As a consequence, the commentators still produce ellipses during this spell of commentary, even though they are analysing actions rather than reporting on ongoing actions.

(59) EXAMPLE

A: JUST A PAR VIC'S CANVAS FURTHEST FROM US BETWEEN THEM IS PAINT THE CLOUDS IT IS JUST A PAR SEAN BOWEN HAS GOT A GREAT TUNE OUT OF HIM THIS IN THE CLOSING STAGES JUST A PAR HAS WON THE BET 365 GOLD CUP

(App. II.H.1)

In example (59), the commentator declares that the horse called *Just A Par* has won the race when he says *IT IS JUST A PAR*. The following passage, *SEAN BOWEN HAS GOT A GREAT TUNE OF HIM THIS IN THE CLOSING STAGES*, is a part-analysis of the race, i.e. the jockey – Sean Bowen – was successful in making the horse run fast. In terms of prosody, there is no difference to the preceding passage; the rate of speech and the volume are still increased. There is a case of ellipsis in both the action and analysis sections: a missing copula between *CANVAS* and *FURTHEST*, and a missing main verb – possibly ‘happened’ – between *THIS* and *IN*. Passages of this type account for the lack of difference between the action and analysis levels of commentary in Table 62.

#### 7.4.3.3. Summary of analysis of ellipsis

The analysis of ellipsis has revealed the following findings. First, ellipsis is very common in live sports reporting and tends to occur when quick bursts of sporting action are commentated on. It does not affect the intelligibility of the commentary since the audience is knowledgeable enough to provide the information necessary to fill in the gaps. Wilson therefore describes the relationship between the commentator and the audience as ‘telegraphic’ (2000: 150). Second, regarding the use of ellipsis, horse racing commentating differs from ball sports commentary. The start-to-finish nature of horse racing results in the regular omission of auxiliaries and a more even spread of ellipses across the entire commentary.

#### 7.4.4. Use of aspect

##### 7.4.4.1. Overall analysis of use of aspect

TABLE 63 TOTAL ASPECT

type aspect	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
pres. simple	27	57.45	316	82.94	62	44.60	295	75.84	11	44.00	237	73.60	381	52.19	369	51.46
pres. progressive	20	42.55	65	17.06	77	55.40	94	24.16	14	56.00	85	26.40	349	47.81	348	48.54
total	47	100	381	100	139	100	389	100	25	100	322	100	730	100	717	100

Key: aspect = simple or progressive aspect of event verbs; pres. simple = present simple; pres. progr. = present progressive.

In Table 63, the use of the simple or progressive aspect of ‘event verbs’ is shown. Leech defines an event, as opposed to a state, as a ‘whole and viewed as simultaneous with the present act of speaking’ typically referring to ‘something which happens over a very short time’ (2004: 7). In their studies of English verbs, Quirk et al. (1985: 180), Palmer (1988: 61), Leech (2004: 10), De Wit (2016: 108) and Tolson (2016: 16) describe a specific use of the present simple in sports reporting: unlike in everyday English, sports commentators tend to use the present simple to report on non-habitual actions or actions happening at the instant of speaking where the present progressive would normally be used. Leech brands this use of the simple aspect ‘instantaneous present’ (Leech 2004: 7). Langacker (2011: 60) states that using the present simple to describe actions that have just happened is an attempt on the commentators’ part to add a vivid touch to the commentary.

#### (60) EXAMPLE

B: Cowan moves in and bowls

(emphasis added) (App. I.B.2)

Example (60) illustrates this use of the present simple: since the speaker refers to two specific actions by *Cowan* and not *Cowan’s* actions in general, they are non-habitual. Furthermore, they are happening at the moment of speaking, and yet the present simple is used. In order to include events occurring exclusively at the moment of speaking, only the event verbs in the action level of commentary were incorporated in Table 60<sup>19</sup>. Passages of the type shown in example (60) occur frequently in cricket commentating. As *Cowan* approaches the batsman in example (60), the commentator, owing to his knowledge of the game, already knows for certain what is going to happen next, namely the act of bowling the ball. Consequently, he can

<sup>19</sup> All the passive constructions have been excluded from this frequency count.

utter the word *bowls* at exactly the same time as the action is performed. The term ‘instantaneous present’ is therefore very apt. Similarly, sports commentators of other sports tend to use the same verbs in certain situations, e.g. the verbs ‘go’ and ‘jump’ in horse racing commentaries. Langacker (2011: 60) and Brisard (2002: 286) also concluded that live play-by-play reporting features a significant number of structured and formulaic expressions.

A comparison of the sports in Table 60 shows similar figures for the ball sports. The radio commentaries include a significantly higher number of events described in the present simple when compared with the televised commentaries. Moreover, radio commentators clearly prefer to use the simple aspect over the continuous aspect when describing ongoing events. The nature of the medium accounts for these differences: on television, many actions take place without commentary, whereas nearly all events taking place are described on the radio.

The results of the horse racing commentaries differ in two ways. On the one hand, there is little difference between the two broadcast media. This suggests that both the TV and radio commentators report on a similar amount of ongoing racing action. This is confirmed by the figures established at the outset (cf. Tables 1 and 4), where both text types present similar totals in terms of speech rate and proportion of action level of commentary. On the other hand, the proportions of present simple and present progressive forms are approximately the same, unlike in the three other sports. This finding appears to contradict the results of other studies. Hoyle (1989: 156) found that the instantaneous use of the present simple aspect is particularly characteristic of commentating on fast-moving sports. Humpolik (2014: 39) states that the progressive aspect is more commonly used in the analysis level of commentary, whereas the simple aspect is predominantly found in play-by-play reporting. However, horse racing differs from many other sports on two levels. First, unlike in ball sports, all the protagonists take part throughout and at the same level of intensity. There are no breaks or players awaiting their turn to be involved in the action. Second, the running time is considerably shorter than that of a standard match of cricket, football or tennis. Both the brevity of the race and the fact that all of the participants are simultaneously and continuously on the move result in the commentators using the simple and the progressive aspect to an equal extent.

#### (61) EXAMPLE

A: [A]nd then comes Bahamian Heights further back towards the left look at Huntsman's Close he's going OK Don't Have It Then is behind this and then comes Seeking Magic Blaine at this stage about five behind him but it's nearside Shore Step leading  
(emphasis added) (App. II.H.2)

Four event verbs can be found in example (61). Two are in the simple and two in the progressive

aspect. This type of usage is typical of sports commentating style according to Hirtle (1967: 38), Close (1977: 77) and Balzer (2015: 14): short actions – such as *comes* in example (61) – tend to be reported on using the simple aspect, whereas for events that take more time – such as *going* and *leading* in example (61) – the progressive aspect is used, above all in horse racing commentaries.

Two more figures in Table 63 are noteworthy. The televised cricket and tennis commentaries feature significantly fewer event verbs than the other text types. The fact that actions in cricket and tennis are more repetitive than in football possibly leads to a degree of reluctance of TV cricket reporters to describe the same actions time and again, and, thus, accounts for the very low number of event verbs in this text type. Horse racing could also be deemed repetitive. However, the aforementioned elevated degree of involvement of all participants results in a large number of events that require commentary, which in turn accounts for the high scores in Table 63.

TABLE 64 1996-2002 ASPECT

type aspect	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
pres. simple	10	41.67	172	85.57	30	39.47	124	72.94	7	46.67	127	70.17	187	51.23	158	50.32
pres. progressive	14	58.33	29	14.43	46	60.53	46	27.06	8	53.33	54	29.83	178	48.77	156	49.68
total	24	100	201	100	76	100	170	100	15	100	181	100	365	100	314	100

**Key:** aspect = simple or progressive aspect of event verbs; pres. simple = present simple; pres. progr. = present progressive.

TABLE 65 2013-2015 ASPECT

type aspect	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
pres. simple	17	73.91	144	80.00	32	50.79	171	78.08	4	40.00	110	78.01	194	53.15	211	52.36
pres. progressive	6	26.09	36	20.00	31	49.21	48	21.92	6	60.00	31	21.99	171	46.85	192	47.64
total	23	100	180	100	63	100	219	100	10	100	141	100	365	100	403	100

**Key:** aspect = simple or progressive aspect of event verbs; pres. simple = present simple; pres. progr. = present progressive.

The comparison between the older and the more recent recordings shows many similarities and two notable differences. One of these differences concerns the cricket commentaries on TV: while the total number of event verbs does not differ greatly, the percentage of event verbs used in the simple aspect increased significantly in the recordings from the years 2013–2015. The minor changes to the sport itself (cf. ch. 5.1.) do not account for this considerable shift. It could

be inferred that today's commentators try to add a sense of vividness to their commentary by using the simple aspect more frequently. This type of usage suggests that more short and rapid actions are taking place at the time of reporting. The other difference between the older and the more recent recordings relates to the horse racing commentary on the radio: it can be noted that the total number of event verbs rose substantially. This suggests that there was a corresponding increase in the number of actions to be reported on. This, in turn, is supported by the fact that the degree of athleticism in horse racing has developed over the last 20 years.

#### 7.4.4.2. Distribution analysis of use of aspect

TABLE 66 WEIGHTED DISTRIBUTION OF SIMPLE ASPECT

type simple aspect	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
n action	27	316	62	295	11	237	381	369
action frequency	2.03	8.25	1.24	3.96	2.21	4.84	2.15	2.16

**Key:** n = total number found in action /analysis / background level of commentary; action / analysis / background frequency = frequency per 100 words proportionally weighted against figures in Table 4.

Table 66 focuses solely on the event verbs used in the present simple in the action level of commentary. The weighted distribution analysis reveals that the simple aspect is used fairly evenly to report on ongoing actions across all text types. Only the cricket commentaries on the radio display a markedly higher ratio of use in the action passages. This can be explained by the formulaic use of a particular set of event verbs as in example (60). The verbs 'bowl', 'come' and 'hit' account for exactly half of all the event verbs used in the simple aspect in the cricket texts on the radio.

#### (62) EXAMPLE

A: [H]ere comes Anderson bowls [1] an in-swing to Dhawan he just jams it out between bat and pad

(emphasis added) (App. II.B.2)

The action sequence illustrated in example (62) – the bowler coming up to bowl and the batsman attempting to hit the ball – is pivotal in the game of cricket and the most often repeated sequence of events. The onus on the radio commentators to provide a full commentary of the match results in a frequent use of these verbs.

#### **7.4.4.3. Summary of analysis of use of aspect**

Analysing the use of the simple and progressive aspect allows for several conclusions to be drawn. First, the term ‘instantaneous present’ employed by some linguists very aptly describes the way the simple aspect is often used in the texts analysed for this study. Second, the limitations of radio broadcasting have an impact on the use of either the simple or progressive aspect: the fact that it is necessary for radio commentators to report on many actions in order to provide listeners with a full picture of the match or race leads to a more frequent use of the simple aspect. Third, horse racing differs significantly from the ball sports in terms of the sequence and procedures within the event and this has an effect on the use of the simple and progressive aspects. The uninterrupted high intensity involvement of all participants leads to a higher proportion of progressive forms being used. However, based on the diachronic comparison of the last 20 years, there seems to be a trend towards an increased use of simple aspect in horse racing commentating on the radio. Finally, formulaic use of certain verbs is prevalent in cricket reporting. The repetitive character of the game results in the frequent use of the simple aspect in particular standard situations.



### 7.4.5. Use of present progressive

#### 7.4.5.1. Overall analysis of use of present progressive

In this chapter, the use of the present progressive form will be examined further. The previous chapter has shown that two factors generally result in sports commentators opting for the simple aspect: the high speed at which an action is carried out and the fact that the action is completed. It is often the case that the player performs an action of play while the commentator simultaneously produces the corresponding spoken report within the same period of time. For actions of extended duration the present progressive is used when the action of play remains incomplete at the moment the commentator has finished reporting on that particular action (Balzer 2015: 14; Close 1977: 77; Scheffer 1975: 77).

#### (63) EXAMPLE

A: Here's Illott again [1] galloping up to the wicket he's there now he bowls  
(emphasis added) (App. I.B.2)

The run-up of a bowler in order to gather speed before releasing the ball normally takes three to four seconds<sup>20</sup>. In example (63), *Illott* is therefore *galloping* at least until the commentator says *now*; that is to say the action of running up to the wicket has not been completed as the commentator utters the word *galloping*, hence the use of the progressive aspect in this case. The subsequent action – the bowling of the ball – is short, rapid and completed while the commentator is reporting on that very action and is therefore expressed in the simple aspect. These usages of aspect serve to explain why sports with many regular and slow actions of extended duration, such as boat racing, feature more verbs in the present progressive than fast-paced sports, such as football (Close 1977: 19f.; Ferguson 1983: 164; Scheffer 1975: 81<sup>21</sup>; Vandenhoeck 2015: 57).

The following tables will show whether the present progressive is in fact used as described above. The results are based solely on the action level of commentary. The totals have already been discussed as part of the simple versus progressive aspect discussion (cf. Table 63). The following paragraphs will therefore focus on the two uses of the progressive aspect.

<sup>20</sup> There are, in fact, two types of bowlers: pace bowlers and spinners. The former, such as *Illott*, take a run-up of about 20 yards which take three to four seconds; the latter only take a few steps which take one or two seconds.

<sup>21</sup> Scheffer indicates another use of the present progressive in live sports commentating, namely repetition. Hence, for instance, 'He is shooting well' means that the football player in question has repeatedly taken good shots in this game (1975: 77).

TABLE 67 TOTAL PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

type action	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
extended duration	17	85.00	53	81.54	65	84.42	81	86.17	11	78.57	57	67.06	300	86.0	313	89.94
rapid action	3	15.00	12	18.46	12	15.58	13	13.83	3	21.43	28	32.94	49	14.04	35	10.06
total	20	100	65	100	77	100	94	100	14	100	85	100	349	100	348	100

Key: action = length of action; extend. dur. = action of extended duration; rapid action = action carried out rapidly.

Table 67 reveals two findings. First, the vast majority of present progressive forms are used to report on actions of extended duration. This is true across all eight text types, confirming the aforementioned findings by Close (1977: 19f.), Ferguson (1983: 164), Scheffer (1975: 81) and Vandenhoeck (2015: 57). Second, as regards the ball sports there is a tendency for the radio commentators to report on more short and rapid actions than their counterparts from television, who favour reporting on ongoing events of longer duration. Again, the obligation of the radio commentator to report on almost all of the events on the pitch or court accounts for this difference. An example from the Essex v. Lancashire match illustrates the influence the broadcast medium has on the commentators' language. At one stage of the game, Essex bowler, Ronnie Irani, bowls his first over of the match:

(64) EXAMPLE

A: [T]his is now Irani who's coming in to bowl [1] from the Nursery End coming to bowl to Gallian [1] Gallian comes forward runs that down into the gully and Nasser Hussain is the fielder [1] he's at that really almost backward point Nasser Hussain [1] he's deep gully I think would be rather too charitable [1] I think he's really in the defensive position [...] here is Irani from the Nursery End [1] he's in he bowls to Gallian Gallian plays that late runs it down er to backward point and it's Hussain who fields [1] now the Andy Pick benefit [...] here is Irani in bowls forward driving is Gallian and that's Hussain going very quickly er across in front of Robinson [1] Hussain from backward point and fielding [...] as Irani bowls again [1] Gallian gets into line just pushes forward and it's fielded down there by Such at mid-off

(emphasis added) (App. I.B.2)

In example (64), every single bowling, batting and fielding action is reported on in the radio commentary. A total of 15 event verbs are used to describe the ongoing actions, five of which are in the progressive aspect. A comparison with the TV commentary of the exact same part of the match shows that the commentators talk about the fielders and the national team but do not report on a single bowling, batting or fielding action (App. I.A.4).

TABLE 68 1996-2002 PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

type action	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
extended duration	12	85.71	25	86.21	39	84.78	42	91.30	6	75.0	37	68.52	143	80.34	136	87.18
rapid action	2	14.29	4	13.79	7	15.22	4	8.70	2	25.0	17	31.48	35	19.66	20	12.82
total	14	100	29	100	46	100	46	100	8	100	54	100	178	100	156	100

**Key:** action = length of action; extend. dur. = action of extended duration; rapid action = action carried out rapidly.

TABLE 69 2013-2015 PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

type action	cricket				football				tennis				horse racing			
	TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio		TV		radio	
	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%	n	%
extended duration	5	83.33	28	77.78	26	83.87	39	81.25	5	83.33	20	64.52	152	88.89	177	92.19
rapid action	1	16.67	8	22.22	5	16.13	9	18.75	1	16.67	11	35.48	19	11.11	15	7.81
total	6	100	36	100	31	100	48	100	6	100	31	100	171	100	192	100

**Key:** action = length of action; extend. dur. = action of extended duration; rapid action = action carried out rapidly.

The comparison between the older and the more recent recordings does not present any particular patterns or tendencies. It appears that the use of the progressive aspect to describe actions of extended duration and rapid actions did not change in the 20 years between the two sets of recordings.

#### 7.4.5.2. Distribution analysis of use of present progressive

TABLE 70 WEIGHTED DISTRIBUTION OF PRESENT PROGRESSIVE  
USED FOR EXTENDED DURATION IN ACTION LEVEL  
OF COMMENTARY

type extended duration	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
n action	17	53	65	81	11	57	300	313
action frequency	1.28	1.38	1.30	1.09	2.21	1.16	1.70	1.84

**Key:** n = total number of event verbs used in present progressive form found in action level of commentary; action frequency = frequency per 100 words proportionally weighted against figures in Table 4.

TABLE 71 WEIGHTED DISTRIBUTION OF PRESENT PROGRESSIVE  
USED FOR RAPID ACTION IN ACTION LEVEL OF  
COMMENTARY

type	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
n action	3	12	12	13	3	28	49	35
action frequency	0.23	0.31	0.24	0.17	0.60	0.57	0.28	0.21

**Key:** n = total number of event verbs used in present progressive form found in action level of commentary; action frequency = frequency per 100 words proportionally weighted against figures in Table 4.

The distribution of present progressives in the action level of commentary are presented in the tables above: Table 70 represents the use of present progressive for extended duration, while Table 71 represents the use of present progressive for rapid action. The differences within both tables are minimal. This suggests that the commentators' use of present progressive hardly differs irrespective of the broadcast medium or the sport that is commented on. The requirements of play-by-play reporting override any differences observed in the frequency counts of the overall results.

#### 7.4.5.3. Summary of analysis of use of present progressive

In sum, sports commentators have a tendency to use the present progressive to describe actions of extended duration rather than rapid actions. It appears that the broadcast medium has a minor impact on usage: radio commentators are slightly more likely to use the progressive aspect to report on rapid actions. However, rapid actions are generally reported on through the present simple, a finding that was established in the previous chapter (cf. ch. 7.4.4.). Neither the sport nor the time of recording has an effect on the use of the present progressive.

### 7.4.6. Inversion of subject and predicate

#### 7.4.6.1. Overall analysis of inversion of subject and predicate

Green (1980: 584f.) and Ferguson (1983: 161) identified inversions of subject and predicate as a prominent feature of sports commentating style. Inversion creates a time lag that allows the commentators to identify the protagonist while they are already reporting on the actions at hand (Reaser 2003: 314).

(65) EXAMPLE

B: Asprilla has gone to the left but still on the left is Gillespie (emphasis added) (App. I.C.2)

Typically, as in example (65), the subject is the player's name – *Gillespie* – and the verb is the copula – *is* – or a verb of motion. It is sometimes the case that the sports commentators see the pass, hit, shot or jump before they are sure who the protagonist is. In such cases, the inversion of subject and predicate is a useful tool, enabling the commentator to take more time to ascertain the identity of the protagonist. Biber et al. also argue that inversion is a device to maintain the interest of the audience as delaying the name of a player 'conveys an element of suspense and surprise' (1999: 65).

TABLE 72 TOTAL INVERSION OF SUBJECT AND PREDICATE

type	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
inversions	n	n	n	n	n	n	n	n
total	1	22	7	4	0	4	100	89

Key: inversions = inversion of subject and predicate.

Table 72 presents two findings: First, few inversions were found in the ball sports commentaries. Balzer confirms this observation. He states that 'the inversion of subject and dependent stands out but might not be as frequent as previously assumed' (2015: 32). There is little need for the commentators to use inversion. Cricket and tennis are fairly repetitive in terms of action, with only few players actively involved; therefore, there are not many situations in which the sports commentator needs time to identify a player. Similarly, the football commentators are assumed to be familiar with most players on the pitch. In addition, the players' names are on the backs of their shirts. Using inversion to gain time is only used when the ball is moved between the players at great speed. For instance, in example (65), where the ball is suddenly with *Asprilla* on the left side of the pitch, the reporter first notices that there is

another player in this part of the field and then produces his name – *Gillespie*. Within the ball sports commentaries, only the cricket commentaries on the radio feature a significantly higher number of inversions. A closer look at the inversions in this text type presents an interesting finding: 19 of the 22 inversions found, or 86%, are of the following type:

(66) EXAMPLE

B: In comes Williams again from the Nursery End

(emphasis added) (App. I.B.2)

In example (66), the commentator describes the run-up of the bowler by uttering *In comes* followed by the bowler's name. According to Green (1980: 584f.), the pre-position of a directional adverb, in this case *In*, is a very common form of inversion. The situations in which this inversion occurs, however, are not such that the commentator would use an inversion to gain time. On the contrary, in a standard cricket match the other players hardly move during the bowler's run-up, which renders the identification of the bowler very easy. Interestingly, this type of inversion was previously identified in the sample of radio commentary on a cricket match analysed by Crystal et al. (1969: 140). This indicates that this particular kind of inversion is a set phrase used by radio commentators to focus the listeners' attention on the upcoming bowling and batting actions rather than a ploy to gain time.

Second, horse racing commentators use inversion far more frequently than the commentators of ball sports. The following example illustrates a typical use of inversion in horse racing commentating:

(67) EXAMPLE

A: [A]nd then towards the right is Paint the Clouds making his run now as they move to five from the finish behind those is Vic's Canvas

(emphasis added) (App. II.H.1)

Inversion has two functions in horse racing commentating. First, it places additional emphasis on the key protagonists: the horses (Kuiper 2009: 34f.). In example (67), the horses' names – *Paint the Clouds* and *Vic's Canvas* – are mentioned at the end of the clause. Wilson states that inversion allows for the 'most salient fact, the horse's name, to be placed at a prominent position at the end of the information unit' (2000: 157). Second, inversion facilitates the identification of the focal point of the commentary. Green points out that for the audience 'it is usually easier to determine the anchor point through spatial reference than by means of player identification (1980: 585). Example (67) is a case in point: by placing the prepositions *towards* and *behind* in

front of the verb and subject, the commentator helps the audience to establish to which horse they are referring. Whether this occurs in TV or radio reporting is largely irrelevant, hence the similar figures in Table 72. The visual input delivered by television is of limited help to the audience in terms of identifying specific horses. The average initiated audience find it difficult to tell the horses apart, even with the help of differently coloured saddle cloths and jockey's clothes. As a consequence, the commentators are required to mention the horses' names frequently, and they often do so by using inversions.

TABLE 73 1996-2002 INVERSION OF SUBJECT AND PREDICATE

type	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
inversions	n	n	n	n	n	n	n	n
total	0	13	4	4	0	2	52	46

**Key:** inversions = inversion of subject and predicate.

TABLE 74 2013-2015 INVERSION OF SUBJECT AND PREDICATE

type	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
inversions	n	n	n	n	n	n	n	n
total	1	9	3	0	0	2	48	43

**Key:** inversions = inversion of subject and predicate.

According to Tables 73 and 74, the use of inversions by sports commentators did not change during the 20-year gap between the two sets of recordings. As has been mentioned above, the use of inversions in ball sports commentaries is – based on the figures of this study – less prevalent than some studies suggest. This is the case with both the older and the newer set of recordings. Likewise, using inversions while reporting on horse races appears to have been as common 20 years ago as it is today.

### 7.4.6.2. Distribution analysis of inversion of subject and predicate

TABLE 75 WEIGHTED DISTRIBUTION OF INVERSION OF SUBJECT AND PREDICATE

inversion type	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
n action	0	22	7	4	0	4	99	88
action frequency	0.00	0.57	0.14	0.05	0.00	0.08	0.56	0.52
n analysis	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1
analysis frequency	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.11	0.07
n background	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
background frequency	0.01	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00

**Key:** n = total number found in action / analysis / background level of commentary; action / analysis / background frequency = frequency per 100 words proportionally weighted against figures in Table 4.

Table 75 shows that inversions occur almost exclusively in the action level of commentary, which puts the overall results into perspective. Play-by-play reporting appears to neutralise the effects the nature of the sport – in this case, horse racing in particular – might have on the commentary. Green draws the same conclusion when she states that even in a passionate commentary analysing an event that has just happened, the ‘sportscaster is much more likely to use uninverted forms’ rather than inversions (1982: 132). De Wit also concludes that inversions most often occur during play-by-reporting on ongoing actions (2016: 121). The figures collated in this study support these statements.

### 7.4.6.3. Summary of analysis of inversion of subject and predicate

In short, examining the commentaries in their entirety and differentiating between the three levels of commentary produces different findings. The observation that horse racing commentators generally produce more inversions is only true based on the overall scores. As far as play-by-play reporting is concerned, there is little difference between the sports, broadcast medium or the decade in which the recordings were made. Moreover, the use of inversions is also less common than anticipated.



## 7.5. Prosody

### 7.5.1. Increased volume<sup>22</sup>

#### 7.5.1.1. Overall analysis of increased volume

Sports commentaries are readily associated with utterances spoken at increased volume. According to Ferguson (1983: 153), increased volume is indeed a characteristic and distinctive feature of sports commentaries.

TABLE 76 TOTAL INCREASED VOLUME

type	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
increased volume	n	n	n	n	n	n	n	n
passages	18	41	76	53	21	63	43	52
total words	51	158	327	282	59	306	1483	1610
Ø length	2.83	3.85	4.30	5.32	2.81	4.86	34.49	30.96

**Key:** passages = number of passages spoken at 70 decibels or above; total words = total number of words in loud passages; Ø length = average length of passages spoken at increased volume.

The results in Table 76, however, show that the differences are considerable within each of the sports type commentaries. The scores differ widely in both the number of occurrences of increased volume and words spoken loudly. There is a marked difference between the ball sports and horse racing. As regards the latter, the volume of the commentators' speech rises by far most often and most extensively. They produce about five times as many loudly spoken words when compared to the other sports commentators. Furthermore, loud passages in horse racing commentaries are, on average, more than six times longer than in the other sports commentaries. The analysis of the commentaries showed that there is a very distinctive pattern in horse racing commentaries: typically, there is a steady increase in volume during the progression of the race. The rise in volume culminates when the leading horses advance towards the finishing line. Wilson states that there is an increase of up to an octave during a horse race, whereas after the finish there is an immediate drop in volume (2000: 156). The findings are also in accordance with Burgschmidt's (1983: 107) study of radio broadcasts of horse racing, in which he states that the broadcasters tend to speak very loudly when the horses approach the finishing line. Trouvain et al. reached the same conclusions in their investigation into horse

<sup>22</sup> The following software was used to measure the volume of the recordings: Praat (version 6.0.49) ([www.praat.org](http://www.praat.org)), with passages spoken at 70 decibels or above defined as 'loud'.

racing commentaries (2000: 88f.).

(68) EXAMPLE

A: Kingsgate Native heading down already to the last furlong as they do so Justice Day Caspian Prince and the light blue jacket of Ridge Ranger this trio together STEPS IS A LENGTH BEHIND THEM AND CLOSING IN FOURTH PLACE WINDFIRE COMING IN ON THE FAR SIDE RIDGE RANGER IS JUST IN FRONT WINDFIRE STEPS COMING TO JOIN THEM JUSTICE DAY THERE AS WELL THE FOUR OF THEM HIT THE LINE TOGETHER they're about two lengths clear from Dutch Masterpiece back in fifth [1]

B: Photo finish photo finish

(App. II.G.13)

Example (68) is a good illustration of how horse racing commentators modulate the quality of their voice. As the race progresses, first the tempo climbs and then the volume increases. As soon as the leading horses have crossed the finishing line – *THE FOUR OF THEM HIT THE LINE TOGETHER* – the volume falls immediately. The long passages uttered at a high volume also account for the long average length results in Table 76. Most horse races analysed for this paper follow this pattern (cf. App. I.G, I.H, II.G, II.H). The only instances of increased volume found before the final stages of a race occur immediately after a horse has fallen or a jockey has been unseated.

Among the ball sports, football features the highest scores. Two factors prompt the commentators to markedly raise their voices: first, the excitement of a situation in which a goal is or might be scored; second, the suddenness or surprise of an action on the pitch. Both of these factors are prominent in football, where goals can be scored from many different positions and the ball can appear anywhere on the pitch within a matter of seconds.

(69) EXAMPLE

B: Nelson [1] Taylor [1] Draper [1] Townsend [1] in with a SHOOTING CHANCE

(App. I.C.3)

In this example, a sequence of passes is being described when *Townsend* suddenly has the opportunity to score a goal. Situations of this type are more likely to arise in football matches than in games of cricket and tennis, as the play in these sports is more predictable than in football. In addition, the fact that cricket and tennis matches are played for a minimum of several hours, if not days (cf. ch. 6.), often results in any dramatic or exciting situations being separated by long periods of less remarkable and less critical action. The cricket and tennis commentators, consequently, have fewer opportunities to raise their voices above the average

level of volume.

As regards the broadcast medium, there is a noteworthy finding in Table 76. The difference between television and radio is most marked in the cricket and tennis commentaries – the most repetitive sports with the fewest spells of actual playing time. The very low figures of the televised texts suggest that the commentators pick the moments in which they raise their voices carefully. It appears that they do not make any extra effort to introduce excitement where it is not present. The same cannot be said of the radio commentators. Assuming that the number of events that can be considered to be surprising and exciting is roughly the same across all of the games recorded, it can be concluded that the radio commentators, particularly in tennis, add a certain level of excitement to their commentaries.

TABLE 77 1996-2002 INCREASED VOLUME

type	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
increased volume	n	n	n	n	n	n	n	n
passages	8	17	33	24	10	37	22	28
total words	21	38	82	74	25	161	806	807
Ø length	2.63	2.24	2.48	3.08	2.50	4.35	36.64	28.82

**Key:** passages = number of passages spoken at 70 decibels or above; total words = total number of words in loud passages; Ø length = average length of passages spoken at increased volume.

TABLE 78 2013-2015 INCREASED VOLUME

type	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
increased volume	n	n	n	n	n	n	n	n
passages	10	24	43	29	11	26	21	24
total words	30	120	245	208	34	145	677	803
Ø length	3.00	5.00	5.70	7.17	3.09	5.58	32.24	33.46

**Key:** passages = number of passages spoken at 70 decibels or above; total words = total number of words in loud passages; Ø length = average length of passages spoken at increased volume.

The diachronic comparison shows that the patterns for horse racing commentaries established above did not change between the two sets of recordings. However, a significant change can be observed in the results of both football text types and the radio cricket commentaries. The commentators of these text types speak at an increased volume for significantly longer nowadays when compared to 20 years ago. As regards football, the more athletic and swift nature of the modern game is possibly an explanation for this shift. The doubling in average length of loud passages in cricket reporting on the radio cannot be explained by any changes in the nature of the sport. It seems that the tendency of the radio commentators to supplement their

commentaries with shifts in volume, as observed in Table 76, is largely due to a fairly recent development.

What has so far been stated about passages of increased volume strongly indicates that most of these instances are to be found in the descriptions of ongoing actions, i.e. in the action level of commentary. The following table will serve to verify this assumption.

### 7.5.1.2. Distribution analysis of increased volume

TABLE 79 WEIGHTED DISTRIBUTION OF INCREASED VOLUME

type increased volume	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
n action	18	33	67	51	10	58	40	43
action frequency	1.35	0.86	1.34	0.68	2.01	1.18	0.23	0.25
n analysis	0	3	7	1	11	3	1	4
analysis frequency	0.00	0.08	0.10	0.02	0.13	0.05	0.11	0.28
n background	0	5	2	1	0	2	2	5
background frequency	0.00	0.04	0.02	0.01	0.00	0.02	0.14	0.33

**Key:** n = total number found in action / analysis / background level of commentary; action / analysis / background frequency = frequency per 100 words proportionally weighted against figures in Table 4.

The aforementioned assumption is certainly correct in relation to Table 79: a clear majority of passages uttered at increased volume are located in the action sections. The results are uniform, which is remarkable given the substantial differences observed in the overall results. However, as has been previously made evident, the effects and requirements of the action level of commentary largely nullify any other influences.

It might be somewhat unexpected to find loud passages in the analysis and background information parts of the commentaries. A closer look, however, reveals that these are usually highly specific parts of the commentary.

#### (70) EXAMPLE

A: [O]ther full time scores Celtic nil Hamburg TWO:

(App. I.D.1)

In the passage from which example (70) is quoted, the sports commentator provides results from a number of football games that are taking place on the same night. One match in particular, *Celtic* versus *Hamburg*, finished with a very unexpected and – from the perspective of the Scottish audience – displeasing result. Thus, the commentator expresses this surprising piece of news by uttering the word *TWO*: very loudly, and elongating and stressing it heavily.

### **7.5.1.3. Summary of analysis of increased volume**

The above analysis allows for the following conclusions to be drawn. First, the weighted distribution analysis shows that the commentators in all text types mainly tend to raise their voices when reporting on exciting situations at the moment of their occurrence on the field. Therefore, the amount of actual playing or racing action is the decisive factor that sets the sports apart. Second, play-by-play reporting is largely homogenous in terms of increased volume. Finally, there appears to be a tendency for cricket radio commentators to inject drama and emotion into the proceedings by increasing the volume for longer than one would require with regard to the scene being commentated upon.

## 7.5.2. Increased tempo<sup>23</sup>

### 7.5.2.1. Overall analysis of increased tempo

TABLE 80 TOTAL INCREASED TEMPO

type	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
	n	n	n	n	n	n	n	n
passages	11	108	77	66	3	105	43	43
total words	47	687	392	652	9	1215	3002	1976
Ø length	4.27	6.36	5.09	9.88	3.00	11.57	69.81	45.95

**Key:** passages = number of passages spoken at 180 words per minute or above (cf. footnote 16); words = total number of words in fast passages; Ø length = average length of passages spoken quickly.

Hoyle (1991: 436) and Wilson (2000: 154) both state that broad shifts in tempo are characteristic of sports commentating. According to the results in Table 80, this is certainly true for horse racing commentaries. Between four and six times as many words are uttered at increased tempo in horse racing commentaries in comparison to the ball sports commentaries. Interestingly, the actual number of passages spoken at increased speed is comparably low, from which it can be deduced that the commentators speak at increased tempo for longer periods. Example (68), which features in the preceding chapter, is an illustration of this finding. Towards the end of a race, the speakers will increase the tempo – in keeping with the horses, who usually reach top speed in the final stretch – thereby building up to a grandstand finish. Although the number of passages is exactly the same, TV commentators produce even longer passages than their radio counterparts. Since the tempo usually drops almost instantly once the winning horse has crossed the finishing line, it can therefore be concluded that the TV commentators increase their reporting tempo earlier than the radio commentators; that is to say their rate of speech escalates at a comparatively early stage of the race, when the horses are still a considerable distance from the finishing line.

In the three ball sports, the radio texts contain significantly more words uttered at increased speed and substantially longer passages on average. The following examples illustrate when and how shifts in speed occur in the two text genres:

<sup>23</sup> The following software was used to measure the tempo of the recordings: Sobolsoft (version 7.0) ([www.sobolsoft.com](http://www.sobolsoft.com)), with passages spoken at 180 words per minute or above defined as ‘fast’.

## (71) EXAMPLE

A: Giggs again down the line very precise [1] can Solskjaer get there [2] it's a corner [2]  
(App. I.C.4)

## (72) EXAMPLE

A: [I]t's very effective down this left-hand side as Solskjaer goes to the for the return ball by the corner flag fed by Giggs oh he [...]  
(App. I.D.3)

In these two examples, exactly the same events are commented on; example (71) is taken from the televised broadcast, while example (72) is an excerpt from the radio commentary. The difference is obvious: Only a few words are uttered quickly by the TV commentator to describe the completion of the action carried out by *Solskjaer*. In the radio text, on the other hand, almost the entire series of actions performed by the player is reported on, with 18 words uttered at high speed.

As has been previously observed with regard to other linguistic features, the obligation of the radio sports commentator to provide a complete account of the events on the field leads to the considerable difference between the TV and radio texts. The listeners depend on the commentators to convey the sense of velocity and excitement of the game in order to recreate it in their own imagination. On TV, on the other hand, the viewers are able to observe all of the actions and the speed at which they are carried out. As a consequence, the commentators often only speak quickly when they point out the important result of a player's efforts, as in example (71). There is an elongated time lapse between the batting action and the next bowling action, and the end of a game and the next serving action in cricket and tennis, respectively. Therefore, the television commentators are rarely under pressure to speak quickly in order to be ready for the next ball to be bowled or the next serve to be made, which explains the very low figure for these text types in Table 70.

TABLE 81 1996-2002 INCREASED TEMPO

type	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
increased tempo	n	n	n	n	n	n	n	n
passages	4	50	25	37	1	66	17	11
total words	12	263	107	212	2	898	1385	860
Ø length	3.00	5.26	4.28	5.73	2.00	13.61	81.47	78.18

**Key:** passages = number of passages spoken at 180 words per minute or above (cf. footnote 16); words = total number of words in fast passages; Ø length = average length of passages spoken quickly.

TABLE 82 2013-2015 INCREASED TEMPO

type	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
	n	n	n	n	n	n	n	n
passages	7	58	52	29	2	39	26	32
total words	29	424	285	440	7	317	1617	1116
Ø length	4.14	7.31	5.48	15.17	3.50	8.13	62.19	34.88

**Key:** passages = number of passages spoken at 180 words per minute or above (cf. footnote 16); words = total number of words in fast passages; Ø length = average length of passages spoken quickly.

When comparing the two sets of recordings, it can be noted that there has been considerable development in the radio commentaries relating to the ball sports. In both cricket and football, today's commentators utter twice as many words at an increased tempo as their counterparts 20 years ago. Both sports have undergone a certain level of transformation, especially football with its increased athleticism. However, the difference between the older and the more recent scores also appears to be due to commentators adding excitement to their commentaries by means of an increase in tempo. In the tennis commentaries on the radio, on the other hand, today's commentators utter considerably fewer words at an increased tempo.

The difference between the older and newer recordings in the horse racing commentaries seems sizeable at first sight. In actual fact, there was no significant change. As has been mentioned above, the stereotypical pattern of a horse race commentary in terms of prosody is a gradual increase in tempo until the end of the race. Although the size of the corpus is the same for both sets of recordings, more individual races were recorded for the more recent texts. This results in a higher number of passages spoken at an increased tempo, which, in turn, lowers the average length of the passages.

Akin to the passages spoken loudly, one would expect to find the majority of the passages uttered quickly in the action level of commentary, which will be investigated in the following table.



### 7.5.2.2. Distribution analysis of increased tempo

TABLE 83 WEIGHTED DISTRIBUTION OF INCREASED TEMPO

type increased tempo	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
n action	10	106	73	60	1	103	38	35
action frequency	0.75	2.77	1.46	0.81	0.20	2.10	0.21	0.21
n analysis	1	0	4	5	2	2	1	4
analysis frequency	0.02	0.00	0.06	0.09	0.02	0.03	0.11	0.28
n background	0	2	0	1	0	0	4	4
background frequency	0.00	0.02	0.00	0.01	0.00	0.00	0.29	0.27

**Key:** n = total number of words spoken quickly found in action /analysis / background level of commentary; action / analysis / background frequency = frequency per 100 words proportionally weighted against figures in Table 4.

Table 83 proves indeed that the passages spoken at high speed are almost exclusively encountered in the action parts. The tendency all sports commentators appear to have in common is to speak quickly only when referring to ongoing actions. Examining the action level of commentary in isolation produces evidence to prove previous observations. The constraints and time pressure of play-by-play commentating largely negate all other effects on the language produced.

### 7.5.2.3. Summary of analysis of increased tempo

In short, the following conclusions can be drawn regarding the use of increased tempo. First, the broadcast medium affects the commentary in the ball sports. The radio commentators use prosodic features more frequently and for longer periods when compared to TV commentators. Second, horse racing commentaries follow a rather strict pattern that is not affected by the broadcast medium. There is a steady increase in tempo until the end of the race. Finally, the action level of commentary presents a uniform picture. The commentators' use of prosody hardly differs, irrespective of the sport in question or the broadcast medium.

### 7.5.3. Increased tempo and volume

The transcribed texts present a certain number of passages that are uttered both at increased volume and increased tempo. When these two prosodic features co-occur, the level of excitement and drama is at its highest.

#### 7.5.3.1. Overall analysis of increased tempo and volume

TABLE 84 TOTAL INCREASED TEMPO AND VOLUME

type	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
increased tempo and volume	n	n	n	n	n	n	n	n
passages	2	26	46	45	2	28	27	32
total words	11	98	180	251	3	89	1053	924
Ø length	5.50	3.77	3.91	5.58	1.50	3.18	39.00	28.88

**Key:** passages = number of passages spoken at 180 words per minute or above and 70 decibels or above; words = total number of words in fast passages; Ø length = average length of passages spoken quickly.

According to Table 84, there is a substantial difference between horse racing and the ball sports. Horse racing commentators sound significantly more animated across the entire commentary. Moreover, the highly animated passages are considerably longer than in the other sports. Example (73) is typical of the final phase of a horse race.

#### (73) EXAMPLE

- A: [T]hey run down the home straight and approach the last two furlongs Consort quickening from the front Make Believe is not picking up so well Gleneagles on the outside now beginning his run as they head down towards the final furlong and a half CONSORT AND FRANKIE DETTORI CHASED DOWN NOW BY GLENEAGLES AND RYAN MOORE ON THE OUTSIDE AS THEY ENTER THE FINAL FURLONG AND GLENEAGLES STRIKES THE FRONT FROM CONSORT RUNNING ON IS LATHARNACH IN THIRD PLACE BUT RACING UP TOWARDS THE LINE WHAT A GORGEOUS COLT THIS IS AND GLENEAGLES WINS THE ST JAMES'S PALACE drew away to win by two and a half lengths won it comfortably tight second Latharnach on the outside of Consort

(App. II.G.4)

As the race draws to its end, the commentator employs two prosodic features. First, he raises the tempo – Consort quickening [...] – and second, he also raises the volume – CONSORT AND FRANKIE DETTORI. He then maintains the increased tempo and volume until the winning horse crosses the line – GLENEAGLES WINS THE ST JAMES'S PALACE. The commentator then drops the volume immediately and subsequently decreases the tempo after one more word

has been uttered at an increased rate. Any further actions after the winning horse has come in are then uttered at standard tempo and volume. The broadcast medium has little effect on how frequently these passages occur. The same is true for football, albeit at a substantially lower level in terms of number of words.

As far as cricket and tennis are concerned, there is a marked difference between the TV and radio commentaries. The radio commentators seem to underline their commentaries more often with parallel shifts in volume and tempo, thereby creating a high level of excitement and tension for the listeners. The transfer of the unfolding drama without the visual input of televised images is probably one of the most salient features of radio commentating, and adjusting the volume and tempo of speech is a very effective means of doing so.

TABLE 85 1996-2002 INCREASED TEMPO AND VOLUME

type	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
increased tempo and volume	n	n	n	n	n	n	n	n
passages	1	6	14	18	1	21	12	10
total words	9	28	43	81	2	62	419	249
Ø length	9.00	4.67	3.07	4.50	2.00	2.95	34.92	24.90

**Key:** passages = number of passages spoken at 180 words per minute or above and 70 decibels or above; words = total number of words in fast passages; Ø length = average length of passages spoken quickly.

TABLE 86 2013-2015 INCREASED TEMPO AND VOLUME

type	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
increased tempo and volume	n	n	n	n	n	n	n	n
passages	1	17	32	27	1	7	15	22
total words	5	70	137	170	1	27	634	675
Ø length	5.00	4.12	4.28	6.30	1.00	3.86	42.27	30.68

**Key:** passages = number of passages spoken at 180 words per minute or above and 70 decibels or above; words = total number of words in fast passages; Ø length = average length of passages spoken quickly.

The diachronic comparison shows a distinct shift in the football and horse racing commentaries. In both, the more recent set of recordings features significantly more words uttered at increased tempo and volume. This might be a reflection of the change both sports experienced during the period between the sets of recordings; both football and horse racing became more dynamic and rapid. This resulted in the commentators adapting their use of prosodic features accordingly.

### 7.5.3.2. Distribution analysis of increased tempo and volume

TABLE 87 WEIGHTED DISTRIBUTION OF INCREASED TEMPO AND VOLUME

type	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
n action	2	26	42	44	1	26	24	25
action frequency	0.15	0.68	0.84	0.59	0.20	0.53	0.14	0.15
n analysis	0	0	4	1	1	2	0	3
analysis frequency	0.00	0.00	0.06	0.02	0.01	0.03	0.00	0.21
n background	0	0	0	0	0	0	3	4
background frequency	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.21	0.27

**Key:** n = total number of words spoken quickly found in action /analysis / background level of commentary; action / analysis / background frequency = frequency per 100 words proportionally weighted against figures in Table 4.

The prosodic features of simultaneously increased volume and tempo are similar in that they occur predominantly in the action level of commentary. Within this level the weighted frequencies are homogenous. Once again, play-by-play reporting largely nullifies the impact of the sport and the broadcast media. The few occurrences in the analysis and background information levels of commentary mainly ensue immediately after a play-by-play utterance has ended as in the following example:

(74) EXAMPLE

A: TRIP TO PARIS TAKES ASCOT GOLD FOR GRAHAM LEE AND ED DUNLOP  
second Kingfisher flying home ahead of Forgotten Rules

(App. II.H.5)

The initial phrase TRIP TO PARIS TAKES ASCOT GOLD is followed by the passage FOR GRAHAM LEE AND ED DUNLOP, introducing a piece of background information detailing the name of the jockey and the stables to which the horse belongs. This is an illustration of how the elevated prosodic level has not entirely calmed down despite the fact that the race had been decided. Therefore, the following few words were still uttered loudly and quickly although the race proper was by then over.

### **7.5.3.3. Summary of analysis of increased tempo and volume**

In summary, there are three dominant trends. First, the more ongoing actions are reported on during a commentary, the more simultaneous increases in both tempo and volume tend to occur, hence the particularly high scores for horse racing. Second, the cricket and tennis radio commentators seem to compensate for the lack of visual input by increasing the volume and speed of their commentaries when decisive actions take place on the pitch or court. Finally, none of the above has any considerable impact when only the action level of commentary is examined. The characteristics of this level of commentary overrides all other influences.

### 7.5.4. Paralinguistic features

In their examination of a cricket match broadcast on the radio, Crystal et al. (1969: 126-131) find that the commentators make use of different paralinguistic features. The texts analysed in this paper are less diverse in this respect: the only paralinguistic feature observed is laughter by the sports commentators; no instances of hissing, sighing, whistling, etc. were found. According to Attardo, laughter fulfils different functions in conversations. As a response to laughter one can either join in or ignore the laughter and take a regular conversational turn (2015: 171). Moreover, laughter is not always a reliable indicator of humour (Attardo 2015: 182).

#### 7.5.4.1. Overall analysis of paralinguistic features

TABLE 88 TOTAL PARALINGUISTIC FEATURES

type	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
paralinguistic f.	n	n	n	n	n	n	n	n
total	12	42	7	19	53	34	0	9

Key: paralinguistic f. = paralinguistic features; total = total number of paralinguistic features found.

Table 88 shows that the tennis and cricket texts feature most instances of laughter while the horse racing commentaries feature hardly any. It appears that the commentators of the sports containing the fewest continuous spells of ongoing action produce the most instances of laughter.

#### (75) EXAMPLE

B: Shirt off

A: No not mine stayed on I'm saving that for the TMS calendar [laughter] here comes [1] Gurney bowls and that's worked out down to third man by Shikhar Dhawan down to

B: I'll tell you something

A: Steven Finn for a single 3 without loss

B: That's not a bad idea

A: Have I have I clocked on to something now Adam Mountford our producer is looking [laughter] worried [laughter] well you know the Calender Girls did it tough and all with a score card in front of you

B: I think I'd be July

(emphasis added) (App. II.B.2)

Example (75) is typical of both cricket and tennis commentaries in that the commentators are joking about something unrelated to the game they are watching, in this case, a nude calendar they might pose for in a similar vein to the film *Calender Girls*. While they are having this conversation, the speaker who has just laughed comments on a bowling action that is taking

place, analyses it and provides the current score – *3 without loss* – and then continues with the amusing idea they were developing. Passages of this type rarely occur in football and horse racing commentating. The commentators of these sports cannot afford to spend time on humorous conversation lest they miss out on events on the pitch or racecourse. The few instances of laughter found in horse racing are usually of the following type:

(76) EXAMPLE

A: And er [1] Lucida broke a little bit awkwardly by the looks of things [laughter] and Terror is towards the back of the field as they begin to settle

(emphasis added) (App. II.H.3)

Attardo labels this type of laughter ‘within speech laughter’ (2015: 171). The commentator intersperses his utterance with laughter and then continues with his commentary. Instances of laughter such as this are far less time-consuming and are thus found across all text types.

TABLE 89 1996-2002 PARALINGUISTIC FEATURES

type	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
	n	n	n	n	n	n	n	n
total	0	10	6	13	31	15	0	6

Key: paralinguistic f. = paralinguistic features; total = total number of paralinguistic features found.

TABLE 90 2013-2015 PARALINGUISTIC FEATURES

type	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
	n	n	n	n	n	n	n	n
total	12	32	1	6	22	19	0	3

Key: paralinguistic f. = paralinguistic features; total = total number of paralinguistic features found.

The diachronic comparison of the two sets of recordings shows that today’s football commentators tend to produce less laughter while the cricket commentators produce significantly more. As far as football is concerned, the more athletic nature of the modern game possibly serves as an explanation for this slight decrease. Regarding cricket commentating, it appears that the commentators in the current era are keener to fill the gaps in action on the pitch with humorous episodes.

### 7.5.4.2. Distribution analysis of paralinguistic features

TABLE 91 WEIGHTED DISTRIBUTION OF PARALINGUISTIC FEATURES

paralinguistic f.	cricket		football		tennis		horse racing	
	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio	TV	radio
n action	0	4	1	3	2	2	0	4
action frequency	0.00	0.10	0.02	0.04	0.40	0.04	0.00	0.02
n analysis	4	8	3	4	18	7	0	0
analysis frequency	0.08	0.21	0.04	0.08	0.22	0.11	0.00	0.00
n background	8	30	3	12	33	25	0	5
background frequency	0.06	0.24	0.04	0.17	0.30	0.28	0.00	0.33

**Key:** n = total number of words spoken fast found in action /analysis / background level of commentary; action / analysis / background frequency = frequency per 100 words proportionally weighted against figures in Table 4.

Table 91 presents a reversal of the findings observed in most previous weighted distribution analyses. Only very few paralinguistic features were found in the action level of commentary. The largest proportion of paralinguistic features was located in the background information passages. The action passages of all text types are very similar in that the commentators tend to laugh only very rarely when describing ongoing actions. Once again, the constraints of play-by-play reporting do not allow for much differentiation between the different sports or broadcast media.

### 7.5.4.3. Summary of analysis of paralinguistic features

In summary, three distinctive trends were detected in this chapter. In general, instances of laughter are caused by the need to entertain the audience during spells with fewer ongoing events on the pitch. Due to the nature of the sports, cricket and tennis commentators are most prone to this effect. The less ongoing action there is, the more laughter the commentators tend to produce. In addition, there has been a shift in cricket reporting on the radio towards a commentary interspersed with more humour in the last 20 years. Finally, laughter is conspicuous by its absence in the passages reporting on ongoing actions. This level of commentary is yet again very uniform.



## 8. Conclusion

### 8.1. Findings

Three questions were posed in order to verify the thesis stated at the beginning of this study. Based on the analysis of the frequency counts of the entire corpus, the following answers can be provided.

The first question concerns the effect the nature of the sport has on the language produced by sports commentators. In sum, there is a clear difference between cricket, football and tennis on the one hand, and horse racing on the other. Horse racing differs from the three other sports across all four linguistic dimensions investigated. The examination of the linguistic features revealed that horse racing tends to be at the extreme end of the scale of all four linguistic dimensions. The language of horse racing commentaries is less involved and more integrated than that of the cricket, football and tennis commentaries. Moreover, horse racing commentaries include more features typically associated with sports commentating style when compared to the other three sports. Finally, the amplitudes in terms of prosody tend to be most pronounced in horse racing commentaries. It can therefore be stated that the nature of the sport does have an effect on the language of the sports commentators.

As regards the question of what constitutes the nature of a sport, the examination of the corpus leads to the following conclusions. Whether a sport is played in teams or as an individual appears to be irrelevant. The differences that were observed between tennis and horse racing – both individual sports – are substantial. There appears, however, to be some significance in the type of sport: ball sport (cricket, football and tennis) vs. non-ball sport (horse racing). Ball sports are more tactical, less predictable and provide the protagonists with more opportunity to take a desired course of action than horse racing. Additionally, and perhaps most importantly, horse racing features a continuous and uninterrupted flow of ongoing action, which distinguishes it from the other sports and leads to the results observed in the analysis section. The fact that the frequency counts for the football texts tend to be more similar to the horse racing counts than those of cricket and tennis supports this notion since football is also closest to horse racing in terms of flow and continuity of ongoing action. Finally, the nature of the sport can also result in highly specific use of certain features and thus exert a distorting effect on the language produced by the commentators. The following illustrations of this finding were found in the corpus: the length of proper names in horse racing, the use of prepositions inherent in the procedures within a game, the use of the pronoun ‘it’ to refer to the ball, and sidetracking a fellow commentator into a conversation that is not related to the events on the field of play.

The second question investigates the effect the broadcast medium exerts on the language produced by sports commentators. Overall, the differences between television and radio broadcasts are not equally discernible in the four linguistic dimensions examined. In the dimension dealing with integration and fragmentation, for instance, no overarching or consistent tendencies can be detected. In the three remaining linguistic dimensions, however, variations can be observed. As regards the continuum of involvement and fragmentation, the commentaries produced on the radio show a higher degree of involvement than the televised commentaries. Furthermore, the radio commentators tend to produce a larger number of features belonging to the dimension of typical sports commentating style than the commentators on television. Lastly, as regards the prosody of the texts, the radio commentaries feature a more pronounced use of voice modulation when compared to the TV commentaries.

The areas where notable differences have been found suggest that the particularities of sports commentating on the radio have an effect on the language produced by the speakers. A number of requirements imposed on radio commentators – and largely absent in television commentating – have been identified as affecting the linguistic features investigated in this study. The radio commentators are subject to such requirements as a consequence of the lack of visual input inherent in the medium of radio. First, radio commentators strive to avoid spells of silence, including during stretches of no ongoing action on the pitch, court or racecourse. Second, radio commentators frequently make spatial references regarding the position of the ball, players or horses so as to facilitate the recreation of events in the minds of the listeners. Third, for the same reason, radio commentators tend to frequently name the event's protagonists by using their proper names.

The third question examines any diachronic development that may have occurred between the first set of recordings, made between 1996 and 2002, and the second set of recordings, made between 2013 and 2015. A number of trends can be identified, albeit with the caveat that the period of approximately 20 years between recordings is comparably short for meaningful conclusions regarding diachronic development to be drawn. Overall, a slight decrease in terms of involvement and integration seems to have occurred, most notably in the horse racing commentaries. Furthermore, a decrease in the number of disfluencies suggests that sports commentators have become, to some extent, more fluent in their commentaries during the period between the two sets of recordings. In addition, today's radio commentators, particularly when reporting on football and cricket, appear to utter more and longer passages at a high level of volume than radio commentators 20 years earlier.

Based on what is known about the development and changes television and radio commentating, as well as the four sports themselves, have undergone in the last 20 years, two conclusions may be drawn. First, an improved athleticism of the protagonists and a resulting increased dynamism in the sports – most notably in horse racing and, to a lesser extent, in football – have had an impact on the language produced by the commentators. Second, the fact that commentators have included a degree of additional prosody in their commentaries in recent times is possibly down to the growing competition of real-time written online sports commentating.

In order to verify the thesis – that these effects vary depending on the level of commentating – the analysis of the weighted distribution of all linguistic features should be taken into account. The answers to the three questions stated earlier indicate that – based on the commentaries in their entirety – the nature of the sport as well as the nature of the broadcast medium affect the language of sports commentating along the linguistic dimensions and features examined in the scope of the present corpus. Moreover, changes in the use of certain linguistic features have occurred in the last 20 years.

However, individually examining the three levels of commentating defined at the outset reveals the following: the aforementioned influences are either minimal or non-existent in the action level of commentary. Most results in the analysis section of this paper suggest that both the effects of the nature of the sport and the effects of the broadcast medium are negligible when the sports commentators perform play-by-play commentating. The only features that are not cancelled out in the action level of commentary are formulaic expressions and repetitive patterns employed throughout the match or race.

There are two factors in reporting on ongoing actions that negate most other effects. First, the time constraints during play-by-play reporting are equally strict irrespective of the sport or the broadcast medium. The reason for this is that the actions reported on are performed rapidly, often simultaneously and in parallel with several players or horses. Second, the commentators presuppose that their audience is very knowledgeable. The viewers or listeners are assumed to be very familiar with the sport, the rules, the protagonists and the event they are watching or listening to. As a result, the commentators focus solely on play-by-play reporting, which, in essence, does not differ considerably from one sport to another.

In the introduction to this paper, the question was raised as to whether the analysed text types constitute a register (cf. ch. 2.2.). According to the definition by Biber et al. (2009: 18f.), none of the text types examined can be termed a register. However, on the basis of all the results and analyses within the scope of this paper, it can be maintained that the play-by-play level of

commentary fulfils the criteria of a register. Biber and Conrad state that the characteristics of a register are ‘situational and linguistic’ (2009: 36) and Lewandowski specifies that ‘situational context calls for the choice of specific language items’ (2008: 30). Within the scope of the present corpus, play-by-play reporting has been shown to be both situationally as well as linguistically homogenous in many respects.

## **8.2. Suggestions for further research**

There are a number of areas that would warrant further investigation as an extension of this study. Based on the present investigation, three areas in particular seem promising. First, a number of other sports could be examined in order to verify the findings and conclusions of this paper. It would be especially interesting to analyse transcriptions of other racing sports as horse racing is the only non-ball sport included in this study. Boat racing, track athletics or motor racing may be potential subjects of research. Second, studying the action level of commentary in isolation might provide more detailed conclusions. In particular, analysing the frequencies and sequences of different parts of speech could be enlightening. Third, comparing live television and radio commentaries with real-time written online sports commentaries might be considered. The latter, despite being written, can be considered a modern-day hybrid of spoken and written commentating. It would therefore be interesting to investigate similarities and differences.

## **9. Bibliography**

### **I. Primary Sources**

#### **TV Recordings (chronologically listed according to sport)**

##### **Cricket**

England v Pakistan. 9.8.1996. BBC2

Lancashire v Yorkshire. 13.8.1996. BBC 2

England v Pakistan. 22.8.1996. BBC 2

Essex v Lancashire. 7.9.1996. BBC 1

England v India. 16.8.2014. Sky Sports 2

England v India. 2.9.2014. ESPN Star Sports

England v Australia. 13.9.2015. Skysports 2

##### **Football**

Manchester United v Blackburn Rovers. 25.8.1996. Sky Sports

Newcastle United v Halmstad BK. 10.9.1996. BBC1

Helsingborg v Aston Villa. 24.9.1996. BBC1

Manchester Utd. v Rapid Vienna. 25.9.1996. ITV

Arsenal v Aston Villa. 30.5.2015. BBC 1

Barcelona v Juventus. 6.6.2015. ITV 1

##### **Tennis**

Tim Henman v. Sjeng Schalken. 29.6.2001. BBC2

Tim Henman v. Roger Federer. 4.7.2001. BBC2

Venus Williams v. Justine Henin. 8.7.2001. BBC2

Lleyton Hewitt v. Yevgeni Kafelnikov. 8.9.2001. Eurosport

Barbara Schett v. Anke Huber. 25.9.2001. Eurosport

Novak Djokovic v Andy Murray. 1.2.2015. BBC2

Jo-Wilfried Tsonga v Tomas Berdych. 31.5.2015. ITV4

Stan Wawrinka v Jo-Wilfried Tsonga. 5.6.2015. ITV4

Novak Djokovic v Andy Murray. 6.6.2015. ITV4

**Horse Racing**

Grand National. 7.4.2001. BBC2

Royal Ascot 4.20. 20.6.6.2001. BBC2

Newmarket 3.00. 23.6.2001. Channel 4

Doncaster 2.40. 24.6.2001. Channel 4

Doncaster 2.10. 30.6.2001. Channel 4

Doncaster 3.15. 1.7.2001. Channel 4

Curragh 3.30. 1.7.2001. BBC 2

Market Rasen 1.20. 6.7.2001. Channel 4

Newbury 1.30. 6.7.2001. BBC 2

Doncaster 1.55. 26.1.2002. Channel 4

Doncaster 2.30. 26.1.2002. Channel 4

Cheltenham 2.45. 26.1.2002. Channel 4

Doncaster 3.05. 26.1.2002. Channel 4

Grand National. 6.4.2013. Channel 4

Grand National. 11.4.2014. Channel 4

Grand National. 11.4.2015. Channel 4

Royal Ascot St. James's Palace Stakes. 16.6.2015. Channel 4

Royal Ascot King's Stand Stakes. 16.6.2015. Channel 4

Royal Ascot Prince of Wales Stakes. 17.6.2015. Channel 4

Royal Ascot Gold Cup. 18.6.2015. Channel 4

Royal Ascot Coronation Stakes. 19.6.2015. Channel 4

Royal Ascot Diamond Jubilee Stakes. 20.6.2015. Channel 4

Goodwood 2.35 Bonham's Thoroughbred Stakes. 31.7.2015. Channel 4

Goodwood 3.10 Betfred Mile. 31.7.2015. Channel 4

Goodwood 3.45 King George Stakes. 31.7.2015. Channel 4

Newbury 3.25. 19.9.2015. Channel 4

Ayr 3.45. 19.9.2015. Channel 4

## **Radio Recordings (chronologically listed according to sport)**

### **Cricket**

England v Pakistan. 31.8.1996. BBC Radio 5 Live

Essex v Lancashire. 7.9.1996. BBC Radio 5 Live

England v India. 15.8.2014. BBC Radio 5 Live

England v India. 2.9.2014. BBC Radio 5 Live

England v Australia. 30.7.2015. BBC Radio 5 Live

### **Football**

Newcastle Utd. v Halmstad BK. 10.9.1996. BBC Radio 5 Live

Helsingborg v Aston Villa. 24.9.1996. BBC Radio 5 Live

Manchester Utd. v Rapid Vienna. 25.9.1996. BBC Radio 5 Live

Arsenal v Chelsea. 26.4.2015. BBC 5 Live

Barcelona v Juventus. 6.6.2015. BBC 5 Live

### **Tennis**

Tim Henman v. Sjeng Schalken. 29.6.2001. BBC Radio 5

Tim Henman v. Roger Federer. 4.7.2001. BBC Radio 5

Venus Williams v. Justine Henin. 8.7.2001. BBC Radio 5

Novak Djokovic v Andy Murray. 5.6.2015. BBC Radio 5 Live Sports Extra

Novak Djokovic v Marian Cilic. 11.9.2015. BBC Radio 5 Live Sports Extra

### **Horse Racing**

Grand National. 7.4.2001. BBC Radio 5 Live

Royal Ascot 4.20. 20.6.2001. BBC Radio 5 Live

Curragh 3.30. 1.7.2001. BBC Radio 5 Live

Cheltenham 2.45. 26.1.2002. BBC Radio 5 Live

Cheltenham 3.20. 26.1.2002. BBC Radio 5 Live

Aintree Hurdle 2.55. 6.4.2002. BBC Radio 5 Live

Grand National. 6.4.2002. BBC Radio 5 Live

Sandown 3.50 Bet 365 Gold Cup. 25.4.2015. RacingFM

Newmarket 3.00. 3.5.2015. RacingFM

Newmarket 3.40. 3.5.2015. RacingFM

Ascot Prince of Wales Stakes. 17.6.2015. RacingFM

Ascot Gold Cup. 18.6.2015. RacingFM

Ludlow 2.10 Welcome Back to Ludlow Juvenile Maiden Hurdle. 7.10.2015. RacingFM

Nottingham 2.30 EBF 32Red Nursery Stakes. 7.10.2015. RacingFM

Nottingham 3.05 EBF 32Red Casino Maiden Stakes. 7.10.2015. RacingFM

Nottingham 3.35 EBF Stallions 32 Red Nursery Handicap Stakes. 7.10.2015. RacingFM

Wincanton 2.25 Bruton Novices' Handicap Hurdle. 16.10.2015. RacingFM

Wincanton 3.00 Wincanton Handicap Chase. 16.10.2015. RacingFM

Fakenham 2.15 Dereham Conditional Jockeys' Selling Handicap Hurdle. 16.10.2015.

RacingFM

Fakenham 2.50 Hal Halton Novices Chase. 16,10.2015. RacingFM

Fakenham 3.25 Rosalie Monbiot 80th Birthday Celebration Novices' Hurdle. 16.10.2015.

RacingFM



## II. Print references

- Arthurs, James. 1984. "Lexicography and Linguistic Change: Canada and the World Cup." *LEXeter '83 Proceedings*, 42-50.
- Arthurs, James. 1988. "Terminology versus Jargon: Canadian Hockey Talk." In Alan R. Thomas, ed. *Methods in Dialectology: Proceedings of the Sixth International Conference held at the University College of North Wales, 3rd - 7th August 1987*. *Multilingual Matters* 48, 155-163.
- Attardo, Salvatore. 2015. "Humor and Laughter." In Deborah Tannen, Heidi E. Hamilton, and Deborah Schiffrin, eds: *The Handbook of Discourse Analysis*. 2nd ed. Chichester: Wiley, 168-188.
- Balzer-Siber, Marco. 2015. *Functional and Stylistic Features of Sports Announcer Talk: A Discourse Analysis of the Register of Major League Soccer Television Broadcasts*. East Tennessee State University. Electronic Theses and Dissertations. Paper 2515.  
<http://dc.etsu.edu/etd/2515>
- Beard, Adrian. 1998. *The Language of Sport*. London: Routledge.
- Beentjes, Johannes, Marianne van Oordt and Tom van der Voort. 2002. "How Television Commentary Affects Children's Judgements on Soccer Fouls." *Communication Research* 29: 31-45.
- Bell, Allan. 1984. "Language Style As Audience Design." *Language in Society* 13: 145-204.
- Biber, Douglas. 1986a. "Spoken and Written Textual Dimensions in English: Resolving the Contradictory Findings." *Language* 62: 384-414.
- Biber, Douglas. 1986b. "On the Investigation of Spoken/Written Differences." *Studia Linguistica* 40: 1-21.
- Biber, Douglas. 1988. *Variation across Speech and Writing*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Biber, Douglas. 1994. "An Analytical Framework for Register Studies." In Douglas Biber and Edward Finnegan, eds. *Sociolinguistic Perspectives on Register*. New York: Oxford University Press, 31-56.
- Biber, Douglas. 1995. *Dimensions of Register Variation. A Cross-linguistic Comparison*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

- Biber, Douglas, et al. 1999. *Longman Grammar of Spoken and Written English*. London: Longman.
- Biber, Douglas and Susan Conrad. 2009. *Register, Genre and Style*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Billings, Andrew C. & Fabio Tambosi. 2004. "Portraying the United States vs Portraying a Champion: US Network Bias in the 2002 World Cup." *International Review for the Sociology of Sport* 39: 157–165.
- Billings, Andrew C., Kelby K. Halone & Bryan E. Denham. 2002. "Man, That Was a Pretty Shot.: An Analysis of Gendered Broadcast Commentary Surrounding the 2000 Men's and Women's NCAA Final Four Basketball Championships." *Mass Communication & Society*: 295–315.
- Bishop, Hywel and Adam Jaworski. 2003. " 'We beat'em': Nationalism and the Hegemony of Homogeneity in the British Press Reportage of Germany versus England during Euro 2000." *Discourse & Society* 14: 243–271.
- Blakemore, Diane. 1992. *Understanding Utterances: An Introduction to Pragmatics*. Oxford: Blackwell.
- Boyle, Raymond. 2011. "Sport and the Media in the UK: the Long Revolution?" In Hans Westerbeek, ed. *Global Sport Business. Community Impacts of Commercial Sports*. New York: Routledge.
- Brezina, Vaclav. 2018. *Statistics in Corpus Linguistics A Practical Guide*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Brinton, Laurel J. 2015. "Historical Discourse Analysis." In Deborah Tannen, Heidi E. Hamilton, and Deborah Schiffrin, eds: *The Handbook of Discourse Analysis*. 2nd ed. Chichester: Wiley, 223-243.
- Brisard, Frank. 2002. "The English Present." In Frank Brisard, ed. *Grounding: The Epistemic Footing of Deixis and Reference*. Mouton de Gruyter, 251-297.
- Brognaux, Sandrine, Benjamin Picart, Thomas Drugman. 2013. "A New Prosody Annotation Protocol for Live Sports Commentaries." *Proceedings of the Annual Conference of the International Speech Communication Association, INTERSPEECH*: 1554-1558.

- Bruce, T. 2005. "Play-by-play announcing." In D. Levinson and K. Christensen, eds. *Berkshire Encyclopedia of World Sport* Vol. 3. Great Barrington, MA: Berkshire, 1188–1193.
- Burgschmidt, Ernst. 1971. *Studien zum Verbum in englischen Fachsprachen (Cricket)*. Diss. Erlangen. Erlangen: Hodl.
- Burgschmidt, Ernst. 1983. "Sportreportage: Pferderennen (horse racing) in England." *Anglistik und Englischunterricht* 21: 103-118.
- Carmeli, Yoram S. 2001. "Metaphorics and Nationalistic Sparks: The language of Israeli Soccer Journalism." *Semiotika* 135: 61–76.
- Cassidy, Rebecca. 2013. "Introduction." In Rebecca Cassidy, ed. *The Cambridge Companion to Horseracing*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Cardenas, Alexander. 2014. *The Global Journey of Football: From the Origins of the Beautiful Game to Its Recent Use As a Social Catalyst*. Hamburg: Anchor Academic Publishing.
- Chafe, Wallace L. 1982. "Integration and Involvement in Speaking, Writing, and Oral Literature." In Deborah Tannen, ed. *Spoken and Written Language: Exploring Orality and Literacy*. Norwood: Ablex, 35-53.
- Chafe, Wallace L. 1985. "Linguistic Differences Produced by Differences between Speaking and Writing." In David R. Olson, Nancy Torrance and Angela Hildyard, ed. *Literacy, Language and Learning: the Nature and Consequences of Reading and Writing*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 105-123.
- Challenger, Tom. 2012. *Football English: Soccer Vocabulary for Learners of English*. Wien: Eniko.
- Chovanec, Jan. 2008. "Enacting an Imaginary Community: Infotainment in Online Minute-by-minute Sports Commentaries." In Eva Lavric, Gerhard Pisek, Andrew Skinner and Wolfgang Stadler, eds. *The Linguistics of Football*. Language in Performance 38. Tübingen: Narr, 255-268.
- Chovanec, Jan. 2009. "Review on Football, Language and Linguistics. Time-critical Utterances in Unplanned Spoken Language, Their Structures and Their Relation to Non-linguistic Situations and Events." *Journal of Pragmatics* 41: 1855-1858.

- Chovanec, Jan. 2018. *The Discourse of Online Sportscasting: Constructing Meaning and Interaction in Live Text Commentary*. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Close, R.A. 1977. *English as a Foreign Language - Its Constant Grammatical Problems*. 2nd ed. London: George Allen & Unwin.
- Crystal, D. and Davy, D. 1969. *Investigating English Style*. English Language Series 1. London: Longman.
- Delin, Judy. 2000. *The Language of Everyday Life*. London: Sage
- Desmarais, F. and Bruce, T. 2008. "Blurring the boundaries of sports public relations: National stereotypes as sport announcers' public relations tools." *Public Relations Review* 34: 183-191.
- Desmarais, F. and T. Bruce. 2009. "The Power of the Local in Sports Broadcasting: a Cross-cultural Analysis of Rugby Commentary." *International Journal of Sport Communication* 2: 129-145.
- De Smet, Henrik and Eveline Vancayzeele. 2015. "Like a Rolling Stone: The Changing Use of English Premodifying Present Participles." *English Language and Linguistics* 19: 131-156.
- De Wit, A. 2016. "The Relation between Aspect and Inversion in English." *English Language and Linguistics* 20: 107-128.
- Eastman, Susan T. & Andrew C. Billings. 1999. "Gender Parity in the Olympics. Hyping Women Athletes, Favoring Men Athletes." *Journal of Sport & Social Issues* 23: 140–170.
- Eastman, Susan T. & Andrew C. Billings.. 2000. "Sportscasting and Sports Reporting: The Power of Gender Bias." *Journal of Sport & Social Issues* 24: 192–213.
- Eastman, Susan T. & Andrew C. Billings.. 2001. "Biased Voices of Sports: Racial and Gender Stereotyping in College Basketball Announcing." *Howard Journal of Communications* 12: 183–201.
- Eskenazi, Gerald. 1993. "Of Eating Rubber and Sno-cones." *Verbatim* 20: 22f.
- Ferguson, Charles A. 1983. "Sports Announcer Talk: Syntactic Aspects of Register Variation." *Language in Society* 12: 153-172.

- Fox, Barbara, Sandra Thompson, Cecilia Ford and Elizabeth Couper-Kuhlen. 2013. "Conversation Analysis in Linguistics." In Jack Sidnell and Tanya Stivers, eds. *Handbook of Conversation Analysis*. Oxford: Blackwell, 726-740.
- Franklin, Karl J. 1985. "Componential Analysis and the Game of Baseball." *Anthropological Linguistics* 27: 281-301.
- Friginal, Eric, O. Waugh, A. Titak. 2017. "Linguistic Variation in Facebook and Twitter Posts." In Eric Friginal, ed. *Studies in Corpus-Based Sociolinguistics*. London: Routledge, 342-362.
- Gerhardt, Cornelia. 2006. "Moving Closer to the Audience: Watching Football on Television." *Revista Alicantina de Estudios Ingleses* (Special issue on linguistics and media discourse) 19: 125-148.
- Gerhart, Cornelia. 2014. *Appropriating Live Televised Football through Talk*. Leiden: Brill.
- Ghadessy Mohsen. 1988. "The Language of Written Sports Commentary: Soccer - a Description." In Mohsen Ghadessy, ed. *Registers of Written English: Situational Factors and Linguistic Features*. Open Linguistics Series. London and New York: Pinter, 17-51.
- Giorgianni, Erika and Eva Lavric. 2016. *The Football and Language Bibliography Online*. [http://www.uibk.ac.at/msp/projekte/sprache\\_fussball](http://www.uibk.ac.at/msp/projekte/sprache_fussball) (accessed June 14, 2018)
- Gläser, Rosemarie. 1990. *Fachtextsorten im Englischen*. Tübingen: Narr.
- Green, Georgia M. 1980. "Some Wherefores of English Inversions." *Language* 56: 582-601.
- Green, Georgia M. 1982. "Colloquial and Literary Uses of Inversions." In Deborah Tannen, ed. *Spoken and Written Language: Exploring Orality and Literacy*. Norwood: Ablex, 119-153.
- Halone, K. K. 2008. "The Structuration of Racialized Sport Organizing." *Journal of Communication Inquiry* 32: 22-42.
- Hansen, A. D. 1999. "Narrating the Game: Achieving and Coordinating Partisanship in Real Time." *Research on Language and Social Interaction* 32: 269-302.
- Hargreaves, John. 1986. *Sport, Power and Culture. A Social and Historical Analysis of Popular Sports in Britain*. Cambridge: Polity Press.

- Hartmann, Claudio. 2013. *Pre-fabricated Speech Formulas as Long-term Memory Solutions to Working Memory Overload in Routine Language*. PhD Thesis, University of Zurich.
- Haselow, Alexander. 2017. *Spontaneous Spoken English. An Integrated Approach to the Emergent Grammar of Speech*. Cambridge: CUP.
- Hirtle, W.H. 1967. *The Simple and Progressive Forms: An Analytical Approach*. Cahiers de Psychomécanique du Langage 8. Québec: Les Presses de l'Université Laval.
- Horton, Donald and Richard Wohl. 1956. "Mass Xommunication and Parasocial Interaction: Observations on Intimacy at a Distance." *Psychiatry* 19: 215–229.
- Hoyle, Susan M. 1989. "Forms and Footings in Boys' Sportscasting." *Text* 9: 153-173.
- Hoyle, Susan M. 1991. "Children's Competence in the Specialized Register of Sportscasting." *Journal of Child Language* 18: 435-450.
- Hoyle, Susan M. 1993. "Participation Frameworks in Sportscasting Play: Imaginary and Literal Footings." In Deborah Tannen, ed. *Framing in Discourse*. New York: Oxford University Press, 114-145.
- Humpolik, Radek. 2014. *Language of Football Commentators: an Analysis of Live English Football Commentary and Its Types*. BA Thesis, Masaryk University.
- Hundley, Heather L. 2004. "Keeping the Score: the Hegemonic Everyday Practices in Golf." *Communication Reports* 17: 39-48.
- Hundt, Marianne, David Denison and Gerold Schneider. 2012. "Relative Complexity in Scientific Discourse." *English Language and Linguistics* 16: 209-240.
- IFAB. The International Football Association Board. Laws of the Game.  
<http://theifab.com/laws> (accessed September 22, 2018)
- Jackson, Ross and Erick Penot. 1983. "Fussballterminologie: D-F-I-E." *Lebende Sprachen* 28: 85-88.
- Jameson, Anthony et al. 2010. "Assessment of a User's Time Pressure and Cognitive Load on the Basis of Features of Speech." In Matthew W. Crocker and Jörg Siekmann, eds. *Resource-adaptive Cognitive Systems*. New York: Springer, 171-204.
- Jellis, Susan. 2006. Lifting the Silverware: An Exploration of Football Jargon. MED Magazine 37. <http://www.macmillandictionaries.com/MED-Magazine/April2006/37-Feature-Football-Jargon-print.html> (accessed January 13, 2019).

- Kalverkämper, Hartwig. 1983. "Textuelle Fachsprachenlinguistik als Aufgabe." *LiLi. Zeitschrift für Literaturwissenschaft und Linguistik* 51/52: 124-166.
- Kern, Friederike. 2010. "Speaking Dramatically. The Prosody of Live Radio Commentary of Football Matches." *Studies in Discourse and Grammar* 23: 217-238.
- Kjellmer, Göran. 2003. "Hesitation. In Defence of ER and ERM." *English Studies* 84: 170-198.
- Krone, Maïke. 2005. *The Language of Football. A Contrastive Study of Syntactic and Semantic Specifics of Verb Usage in English and German Match Commentaries*. Stuttgart: Ibidem.
- Kuiper, Koenraad and Paddy Austin. 1990. "They're off and Racing Now: The Speech of the New Zealand Race Caller." In: *New Zealand Ways of Speaking*, ed. by A. Bell and J. Holmes. Bristol: Multilingual Matters, 195-220.
- Kuiper, Koenraad. 1996. *Smooth Talkers: the Linguistic Performance of Auctioneers and Sportscasters*. Mahwah, NJ: Erlbaum.
- Kuiper, Koenraad. 2000. "On the Linguistic Properties of Formulaic Speech." *Oral Tradition* 15: 279-305.
- Kuiper, Koenraad. 2004. "Formulaic Performance in Conventionalised Varieties of Speech." In Norbert Schmitt, ed. *Formulaic Sequences: Acquisition, Processing and Use*. Philadelphia, PA: John Benjamins, 37-54.
- Kuiper, Koenraad. 2009. *Formulaic Genres*. Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan.
- Kuiper, Koenraad and Douglas Haggio. 1985. "On the Nature of Ice Hockey Commentaries." In R. Berry and J. Acheson eds. *Regionalsim and National Identity*. Christchurch, NZ: Association for Canadian Studies in Australia and Newzealand, 167-175.
- Lake, Robert J. 2019. "Introduction to the History and Historiography of Tennis." In Robert J. Lake, ed. *Routledge Handbook of Tennis: History, Culture and Politics*. London: Routledge.
- Langacker, Ronald W. 2011. "The English Present." In Adeline Patard and Frank Brisard, eds. *Cognitive Approaches to Tense, Aspect and Epistemic Modality*. Amsterdam: John Benjamins, 45-86.
- Leech, Geoffrey. 2004. *Meaning and the English Verb*. Harlow: Pearson Education.

- Leigh, John and David Woodhouse. 2004. *Football Lexicon: A Dictionary of Usage in Football Journalism and Commentary*. London: Faber.
- Lewandowski, Marcin. 2008. "The Language of Soccer – a Sociolect or a Register?" *Language, Communication, Information* 3: 21-32.
- Lewandowski, Marcin. 2009. "Metaphors from Other Sports in the Language of Soccer: Evidence from English and Polish." *Język, Komunikacja, Informacja / Language, Communication, Information* 4: 29–48.
- Mackenzie, Lachlan J. 2005. "Incremental Functional Grammar and the Language of Football Commentary." In Christopher S. Butler, Susana M. Doval-Suárez and Maria de los Ángeles Gómez-González, eds. *The Dynamics of Language Use. Functional and Contrastive Perspectives*. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Maguire, Joseph and Emma K. Poulton. 1999. "European Identity Politics in Euro '96: Invented Traditions and National Habitus Codes." *International Review for the Sociology of Sport* 34: 17–29.
- Makarova, Anastasia. 2008. "Deviation in Sports Commentator Speech: Statistical and Linguistic Analysis." In Eva Lavric, Gerhard Pisek, Andrew Skinner, Wolfgang Stadler, eds. *The Linguistics of Football. Language in Performance* 38. Tübingen: Gunter Narr, 305-315.
- Martinez, Matias. 1999. "Nach dem Spiel ist vor dem Spiel: Erzähltheoretische Bemerkungen zur Fussballberichterstattung." *Jahrbuch für Finnisch-Deutsche Literaturbeziehungen* 31: 20–29.
- Maskell, Dan and John Barrett. 1989. *Oh I Say!* New York: Fontana Press.
- Mathieson, Paul. 2016. "Linguistic Features of 'Alternative' Football Commentary: A Comparative Register Analysis." *Imperial Journal of Interdisciplinary Research (IJIR)* Vol-2, 59-67.
- Meân, L. J. 2010. "Making Masculinity and Framing Femininity: FIFA, Soccer and World Cup Websites." In H. L. Hundley & A. C. Billings, eds. *Examining Identity in Sports Media*. Los Angeles, CA: Sage, 65-86.
- Mikos, Michael J. and Lewis R. Shea. 1979. "Tennis Slang." *American Speech* 51: 292-295.
- Montgomerie, Michael Band and Michael K. Smith. 1989. „The Semantics of Winning and Losing." *Language in Society* 18: 31-57.



- Morris, B. S., and J. Nydahl. 1985. "Sports Spectacle As Drama: Image, Language and Technology." *Journal of Popular Culture* 18: 101-110.
- Müller, Christian, Barbara Großmann-Hutter, Anthony Jameson, Ralf Rummer, and Frank Wittig. 2001. "Recognizing Time Pressure and Cognitive Load on the Basis of Speech: An Experimental Study." In Mathias Bauer, Piotr Gmytrasiewicz & Julita Vassileva, eds. *User Modeling*. Berlin: Springer, 24-33.
- Müller, Torsten. 2007. *Football, Language and Linguistics. Time-critical Utterances in Unplanned Spoken Language, Their Structures and Their Relation to Non-linguistic Situations and Events. Language in Performance* 36. Tübingen: Gunter Narr.
- Müller, Torsten and Robert Mayr. 2007. "Speech Rate, Time Pressure and Emotion in English and German Football Commentary." In Regina Weiner, ed. *Spoken Language Pragmatics. An Analysis of Form-Function Relations*. London: Continuum, 160-181.
- Nash, Walter. 1993. *Jargon: Its Uses and Abuses*. Oxford: Blackwell.
- Oakes, Michael P. 1998. *Statistics for Corpus Linguistics*. Edinburgh: Edinburgh University Press.
- Palmatier, Robert A. and Harold L. Ray. 1989. *Sports Talk: A Dictionary of Sports Metaphors*. New York: Greenwood.
- Palmer, F.R. 1988. *The English Verb*. 2nd ed. London: Longman.
- Pawley, Andrew. 1991. "How To Talk Cricket: On Linguistic Competence in a Subject Matter." In R. Blust, ed. *Currents in Pacific Linguistics: Papers on Austronesian languages and ethnolinguistics in honour of George Grace*. Canberra: Pacific Linguistics, 339-368.
- Quirk, Randolph, Sidney Greenbaum, Geoffrey Leech & Jan Svartvik. 1985. *A Comprehensive Grammar of the English Language*. London: Longman.
- Pedersen, Paul M., Kimberly S. Miloch and Pamela C. Laucella. 2007. *Strategic Sport Communication*. Leeds: Human Kinetics.
- Reaser, Jeffrey. 2003. "A Quantitative Approach to (Sub)Registers: The Case of 'Sports Announcer Talk'." *Discourse Studies* 5: 303-321.
- Reinardy, Scott and Wayne Wanta. 2008. *The Essentials of Sports Reporting and Writing*. New York: Routledge.

- Rodero, Emma. 2012. "A Comparative Analysis of Speech Rate and Perception in Radio Bulletins." *Text & Talk* 32–3: 391-411.
- Robb, Brian. 2012. *Quicklook at Televison*. Grittleton: Quicklook Books.
- Ross, Michael W. and Sue J. 2010. *Diagnosis and Management of Lameness in the Horse*. St. Louis: Elsevier Saunders.
- Rowe, David. 2004. *Sport, Culture and the Media: The Unruly Trinity*. 2nd ed. New York: Open University.
- Rowe, D. 2011. *Global Media Sport: Flows, Forms and Futures*. London and New York: Bloomsbury Academic.
- Sager, Juan C., David Dungworth and Peter F. McDonald. 1980. *English Special Languages*. Wiesbaden: Oscar Brandstetter.
- Scheffer, Johannes. 1975. *The Progressive in English*. North Holland Linguistic Series 15. Amsterdam: North Holland.
- Scherer, Jay and David Rowe. 2013. *Sport, Public Broadcasting, and Cultural Citizenship: Signal Lost?* London: Routledge.
- Schiffer, Petra. 1992. "Metaphern in der englischen und deutschen Tennisberichterstattung: eine Untersuchung anhand von Artikeln aus Tages- und Wochenzeitungen über die Offenen Englischen Tennismeisterschaften von Wimbledon." *Lebende Sprachen* 37: 60-65.
- Schmidt, Thomas. 2009. "The Kicktionary—A Multilingual Lexical Resource of Football Language." In Hans C. Boas, ed. *Multilingual Framenets in Computational Lexicography*. New York: de Gruyter, 101-134.
- Seddon, Peter. 2004. *Football Talk: The Language and Folklore of the World's Greatest Game*. London: Robson.
- Severin, Manfred. 1982. "Bemerkungen zur englischen Sportsprache." *Fremdsprachen* 26: 236-240.
- Sharman, Patrick and Alastair J. Wilson. 2015. "Racehorses Are Getting Faster." *Biology Letters* 11, 20150310, <http://dx.doi.org/10.1098/rsbl.2015.0310> (accessed December 11, 2018).

- Staples, Shelley, Jesse Egbert, Douglas Biber and Susan Conrad. 2015. "Register Variation. A Corpus Approach." In Deborah Tannen, Heidi E. Hamilton, and Deborah Schiffrin, eds. *The Handbook of Discourse Analysis*. 2nd ed. Chichester: Wiley, 505-525.
- Svartvik, Jan and Randolph Quirk, eds.. 1980. *A Corpus of English Conversation*. Lund Studies in English. Lund: LiberLäromedel Lund.
- Taborek, Janusz. 2012. "The Language of Sport: Some Remarks on the Language of Football." In Hadrian Lankiewicz and Wąsikiewicz-Firlej, eds. *Informed Teaching - Premises of Modern Foreign Language Pedagogy*. Warsaw: Wydawnictwo, 239-255
- Tanaka-Ishii, Kumiko, Koiti Hasida and Itsuki Noda. 1998. "Reactive Content Selection in the Generation of Real-time Soccer Commentary." 36th Annual Meeting of the Association for Computational Linguistics and 17th International Conference on Computational Linguistics, 1282-1288. <http://aclweb.org/anthology/P98-2209> (accessed October 21, 2017).
- Takahashi, Toshiyuki. 2015. "The Effect of Age on The Racing Speed of Thoroughbred Racehorses." *Journal of Equine Science* 26: 43-48.
- Tolson, Andrew. 2016. "Proper Football People': Talking Soccer on Sky Sports News." *Discourse, Context and Media* 11 : 12-18.
- Tottie, Gunnel. 2011. "Uh and um As Sociolinguistic Markers in British English." *The International Journal of Corpus Linguistics* 16: 173-196.
- Trouvain, Jurgen & William Barry. 2000. "The Prosody of Excitement in Horse Race Commentaries." In Ellen Douglas-Cowie, Roddy Cowie and Marc Schroder, eds. *Proceedings of the ISCA Workshop on Speech and Emotion: A Conceptual Framework for Research, Northern Ireland 2000*. Belfast: Textflow, 86-91.
- Trübner, Georg. 1985. "Ein Beitrag zur Sprache des Sports: die englische Sportmetaphorik." *Wissenschaftliche Zeitschrift der Friedrich Schiller Universität. Sprachwissenschaftliche Beiträge. Gesellschaftswissenschaftliche Reihe* 34: 61-67.
- Vandenhoeck, Tim. 2015. "Minute-by-Minute Football Commentary : a Corpus-based Discourse Analysis of Tense and Community within Online MBM." *CELE Journal*: 50-65.

- Van Dijk, Teun A. 2015. "Critical Discourse Analysis." In Deborah Tannen, Heidi E. Hamilton, and Deborah Schiffrin, eds. *The Handbook of Discourse Analysis*. 2nd ed. Chichester: Wiley, 466-483.
- Vierkant, Stephan. 2008. "Metaphor and Live Radio Football Commentary." In Eva Lavric, Gerhard Pisek, Andrew Skinner and Wolfgang Stadler, eds. *The Linguistics of Football*. Tübingen: Gunter Narr, 121-132.
- Wallace, William D. 1977. "How Registers Register: a Study in the Language of News and Sports." *Studies in Linguistic Sciences* 7/11: 46-78.
- Wallace, William D. 1981. "How Registers Register: toward the Analysis of Language Use." *IRAL* 19: 267-286.
- Wilson, Peter. 2000. *Mind the Gap: Ellipsis and Stylistic Variation in Spoken and Written English*. Harlow: Longman.
- Wolstenholme, Kenneth. 1996. *They Think It's All Over...: Memories of the Greatest Day in English Football*. Robson.
- Yegorova, S. A. 2017. "Language Personality of Sport Commentator as Reflector of Linguo-cultural Code." *Успехи современной науки* 3.3: 127-130.
- Zwicky, A.M. and A.D. Zwicky. 1982. "Register as a dimension of linguistic variation." In R. Kittredge and J. Lehrberger, eds. *Sublanguage. Studies of Language in Restricted Semantic Domains*. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter, 213-218.

## 10. Appendix

### Contents

#### Part I: Recordings made between 1996 and 2002 (80,000 words in total, listed according to sports, chronologically)

##### A Cricket on TV (10,000 words)

1. England v Pakistan. 9.8.1996. BBC Two
2. Lancashire v Yorkshire. 13.8.1996. BBC Two
3. England v Pakistan. 22.8.1996. BBC Two
4. Essex v Lancashire. 7.9.1996. BBC One

##### B Cricket on the radio (10,000 words)

1. England v Pakistan. 31.8.1996. BBC Radio 5 Live
2. Essex v Lancashire. 7.9.1996. BBC Radio 5 Live

##### C Football on TV (10,000 words)

1. Manchester United v Blackburn Rovers. 25.8.1996. Sky Sports
2. Newcastle United v Halmstad BK. 10.9.1996. BBC One
3. Helsingborg v Aston Villa. 24.9.1996. BBC One
4. Manchester Utd. v Rapid Vienna. 25.9.1996. ITV

##### D Football on the radio (10,000 words)

1. Newcastle Utd. v Halmstad BK. 10.9.1996. BBC Radio 5 Live
2. Helsingborg v Aston Villa. 24.9.1996. BBC Radio 5 Live
3. Manchester Utd. v Rapid Vienna. 25.9.1996. BBC Radio 5 Live

##### E Tennis on TV (10,000 words)

1. Tim Henman v. Sjeng Schalken. 29.6.2001. BBC Two
2. Tim Henman v. Roger Federer. 4.7.2001. BBC Two
3. Venus Williams v. Justine Henin. 8.7.2001. BBC Two
4. Lleyton Hewitt v. Yevgeni Kafelnikov. 8.9.2001. Eurosport
5. Barbara Schett v. Anke Huber. 25.9.2001. Eurosport

##### F Tennis on the radio (10,000 words)

1. Tim Henman v. Sjeng Schalken. 29.6.2001. BBC Radio 5
2. Tim Henman v. Roger Federer. 4.7.2001. BBC Radio 5
3. Venus Williams v. Justine Henin. 8.7.2001. BBC Radio 5

##### G Horse racing on TV (10,000 words)

1. Grand National. 7.4.2001. BBC Two
2. Royal Ascot 4.20. 20.6.2001. BBC Two
3. Newmarket 3.00. 23.6.2001. Channel 4
4. Doncaster 2.40. 24.6.2001. Channel 4
5. Doncaster 2.10. 30.6.2001. Channel 4
6. Doncaster 3.15. 1.7.2001. Channel 4
7. Curragh 3.30. 1.7.2001. BBC Two
8. Market Rasen 1.20. 6.7.2001. Channel 4
9. Newbury 1.30. 6.7.2001. BBC Two
10. Doncaster 1.55. 26.1.2002. Channel 4

11. Doncaster 2.30. 26.1.2002. Channel 4
12. Cheltenham 2.45. 26.1.2002. Channel 4
13. Doncaster 3.05. 26.1.2002. Channel 4

## **H Horse racing on the radio (10,000 words)**

1. Grand National. 7.4.2001. BBC Radio 5 Live
2. Royal Ascot 4.20. 20.6.2001. BBC Radio 5 Live
3. Curragh 3.30. 1.7.2001. BBC Radio 5 Live
4. Cheltenham 2.45. 26.1.2002. BBC Radio 5 Live
5. Cheltenham 3.20. 26.1.2002. BBC Radio 5 Live
6. Aintree Hurdle 2.55. 6.4.2002. BBC Radio 5 Live
7. Grand National. 6.4.2002. BBC Radio 5 Live

**Part II Recordings made between 2013 and 2015 (80,000 words in total, listed according to sports, chronologically)**

**A Cricket on TV (10,000 words)**

1. England v India. 16.8.2014. Sky Sports 2
2. England v India. 2.9.2014. ESPN Star Sports
3. England v Australia. 13.9.2015. Skysports 2

**B Cricket on the radio (10,000 words)**

1. England v India. 15.8.2014. BBC Radio 5 Live
2. England v India. 2.9.2014. BBC Radio 5 Live
3. England v Australia. 30.7.2015. BBC Radio 5 Live

**C Football on TV (10,000 words)**

1. Arsenal v Aston Villa. 30.5.2015. BBC One
2. Barcelona v Juventus. 6.6.2015. ITV 1

**D Football on the radio (10,000 words)**

1. Arsenal v Chelsea. 26.4.2015. BBC Radio 5 Live
2. Barcelona v Juventus. 6.6.2015. BBC Radio 5 Live

**E Tennis on TV (10,000 words)**

1. Novak Djokovic v Andy Murray. 1.2.2015. BBC Two
2. Jo-Wilfried Tsonga v Tomas Berdych. 31.5.2015. ITV4
3. Stan Wawrinka v Jo-Wilfried Tsonga. 5.6.2015. ITV4
4. Novak Djokovic v Andy Murray. 6.6.2015. ITV4

**F Tennis on the radio (10,000 words)**

1. Novak Djokovic v Andy Murray. 5.6.2015. BBC Radio 5 Live Sports Extra
2. Novak Djokovic v Marian Cilic. 11.9.2015. BBC Radio 5 Live Sports Extra

**G Horse racing on TV (10,000 words)**

1. Grand National. 6.4.2013. Channel 4
2. Grand National. 11.4.2014. Channel 4
3. Grand National. 11.4.2015. Channel 4
4. Royal Ascot St. James's Palace Stakes. 16.6.2015. Channel 4
5. Royal Ascot King's Stand Stakes. 16.6.2015. Channel 4
6. Royal Ascot Prince of Wales Stakes. 17.6.2015. Channel 4
7. Royal Ascot Gold Cup. 18.6.2015. Channel 4
8. Royal Ascot Coronation Stakes. 19.6.2015. Channel 4
9. Royal Ascot Diamond Jubilee Stakes. 20.6.2015. Channel 4
10. Goodwood 2.35 Bonham's Thoroughbred Stakes. 31.7.2015. Channel 4
11. Goodwood 3.10 Betfred Mile. 31.7.2015. Channel 4
12. Goodwood 3.45 King George Stakes. 31.7.2015. Channel 4
13. Newbury 3.25. 19.9.2015. Channel 4
14. Ayr 3.45. 19.9.2015. Channel 4

**H Horse racing on the radio (10,000 words)**

1. Sandown 3.50 Bet 365 Gold Cup. 25.4.2015. RacingFM
2. Newmarket 3.00. 3.5.2015. RacingFM
3. Newmarket 3.40. 3.5.2015. RacingFM

4. Ascot Prince of Wales Stakes. 17.6.2015. RacingFM
5. Ascot Gold Cup. 18.6.2015. RacingFM
6. Ludlow 2.10 Welcome Back to Ludlow Juvenile Maiden Hurdle. 7.10.2015. RacingFM
7. Nottingham 2.30 EBF 32Red Nursery Stakes. 7.10.2015. RacingFM
8. Nottingham 3.05 EBF 32Red Casino Maiden Stakes. 7.10.2015. RacingFM
9. Nottingham 3.35 EBF Stallions 32 Red Nursery Handicap Stakes. 7.10.2015. RacingFM
10. Wincanton 2.25 Bruton Novices' Handicap Hurdle. 16.10.2015. RacingFM
11. Wincanton 3.00 Wincanton Handicap Chase. 16.10.2015. RacingFM
12. Fakenham 2.15 Dereham Conditional Jockeys' Selling Handicap Hurdle. 16.10.2015. RacingFM
13. Fakenham 2.50 Hal Halton Novices Chase. 16,10.2015. RacingFM
14. Fakenham 3.25 Rosalie Monbiot 80th Birthday Celebration Novices' Hurdle. 16.10.2015. RacingFM



## Conventions for the transcription<sup>24</sup>

- prosody:
  - markedly increased volume: CAPITAL LETTERS  
The following software was used to measure the volume of the recordings: Praat (version 6.0.49) ([www.praat.org](http://www.praat.org)).  
Passages spoken at 70 decibels or above defined as ‘markedly increased’.
  - markedly increased tempo: underlined  
The following software was used to measure the tempo of the recordings: Sobolsoft (version 7.0) ([www.sobolsoft.com](http://www.sobolsoft.com)).  
Passages spoken at 180 words per minute or above defined as ‘markedly increased’.
  - paralinguistic features: [laughter]
- pause: [2]  
The unit of measurement is seconds.
- transcription impossible<sup>25</sup>: ( )
- punctuation: No punctuation is included in the transcription.
- numbers: Numbers are always written in numerals when they are part of a score (e.g. 21 for 3).
- paragraphing: New paragraphs are started when there is a change of commentator.

<sup>24</sup>The conventions for the transcription are partly based on the following works: Beard 1998: 70f.; Brognaux et al. 2013: 1554-8; Burgschmidt 1983: 118; Crystal and Davy 1969: 22-40; Gerhart 2014: 20-26; Hoyle 1989: 171; Svartvik and Quirk 1980: 21-25.

<sup>25</sup>19 passages, consisting of one or two words each, could not be transcribed. Ten of them are proper names of which the spelling is not known, and eight passages are incomprehensible due to disturbing atmospherics on the radio.

**Part I: Recordings made between 1996 and 2002 (80,000 words in total, listed according to sports, chronologically)**

**A Cricket on TV (10,000 words) (113 minutes, 10,000 words)**

**A.1 England v Pakistan 9<sup>th</sup> Aug. 1996 BBC Two (2<sup>nd</sup> Test of 1996 Test series)  
(26 minutes, 1852 words)**

- A: Well it's a full hour's play gone now and the England side are there [2] have come face to face with the prospect that they may have to spend most of the day out there [1] 307 for 6 no wickets taken this morning [1] one catch has gone down [2] Pakistan batsmen have shown that the pitch itself is virtually the same [1] there's been quite a lot of play missing [1] no luck going England's way [3] and Michael Atherton now prompted to change the bowling [1] Chris Lewis goes back in the attack [1] he's gonna bowl downhill on the Kirkstall Lane End [9] he made a poor start yesterday bowling from the other end in fact this is the first time he's bowled down the hill [8]
- B: Well as you say Tony it was a poor effort yesterday dreadful start his first four overs cost 24 runs [3] that was all from the Football Ground End [1] coming down from the Kirkstall Lane End it's a different [2] different story really [1] bowlers have to balance themselves differently they get momentum coming down that hill after all they steady themselves as they come to the bowling crease [2] it might just help him [37]
- A: Settling in there to do some pretty hard work [3] certainly a better length [2] he was very expensive [1] most of the runs coming from cuts [1] Ijaz Ahmed [1] picking up lots of boundaries [1] third man area and anything short was pulled [5]
- B: By now he should have worked out the length he needs to bowl on this pitch [5]
- A: In fact he should have worked it out pretty quickly yesterday morning [2] three times in succession he just cut him away from something that was short and wide [2] and it just takes two seconds to think about it [2] maybe a little longer to get it into the system [3]
- B: Well you have to ask why a top class Test team hadn't worked it out before the match but [1] er I know that life is not exactly like that [3] certainly enough advisers around the place [16]
- A: Well that's the right place the right sort of line the right sort of length a lot of uncertainty there from Moin Khan [3] and from Chris Lewis' point of view a couple of wickets now would help him and England of course and make his figures look a lot better [122] well it was in the air it was down to long leg again without actually carrying this time one more run to Moin Khan [1] steady opening over for Chris Lewis [3]
- B: Maybe time for some inspiration from Tony Lewis [1] some appreciation whatever it might be after which it will be Richie Benand
- A: I think England are in need of inspiration because it looks a tough task at the moment [1] the runs aren't coming quickly [1] 308 for 6 but [1] neither are the wickets [3] we heard Ijaz Ahmed say last night when he talked to us that 350 [1] would be a very comfortable position for Pakistan to be in [1] much bigger crowd in today as well that's good news [8] on this sort of wicket when the ball does move off the seam it always presents [2] spectators with interesting cricket [1] perhaps not always full of spectacular stroke play but [1] it's a good battle out there [47]
- B: Yes it is and sitting in the back of the commentary box my mind was flipping from pace to spin [2] and [1] I just wondered [1] how it would be if we had just one spinner even a part-time spinner [1] in the side it might be of [2] er [1] of some benefit rather than [1] having the incessant pace produced for these batsmen [4] there was a spinner [2] a slow off-spinner from Dominic Cork [2] and away she went [7]

- A: It may be relevant that he bowled it at a wicket keeper who is used to picking up these changes of pace [2] Moin Khan [1] it's a lovely clean blow straight for six [1] couldn't be better [3] yes I was [1] er thinking as you were mentioning spin there Richie the deceit in the air and the dazzling flight [2] which prompt the batsman to play the wrong shot to the wrong ball but er [1] I think the odd spinner as Dominic Cork bowled is a bit expensive [3]
- B: Well he didn't knock around did he [2] Moin Khan [1] he seized on it [1] not quite as it was leaving Dominic Cork's hand but you could [1] er see just about his eyes light up in that replay we showed you [51] right now around the wicket Michael Atherton has dashed down to have a word with Dominic Cork [2] two balls to go in this over [1] only six runs from it [2] and this one is going straight [28] two slips and a leg-slip now Atherton trading on that little flick from Moin Khan just behind square leg that goes in the air [2] and that's the one [1] it's quite cleverly bowled [2] no contact made [6] the intention was there [1] the leg-slip put in and er [1] restricting him from lofting down towards the man at deep third man [1] no such restriction for Moin Khan with that slow ball bowled by Dominic Cork [1] he really did launch himself at it [4] fine shot [2] wasn't just a matter of whacking it [2] it was very well judged by the batsman [3]
- A: Out of the middle too [5]
- B: And Lewis from the Kirkstall Lane End [2] serious matters here at 348 for 6 [7] and these two batsmen Asif Mujtaba and Moin Khan doing an excellent job [11] 31 for Moin Khan [2] and 29 for Asif Mujtaba he's been quite content just to push the ball around it hasn't worried him if the play has missed Asif [9] this is just what they'll be wanting in the Pakistan dressing room [2] Wasim Akram the skipper would have sent them out there today as he did with them last week at Lord's [1] to [1] er [1] get whatever they can [1] just make sure you don't get out the runs will come [2] and already this morning [2] it's been a real setback for the England team [21] safely away over extra cover he just picked up two there [2] Caddick the fielder [12] 50 for Moin Khan and Mujtaba [70]
- A: Both these batsmen have shown plenty of common sense in which balls to hit [1] which ones to [2] drag the bat away from [2] they haven't been drawn into too many strokes [1] the ball has gone past the outside edge occasionally but there's been quite a bit of [1] that er half-playing at the ball but making sure the bat is well away from it [36] none for 66 now for Chris Lewis [4] Caddick has two wickets [2] Mullally two [1] and Cork two [2] might have had another one this morning there was a chance missed by Mullally down at long leg [2] Moin Khan was the batsman [3] grey sort of day here [2] but er the forecast is OK and it didn't seem to me er arriving at the ground today that there'd been overnight rain [4] there had been in other places [2] [...] just half an hour's drive there had been some quite heavy rain during the night but er [1] nothing to indicate any rain here at Headingley [4] certainly there's a bit of cloud cover for the bowlers [1] there can't be any complaint there [53]
- B: It was 281 for 6 at the start of play this morning [2] 37 runs made no wickets down one chance missed [17] it's heading off around the wicket [2] and sometimes a bowler will do that just as a bit of a ploy [1] to come around the wicket [1] there was a clear indication of what Atherton wanted there [1] now he's gonna go from leg-slip across to gully but sometimes that can be a little bit of a smokescreen Mullally is still down at er long leg [2] the bowler might get it into the batsman's mind now there's no danger down there [1] no extra cover [2] fine blow [3] Pakistan are fortunate that in their two keepers [1] they have er [1] fellows who are competent with the gloves and er certainly competent with the bat [2] we've seen Rasheed Latif play very well [1] now Moin Khan gets his chance through injury to Rasheed [1] experienced campaigner [1] and er he's grabbing it [21] looks to be disappointment there [1] but I wouldn't have thought they'd have got that [4] might just

have been inside edge although [2] it probably would have missed leg stump by good six inches [1]

- A: Remarkable how often the ball [2] will miss the stumps [1] a leg stump in situations like that [2] all the tests the umpires have done [1] indicate that the batsman gets forward [2] he's struck on the pad and the ball's moving off the seam that by the time it reaches the stumps it will have moved something like a foot [1] in distance [28]
- B: Round the wicket to the left-hander [74] now then Steve Bucknor is in there to ask for people to stop moving maybe the sight screen itself to be moved a little [13] to help some to move themselves away from that area where Lewis is coming around the wicket now [2] they're begging the second fellow to move [26] they've often mentioned some of the things the umpires carry [4] I'm feeling that er Steve Bucknor could do with a slightly bigger jacket [2] he's got enough stuffed into those pockets there to [2] go with a size 52 [18] no ball called [40]
- A: Not quite Mullally's [1] er morning in the field so far [1] he's put down a catch and er [1] it needed Jack Russell to do some [1] grandstanding gymnastics there [2] to save the overthrow to the man down at long leg [69] end of Lewis' over [2] nothing's happening out there for the England bowlers this morning they get the occasional ball to go past the outside edge but you'd expect that in the normal run of events [1] one catch has gone down [1] nothing [2] they can get hold of [2] they still have four wickets to take in this innings [14] Cork's going off the field [1] it needs a change of bowling [1] Cork was bowling at the Football Ground End now [2] it's gonna be Andrew Caddick [3] Michael Vaughan of Yorkshire is the twelfth man [64]
- B: Now the sub fielder out there is Michael Vaughan [2] he's the only Yorkshireman on the field [2] there's much talk about the possibility of other Yorkshiremen playing in this match but he's the only one who's made it and that's as a sub fielder [2] good fielder Geoffrey
- C: He's a very good fielder Richie [1] I'm surprised that Anthony McGrath is not fielding [2] he's a brilliant young fielder [2] we'll probably see him on Tuesday [1] both of them in fact [1] in the Roses semifinal of the NatWest [1] Anthony McGrath is brilliant [1] he's here [1] and Michael Vaughan is very good [2] very good experience for them to be on a Test match occasion fielding for the England side [2] what he's got to do try and er in the future get picked for the England team [43]
- A: Michael Vaughan is part of the Yorkshire team that's having a pretty good summer so far [1] they're at the top in er [2] the competitions still to be decided the County Championship [1] the NatWest [2] the Sunday League [2] and er [1] they're getting on pretty well [3] their two names have been mentioned as possibilities for higher honours [18]
- B: 2 for 89 from 32 overs [1] six maidens [24]
- C: That's young Anthony McGrath [2] very good fielder indeed [2] probably decided between them [1] Michael Vaughan and him that one will do the

**A.2 Lancashire v Yorkshire 13<sup>th</sup> Aug. 1996 BBC Two (Semifinal NatWest)**  
(25 minutes, 2289 words)

- A: Great applause there as er for Darren Gough [1] produced a special ball [1] you keep that going for sixty overs and the crowd here will be extremely tired and probably very thirsty [18] so let me say good morning to the man on my left-hand side here [1] as Darren Gough begins to bowl [1] Geoffrey Boycott
- B: Good morning Tony [1] good morning everybody [1] I think it's a very good [2] day for cricket [1] very important day for Darren Gough [2] he's trying desperately to carry on bowling well for Yorkshire which he has been doing for the last few weeks but er [1] he's trying to impress the England selectors [3] he wants his Test place back so [1] there's only one way to get that back [2] to bowl well when you have a pretty good idea that most of the selectors including the chairman will be watching from home [16] I think it's gonna be a bit hard for Darren to get back in the Test side just because the other bowlers haven't done [1] badly not so much that they've done anything special but they haven't necessarily done badly [6]
- A: That's good even bounce there [2] the pitch itself quite firm on the foot [3] good carry through to the keeper we'll hear Geoffrey's report on the pitch at the end of this over [1] but er you can tell already that [1] there's a good deal of bone in it [3] a wonderful day for batting [1] the sort of day [1] I felt that standing out in the middle there [1] I don't know if Geoffrey did [1] you always get bounce but it just felt a good batting day to me [42] the applause for a very good over from Darren Gough [6] so let's have a look at that pitch now with Geoffrey [3]
- B: Well these Old Trafford pitches are not the best-looking surface you've ever seen [1] look how dry [1] hardly any grass at all [2] cracks all over but let me tell you they are magnificent surfaces for one-day cricket [1] just lovely medium pace [2] nice medium high bounce that will come on to the bat nicely and there's no excuse for batsmen not scoring runs on these [2] they're always a credit to the groundsman here [1] there's been a very heavy dew this morning [1] might be a little bit of swing [1] for the bowlers but all in all I think this is an excellent one-day pitch [3]
- A: Well there we are [1] that's the prospect [4] Chris Silverwood is the bowler [11] good stop there by McGrath [1]
- B: Yeah [1] a good young fielder [2] this young man [2] there are one or two players here that er [1] could impress the selectors [3] probably when Lancashire are in the field I'll be able to mention them [2] but er [1] while Yorkshire are in the field young McGrath [1] he's a candidate for the first team [1] and certainly the A-team [2] Chris Silverwood [1] the bowler [2] he's caught the eye of a lot of er [1] players who've come up against him [1] and he's one that the selectors have definitely noted [2] for the winter [1] that doesn't mean to say that he'll get selected [1] but on the Monday after the NatWest final [1] that's when the selectors will be sitting down to pick the first team going to Zimbabwe and New Zealand and they will be picking the A-team to go to Australia and [1] er Silverwood will definitely be in their minds as will Glenn Chapple [1] the er young Lancashire pace bowler [3]
- A: I feel the team is full of Yorkshiremen already Geoffrey [1]
- B: Well [3] I don't like to be [2] thought of as biased just because I played for Yorkshire but I think there is a little bit of hope [1] from Yorkshire members and supporters er [2] that we have a decent set of players and for the first time for a while we have one or two youngsters in Yorkshire who [1] might go on to representative honours and very good representative honours [2] now that may not happen but there is a feeling that one or two of them have got a little bit of er [1] a little bit of special talent about them [4]
- A: And that's good news of course [3]

- B: There was an old saying [1] Tony [1] it probably doesn't apply [1] the game changes [1] that it used to be [1] in years gone by that when Yorkshire were strong England were strong [1] and they always used to supply at least one really good player for England [1] that hasn't been the case for a number of years [1] er England haven't been very good and Yorkshire haven't been very good [2] so I cross my fingers for my home club and for [1] the national side [6]
- A: Well bowled [3] fortunate edge [2] but one run [2] David Byas [1] the Yorkshire skipper is the man at second slip [2] and Michael Atherton getting really turned around there [26] so the second over has been bowled [1] it's 1 for no wicket [7]
- B: Yes if we have a good look at this pitch you see how dry it is and grassless it's almost [1] like a cartrack or a worn path isn't it it's not the best-looking but it doesn't matter how they look [1] it's how they play [1] and er I don't think you'll get much turn out of this surface [1] I don't think the balls will get much seam in [1] and that's good for one-day cricket [2] I'm not saying that as [1] as a minus to the groundsman I'm saying it as a plus [1] just because it doesn't look great [2] but it should play magnificently for one-day cricket [2] it would be alright for a Test match too [1] you'd like to bat on that [12]
- A: Darren Gough to Michael Atherton [18] Atherton's career in this tournament 19 matches [1] two centuries [1] and four times a half-century [4] and this season [1] a century against Derbyshire [22] and as for Darren Gough [2] 25 wickets at 24 [22] well it's worth emphasising here that this is the longer game [1] 60 overs aside [1] we've now become accustomed to 50 overs aside [2] but [1] this is why [1] Lancashire for example send in Gallian and Atherton [2] in the shorter game Mike Watkinson himself goes up the order [2] to do what fashionably has become called as pinch-hitting [7] didn't work for England in the World Cup [1] they didn't pinch anything [1] they didn't hit anything [5] so it will be Gallian and Atherton [1] Crawley and Fairbrother [1] and Graham Lloyd and Mike Watkinson and er Hegg and Austin [1] all good competitors [3] and Lancashire of course used to winning that's a very big factor here whenever the tight corner arrives IN THE AIR DROPPED [8] captain drops captain [2] but the captain of England [1] not the captain of Lancashire [3]
- B: He's got good hands this David Byas [1] you might not think so when he spills this [1] but he does catch pretty well [2] and er [1] from Yorkshire's point of view and particularly Darren Gough's [1] that's a big mistake [2] Darren Gough did Michael Atherton in the Benson & Hedges here [1] got him out cheaply and er [1] well [1] he'd have got him again [2] bowled a really good line [1] Gough [1] off-stump [1] kept it tight there [1] not giving Michael Atherton any loose balls [6]
- A: Yes a very good over that [1] not just the line and length and control but [1] that extra little bit of demon in it and [1] good speed outside the off-stump [6] and this is it again [7] well [1] the first grab was the one that counted because you never gonna grab it a second time in that position [11] it just happened when I was making the point [1] as the catch went down [1] that when it has come to the tight corner in these knock-out matches Lancashire have always found that little bit extra and Yorkshire have just failed at the post and it'll be interesting to see what happens today [1] talking of David Byas earlier [1] he er said that he thought that Yorkshire definitely could win [3] he's got to keep talking like that [1] they have to believe it [12]
- B: Very talented young bowler [1] I just mentioned earlier that he has caught the eye of er [2] quite a lot of players [1] had a good season [3] tends to try and make the ball leave the bat [1] which is always a good thing [1] particularly the right handers [1] then he just nips one back [11] I think it's gonna be tough for Yorkshire [1] they got near as I mentioned in that er Benson & Hedges match [4] Chris Silverwood and company fancy their chances you'd expect that from all teams [2] they are playing well [1] they've had a good season [1] they're up in three competitions [2] but er [1] you're playing the best one-day side in

- the country [1] I think Lancashire are a top side [2] and I think it's a great asset [2] as Tony mentioned [1] that they're getting some scrapes to Lancashire where they just managed to sneak through [1] but I think it's a great asset I don't think it's luck at all [1] great teams manage to get themselves into a corner but [1] somehow they manage to dig deep and get themselves out of it [1] they just sneak a win you might say and that's lucky but [1] it isn't lucky if you keep doing it [1] it means that you're a top side [1] you've got some tough battle-hardened players and some very talented players [2] that have a got a lot of character and heart when it matters [2]
- A: First good shot [1] Jason Gallian having the patience there [1] he just waited and waited [1] played defensively treated balls on merit and just saw the one to hit [2] and really went for it [2]
- B: You won't find a better quality shot than this [2] just a touch short [1] just a touch wide not a bad ball at all [1] and he played that impeccably [15]
- A: Well run indeed [6] excellent batting by Gallian [3] strong crack at the bat to square at the off-side and then the little delicate touch [21] well that's one of the fine crowds one of the best sights [1] Old Trafford's full [1] almost full [5] and there'll be a bit of noise here today [3] certainly if we see a succession of pleasing strokes like that [6]
- B: This is excellent back-foot play [1] ball again just short of length [2] he plays it with a straight bat [1] you have to have perfect timing [1] short step high left elbow and just crisply [1] plays the ball square on the offside that's a top shot [1] a bit of class [3]
- A: First runs to come off Darren Gough [9] you were making that point too [1] Geoffrey about being used to winning in tight corners and er [1] a note I have here is that Lancashire [1] haven't lost a knock-out match at Old Trafford for nine years [2] that's a knock-out match [2] so that's a considerable record [2] if Yorkshire can win today they'll have achieved [1] a great deal [2]
- B: I think sooner or later somebody is going to beat them [1] no doubt about that in er [1] in sport [1] you you're just not gonna go on and be unbeatable forever [2] oh what a beauty [2] lovely length and line right in the corridor he's bowled this morning [1] just outside off-stump there [1] just left him [2] Michael Atherton would've nicked that [1] he'd have known he was in good nick [2] but Gough [1] well [2] he's beaten them both now [1] he should have had Michael Atherton out with one that just held its line and left him [2] and he's bowled an even better one to Jason Gallian [43]
- A: One run for Michael Atherton [17] there was a little bit of dew on the ground this morning but [1] this very hot sun today is gonna dry that up in no time at all and we'll see that ball race away across this outfield [14] the outfield's lush and green but it'll be hard and fast but the square itself [1] betrays the amount of cricket played at Old Trafford [3] looks real end-of-season stuff in the middle [2] lots of games [1] second team games [1] a common ground and all that [1] but er [1] it's a great [1] pleasure for a young player to play at Old Trafford but it does take its toll at the square by the end [1] there's a lot of reseeding been done already [2] and yet the outfield is lush and green and hard and fast [4] wide ball [32] big shout there [12] well the ball appearing to be passing down leg-side [22] that again is wide and you can see Chris Silverwood is just trying to put a bit more effort into this [1] trying to get a bit more speed about it [2] he's bowling perfectly well but he he's probably trying to fight a bit more after being cut away for four in the last over by Gallian [2] no real need [1] that was the first loose ball he bowled [41] DROPPED IT [2] second one down [1] poor David Byas [8] Michael Atherton has a second chance [6]
- B: Well that is just a despondency for the bowler [1] the team [1] but particularly David Byas [1] I repeat again what I said [1] he's usually got a very good pair of hands [2] fairly unflappable temperament he catches most things [1] now he's put down two [3]
- A: OH: that was close to the outside edge [11]

- B: Well they've bowled well enough this morning [1] they have Yorkshire [1] to have had a few wickets [2] and they haven't got anything [1] and what's worse [1] they've actually dropped a couple of catches [1] er which is not good [1] when you're bowling well [1] you really need to get something for that good bowling [2] otherwise the batsmen get away and make you pay [41]
- A: Good shot [1] finds a space this time [3] and the ball already is running like lightning [2] Jason Gallian has played some attractive shots off the back foot but the timing has been the most important [5]
- B: Well they should have learnt here that of the three fours he's hit [2] they've all been off the back foot [2] so [1] what you've got to do in this game [1] is quickly try and get ahead of your opponent [2] he should just pitch the ball up now [1] from now [1] on they should just get it a yard further and make Jason Gallian come forward [2]
- A: 19 for no wicket [2] that's at Old Trafford



**A.3** England v Pakistan 22<sup>nd</sup> Aug. 1996 BBC Two (3<sup>rd</sup> Test of 1996 series)  
(20 minutes, 2150 words)

- A: That was quick [1] Mohammed Akram the young man playing the first Test match [1] well his first Test match of this series [1] and that was short and high [1] and I dare say if the bat had made contact it might well have cleared [2] the keeper comfortably [4] doesn't play the: hook or pull shot with the same dexterity he has shown by Alec Stewart that er [1] that young bowler [1] is gonna be quite useful for Pakistan [3] just three men used so far this morning [1] none of them wicket-takers [1] Wasim Akram now to continue at the Pavilion End [2] and in the commentary chairs Richie Benand will be with Geoffrey Boycott [22] it will be very interesting to see how Alec Stewart copes with the short ball [1] when Wasim [1] Wasim Akram was bowling it at Michael Atherton in the last over [1] Atherton was having a problem or two [3] Stewart has been in good touch with it this morning [13] and Wasim now has er dispensed with the second man behind square leg [1] he's concentrating on an off-stump attack [1] three slips and a gully [1] but there's only the one man down at long leg [1] that's Mohammed Akram [2] there he needed to do a skirting [1] Ahmed away there to pick that up from the boundary boardings [2] it was a good shot [15]
- B: They're good foils for each other [1] Michael Atherton and Alec Stewart [1] Alec Stewart's the free-scoring player [1] takes the ball a little bit on the up [1] he's forcing the short leg away now to save him one behind backward square leg [2] and Michael Atherton's the cumulating player [1] plays the good balls square off the wicket on off-side and on-side [2] both playing different areas [2] and that makes a good opening partnership [1] that's why Michael Atherton wants Alec Stewart to open [1] he gets the scoreboard ticking over [4]
- A: That's quite cleverly bowled [1] it was also well played because Stewart pulled out of the shot [1] the ball was bouncing so high [1] he wouldn't have had control of it [2] Wasim Akram knew what he was trying to do [2] and er [1] Stewart was er just a little too good for him without actually playing a stroke [10]
- B: Well he's not played that er last ball very well [1] a ball into his sort of ribs just short of a length [1] a couple of those this morning [1] against Waqar he got himself into a little bit of trouble [1] you can see here [1] he kind of jumps at it [1] doesn't leave the face of the bat up there to play the ball [1] not much room [26]
- A: That was a cracker [2] I still get the feeling that er [1] Atherton's inconvenient with that shoulder blow he took early on [1] he just seems to be carrying his right arm a little bit but [1] er it doesn't show up too much there [4]
- B: Yes for all his outward pleasant calm and ruffled exterior [1] Michael Atherton [1] he's a tough little cookie inside [2] I've seen almost all of his Test match cricket [2] and er [1] he's a very good player [1] I would say also that in the last six months he's not been at his best [1] his footwork he knows [1] he has to work on in the winter but [1] he's such a tough determined character that er [1] you've got to take your hat off to him [3] he's not an easy man to get out in Test match cricket [2] and any player and Test match cricketer who's not at his best and can still turn in decent performances [1] get some runs [2] that's the sort of man you want in your side because you know when he's in top form and his technique's [2] perfect that he's going to get a lot more runs [53]
- A: Pakistan brought this young bowler to Australia for the short series [1] just a three match series out there [1] at the start of [1] last summer in the southern hemisphere [3] and he hadn't been seen before [2] made an instant impression with this [1] loping run into the crease [1] and what was [1] a very good action [1] it does seem to me [1] that he's slightly changed that action in delivering style [3] producing [2] a dropped right shoulder [1] his bowling shoulder [2] he also seems to be [2] moving away a bit more to the off-

side [2] in delivery than was the case in Australia just little things [1] that's why it's so [1] interesting to see a player after a few months [1] saw him for the first time [1] made a judgement or two about him [1] then [1] suddenly to have him appear again [11] hah [1] very good [1] he must have seen it [1] beautifully [1] because he hit it through mid-wicket rather than past square leg [2] they had put a man down at deep backward square [1] and Stewart avoided him [8] just have a look at er Mohammed Akram [1] with his bowling action [1] he was very straight [1] very upright in Australia [2] that's his right shoulder that seems to me to be dropping a little [1] yeah just there [5] and side-on we can have a look [1] bowling coaches in Pakistan will study videos of this kind all the time [1] they're very valuable [2] he's got that lovely run in [1] he's very young [7] a ton of ability and potential [9] 64 for no wicket now [2] just a reminder about the team composition [1] Ian Salisbury and Robert Croft [1] the two spinners are both in [7] I think I might have missed something in the plot of [1] all this [1] in that line-up you have two spinners [1] Salisbury and Croft [1] but you've left out the number one keeper in the country [2] my thing [1] whenever I was bowling over-the-wrist-spin [1] was that I liked to see the best keeper against over-the-wrist-spin [1] crouching down behind the bails [2] nibbling away at one or two [8] and Alec Stewart is a good keeper and a very fine cricketer [2] as er viewers will know from the comments I've been passing [1] I hold him in great regard [2] but er [1] with two spinners in the side I would have thought [1] the one thing you wanted [1] was your number one keeper [7] did I get the plot wrong there Geoffrey [2]

- B: Too sensible for our selectors Richie that [6] I think the partnership of Atherton and Stewart is er [2] is excellent [1] I really do [1] I just mentioned how they complement each other in their styles of play [1] the different areas they're hitting [1] and I think opening batsmen in Test match cricket are priceless [1] quality ones anyhow [6] OOH [1] well [1] that was brilliant captaincy [1] first ball to bring the man in from saving one to leg-gully [1] and the very next ball [1] he bowled it exactly in the spot he wanted [1] Michael Atherton here just helps it round quite quickly [2] and straight to the man [1] and he puts it down [7] well that was a great chance there [2] wonderful captaincy and bowling from Wasim Akram [1] got the man in the right spot [1] got the ball where the batsman's gonna play it [6] Asif Mujtaba [1] very good catcher he is [3] and this is where as a captain and bowler you're frustrated [1] you get everything right [2] and the fielder can't hold on to it [1] I wouldn't say it was an easy catch [1] it went quite quickly [1] chest height [2] but I think [1] more times than not [1] you'd be looking for that catch to be taken [11]
- A: Yes he was not very far backfield as he put the catch down Asif Mujtaba [1] it did come at him fairly quickly [3] in fact [1] he got hands to it [2] and we know there's been a slice of luck or two [1] or three for England this morning [2] that's what you expect [1] first morning of a Test you have things happen like that [1] and this is the little for Michael Atherton [6] missed his hands [1] it went so quickly in fact that [1] he didn't have time to get his hands into the right spot [5] and down it went [16] that's the England side [1] just to confirm that the pace bowlers will be Mullally [1] Cork and Lewis [2] two spinners [1] Croft of Glamorgan making his Test match debut and Salisbury of Sussex over-the-wrist spin for him [2] Croft is an off-spinner [1] and er a strong top six in the batting order [1] Atherton Stewart Hussain Thorpe Crawley and Knight [2] they played really well in the match up at Headingley [2] now then Mushtaq Ahmed [1] the over-the-wrist spinner from the Vauxhall End [2]
- B: Yes I'm a little bit surprised that [1] er Mushtaq hasn't been on a little bit earlier [2] there's one part of Alec Stewart's game [3] that he's not comfortable [1] with a certain bowler [1] it is leg-spin [1] he doesn't read all the varieties very well [3] see that was pad maybe bat as well [1] we can't tell quite from here but er [4] I remember that delivery

from Shane Waugh in Australia where he was trying to pull the flipper [3] THERE YOU ARE [2] misread it [1] what's happening there why isn't he going [2] not out [1] oh [1] I think that's out [1] a bit of puzzlement there by Alec Stewart [2] I think the umpire is gonna have a word with the bowler for running across and down the pitch but er [1] that was magnificently bowled [2] he does have a problem this Alec Stewart [1] when it comes to reading these leg-spinners [5]

- A: I think he's watched out and to see if it hit the top [1] Stewart simply didn't know where it had gone and er [1] just needed to know [1] as the ball rebounded off the wicket-keeper [1] just needed to know that it hadn't rebounded back off the stumps [2] there's no doubt that er it was [1] quite a clear dismissal [2] that's for himself because he's looking down the pitch and he didn't actually turn his head [2] wouldn't be at all certain what had happened to it [1] anyhow that was cleared up very quickly by the umpire [1] Kitchen [7] there goes the rebound in front of the keeper but that's not going to concern anyone [1] Stewart gone [2] first wicket down [1] and it was a pretty good leg-spinner [1] he's just done enough [1] Stewart [1] I suspect er might think later that he shouldn't have been aiming it away through mid-wicket [1] but it has turned enough to hit the top of [1] off-stump [2]
- B: I think Richie [1] as a former leg-spinner you'd like people to work you from middle-stump to square leg [1] even on a flat pitch I don't think you'd be unhappy with that [1] as Mushtaq wasn't [1] he was absolutely delirious [2] er you have to think of the nice little innings by Alec Stewart [1] and he's basically given it away a bit there trying to play it [1] too square on the leg-side [1] and that brings Nasser Hussain to the middle [19]
- A: Now then Nasser Hussain to face Mushtaq Ahmed [1] good bowling change from Wasim Akram [5] sometimes there'll be a little more [1] turn for the leg-spinner [1] in the first session of a Test match than there will be [1] in the other two on the opening day [1] a bit of moisture under the surface which quickly disappears [2] Wasim Akram has done the right thing there [7]
- B: Yes good captaincy here [1] he's trying to pressurise the new batsman Nasser Hussain [1] three men in catching positions [4] he's got to try to get Nasser out before he gets in [1] he's a brilliant player of spinners [1] lovely footwork [1] lets the ball come to him plays quite softly with his hands [2] he's as good a player as there is in English County cricket [7]
- A: I think there was a chance [1] Nasser Hussain didn't pick that [1] it was a bosie [2] a wrong'un [1] and er instead of hitting it off the middle of the bat down through mid-off [1] he squirted it away through mid-wicket off an inside edge [24] that was a bit ambitious [1] that was a top-spinner [1] I need to have a look at the replay but I suspect er [1] just with the naked eye that it was probably the top-spinner [1] which has skidded off a bit at Nasser Hussain [2]
- B: Yes it looked that way as if it was top-spin [1] a little bit too full as well to be [1] trying to cut behind square [4] I think that Mushtaq knows that [3] he's just deceived Nasser Hussain [1] a couple of balls [1] didn't get anything for it [2] but he did get Alec Stewart out [1] I think I'd always bowl a wrist-spinner quite early at Alec Stewart [2] he's such a wonderful player of the seamers [1] takes the ball early [1] great timing [2] but his Achilles heel is definitely [1] people like Shane Waugh and Mushtaq Ahmed [7]
- A: There aren't many of them around are there [1] in world cricket [2] the wrist-spinners have been kept out of the game for many years [1] just filtering back in now [2] people like Mushtaq and Waugh [2] Salisbury is in the England side today [2] Wasim Akram now to bowl to Atherton [6] this is very reminiscent of the ones played by Alec Stewart today [1] getting all his weight onto: the one foot [1] the right foot [1] and then rolling his wrists on the shot [2]

B: This is lovely cricket by Michael Atherton because er [1] he realises that [1] Wasim Akram is trying to bowl short of a length get it into his body [2] and drop one around the corner [1] he knows the plan is to tuck him up there and so he set himself

**A.4 Essex v Lancashire 7<sup>th</sup> Sept. 1996 BBC One (NatWest final)**  
(42 minutes, 3709 words)

- A: That might happen in a Test match but it won't in these one-dayers [4] you might as well get down to the pitch and meet him make him alter his length [4]
- B: Yes another factor too is that [1] the swinging ball is best played late [2] the batsman can leave it as late as possible but that's easier said than done in the early stage of an innings in a big match when very often the batsmen are tense a little nervous [3] overeager to push out into the spin or swing [12] end of a fine over Mark Ilott's bowled five overs now has conceded only four runs [1] and of course he's taken the wicket of Michael [1] Atherton [4]
- A: Well this pitch that they're playing on it really is one of the better ones it is gonna be dug up it's been played on all year it's low and slow but the cracks are quite fine [1] we've seen some here where the cracks have been appalling to start with very wide indeed this one will be OK this will last the match out but there'll be nobody getting real pace out of it no great bounce either [1] it'll just be slow and low [5] I can't see [1] also I can't see the spinners getting much out of it it looks very dry [2] it's not particularly worn it's just er a tired old square that needs digging up and is going to be dug up very shortly [4]
- B: Thank you Geoffrey [1] 24 for 1 and here is Jack Bannister [2]
- C: Thank you David [3] Neil Williams [1] nowhere near as impressive as Ilott [1] second boundary conceded by him [13] looking for that away swing and overpitching [14]
- B: Still Prichard keeping his slips in for Williams [3] and that's wide [4] the ball didn't carry but there is swing there [1] the pitch is drier than normally in these September finals but er there's still swing there [24]
- C: It's Ilott who's been top of the crop so far swung the ball beautifully back into the right-handers got one wicket and might well have had another [5] he and the whole Essex side coming here from a very successful match at Edgbaston against Warwickshire which they [1] they wrapped up in three and a half days [1] that man Williams got seven wickets in the match [8] the question really [1] the first one today how long does Prichard pursue Mark Ilott in particular because he's bowling so well [2]
- B: Well I think you do keep him going just for maybe what another couple of overs [2] he's bowled five already seven would be about right for anyone in an opening spell [3] and as you say Jack it's been a good spell so it's worth persevering I mean in my book John Crawley is still very lucky [2] well he's very lucky still to be there [1]
- C: That would've been two wickets for Mark Ilott [1] and they would've been wonderful figures [1] Neil Williams I don't think he's bowled quite as badly remember the no balls have counted against him as well [1] they count two [1] in NatWest cricket [1] er but Ilott has been the star so he's certainly worth persevering with [1] another wicket now is just what er Essex could do with [6]
- B: Heavy clouds covered the start and now the sun breaks through [1] a strong and deep-looking familiar Lancashire batting line-up [5] Neil Fairbrother [3] playing in I think his tenth final [3]
- C: In the Essex side only Gooch and Prichard have known what a big day like this is like before [32]
- B: Another shout [1] it's his fourth [3] all of them perilously close as far as the batsmen are concerned [2]
- C: It's a very good case to answer against [1] maybe just a question of where it's pitched [2] again David Shepherd I think er just looking at the batsman's front foot but they're all worth a shout it's not quite as [1] er straight as the one that John Crawley had first ball [3] he was not gonna get that out and he's certainly not gonna get this one out [14]
- B: Eleven extras [2] about a third of the score that's with the no balls counting double [27]

- C: John Gallian what he's done this year [65]
- B: Curiously enough for a side like Essex who've been such a strong one-day side [1] only their second appearance in one of these September finals in [1] since the first one back in 1963 [1] whereas Lancashire this is their ninth [1] they've won the competition five times [12]
- C: Well he's strong this morning Mark Ilott and bowling well [2] maybe another one maybe another couple of overs would be about right for him this morning [1] just keep a couple for later [3] if the temptation is there I'd get with it for Paul Prichard the captain because [1] they've got people who can bowl at the end of the innings [1] when you've got a man like Ilott swinging with a new ball [1] then er get the best out of him at the start of the day that's pretty much the rule [11] John Crawley off the mark [15]
- B: They've really done well Lancashire to maintain a run rate of around three because er the ball has swung they did lose the early wicket [1] could've lost another one [1] there is the England captain [2] first out [5] it's very easy to get bogged down in these games if you happen to lose an early wicket or two [27]
- C: Yes I think the Lancashire batsmen have been forced just to battle it out a bit really there haven't been too many scoring opportunities [1] a couple have come off Neil Williams that's been about it [7] and nor do I think it's really been the pitch that has been the factor so often it's been cast as the villain of the piece [2] this one I think is dry enough I saw it a couple of days back and it was already looking pretty good then [1] it's just been the fact the ball's moved in the air it hasn't seamed around as much a couple certainly have but it's been the swing in the air that's been the biggest problem [4]
- B: Yes [1] historically these Lord's finals in September they've often been played on pitches which have been unduly damp at the start and er [1] the records bear it out in the last 26 years only four sides have won batting first hence the automatic decision really by Prichard to field first although Watkinson could never be put to the test that he would have batted which I suppose [2] is quite a good answer when it doesn't matter [5]
- C: Of course the other thing that comes into play later in the day [1] at the end of the day is the fact that if the game goes the distance [1] it does get dark and batting in the gloom at the end of the match is never easy [2] there is something about the adrenaline that pumps in players if you've got a close match at that stage there's always the other side of the story which is the batsmen have a clue where it's coming from and if it is dark at the end it's the fielders especially in the deep [1] who are the ones with the problems so er all we can pray for this evening is clear skies [3] and hope that when the game does come to a close it's being played in good light [14]
- B: John Edridge on the right there [20]
- C: Just a little late making up his mind here John Crawley [2] and getting a little stuck that's what happens when batsmen are waiting for the ball to swing [2] and then the shot comes it comes late and if the feet haven't quite moved into position there's always the danger of the inside edge [11] GREAT SHOT [6]
- B: First boundary conceded by Ilott and really that's the first ball that's been sufficiently off line and length to get this sort of treatment [2]
- C: A lot more positive from John Crawley here [1] left foot right into position quickly good follow through [2] and that's a lovely shot [4] perfectly placed too [1]
- B: Just too wide outside off-stump to swing back that's the problem for swing bowlers [1] it only swings off a certain line [4] and Ilott has swung the ball back into the right hander from around about mid-off once you get it further over [1] unless your name is Waqi Younis [1] you can't really get it back [12]
- C: That's the story so far [1] Essex winning the toss fielding [11] there we go [8]
- B: One shot was near perfect [1] this one needed a lot of luck to survive [1] John Crawley this time playing just a little further away from the body it didn't swing back and it

- wasn't meant to [2] even so [1] inside edge [1] it was only a whisker away from the off-stump [2] just seaming off the pitch that's the er little bit of movement that made the difference [20]
- C: Eight off the over [1] those two boundaries one intended one not and Illott's seventh [2] and he took the first wicket to fall this morning that of the England captain Michael Atherton [2]
- B: And this was a very fine delivery too [1] just about a perfect one as far as the left arm is concerned [1] a little bit of swing and late swing that's the key and Mike Atherton never really got into a position [1] to deal with this [1] I'd give full credit there to the bowler [6]
- C: The only success so far and the first bowling change [1] Neil Williams rested and Ronnie Irani to come on and bowl [5] these two came together when the score was 16 [8] Irani one of two or three er cricketers who are battling for one spot on the senior tour of Zimbabwe and New Zealand [1] Mark Ealham [1] Adam Hogg and this man Ronnie Irani [4] lively medium pace but not really your length and line type of bowler [3] he'll be looking for swing as well [9] of course a former Lancashire cricketer who watched four finals here from the player's balcony while he was at Old Trafford [2] only six wickets so far but er [2] it's the economy rate really that's interesting under four and a half an over [7] Prichard's given him [1] a good close field only the slip and the gully but three other men [1] with a single [1] that's what he's done so far with his [5] and we've got a ring on the left saving a single [2] also a couple leg-side [7] Nasser Hussain that key crucial position just behind square [1] always filled by the best fielder in the side [6]
- B: Yes it's a combination position isn't it a combination of possible catching certainly run-saving [24] John Leever in the centre former Essex left-arm who'll have enjoyed Mark Illott's bowling this morning [13]
- C: Always a big test of nerve for a bowler in this first over in one of these showpiece games and particularly for Irani [2] although Essex are playing six bowlers [1] Grayson would be the sixth and hasn't really figured too many times so it's essential for [1] Paul Prichard that Ronnie Irani settles in [2] and he's done that with a very good first over [2] a maiden [1]
- B: A very fine over and the key to it was the length we saw him in the one-day international he was over-pitching [1] against Pakistan [1] and this over has been one where every ball has been on a length and right sort of line and that's that's all the captain can ask [3] he's had support in the previous rounds from Stewart Law he's also bowled some very good medium pace [1] Stewart Law not available for this match he's trying to make his way back from Colombo so er [1] Essex have played Ashley Cowan up-coming fast medium bowler [2] brisk pace he's yet to bowl they've given themselves the option to six bowlers as Jack said [1] Paul Grayson is there [1] slow left arm [6]
- C: Through there again [2] he must have beaten the bat on seven or eight occasions this morning [8]
- B: There was just the one shot that John Crawley got right [2] which he clattered through the off-side the other three or four attempts at something similar [1] have all failed [1] inside edge [1] fresh air [2] all because the batsman is waiting for the ball to swing getting his feet stuck a bit [12]
- C: I had a look at the Essex team and looking at the Lancashire team there's a very unusual common denominator there's no overseas player playing in this final [1] this is not exactly unique but it's very very unusual Lancashire by choice Steve Elworthy doesn't get in [1] and Essex because Stewart Law is employed in Colombo today in the final of the Triangular Tournament out there [26] eighth over for Illott [11] and we've said that Essex have got six bowlers but er I saw a seventh turn his arm over at Edgbaston on Thursday and that was one Graham Gooch [1] and certainly if there's a little bit of swing

- around [1] he's not the worst [28] coming to the end of the eighth over for Illott and [1] you would think this might be time for a rest for him [22]
- B: Well a second successive maiden [5] and Mark Illott [1] his figures extremely good [1] he's done well [3] only dented by a couple of boundaries he conceded eight overs two maidens 1 for 13 [6] and those eight overs [1] 48 deliveries no no balls a couple of wides [2] only four scoring strokes from him [13] two successive maidens and er there's no problems yet for Lancashire but Gallian and Crawley will not be getting edgy but they'll certainly be looking to try and er break out a little bit [1] and see if they can break this field because it is a close field through which there aren't many gaps [42]
- C: He scores [1] good work first one he's actually put leg-side [8]
- B: Yes first over was immaculate and this gives Jason Gallian the perfect chance just to hammer it away [2] long leg I think could have been just that bit wider for someone for someone of Irani's pace someone who should be aiming at off-stump [46]
- C: Best he's bowled certainly with the most movement [7]
- B: Yes there was no way that John Crawley was gonna get close to that [4] and although he was actually playing at it [2] intending to get a bat on it [2] all he had to do was to make sure he didn't really go after it once he'd seen it move [9]
- C: Five off the over [11] and the second bowling change [3] Mark Illott finishes and very promising Ashley Cowan [1] comes on to bowl [2] tall young man who runs the ball away from the right-handers so [1] bowling down the slope here at Lord's won't exactly go with him [8]
- B: Yes I've heard people compare him to Neil Foster [2] he was a very fine bowler for Essex and England [3] I've seen Cowan a couple of times once at Worcester and once at Edgbaston and he does run the ball away from the right-handers [1] and er nice economical run-up and very good hand action [15]
- C: Well it's obviously a very very big day for him [4] Nasser Hussain in that key position we were talking about just a few minutes ago [9]
- B: And Cowan in line for the A-tour which is [1] the party will be announced together with that of the full party on Tuesday [7] first full season with the Essex side [9] off-side wide [1] Keith Fletcher made the point to me early on in the season when I was talking to him about him that he was one of the reasons why Essex went for an overseas batsman and not a bowler [2] once he's settled [1] here is Keith Fletcher [2] and Bob Bennett the Lancashire chairman [3] Jeff Arnold [24]
- C: Paul Prichard has given his er new recruit a bit of cover on the off-side [2] the first time there's a sweeper out in the deep at the Grand Stand [16] the batsmen this morning have got er just a handful of balls through that off-side [2] quite a good idea you've still got three men saving one slip's still in [1] but just to give a little bit of [1] insurance to Ashley Cowan keeping that man back on the boundary [9]
- B: Well just a single and a wide [2]
- C: He'll be happy that one's out of the way [6] certainly the biggest crowd he's played in front of in his very brief career [5]
- B: Yes it was handy for him that he was allowed [1] the first 15 overs or so just to [1] settle into the day [2] he'll be encouraged by the way Mark Illott bowled [2] but you don't want to leave him too long [1] leave him the awful moment too long and the nerves can still be jangling around inside [4]
- C: AND HE'S GIVEN HIM [2]
- B: RONNIE IRANI STRIKES and Gallian goes [2] and suddenly the game changes [2] 48 for 2 [2]
- C: It looked a good delivery to me [5] well just in front of off-stump that's the only thing I think that Peter Willey had to think about whether or not the pad had gone outside the off-stump [2] and that seemed pretty much in front of it [3] it was close [1] close enough



- for Peter Willey close enough for Jason Gallian [2] he's had to struggle through those 21 this morning [2] Lancashire 48 for 2 [3] and I think they've actually done well to get this far without losing that second wicket [4]
- B: So Essex having won the toss [3] on this slightly overcast morning here [2] will be happy with the two wickets will be feeling maybe that they could have had three by now [3] Neil Fairbrother the new batsman a wonderful one-day player [2] naturally aggressive [2] but at 48 for 17.1 overs gone Lancashire will be er [1] well happy to know that they've got such a long batting order [1] even if the top order fails [1] which it has done on occasions that strength in depth of the lower order have got them out of trouble that's happened this season more than once [2]
- C: Yes and er Fairbrother [1] as with Graham Lloyd who's due next in [1] in these sort of tightish situations are right up their street they love to counterattack [1] they love to hassle and harass [1] and he is a batsman who just won't be content to play his way through to lunch [3] one of the most positive batsmen in one-day cricket around [13]
- B: That's a bit over-optimistic [6] even with the help of the slope Ronnie Irani has got to get the ball to come back just a little bit sharper than this [1]
- C: I think he knows that [1] Neil Fairbrother knows that [1] and those are wonderful figures 46.11 he averages in this tournament [12] it was in the semifinal [1] at Old Trafford against Yorkshire [1] he got out second or third ball [9] that was off Stemp [3] it was Graham Lloyd who proceeded to play a Fairbrother-type innings and walloped Yorkshire all over the place [2] so although Essex will be more than happy with [1] everything so far 48 for 2 [4] they know they're gonna be at full stretch as long as Fairbrother's there [22] coming to the end of the 18<sup>th</sup> over [16] GOOD OVER [1] wicket maiden [1] Irani's second 48 for 2 [1] some words from David Gower and then Richie Benand [1]
- B: Well they do say that the NatWest final is a good stage to place your claims when the winter tours are being picked a couple of days later [2] and for Ronnie Irani I think the main worry for the England selectors will be the quality of his bowling [1] he's done well in championship cricket this year his figures in this competition weren't so good [1] we saw him in the internationals against Pakistan struggle a bit [1] but this has been a perfect start [1] conditions in his favour this morning [2] even so a bowler has to bowl well and take advantage and a couple of half-volleys now and the advantage would have gone back to Lancashire [15]
- D: Difficult to relax even when you are back in the pavilion [1] there's always the thought of what you might have done [1] how things might have gone [4] that was well done you could feel he's been keen this morning and has backed up some excellent bowling Nasser Hussain the man there at gully [1] rather a deepish gully [1] backward pointish now [4] that was well saved and well grabbed at the second attempt [8] even better [30] piece of cake that one [2] there are always little bits and pieces within a game of cricket [1] you've got Nasser Hussain there who's an absolute [1] rock solid certainty to go on the tour to Zimbabwe and New Zealand [4]
- B: There's been some good cricket to watch this morning [11]
- D: Yes the little bits and pieces within the game itself and one of them concerns Nasser Hussain and Ronnie Irani [4] that's well bowled [1] whatever nerves Ashley Cowan might have had [1] he seems to have got rid of them pretty quickly [13]
- A: I think what Essex have done well this morning is that they made a judgement call having won the toss to bowl first [1] they hoped to get a bit of swing out of the atmosphere here and they've used it well [2] though having made that call to put Lancashire in [1] they've then bowled really well [1] kept it tight [1] put the Lancashire batsmen under pressure [1] and made Lancashire work really really hard for any runs that they've got backed up by some good fielding [2] so the early points have been to Essex you would say this morning so far [4]

D: This is the second part of the little battle I was talking about Ronnie Irani is just waiting for spectators to sit down [1] he is the one as David pointed out who is battling for a place [2] in that tour to Zimbabwe and New Zealand [2] we've seen him bowl a couple of times recently in limited overs cricket [2] without any success at all [1] the Pakistan team took to him because he bowled half-volleys and they were nice long straight half-volleys [1] they smashed it everywhere [2] but here today [1] in conditions more conducive to medium pace bowling [1] he's fighting back [4] he's doing it in front of the selectors and knowing that the selectors will be choosing their team [1] thinking about it over the weekend and choosing it on Monday [3] into whatever he's doing out there comes the question of temperament he knows [1] he's not actually on thin ice but er might have a little problem so it's up to him to overcome that [17] got himself off the mark with that single

## **B Cricket on the radio (54 minutes, 10,000 words)**

### **B.1 England v Pakistan 31<sup>st</sup> Aug. 1996 BBC Radio 5 Live (one-day match) (12 minutes, 2197 words)**

- A: It was an easy one to give in the end actually [3] Wasim [1] runs it again and bowls to KNIGHT that's edged just past Moin Khan and will go for four [1] and had there been a slip there that would have been a [1] a straightforward enough chance but there isn't [1] the two close fieldsmen are at er square point and at mid-wicket and that was well out of reach of Moin Khan
- B: And 50 seconds ago there [1] there was a slip they've just taken Inzamam out and put him at short mid-wicket he he's following the ball a bit Wasim this morning and this tends to happen as a captain you get in a bit of a mess when the ball flies all over the place you do end up er following the ball a little bit and I don't think he should have had a slip actually from the start of the over but there we are that would have gone straight to first slip [2]
- A: It is a lottery as to where you put your first slip isn't it it really is [1] 80 without loss [2] here is Waqar and he bowls at Knight [1] drives a good-looking stroke and he'll take a single here [1] because Saqlain was quite deep there at extra cover just on the edge of the circle [1] one more run to England 81 without loss [1] and Nick Knight who loves batting here at Edgbaston [2] moves on to 42 [3] still some batting to come for England [2] presumably Atherton will come in three although [1] it depends if you want to keep the momentum going [1] maybe he won't [1] maybe he'll drop down and send in another stroke player maybe Maynard or Thorpe [4] this is where they get a little bit of a tangle with Atherton I think if they don't open with him [2] it's not easy to know quite where he'll slot in 'cause he isn't a player to come out and thrash it about this simply isn't his game [2] 81 without loss [1] as Waqar comes and bowls to Stewart DOWN THE PITCH HE COMES and this is an EXTRAORDINARY SHOT [1] he's hit over the: it's for SIX [1] OHO DEAR there's a Union Jack flying way down there [3] it's exactly where the ball landed [1] I haven't seen that happen for a very long time Stewart coming down the pitch Waqar gave him enough width to get underneath it that was the point [1] and just like chipping for the green [1] a hundred yard chip or so [1] Stewart chipped that for six [1] 87 without loss he has 41 [1] 12 overs [1] thank you Bill [1] Knight has 42 and you'll be joined by C.M.J.
- B: Well that was a staggering shot [1] very often you see a player come down the wicket and aim over long-off and slice it lightly and the ball goes over cover maybe over extra cover but normally for four not for six now he's actually hit that off the middle of the bat he started [1] he shaped to hit the ball long-off ended up opening the face a bit and hitting it right off the meat of the bat over extra cover for six and it it was the most extraordinary shot I think I've seen from a ball that wasn't that wide had the ball been a yard wide of off-stump that would have been an easy one just to throw the the the kitchen's sink at it but er that one was er that was an extraordinary shot and it just shows how positive England have been they're not giving Pakistan any time to rest here at all they're just gonna keep throwing the bat at the ball [3]
- A: It's an astounding start isn't it [1] 87 for no wicket off 12 overs and Alec Stewart has now 40 off 30 balls [3] flailing bats [2] flying edges [1] and and some very good shots as well [2] and Saqlain [1] having conceded a mere run off his first over is now gonna bowl to the left-handed Knight with a ring of four [1] reminding you that there have to be there can only be two outside the circle [1] he bowls and Knight cuts him hard into the covers but this time can't get through because [2] Ijaz Ahmed is there on the edge of the 30 yard circle everybody standing on the very edge [1] they've gotta be just inside it when the

- ball is bowled [1] and the two deep men [1] the only two allowed [1] are at deep backward square leg and deep mid-wicket Saqlain shuffles in bowls and this is swept towards those two leg-side fielders it's gone by the second but it's gonna just be caught off by and it isn't [2] perhaps it should have been actually but er [3] Ata-ur got his right boot to the ball [1] and the ball passed over the top of his toes [2]
- B: They've not fielded well at all here Pakistan [1] this is one of the better Pakistan fielding sides in my view but when they're under pressure they're like any side in the world to be honest [1] the fielding is the first thing that goes and this morning Pakistan have been very poor I think Wasim Akram has got to help the bowler here a little he's gotta bring in four on the off-side I think he needs somebody back on the off-side instead of the slip to give him that little bit of protection to bowl off-stump and outside [2]
- A: Yes [1] here comes Saqlain and he bowls and Knight draws back and cuts against the spin but straight to cover [1] and there's no run [1] 91 for no wicket [1] England having been put in to bat [1] in the 13<sup>th</sup> over [1] on a breezy sunny pleasant morning [1] typical English summer's day of old-fashioned type really [2] not blistering hot [2] the breeze blowing the flags by the scoreboard at the other end as that's driven HARD by Knight through the extra cover gap [1] on the pitch he stands and he salutes 50 as if he's a political leader on a balcony [3] holding the bat high [1] and this has been imperious stuff by him [2] and you can hear what the Edgbaston crowd here think about it [1] 95 for no wicket in the 13<sup>th</sup> over [1] Knight to 50 off [4]
- B: 47 balls with 9 fours [4] so I don't know how these youngsters are meant to be bowling to a field like this [1] there's huge gaps on the off-side [1] I just think he should be giving some protection here and er OK it's attacking to have a slip in but I don't think at 95 for nought he needs it [2]
- A: Here comes er Saqlain and that's another paddle-sweep attempt [1] I think he probably hit it [1] it's gone up over his pad and down to short leg and they got [1] in fact a leg-bye didn't they it didn't come off the bat er [3] I'm temporarily forgetting [1] do you have to have two close fielders or only one in which case he's got two
- B: Two
- A: So he's got two
- B: Two because he's got the short mid-wicket which is
- A: So where is your other close fielder if not
- B: Oh I'd have him [1] I'd have him out in in the off-side there
- A: But he'd still be catching
- B: I just feel the slip is not protecting him at all [1] it's an attacking position and you can have someone in the ring on the off-side as long as he's close enough to be catching [1] in a catching position [1] which means you can then push somebody back on the off-side [1] I'd have someone there for Knight 'cause he's swinging and swinging at every ball [2]
- A: Knight is now ready after the leg-bye so he's still at 50 [1] 96 for no wicket in the 13<sup>th</sup> over [2] real Sri Lankan style this [1] might be Jayasuriya and his partner [2] here comes Saqlain Stewart hits it LONG [1] a straight six just over Rehman down the pitch with the spin [1] beautifully struck [1] and made it look as though he was playing in a small village ground here [1] he did that so easily [2] six for Stewart [1] 100 up in the 13<sup>th</sup> over [1] the last ball of the 13<sup>th</sup> over
- B: This is exactly er Sri Lankan stuff isn't it [1] they were looking to score around 100 [1] 110 weren't they off their first 15 overs or more I think on the odd occasion I think they scored more [2] but we're getting a forced change here [1] Wasim's gonna have to bowl Mushtaq he wouldn't have wanted to put him on this early [1] there's no question that Mushtaq has come to attack and he is capable of changing the game but he was complaining the other day of having cold fingers [1] er and it was very very cold up at Old Trafford I think there is bitter wind here again today and I don't think Mushtaq is

gonna over overrelish to bowl here this morning at 102 for nought off 13 overs on a cold windy day [2]

- A: He's coming on inside the 15 over mark [1] so they've got a chance to get on top of him straight away [1] on the other hand [1] Wasim's got to try something different and maybe his power of spin will er [1] get the wicket that they badly need [3] so poor Saqlain has bowled two overs of his off-spinners for 24 runs [1] it's 102 for no wicket after 13 [2] it's Knight he's gonna be facing [1] he's 50 [1] Stewart is 46 [3] and Mushtaq to bowl from the City End [2] [...] they've finished off this Edgbaston ground very nicely at the far end [1] and Mushtaq over the wicket bowls to Knight and Knight nips him down deliberately to short third man for a single [3] Aamir Sohail the fielder and what a contrast between this start by England and Pakistan's start [1] at Old Trafford [1] on a very different pitch mind you on Thursday [3] this pitch is lightly grassed but hard and so far played very well indeed [1] although this is the pitch on which Curtly Ambrose bowled that startling first ball to Michael Atherton last year in the Test match
- B: Slightly [1] slightly less grass on this one don't you think than that pitch and er this will be good for Edgbaston this will be good for for everybody here at Warwickshire if we can see a big England score here [1] there's been a lot of criticism about the pitch and it just shows that er [1] they can produce a very good wicket here and I remember [1] certainly playing here this was the hardest ground to defend a total on if it was a flat wicket [1] it normally was [1] the Oval's another fast ground [1] but this was always I thought the flattest of all the pitches
- A: I just remember Robin Smith's extraordinary innings here against Australia and England still didn't get enough did they
- B: No [1] that's right
- A: That was three years ago [4] and er [1] there have been some high scores over the years certainly [1] 103 for no wicket [1] England aiming for 300 here I would think [1] in comes Mushtaq and bowls and Stewart IS PLAYED ON [1] he plays on trying to square drive a ball [1] it's right up in his block hole [3] and it just got an edge in front of the stumps [2] so Mustaq Ahmed [1] does the trick for Pakistan [1] great relief for them I'm sure and Stewart's brilliant innings ends at 46 he comes out as you can hear with a rousing buzz ovation
- B: He sort of squeezed it through I think [1] a a Yorker length didn't he [1] good bowling from Mushtaq it was well up in the air [1] just drifted [1] just drifted in slightly to Alec Stewart who in the end was [1] was was yorked [2] trying to squeeze it out on the off-side but what a start this is and a lovely time for the England captain to come in [1] 103 for 1 [1] and I think this is perfect for him I think the the temptation might have been to send a a an Irani in or a Hollioake [1] or somebody to keep this momentum going but I think that might have been a mistake [1] you don't want to send another hitter in and then find all of a sudden [1] from this magnificent start [1] England become 120 for 3 it would be nice now for Michael Atherton to try and bat for 20 overs knocking the ball around and and just keep it going very gently [1] I think Nick Knight now must er make sure that he sees Atherton in [1] it would be a big mistake to keep thrashing around from his end with two new batsmen [1]
- A: Yes and I'm sure Atherton's an experienced and good enough player not to cough things up if he if he feels he I'm sure
- B: He didn't do so did he at Old Trafford [1] he came in and scored smoothly I'd say [1] he didn't er smash around he didn't need to mind you here [1] as you said just a minute ago England are probably looking for 300
- A: I think England are still looking for 300 at this stage after this start [1] they'd be disappointed with anything less than 280 [1]

B: This is the 14<sup>th</sup> over Stewart bowled by Mushtaq Ahmed 46 off 32 balls with [1] how many fours Bill [2]

A: Four fours and two sixes [1]

B: Thank you

**B.2** Essex v Lancashire 7<sup>th</sup> Sept. 1996 BBC Radio 5 Live (one-day match)  
(42 minutes, 7803 words)

- A: Ilott [2] rubbing the ball on the side of his trousers [1] turns [1] he runs just beyond 30 yards but the first few yards are a shuffle and then he gets into a long and even stride [1] lovely long flowing action it is at the end with an old-fashioned drag and he bowls outside the off-stump [1] and that's taken [1] by the wicket-keeper [1] 24 for 1
- B: Whatever else you say about this season [1] I think you have to say this has been the year of the left-armed bowlers [1] there have never in the history of English cricket been so many of them [1]
- A: I think it is quite a nice thing that [1] too [1] we've needed variation in English cricket and we've not had particular strength in the bowling department so it's nice to see the return of the left-armed I enjoy watching Ilott if he can pitch it up I hate it when he bowls too short 'cause he has got the ability and the swing [1] and he and Neil Williams [1] I don't think Neil Williams has bowled very well here I don't think he's used to conditions and he was the one I was really looking at this morning to use and and really swing the ball
- B: This is his fifth over from the Nursery End [1] it's outside the off-stump and left alone [2] by Gallian [1] he has fired some but he hasn't consistently put it in the right place has he
- A: I think he's I think he's tried too hard as swing bowlers obviously [1] they've got less room for error with the ball wobbling around a bit I think he's just [1] he's driving for that little bit of extra pace trying to get it on a length [1] he just he just hasn't bowled with any sort of line and length here [2]
- B: Still got two slips as he comes in and bowls to Gallian and takes it straight across his feet and drives it handsomely through extra cover for four to the Mound Stand [2] the second four off Williams [1] the first was under-pitched so to speak and that one was a bit over-pitched but Gallian [1] in both cases recognised the opportunity [1] and hit it away with real style [1] 24 for 1 [4]
- A: It wasn't a bad ball actually [1] he's actually swung it and it was only just outside off-stump [1] nice to see him pitching it up he's got a ring of three there [1] he's got two slips and [1] this is this first hour is when Essex really gotta try and take two or three wickets [2]
- B: Well absolutely and he's got two slips so [1] you know [1] he may catch his man in comes Williams and bowls AND THAT'S edged in fact to second slip [1] just in front of Graham Gooch who got down quickly [2] 43 years of age or not [1] and stopped that [1] Gooch in fact looks for the replay at this replay which has been quite a bonus for [1] the spectators [1] with great respect to Yorkshire [1] on all the Test grounds this year except Headingley where they invested in a rather less good screen [1]
- A: [laughter]
- B: I think it was a bit cheaper
- A: I'm sure it was free I should think
- B: [laughter] in comes Williams from the Nursery End [1] he bowls and that's just nudged down deliberately by Gallian to third man [1] quickly fielded by [1] Mark Ilott [1] there's a certain similarity or it's been pointed out many times before [1] between Ilott and J.K. Lever who I saw squeezing in with the masses incidentally through the North gate this morning [1] their sort of looseness of movement is similar [1] Lever was a very good natural outfielder wasn't he
- A: Terrific fielder [1] and a great arm [2] not a bad bowler either [1] he would have bowled well here this morning

- B: He would have loved it wouldn't he [2] he's had his share of success here for Essex [1] in comes Williams and bowls outside the off-stump [1] and something you're right Chris [1] is not quite right about Williams he looks as almost he's lost his run up there [2]
- A: How many no balls has he bowled Bill
- B: Two [1] only two but I think he's worried about er
- A: He's always had a problem [1] throughout his career he's always had problems with no balls and er when it now costs you two runs [1] which [1] I think is I'm not sure but I think it's a bit harsh on a bowler [1] two runs [1] but it puts you under more pressure
- B: Williams comes in puts a vigorous body action into that one which is outside the off-stump [1] Crawley quite happy to bide his time and get used to the conditions here he remains nought not out [1] and the sun is coming out and that completes [1] the picture
- A: Yes and there'll be a slight feeling in the Essex camp that they've not taken their chance in a way that they might have done [1] you know they've they've had some some lovely conditions er the forecast was good for bright sunny weather but er they were lucky to have had 40 minutes in [1] in fairly low cloud cover [1] and now the sun's coming out and the Essex [1] you can almost see them looking up for the clouds thinking God we should have had two or three here [1] and the game might have been well set up for them [1] and now as it is [1] they're down to one slip [1] for Ilott [1] and I'd like to see two slips I have to say I'm pleased to see the short leg there but I still feel they've gotta try and use this new ball and attack a little more [2]
- B: Yes Ilott's got a short leg and just one slip as he bowls down the leg-side that's a wide and er the slope carries it a bit further down the leg-side and David Shepherd has been very strict and I think [2] it was certainly outside a foot [1] it has gone for four [2] Chris [1] er this is a rather unfair test of your memory [1] but does the name Vincent Corrados mean anything to you
- A: I know the name yes but if you ask me any other questions I'll probably struggle [1]
- B: Well you and I [1] you kind of invited me to play [1] in a festival at Papignion [1] was it last year or two years ago in comes er Ilott and that's hit the pads missing leg-stump says umpire Shepherd [2] as Gallian tried to turn it away with the swing through mid-wicket [1] 30 for 1
- A: Yes two years ago I remember 'cause you were bowling there if I remember correctly
- B: Yes I was [1] I'd like to think I was [1] one of the finer episodes of English cricket history
- A: [laughter]
- B: I'm delighted to say that Vincent and Tony Corrados who are stall wards at that cricket club in France have written to say that their plea for new players has been answered [1] early this season I mentioned they were short of players [1] they've got three new players very good news in comes Ilott bowls short on the leg-stump and that's turned off the front foot actually [1] by Gallian square on the on-side [2] but only as far as Grayson at square leg [1] no run [1] 30 for 1 [1] so that's good news they'll also have a fixture with another team [1] Vincent on that occasion was kind enough to bake me a cake [1] curiously enough [1] we have just received a cake [1]
- A: [laughter]
- B: Beautiful bit of [1] artistry that [2] to celebrate the Cricket Writers 50<sup>th</sup> anniversary and that is a very nice gesture from NatWest in comes Ilott from the Pavilion End a little bit of an inside edge from Gallian to short leg [1] no run and [1] therefore [1] no better moment to say thank you and to the boss himself Lord Alexander [1] good morning
- C: Christopher good morning [1] there's one thing that followers of cricket do know and that is that cakes are welcome in this box [1] the Cricket Writers 50<sup>th</sup> anniversary is some really good occasion for one more cake [1] thank you for your kindness
- B: Are you going to present the cricket writers in the press box



- C: Yes we are [1] we're going to do that at tea time [1] and we've got a bigger cake because there are more of them
- B: There are more of them yes [1] well that's a very nice gesture [1] thank you so much [1] in comes Ilott with his long strides past umpire Shepherd he bowls a fuller length just outside the off-stump bit of bounce there [1] left alone by Gallian he's shown excellent judgement so far [1] he's 15 not out 30 for 1 in the 11<sup>th</sup> over [1] er you yesterday announced or NatWest did that you're going to finance the new press centre at the far end is that right
- C: Yes it is and it's got to get planning permission [1] it's got to get the members' consent [1] but we think it's an incredibly exciting er concept [1] there'll be a marvellous feature of the ground there'll be tremendous means of communication [1] media training centres [1] in a way in which Lord's will be instantly recognisable still right into the next century
- B: Ilott bowls and it's pushed into the off-side excuse me interrupting [1] er [1] yes it certainly looks futuristic
- C: Yes futuristic [1] someone called it like Al Johnson's lifts which I think is is not a bad description
- B: Or Mick Jagger's
- C: Well he's not a traditional old member
- B: How about Brigitte Bardot
- C: Well er [1] we'd settle for that
- B: [laughter] [1] it depends on your imagination but it looks a bit like a space ship landing at the other end there [1] in comes Ilott and bowls and it's pushed into the off-side [1]
- C: There'll be facilities for 250 people er at the press centre [1] and tremendous communications brought in [1] I think it's a terrific project for the next century
- B: Well it looks marvellous and [1] what I like about it is that you can still see the gap that we can see here looking out of the pavilion to the Nursery End [1] that end which is so much part of the whole scene at Lord's and that is not interrupted [1] so Henry Blofeld will still be able to see the rubbish bins which is very important news for all our listeners [1] and also we can still see those wonderful trees which [1] give Lord's still a bit of a rural field [1] feel rather [1] so that's an adornment in comes Williams and that's beautifully kept away off the leg-stump by Crawley for his first runs [1] whether it's gonna be two or three is a matter of doubt at the moment as Irani just struggled with the ball a little at deep mid-wicket having run back [2] so Crawley off the mark [1] hit in his favourite area [1] 33 for 1 [1] and have you been able to see many of the earlier rounds
- C: I saw Sussex which is my team [1] certainly I saw them go out down at Hove to Yorkshire [1] and I also got to Ireland and saw Sussex win a match
- B: [laughter] in comes Williams and bowls and that's played to mid-off [1] firm-looking stroke by Gallian who's certainly played beautifully so far this morning [1] fielded by Peter Such [1] I'm sure it was great fun wasn't it
- C: Yes terrific fun [1] there are some very keen people in Ireland [1] there's a marvellous spirit [1] there are good celebrations before and after the match [1]
- B: Win or lose [1] in comes [1] Williams and that's bowled to the off-side [1]
- C: Win or lose [1] it just happens to be a coincidence at the matches I see
- B: You are [1] what's your connection with Sussex now
- C: Well I was a boy in Sussex [1] I used to watch them in the days back in the 50s [1] when for three years running they came second to Surrey in the County championship
- B: In comes Williams again from the Nursery End [1] and that's played into the off-side [1] they've had a nightmare sort of season haven't they and a disappointing last month or so [2]
- C: Yes [1] in the middle of the season they suddenly looked as if they were going to do well [1] they won four [1] was it five matches in the championship in a row and the spirit

- under Allan Wells and Desmond Haynes was running high [1] it's worn off a bit in the last few weeks [1]
- B: Williams again over the wicket at the Nursery End and Gallian plays this to backward point [1] fielded by Nasser Hussain [1] 33 for 1 no run Gallian 15 Crawley 3 and the batsman out [1] Michael Atherton bowled by Illott for 4 and the tones you're hearing next to me are those of Lord Alexander [1] chairman of the NatWest bank [1] who's sponsored this competition [2] and a distinguished barrister in your former incarnation [2] I must just ask you [1] without asking for your verdict on the verdict in comes Williams bowls down this leg and taken by Rollins [1] no stroke [2] er what's your general impression of that extraordinary law case [1] whilst you're talking I'll move out and let Henry Blofeld in because it's his turn next
- C: Christopher I think that law case was very regretful I think it's a lot of nonsense [1] I always took the view at the bar that libel action should only be brought if people's reputations are likely to be laid absolutely low and dead and forever [1] that clearly wasn't such a case I don't think it did cricket any good [1] I don't think it was any to the player [3]
- A: Yes I absolutely endorse that too [1] good morning everyone [1] it's er [1] well there is some sun around [1] there's a little bit of shadow out there now and a little bit of blue sky [1] and it's gonna be Illott who's bowled splendidly this morning [1] he's got the one wicket he bowled Atherton for four [1] here he is now from the Pavilion End [1] over the wicket he bowls now [1] Crawley [1] Crawley goes back into his stumps plays that to just backward off-square to the leg-side [1] Grayson is the fielder and there is no run [1] there's one thing in this marvellous er futuristic er media centre [1] if if the design as shown in this computer mock-up on the front page of today's Times is right [1] if any of us go to sleep after lunch we're gonna be in full view of the public [1] so you are letting us down in that respect
- C: Henry [laughter] I'm very glad I hope this will give us in every other way a tremendous endorsement of this wonderful ground
- A: I think it's marvellous I think it really is [1] here's Illot in [1] bowls outside the off-stump Crawley goes back tries to force through the off-side goes off the inside edge on to his pad and er Darren Robinson in his yellow shirt [1] comes across the pitch from forward short leg [1] to pick up [2] no I think it's absolutely marvellous and I very much endorse the point Christopher made that you can still see the Nursery End sort of between the legs of the new media centre [1] and I'm sure er [1] I'm sure it's gonna be [2] it will be a tremendous success and we all look forward to going down there [1] and we really will be absolutely behind the pitch which of course we're not here [1] here is Illott again [1] over the wicket in bowls and that's driven BEAUTIFULLY AWAY BY CRAWLEY [1] THROUGH THE COVERS FOR FOUR that's the stroke of the morning so far [1] that was a lovely shot [1] one of the ground staff a left-handed member of the ground staff [1] in his yellow shirt and green tracksuit bottoms fields as the ball wobbles over the rope [1] but what a glorious shot that was wasn't it Chris [1] a lovely shot
- B: Beautiful shot [1] and as you say definitely the shot of the morning [1] but you can't blame Illott for trying to pitch the ball up and swing it [1] there are still some quite overcast conditions here and er I'd like to see him keep pitching it up and that one actually just didn't swing into the batsman at all full length ball probably half a yard outside off-stump he just leant into it and smashed it through extra cover
- A: Crawley has seven [1] it's 37 for 1 and here is Illott again [1] running away from us he's there he bowls [1] Crawley's forward shoulders arms [1] cuts quite a dash with his bat above his head as he lea er comes forward and holds a rather angular pose for just a while [1] and er then withdraws to the leg-side [1] a few people are walking across the gap we've been talking about at the far end [1] through which you can see the Nursery ground

a total absence of splendid MCC dustbins which often adorn the ground [1] the red ones and the yellow ones but they're not there today [1] there's a gentleman in a yellow jersey carrying a pint of beer [1] it must taste rather good it's rather a beery sort of day [1] here is Illott now he's in over the wicket bo UH: and Crawley drives at it the perfect Chinese cut [1] he drove there was a gap between bat and pad the ball took the inside edge went away past the off-stump and past Rollins for four into the appropriate end after the NatWest advertising signs or advertising boards I should say down at the Nursery End [1] so one beautiful stroke by Crawley [1] one rather fortuitous stroke in fact he was very lucky not to drag that into his stumps [1] he has 11 and it's 41 for 1 [1]

B: You have to say full marks to Mark Illott we were just talking about that [1] has he got the confidence to keep pitching it up having been driven through extra cover [1] he's gotta keep giving it er a full length [1] he's looked like getting lbws almost every over and that one very very unlucky [1] just swinging slightly into the batsman and er Crawley trying to repeat that shot through extra cover getting an inside edge very close to that off-stump [1]

A: Here's Illott again [1] galloping up to the wicket he's there now he bowls and Crawley this time gets [1] with measured control right into line plays out to Prichard at extra cover [1] it's the end of the over [1] er 41 for 1 Gallian has 15 [1] Crawley has 11 and 13 overs have now gone by [2] and Chris we haven't heard your views on the new media centre [1] it's rather dashing isn't it

B: I think [1] it hasn't been approved yet has it

A: You say that and

C: It has been approved by the MCC committee [1] it hasn't yet gone to the Westminster planners [1] it hasn't gone to the members

A: I was just thinking the views of the members might be interesting

C: I think the view that Henry has just expressed and Christopher has expressed is an immense encouragement because er [1] I think it preserves the best of the character of the ground [1] enables it to develop in a way that the Mound Stand did that the replay screen did [1] it all fits it [1] for the future of cricket as a sport that is looking to attract a new audience and to keep its existing supporters

A: There are gonna be people who'll object to it [1] you've only got to point out to them the pagoda type roof of the new Mound Stand [1] I mean when that was put up that was amazingly futuristic wasn't it

B: Everybody criticised that didn't they

A: Yes

B: And now everybody loves it

C: Wasn't overarm bowling futuristic wasn't one-day cricket futuristic [1] when it started Henry

A: Absolutely I agree with that entirely [2] absolutely [1] this is now Irani who's coming in to bowl [1] from the Nursery End coming to bowl to Gallian [1] Gallian comes forward runs that down into the gully and Nasser Hussain is the fielder [1] he's at that really almost backward point Nasser Hussain [1] he's deep gully I think would be rather too charitable [1] I think he's really in the defensive position [1] now Andy Pick the Nottinghamshire all-rounder who's had a hernia operation and has been out this year [1] has a benefit this year and I want to say something rather interesting about that which I will tell you after this ball here is Irani from the Nursery End [1] he's in he bowls to Gallian Gallian plays that late runs it down er to backward point and it's Hussain who fields [1] now the Andy Pick benefit [1] er a bat [1] a cricket bat signed by all 27 living England captains er is being sold for his benefit and anyone who's interested in this [1] it is unique [1] are allowed to send postal bids to the Andy Pick Benefit Fund c/o Trent Bridge Nottingham NG2 6AG [1] here is Irani in bowls forward driving is Gallian and

that's Hussain going very quickly er across in front of Robinson [1] Hussain from backward point and fielding [1] so anyone interested in a bat signed by all 27 living England captains can send a postal bid to the Andy Pick Benefit Fund c/o Trent Bridge Nottingham NG2 6AG [1] and I wish him the best of luck and Lord Alexander who is departing [1] it's been very nice to have him with us as Irani bowls again [1] Gallian gets into line just pushes forward and it's fielded down there by Such at mid-off

C: Thank you very much Henry [1] it's been great to come

A: Well we'll we'll [1] as it were toast to you when we cut this tremendous gift it's almost gonna be a crime to cut it isn't it

C: Well we brought it early enough so you can have it for coffee lunch and tea

A: Well I think some of us will be taking home for dinner as well [laughter] but thank you very much for taking the trouble to come and see us very kind of you

C: Thank you

A: Here is Irani again from the Nursery End he's in he bowls Gallian tries to play an exciting cut to a ball that was too far off and was too close to him [1] er didn't make contact and it went through there to Rollins [2] a wicket keeper's life always becomes increasingly lonely in one-day cricket [1] he starts off having a couple of slips and a gully and gradually [1] one by one they disappear [1] at the moment er he's got Gooch as a conversational chum Gooch is fielding at first slip he had Grayson at first and Gooch at second early on and also a gully [1] but er he's getting lonelier by the over [1] here comes Irani [1] in bowls it's driven by Gallian didn't time it at all it bounces back to Irani who fielded [1] a MAIDEN OVER WELL BOWLED [1] and 41 for 1 the score [1] 14 overs have been bowled [1] Gallian has 15 er Crawley has 11 [1]

B: And good for Essex of course to see a maiden over [1] Ronnie Irani's first one [1] er you rather fear though that er Essex haven't made the most of these conditions the sun actually just coming out now but it's gonna be overcast again in a minute I think [1] it's er a nice morning to bowl and you have to just question whether Essex have got the real quality in er change bowlers [1] Ronnie Irani of course a quality cricketer but whether he's a quality first change bowler and young Cowan who's gonna have a go pretty soon [1] I would have thought a good up-coming bowler but they'd love to see now a real quality first change seam bowler to come on in these conditions [1] it may just be that er they'll miss out on their opportunity [1]

A: Here is Illott again then [1] in bowls to Crawley Crawley forward driving misses taken by Rollins that one again swung back a little way into the right hand [1] you could see that from the way Rollins took it in that he was going down the leg side and he went sprawling across [1] having taken it well he then he then pulls folded arms across his chest gives the ball to Gooch who polishes it very vigorously and they have a chat [2] and Illott has been unlucky I think he's gonna cross David Shepherd the umpire from his Christmas card list because those two shouts [1] to to me they were pretty good ones and er instead of getting the finger he got the icy glare didn't he from the umpire

B: Yes he did very good shout Crawley's first ball I thought

A: It was wasn't it here is Illott again in to Crawley past umpire Shepherd he bowls now Crawley's forward hit on the pad there's a sort of stifled half appeal but he was a long way forward there [1] and it's Hussain who comes running in from backward point and who er fields [1] the odds at the start we had er 13 to 8 on Lancashire they were the favourites and er [1] er 6 to 5 Essex and I guess the bookmakers play safe

B: Yes absolutely there was a big change after the toss of course [1] 'cause Lancashire were 5 to 2 on overnight and early this morning but after the toss

A: And Essex 7 to 4 against yes [1] very interesting [1] here is Illott again he's up to the wicket now he bowls and forward comes Crawley playing nicely to mid-wicket er Darren

Robinson is there [1] rather more square-leg than mid-wicket [1] Robinson wearing one of those rather er sort of witches' hats you know that are sort of very broad brimmed

B: Sombbreroish

A: Yes Irani has got one also at mid-off [1] it gives them a slightly sinister appearance [3] a grandma's hat Bill suggests [2] well it's Jack Russell who wears this er what I call the washer woman's hat doesn't he that rather dirty white sun hat [1] here is Ilott again he's in he bowls and back goes Crawley forces that down to mid-on [2] and a good man a very old friend of ours Crawford White [1] who of course worked for years for the Daily Express and then worked for er Cornhill Insurance [1] his diamond wedding falls this weekend and he and Dorothy will be married for 60 years [1] and it really is a tremendous performance that and I'd love to send our congratulations to both and I'm surprised that Dorothy has stuck with him for 60 years [1] it's awfully nice to see him he was up here in our box er earlier this year during one of the Test matches and so our best wishes to both [1] here is Ilott again outside the off-stump [1] no stroke there from Crawley [1] and one other factor which Crawford White actually told me the other day which is very interesting [1] when Lancashire last won the County championship in 1934 [1] they not only won the championship but their second eleven won the Minor County championship and Crawford was a very active member of the second eleven [1] the days of [...] and er [1] Crawford was taking lots of wickets [1] and it's rather interesting to know that [1] he's Lancashire origins [2] so we know where his support will be today [1] here is Ilott in bowls [1] Crawley's forward playing out to Prichard another maiden over the second one in a row [1] much better bowling [1] 41 for 1 [1] 15 overs have now gone Gallian has 15 and Crawley has 11

B: And I think we've probably seen the end of Mark Ilott for now he's bowled eight overs which as the main seam bowler is quite a lot [1] he's only leaving four for later and I think he was right [1] Paul Prichard [1] to bowl him for as long as possible [1] he did swing the ball he looked the most dangerous of the bowlers so far [1] and I think he was a bit unlucky I think Crawley was very close to be lbw first ball and that would have given him the first two wickets and he may have then of course picked up another but a good spell of bowling that from Mark Ilott [1] eight overs two maidens 1 for 13 you can't complain about that [1] the trouble is it's never quite so easy when you start off so well to come back and keep it up [1] here is Irani in to Gallian Gallian tries to make a little bit of room for himself and cut that away behind square and he does so [1] doesn't time it very well and it goes straight to Hussain [1] it's always difficult isn't it Chris when you you know you get your rhythm and you bowl eight overs as well as he's done and then he comes back later on er [1] when the situation's different

A: Absolutely he can bowl the same sort of delivery that's put them in trouble here and get slogged at mid-wicket [1] it's a different game when he comes back

B: It certainly is [1] here now is Irani he's in he bowls and this time Gallian goes onto the back foot plays it square to cover Darren er Robinson is the fielder [1] he then waves at the pavilion [1] he's got a bandage round one of the fingers of his right hand I think what he wants is a sleeveless sweater he's just looked to me as though he's made a gesture which [1] seems to indicate that he would like a jersey it is a little bit colder than it was at the start [1] the breeze is a little bit chilly a little bit autumnal [1] it's come earlier this year hasn't it autumn we've had a nip in the air longer I mean earlier than usual Irani plays at Gallian GALLIAN hits that away off his pads for four runs off backfoot square [1] it was er not a good delivery it was well up to Gallian it was on his legs and he played it away beautifully [1] and Cowan down at fine leg couldn't get round to it but that was rather a gift and a present gratefully received by Jason Gallian [1] he has 19 it's 45 for 1 I ran into Gallian's father Ray Gallian this morning when I was down behind the New Stand [1] he was making his way to the Edrich Stand with his wife [1] two proud parents

and they'll be very happy the way it's going now for Jason [1] here is Irani bowls Jason Gallian cuts that's gonna be just a single I think down there to Illott at third man [1] Illott picks up in front of the Compton Stand stumbles slightly but recovers very well and gets it in before they can think of a second run [1] so Gallian has 20 46 for 1 and the succession of maiden overs has come to an end [1]

- A: Yes [1] the four ball from Irani down the leg-side which er it was a shame 'cause Essex had a nice grip on it [1] they've decided to go into a ring of four on the off-side just the one slip and try and frustrate Lancashire a little bit but it only takes the odd bad ball in a 60 over game to [1] to relax the batsman
- B: Here is Irani again bowls to Crawley Crawley comes forward he doesn't [1] he really props forward from the crease like moving forward and the ball goes down the slope past the outside edge through there to Rollins who gives it to Gooch at first slip and Gooch always [1] he spends quite a bit of time working on the ball [1] er rubbing it polishing it all things that are quite happily above board but er [1] Gooch is always doing his best to preserve the shine or even to improve it [1] here is Irani in again bowls to Crawley Crawley on the back foot plays that down to Such [1] Such at mid-off and there is no run there so 46 for 1 are Lancashire they were put in to bat this morning by er by Essex [1] Gallian has 20 Crawley has 11 and Christopher Cowdrey has mysteriously turned into Trevor Bailey [1] good morning Trevor
- D: A slightly older Cowdrey [laughter] [1]
- B: And er [1] well how how do you think things are going [1] from the Essex point of view at any rate [2]
- D: Well the runs have been [1] comparatively rare [1] what is needed are a couple more wickets they could have had them [1] I think they will probably [1] Illott bowled extremely well [1] a little unlucky not to get one of the lbws if not two [1]
- B: Yes I must say the one that hit Crawley on the pads first ball looked very very close didn't it [1] well we've now got Cowan coming on to bowl [1] Ashley Cowan [1] at the er Pavilion End [1] he's gonna start off by bowling at Gallian and there's a little bit of excitement in the crowd [1] Lord's is absolutely brimful people in the boxes everywhere [1] every nook and cranny is filled and there's a buzz going round the stands the first one I've seen today [1] here is Cowan bowls and that's run down by Gallian to er the left to Hussain who's deep in the gully [1] he got to it quickly couldn't pick it up cleanly and what looked as though it might have been a rather risky single became a safe one [1] so 47 for 1 is the score [2] Lord's is always a good-looking picture obviously the square shows signs of great wear it's the end of the season and all the a lot of the pitches are very bare but that's only to be expected here is Cowan in bowls and er Crawley gets right into line head over ball plays it out to Prichard at er cover point [3] well I suppose one of the most remarkable well not remarkable Hobbs is still the best in the country but the way Gooch has kept rolling on this year Trevor [1]
- D: Well if you go back a few years Hobbs scored hundred hundreds from 40 onwards
- B: Here is Cowan again outside the off-stump that's a wide [1] it was very wide and going even further away from the right-handed Crawley and umpire Shepherd confirmed the wide 48 for 1 it's indeed
- D: Do you think you can't score runs at 43 others have done it [1] it means there are still a lot of runs around [1] and he's a very fine player and he's very fit
- B: And it's good news for Essex that he's gonna continue for another year [1] and good news for spectators everywhere [1] Cowan in bowls on the back foot Crawley plays it down to Williams at mid-off and there's no run there [1] yes I mean I think any thought that someone of that age is keeping a youngster out of the side is not a valid thought if you haven't got someone as good as that you want to play him as long as possible don't you

- D: And he's a very good player [5]
- B: Here is Cowan again [1] he's up to the wicket he bowls to Crawley Crawley goes back plays into the off-side Prichard is the fielder [1] and there is no run [1] now Trevor I asked you a question if you had to I mean in your time as er an Essex cricketer an Essex supporter and everything who's the best batsman to have played for Essex [1]
- D: Boarder
- B: Yes Alan Boarder that's a good answer [1] here is Cowan again in bowls Crawley goes back and Prichard again fields [2] Boarder had two seasons was it with Essex
- D: Yes
- B: And what what was it what was the er er hallmark of his batting
- D: When you've had stitches in your face er and you come back and get a hundred that's what I like to see [1]
- B: Yes tremendous [1] he was a very tenacious fighter [1] here is Cowan again he's in now he bowls and Crawley drives and Prichard sort of tumbles but doesn't stop the ball it's Williams running to his left at mid-off who does [1] it's the end of the over [1] 48 for 1 [2] just two runs off that over [1] Cowan's first [1] Gallian 21 and Crawley has 11
- D: But to go back to our topic of those who are proper Essex players in other words people who are actually qualified [1] over a couple of years here I think without doubt Gooch [1] there's no question about it
- B: Yes I thought that might be [2] you've had actually in Essex [1] you've been very fortunate with your overseas players
- D: Yes
- B: You've had some marvellous successful ones [1] Mark Waugh
- D: I mean Mark Waugh is the most beautiful of course
- B: And there was Lee Irvin wasn't there he was very successful [1] Salim Malik [1] here comes Irani over to Gallian gonna be lbw HE'S OUT [1] LBW [1] he was half forward and that was OUT [1] whether it made quite the height of the pitch that Gallian expected in fact whether it kept low or not I'm not sure but Gallian has gone [1] it's 48 for 2 he's lbw to Irani for 21 [2]
- D: Well that was the wicket of course obviously Essex want [1] and now they've got two wickets in this first spell I think they can [1] if Essex batted and they'd lost shall we say four wickets it could've been that could've been the end [1] Lancashire could lose three or four wickets and still put together a very reasonable score because they have got real depth in batting and a lot of class I mean their number eleven would probably go in shall we say at eighth for Essex [2] I think the insertion by Essex was very wise [1] whether it works and they get another wicket or so but I think they could easily have been in serious trouble
- B: Well it's been the stroke play hasn't it of Peter Martin coming in at number eleven who's been responsible for giving Lancashire two one-wicket victories this year er one in the Benson & Hedges and one in the NatWest [1] in the NatWest it was against Northamptonshire in the Benson & Hedges in the semifinal against Yorkshire and the applause now for Neil Fairbrother who's coming to the wicket [1] a man who's who has very much the reputation of being a one-day cricketer [1]
- D: It's very unfair that [1] very very unfair [1] he's a terrific one-day cricketer but he's a pretty good cricketer all the time
- B: He's been I suppose unfortunate the selectors have perceived him in this way haven't they and they picked him for the one-day games and
- D: He does improvise beautifully and he's nippy and he's very quick between the wickets and he's got a cricket brain I mean [1] he's a good cricketer [1] he's more than just a one-day

- B: Irani just placing his fielders we've got a slip third man backward point cover extra and mid-off [1] then we've got a mid-on a square leg and a fine leg [1] and Irani taking his time [1] and here he is now from the Nursery End in to bowl to the left-handed Fairbrother he bowls Fairbrother plays no stroke outside the off-stump and there's a huge appeal from Irani who comes running backwards down the wicket and is almost stepping on Fairbrother's toes [1] what was that about
- D: Well I think er [1] I'm not sure [1] it was an extraordinary appeal
- B: It must have been for lbw he played no stroke [1] and the ball I'm not absolutely certain that it hit the pad it may just have flicked the top of his front pad as it went through [1] but I don't think there was any way that umpire Willey was gonna look sympathetically upon that appeal [2] here comes Irani again to the left-handed Fairbrother tapping his bat at his boot he plays that he plays that one off the front foot just pushing it down into the gully and it's Nasser Hussain there who fields [1] and there is no run 48 for 2 [1] and Lancashire put in to bat by Essex and the men out are Atherton was first to go bowled by a beautiful inswinger from Illott for 4 that was 1 for 16 and it was 2 for 48 when Gallian was lbw in this over to Irani he made 21 [1] hit three fours [1] here is Irani again an immaculate forward defensive stroke there from Fairbrother goes into the off-side and there is no run [1] in fact Gallian batted 68 minutes he made 21 second out at 48 hit three fours played 61 balls and he and Crawley put on 32 in 64 balls [2] and at the moment Essex are well content with the way things are going [1] here is Irani he's in he bowls to Fairbrother Fairbrother's forward and playing this away to Such at square leg and er there's no run there Such fielding in his sleeveless sweater capless as usual [2] and we'll see him [1] I dare say fairly soon to bowl his off breaks [4] Irani walking back into the distance a steady flow of people going across to the Nursery End there one or two stewards standing out on the grass at the Nursery as Irani bowls Fairbrother's forward running that down to mid-off there is no run there [1] it's the end of the over 48 for 2 [1] Fairbrother nought Crawley has 11 18 overs have now been bowled and after another word from you Trevor it will be Jonathan Agnew
- D: Well that was a very good over from Irani [2] got the wicket bowled straight which is absolutely vital in these games and the ball still moving just a little bit and I think Essex should be very thankful that they won the toss 'cause I think if they'd been put in I'm sure they'd have lost two or three wickets which they would have done and then they would have been in real trouble because they haven't got Lancashire's depth in batting
- E: Morning Trevor a great morning there for Ronnie Irani down at the far end but it's Cowan who comes in now running away from us and he bowls to Crawley who plays a pleasant back foot defensive shot here which is fielded by Williams at mid-off [1] it's still chilly and it wasn't really forecast I think it was supposed to be a nice warm day nice and clear and bright but clouds are still overhead the breeze is blowing from the Nursery End [1] a very wintry feel to it [1] as Cowan moves in and bowls it's short plays from the back foot beautifully stopped by Hussain who is falling to his left at backward point [2] and that's certainly saved Essex one run [1] he's so good in that position [1] at backward point he's now looking at a grazed left elbow [2] he really flung himself full stretch away to his left 48 for 2 [1] in the 19<sup>th</sup> over as Ashley Cowan right arm medium pace bowls outside the off-stump and again there's Hussain diving to his left it was probably even better that time he got a bigger cheer [2] and there's another run that he's saved before he goes out to bat [1] 2 not out already I think Trevor [3]
- D: Yes he's a tremendous fielder he's a very good fielder anywhere [2]
- E: It was almost an action replay of the previous delivery [1] Cowan will be grateful it saved him a couple of runs in his bowling figures and in he goes and bowls to Crawley who this time [laughter] hits it straight to Hussain a tremendous roar goes up but that really was just a little tickler [1] straight to him and again no run scored [2] of course Crawley is trying desperately to get the ball down to third man that's what he's trying to do there is still a slip and a very invitingly large gap between Gooch at slip and Hussain at backward point



[1] but at the moment he can't find it here is Cowan he bowls and it's just dug out [1] by Crawley [1] and fielded by Williams at mid-off and again there's no run [2] and Ashley Cowan is getting quicker again than it looks he's got a lot of deceptive loping action [3] he lets go of the ball rather late it seems [2] it's a very easy economical action he's bounding in half a dozen paces and bowls outside the off-stump

D: OH

E: And there's a LOOSE ball by Crawley brought about I think by those two excellent pieces of fielding a bit of pressure building up during that over [1] it was an excellent bounce outside the off-stump there for Ashley Cowan he's a tall young man [1] Crawley playing and missing without really moving his feet at all that was a very good over indeed [1] two overs one maiden no wicket for two for Ashley Cowan 48 for 2 after 19 overs

D: That was a very good over indeed the last delivery wasn't a very good shot but once you [1] the batsman's just slightly worried [1] it is a limited overs game they can't just go back defensively it was a very good over

E: Well he's been talked about in terms of the A-team he'll be [1] very keen to give a good performance here today as he's mopping his brow just below us here

D: He's big and he's strong but will he remain fit [1] 'cause he has already broken down [2]

E: This is his sad story [2] well the ever energetic Ronnie Irani is going to bowl from the Nursery End there's some movement behind his arm at the moment I don't know whether he's satisfied now he is he settles [1] and he's looking for his first run [2] Irani with that goatee beard moves in past umpire Willey and Fairbrother comes forward and plays to extra cover [1] Grayson is the fielder and there is no run [1]

D: One feels with Irani it is a pity that someone at some stage in his career didn't tell him what to do with his left arm when bowling [1] his left arm dies instead of sort of going right away back it just dies

E: I've also said that about Irani during last week [1] it isn't too late is it I think if he gets in the nets and works hard he could become a good bowler I think Irani bowls on the off-stump and Fairbrother fiddles that away off the back foot to backward point

D: He loses his left arm in his thigh instead of going right away through right the way around

E: But again that's something that could be could be worked on isn't it

D: It should have been worked on ten years ago [1] certainly seven years ago I mean he was under Lancashire staff quite a long time [2]

E: Here he comes again right arm medium pace he's roaring in and bowling on middle stump that's turned away by Fairbrother down to long leg they've taken one they think briefly about a second but it isn't there [1] Mark Illott has got a wonderful arm [2] and that throw came in low and flat to Rollins right beside the bails so one run scored 49 for 2 [1] in the 20<sup>th</sup> over [3] I suppose Essex' early encounters here helped at having won the toss [2] and Lancashire could easily have lost another wicket actually there have been some very close [1] lbw appeals here's Irani and he bowls and Crawley shuffles into his back foot forcing the stroke into the off-side it's a single [1] fielded by Robinson in the cover [1] one run scored the 50 is up

## C Football on TV (96 minutes, 10,000 words)

### C.1 Manchester United v Blackburn Rovers 25<sup>th</sup> Aug. 1996 Sky Sports (Pr. L.) (9 minutes, 1176 words)

- A: Such is the performance well particularly of the young lad on the ball David Beckham [1] er we hardly mention him he's hardly been mentioned before [2]
- B: Beckham and Johnsen just swapping positions in midfield [1] on a regular basis particularly if Beckham's got anything to do with it [3] the header's from Eric Cantona [2] McClair he'd like to come infield [1] moves past Sherwood [2] but not past Chris Coleman who came across with his left leg to make the tackle his stronger side the ball was on his right [1] here is Donis [1] Warhurst waiting by the far post it's a bit deep for him [3] and it's over three years that Paul Warhurst was named in an England squad by Graham Taylor as a striker [1] he's hardly had a regular run up front since then but it's a position he er really would [3] mark down as his first choice Andy
- A: I think you're right yes I mean he loves scoring goals he showed us that at Sheffield Wednesday when he was banging them in and I'm sure that Ray Harford has plenty of hope that he will rerediscover that golden touch he had at Sheffield Wednesday [2]
- B: He's certainly got the pace [3] Johnsen who also is very speedy that's one of his great attributes and he's a player of many parts [1] in the Norwegian set-up as a central defender he did start out as a striker in midfield for Manchester United today as he was in the second half on the opening day of the season at Wimbledon [4] Gallacher [2] a good scoring record for him not too many players can say that up and down the country Sherwood who's just signed a new five year contract with Blackburn [2] emphasising his commitment to their future [4] great play from Beckham [2] Cantona [2] four up for Manchester United [2] Johnsen one of them [1] CANTONA [1] OUT COMES FLOWERS BLOCKS WELL Cantona couldn't quite get underneath the ball to lift it over the advancing goal keeper [3] ball coming from the [1] exceptional play in his own half from David Beckham [6] this is GALLACHER we talked about his scoring RECORD and there was a chance there to improve it and Schmeichel makes a similar save [1] to Tim Flowers' at the other end
- A: Well it's a beautiful save but there's no chance this is a good decision the ball's just played through but there's Denis Irwin very wary but once again how often do we talk about that how often do we see that [1] but at the other end it's a just a little too far away from Cantona he can only get his toe to it [1] I certainly think he would have liked to lift that over Tim Flowers but good goalkeeping at both ends [1]
- B: Lars Bohinen takes the corner [1] Cantona able to glance it away [1]
- A: Well they started greatly Blackburn Martin [1] confident looking certainly nothing negative about the way they started the opening five minutes [1]
- B: Sherwood [3] holding it up for a corner hoping it might drop beyond the former Blackburn player David May [2] Giggs [2] made to work up front [2] with Cantona [6] well Ray Harford [1] looking on [1] officially for the first time since er Kenny Dalglish [1] parted company with the club although er in effect his departure was more than a year ago when he stepped down as manager [4] Bohinen who's a very positive person as well as a gifted player tries to show a positive note for Blackburn [2] and here is Johnsen another Norwegian [9] when I saw Blackburn play at Aston Villa on Wednesday and they [1] were quite pleased with their showing except of course in the goal scoring department [3] and that at the moment is the problem [1] Gallacher [2] David May [2]
- A: This is [...] good pace there [1] he waits a few seconds but is quick enough to get by [3]
- B: Blackburn have another corner [2] Manchester United have left Ryan Giggs up on the half way line [1] for a quick break Jeff Kenna stayed back with him [5] it just brushed the

- eyebrows of Pallister who's hindered by an injury [1] plenty of time to measure the cross [1] hit towards Coleman and difficulties for David May and Manchester United
- A: He was always gonna be favourite Chris Coleman [1] a deep cross no-one with him he really fancied his chances of winning this [1] all they can do is knock it in there on the edge of the six yard box [8]
- B: Bohinen [2] good play there May upfield again trying to flick it on to Beckham and he made minimum contact [2] Kenna who plays on the left but is very right-footed [2] and it's a little bit of a problem for Blackburn with their injuries to be without Graeme Le Saux and Jason Wilcox in particular to find [2] the balance on the left-hand side Stuart Ripley now playing in midfield in front of Kenna [1] also right-footed [2] Cruyff Manchester United mixing it up [2] Bohinen [2] always gonna be second in that particular skirmish [2] too much hurry in taking the free kick [7] Lars Bohinen has been a little outspoken about Blackburn and he wants new players to be brought in to strengthen the squad he's very ambitious [6] Bohinen before McClair but it's Johnsen [1] he timed his run well and played onside by Chris Coleman but the ball didn't get that far forward [3] Gallacher [2] well played [4] this is Donis [3] and Gary Pallister has to stretch to reach it [2]
- A: I tell you what this is a beautiful start from Blackburn [1] very impressive the way the pass the ball about again it's a good decision from the linesman again it's Denis Irwin [2] furthest away who plays everybody on [1] [...] it's been a good patient build-up with this Blackburn attack the team that has got the ball [1] I think normally when Alan Shearer was in the side it was get it forward as quick as possible there seems to be a little bit of patience about their build-up now [4]
- B: In full working order in the taking of the corners as yet [1] that's four corners won [4] Sherwood [4] Donis [3] mistimed tackle from Warhurst [2] Beckham with plenty of room [3] two options on either side [1] he's played it to Phil Neville [2] Cantona good movement from Irwin to link up [2] Cantona again [1] there's Phil Neville in the central striking position momentarily [10] McClair [2] over Kenna to GIGGS [1] and Giggs again off the goalkeeper GIGGS' HEADER [2] and then Hendry got the better of Cantona in more ways than one Cantona's holding his face [2] the danger is still there and Cantona trying to get his wits back [2] put it over the top
- A: You have to blame Eric he should tuck it away [2] I think it hit the bar [1] he made a good save this is a great ball from McClair to Giggs [1] and he's really got some venom in his right side [1] he does what he can do Tim Flowers that's where he gets the knock clashes with Colin Hendry [1] but as it comes back to Jordi Cruyff he repicks out Cantona beautifully here [2] and I thought this is 1-0 [1] a decent height for Eric Cantona perhaps he's a little bit groggy from the knock [2] but I think we all expected certainly the goalkeeper to be working

C.2 Newcastle United v Halmstad BK 10<sup>th</sup> Sept. 1996 BBC One (UEFA Cup)  
(20 minutes, 1674 words)

- A: Gillespie now on the flank [5] good ball if it comes off [1] good work now [1] Clark [1] Beardsley [1] Shearer lets it go [1] but er Ferdinand was moving away rather than in [2] Ginola now in the role of play maker [2] given away by Barton that's a bit of a blunder [16]
- B: Gillespie [1] Ginola [3] Albert [2]
- A: That's not quite coming off [3] Newcastle maybe have to be a little bit careful how they treat this man Peter Leonardsson [1] because his job is the assistant manager of a hotel it is the hotel that Newcastle will be staying in before the second leg [4] away by Peacock [5] Nordberg [1] keeps it [1] Smith [10] Svensson [2] and he's taking him on [3] good SAVE [1] got down very sharply to the near post [1] I do wonder why Svensson didn't try the previous opportunity with his left foot he shot perfectly well and he's quite happy on either [1] on either peg as they say in your trade Trevor [1]
- B: It's a good strike this is a good save [1] could easily have been a cross that was gonna sneak in [1] got down very well [1] I mean if it had gone in the net we would have blamed Srnicek for being at the near post but he he still hit it hard Svensson so a good save and kept his concentration which is very important for a goalkeeper when you have a lot of inactivity during a match such as this [4]
- A: We remember of course Bilbao [1] when the away leg was lost 4-0 against Parma [2] but even the most optimistic would not expect them to pull this one back in the second leg [1] provided it stays [1] at no goals against for Newcastle here [1] here is Beardsley [4] Andersson [3] 15 minutes left [1] that was Leonardsson [1] and the crowd feel it's about time there was another goal [5] Ginola [2] offside Shearer [9] would you Christmas-Eve-it seems to be the observation but the linesman is dead right [3]
- B: It was about half a yard wasn't it and Shearer was offside on a couple of occasions [2] but I think Ginola looks as good a playmaker as he has out wide and it's a surprise Gillespie's down the left I much prefer him being a natural right footer to be over on this side of the field [3]
- A: It's quite simple about David Ginola as you know better than I do [1] he's just a good player [7] Beardsley [3] Albert [7] Gillespie [2] he's been given the room to play the pass [3]
- B: Over on the other side he would have just whipped in the cross having made the opening and there he was on his left foot trying to come inside and the early cross opportunity was wasted that's why I much prefer to see him on this side [2]
- A: Good challenge that by Peacock [4] Clark Barton [7]
- B: Asprilla has gone to the left but still on the left is Gillespie [2] Ferdinand [2]
- A: They have to work out this combination between the two they were going in each other's way there's no doubt about it Shearer and Ferdinand [1] Shearer was trying to hunt it down [1] and Ferdinand mishit the shot as a result [2]
- B: It was a bit of a mishit all around Gillespie wasn't totally happy crossing it [1] didn't quite hit it right dragged it back and then it was on Les Ferdinand's left foot he wasn't totally happy on that and saw it late as you say with Alan Shearer leading it [1] in the end [1] Nordberg was as relieved as anyone to see it trickle by the post but it's er a little bit of a case of lethargy isn't it creeping in Newcastle's style they're not really looking for another goal if it comes it comes they're not too bothered at this stage [8]
- A: But don't give up folks there might be another one [1] could be the best of the lot [4] Albert [1] twelve minutes remaining [2] er Gillespie [1] that's a goal kick [2] no it's not it's a corner [6] lethargy in the commentary box too this is Clark [2] Shearer thought this was gonna fall for him Tommy Andersson made sure that it didn't [2] Albert [1] he was

- given room for the cross but a bit too close to the goalkeeper [25] Gillespie [8] Newcastle at the start of the UEFA competition [1] this round of it [1] rated ten to one [3] to win the UEFA Cup [3] Clark [1] Barton [1] Ginola [1] Clark [2] favourites are Inter at nine to two [1] coached by Roy Hodgson who was the coach that got Halmstad going here is Shearer trying to get Newcastle going [1] and Asprilla [4] wasn't really on [3] the crowd enjoyed the attempt [3]
- B: Well it's well played [1] I thought they were gonna play one-two there [1] Asprilla staying onside [2] I don't think he was thinking about crossing it back across the face of the goal for anyone that was an attempt for the net but [...] well off target [9]
- A: Getting back to Roy Hodgson he was the coach who first [1] brought the championship to the Swedish team we're watching [2] in 1976 and one again in 1979 under him [2] it was the start of a considerable career for him [1] free kick for Newcastle [3] there's a little bit of a problem for Gillespie on the back of the ankle [5] Peacock leads the way forward [2] Albert comes behind him [1] and the goalkeeper gets a two-fisted punch [3] Peacock Asprilla [1] FERDINAND [6]
- B: That would normally be there [1] between two defenders downward header everything right [1] just missed the goal that was it [1] minor point but I mean good cross from Asprilla he's between the two defenders [1] and with the the ability of Les Ferdinand he knows that should have been in the net [10]
- A: Srnicek [1] doing it all very calmly [6] watched by Tommy Andersson and watched well [1] Ginola [2] Asprilla [17] Beardsley [6] Shearer lets it go Ferdinand this is beautiful SHEARER [1] probably the best combination between these two certainly in this match [1] arguably since they got together it just didn't quite come off [1] pity [2]
- B: It was a good dummy by Alan Shearer Les Ferdinand missed the first lay-off and then got a second opportunity [1] a little back heel as you can see [1] steps over lets it run trying the first lay-off and then the second one played onside by the defender on this end [1]
- A: Give Nordberg a bit of credit came out quickly and spread himself [12] away by Peacock [11] Beardsley [3] uh a mistake [1] good pace [1] can he now pull it back [1] BACK PASS [1] oh dear oh dear the referee doesn't feel that that was a back pass [1] and he may well be right 'cause I can't believe it was intended [1] I mean that was [1] comedy time [1]
- B: I think it was a nervous twitch wasn't it which knocked the ball back to the goalkeeper in that situation [1] 4-0 and the referee can afford to be a bit charitable on this occasion Gillespie has got blistering pace [1] I think in reasonable form he's worth a first team place [1] and that one just unconsciously knocked back and I think we'll give him the benefit of the doubt I don't think that it was intention [2]
- A: Ferdinand [2] Clark [1] too strong [6] didn't know what was behind him [2] he would like to know where it was [2] looking good in the first round of the UEFA Cup [2] not much can be said [1] but they'll make it this time [1] Asprilla [5] beaten by Ljungberg [3] Svensson [1] played his heart out for his side Svensson [2] that's him again [4] that was a nicely-built attack [4] there's some concern as to where the ball has ended [5] Gillespie Shearer [1] Gillespie behind him [1] Asprilla down the middle [1] Clark [6] Gillespie coming in on his right this side this time [8] Ginola [13] Albert [2] four minutes to get five [1] number five [6] Svensson again he's usually out there taken away [2] Beardsley [5] and Asprilla really trying to give it back [6] Clark [2] Ferdinand [4] Gillespie [4] Shearer [3] almost came off Nordberg [2] it's nicely pulled down by Anders Smith [1] one of their better players [1] this is Ljungberg [3] that's disappointing for him [6] Ginola [2] Barton [6] no the referee's right he lost control of it and er somewhat over the top of it [22] nice play by Arvedsson [1] Svensson behind [2] two in the middle you don't want to give one away now it's a goal kick [2]

- B: Yes unlucky there Svensson [1] good drag back and then [1] a nasty little [...] gives Newcastle the goal kick but it's a I mean good scoreline comfortable one to see them through this particular tie [1] and as you see good little lob but Albert's back there [1] just done by dragged back and in the end as he tries to pull it back it came off Albert and then his toe end [1] as I say Newcastle had little bursts and played well [2] I think it looks a bit better in the second half than in the first [1] but er Ginola's my man of the match and then Asprilla's probably the entertainer of the match [1] sometimes he overdoes it [2]
- A: Shearer [1] that's a good cross [1] Gillespie didn't make it [1] it's a corner [3] no it's not it's a goal kick [22] Jungberg Arvedsson inside [1] uh Leonardsson cost his side a bit by not controlling that [1] Svensson again involved Smith [3] trying to give themselves hope for the second leg [1] I must say that Magnus Svensson has really had a good game [1] a consistent threat a real threat down this er near side in the second half [8] now playing the time that the Danish referee allowed for stoppages [1] which there can't be very much [5] Gillespie [6] goal kick [4] Halmstad came here to play a friendly match in 1959 [1] they got beaten 3-1 after being delayed in the fog [2] 40.000 came to see the match there were then 10.000 left when the match actually kicked off about three hours later [2] they have come here this time and have lost 4-0 [2] UH: and they've still lost 4-0 but pretty pretty close to er 4-1 [1]
- B: It was almost a great cue into the goal wasn't it [laughter] a good well-played pass blind side [1] and just off the foot of the post there [1] I don't think Srnicek got a touch there but they've got a corner kick [2]
- A: Same man again [1] Magnus Svensson [5] Asprilla [6] must be the last one surely [4] here's Beardsley [4] Ginola [12] the referee is on Scandinavian time

**C.3 Helsingborg v Aston Villa 24<sup>th</sup> Sept. 1996 BBC1 (UEFA Cup)**  
(35 minutes, 3455 words)

- A: I'd like to see Steve Staunton move across [1] there's one man marking three here and you can see Staunton over there marking no-one in particular he could actually push right on 'cause at the moment you've got five er Aston Villa players against two of the home team you don't need that when you have to score [7]
- B: This is Staunton [2] Yorke [2] he made life a bit difficult for himself [2] every Swede behind the ball [3] and a foul by Draper [1] on Ole Jansson [2] who 24 hours ago was doubtful to be in the side [1]
- A: You can see as soon as Mark Draper got hold of it they er got five in midfield all closing down trying to get tackles in [1] it's going to be extremely difficult to thread a way through the middle that's why they've got to try and utilise those flanks I suppose that's why also Helsingborg decided to shorten the width of the pitch [1]
- B: This is what Graeme Souness was watching [1] now at Southampton [1] in days gone by with Rangers [4]
- A: He'd say to me there you are [1] we know anyway what he thinks of things like that [3] not quite what he said on that particular night when they played here [9]
- B: Jakobsson underneath it and so is Yorke but the difference in height is a factor [1] and he headed the ball where his feet were [2] Draper [3] Taylor this is Ehiogu [2] this Southgate [1] Staunton right on the left-hand side [6] Nilsson's header Roger Nilsson [3] that's what Jansson did so much of in the first leg when the ball was half-cleared he was always around to pick it up [1] Eriksson Nilsson that was well played by Nilsson [1] he gets applause [7] disappointing ball from Lantz as far as the home supporters are concerned [2]
- A: He was harried into passing it the only forward option was the number nine Magnus Jonsson so that one was really into no man's land [1] er at the moment they're quite happy to knock it forward er more in hope than anything too positive [1] they're really just making sure their goal's safe at the moment Aston Villa haven't quite sorted themselves out [1] a lot of service into Dwight Yorke and Milosevic is quite a lot of aerial stuff and as you mentioned Jacobsson is always around but Dwight Yorke is about three or four inches taller than him so that's really an advantage [6]
- B: Quite a difficult one but Andersson kept his head well [2] news from the Villa camp is that Mark Bosnich is on the way back [2] he was plagued by a knee injury [4] Ehiogu [4] Yorke down the middle Milosevic on the left side just inside right now [2] Staunton wasn't expecting it did well [1] Townsend but look how they harry the man on the ball as Trevor Brooking said [2]
- A: But no-one in the Villa half they're all there and say right come on to us try and break us down [1] at the moment they're not quite looking as if they're gonna create things [1] it's breaking down far too early [2]
- B: And we've played the first quarter of an hour [10] I don't think Villa can do with that [2] Southgate [2] Ehiogu [2] Draper Taylor [1] Jansson was quicker [5] Nelson [1] Taylor [2] Yorke [1] not controlling the ball terribly well it was hit quite sharply to him but it's the second or third time he's had to come and claim it after having it at his feet [4] Steve Staunton's expression is telling us I would think how Villa feel in the opening stages here [2]
- A: With people like Steve Staunton and Gareth Southgate it's quite comfortable bringing it out to Ugo Ehiogu [1] in these situations those back three have to bring it to somebody who is committed from the back 'cause otherwise the big forwards are just gonna get closed down all the time [11]

- B: Staunton [1] Wright Milosevic [5] Jonsson [1] won back by Townsend [2] time for Michael Oakes [1] and he's waving them forward and he's right the ball held at about 20 yards now 25 yards into the opposition half [4] Nelson [1] Taylor [1] Draper [1] Townsend [1] in with a SHOOTING CHANCE [2] hit it hard but couldn't keep it down this was clear [2]
- A: It was a long way out as well [1] he tried to switch the play but as soon as he chested it it went underneath his foot he and couldn't really ram on to it and get the power didn't hit it cleanly but it was 30 yards [1] and Sven Andersson I would have thought is quite happy if Aston Villa try to beat him from there [17]
- B: Yorke Townsend [2] Staunton [1] Milosevic nice touch Wright good pace [3] Wright and the keeper tested for the first time [2] taken well
- A: In the Villa system that's where you want Alan Wright getting in those situations certainly alongside the 18-yard box [1] it was too much of a hanging cross it gives time for Andersson to comfortably come out and get himself in position and he has got quite er a height advantage [1] but you want also Nelson running down this right-hand flank [1] that's where they've got to get their crosses in rather than from too long out and too diagonal [11]
- B: Long ball from Staunton [1] and he was always the favourite [4] well he got a foot in there Jansson [2] Townsend [2] no flag for offside [1] Southgate [1] Ehiogu [1] and it's goal side nobody being drawn [5] they've pushed up a little bit [4] Staunton [4] Ehiogu [1] Fursth slowing down his pace Draper [6] Staunton [1] Wright [3] Dwight Yorke facing Jacobsson [1] Staunton [1] Wright Yorke [1] just a touch from Dwight Yorke no more [1] opportunity here for Nelson [2] Roger Nilsson's header [1] Lantz [21] the outline of the game has been clear from the start [1] it's a bit of a continuation of the first leg [11] narrow pitch tight ground [1] a testing evening for Aston Villa [3] Wibrän [7] the goal that really set the pattern of this second leg was scored ten minutes from time at Villa Park [1] equalising Tommy Johnson's which came in the 14<sup>th</sup> minute [3] Wibrän [1] Roger Nilsson showing up on the 18-yard line [1] came off Staunton this is Fursth [2] can't control it [1] Lantz and AGAIN SHOOTING CHANCE for him [1] oh poor effort [2] the twenty year old [1] I thought he had much more time [3]
- A: Plenty of home applause but I think it's more for the fact that they got near the penalty area of Aston Villa than anything else but er I think it's the other end that's giving Aston Villa more concern [1] it wasn't the best of headers there and er Jansson had to hook it out but even when they got the one-two here he was still blocked out by Ehiogu and [1] I think he tried a curler but it sliced off the outside of his foot but it it's a night at the moment where you you do feel that perhaps Brian Little's gonna have to er rethink the tactics 'cause [1] up to now [1] er to play on occasions five at the back and then you have a situation like that when you've got Staunton [1] Southgate and Ehiogu with only one sort of ten yards short of them seems a bit of a waste and Staunton could almost play as a left back and push Wright up or even over this side pushing in Taylor and give them a bit of width on the right-hand side I mean you've got Tommy Johnson on the bench and perhaps most [1] people have expected him to play as a third attacker rather than Ian Taylor [5]
- B: Dwight Yorke [2] Taylor [1] Draper [4] Staunton [4] there are the players on the bench Paul McGrath [1] Julian Joachim another one who would offer something different if needed [1] skipped him [1] easily [1] Dwight Yorke [1] to their goalkeeper [11] Taylor Draper [6] Townsend POSITIVE WELL STRUCK GOOD SAVE [1] again it was from a long way out but there was much more venom in the shot then [2] and the ball ran better for him and he had that little extra determination [1] nasty zipper in front of the goalkeeper [1] but he got down well [4] Townsend to take Staunton has come to the near post [2] Dwight Yorke ahead of the goalkeeper it's a good header out [1] by Jansson [29]



- that was a rather different expression [1] Wibrän against Draper and the complaint from Townsend [6] you can see him here suggesting to the referee that er he was the captain but even so the referee made his decision [5] Jansson [2] time for a counterattack and this is played well [1] Milosevic plenty coming from midfield space on the left side two now ahead of Draper the ball carrier [3] the pass was a bit square [1] instead of running on to it he had to stop [1] they've all got back now [2] Milosevic [1] he's committing people and he wins a free kick [1] challenge by Ulrik Jansson [4] rather unwanted [14] 1-1 from the first leg is always a slightly curious score [1] it's clear that Rainer Enqvist the coach of Helsingborg reckons that his policy is to hold it [1] of course if Villa get a goal the whole atmosphere changes [10] played by Townsend [21] Staunton [2] Yorke [2] not a good shot but you probably wouldn't expect to beat the goalkeeper from that range [3]
- A: They tried two or three different free kicks this season one at Chelsea with Andy Townsend worked very well but that one just sort of switched the line of the shot twice but in the end er [1] it just depends on how well struck it was and Dwight Yorke hit low and again [1] shouldn't ever trouble Andersson from er that range with that sort of particular power [9]
- B: Fursth [4] Steve Staunton [6] five at the back three across [1] two up now [1] everybody between the line and the goal of the Swedes [3] Southgate [1] he just had to get there [4] that's Martin Pringle I wonder whether he'll get a chance [2] came on in the second half of the first leg [9] Milosevic [1] Wright won't make that [3] mishit clearance by Roger Nilsson [3] Ehiogu [11] Staunton [4] taken away from Townsend who was in the centre forward position at that stage [2] indecision between Jansson and Fursth [4] Townsend [4] Ehiogu [6]
- A: They're working hard aren't they [1] and Villa aren't the most prolific goal scorers even yet in the Premiership and [1] looking at the five what should we call them at the back two wing backs [1] I mean Nelson and Wright definitely wing backs as opposed to the wingers and the midfield three Taylor Draper and Townsend [1] none of those actually beat people and so you've got eight outfield players who when when you're faced by a massed defence can't actually get past defenders I don't know what John Gregor and Brian Little are talking about at the moment er Dwight Yorke and Milosevic certainly Dwight Yorke can but Tommy Johnson on the bench can and [1] it does seem as if it's gonna be a game where you've got to have that little bit of extra flair to to actually go past the defender with a bit of dribbling skill [4]
- B: Yorke [2] Townsend [1] Milosevic [2] still [2] Nelson [2] Draper [1] good header out [2] good STRIKE [1] Staunton [3] the keeper had the ball in line [1] and was able to see it clear the crossbar [3]
- A: That would be the main concern [1] the efforts are mainly from 20 25 yard shots [1] it's got to be one of those that fly into the net but they cannot get the breakthrough at the moment the way they're playing [13]
- B: Just north of here Arvedsson has equalised in the second leg of the match between Halmstad and Newcastle United [12] Southgate there was just a little push then but he got away with it [1] Jansson [2] Nilsson [12] not so many people at the back in fact three take on three with two chasing the man in possession Draper has done well Milosevic Dwight Yorke in the middle needs support coming up at the back of the box [1] and a telling foot in by Roger Nilsson who took the ball further back [2]
- A: Now look at it [1] they're coming three are going to three just a glimmer and Milosevic coming back inside and by the time he did the opportunity was gone [7]
- B: I think Draper got a knock in all that [1] in the centre circle [12] Villa's ninth European campaign as I said it's the first for Brian Little [1] at their head [1] Yorke [3] offside given against Fernando Nelson [4]

- A: That's unlucky they try to work it wide that's where I think they've got to try and get Nelson in [1] most of it has come down the left-hand side so far [1] Nelson who is a good attacking full back he missed a lot of their pre-season he got a knock and he's only just worked his way back in the team so he doesn't seem to be making as many runs as er I remember him during Euro'96 for Portugal [4]
- B: Milosevic [4] a late challenge by Lantz on Milosevic [3] no harm done [1] here is Wright [2] the challenge was by Eriksson at the expense of a corner [5] it's quickly taken [1] and Eriksson gets it away [4] a name which may [1] perhaps strike a chord [2] in this particular country in the European championship of '92 he scored against England and made the score 1-1 [1] for Thomas Brodin to put England out [4] Roger Nilsson [5] Ehiogu [15] a ball really for Staunton [4] Fursth and Nelson [5] Nelson has done well [1] here's Taylor [2] here's Draper [4] after that knock he pulled up again [2] Draper once more [2] Ehiogu [2] good timing by Eriksson [3] Wright Jonsson on the ball at the same time [2] Staunton [2]
- A: It was just a hanging ball [1] gave Andersson time to come out and get the cross [1] Draper is certainly hobbling a bit er [1] Tommy Johnson I would think would be a certainty to come on because it would then give them the option to bring him as a almost a third attacker and just break up that congested midfield see how high the cross is he just needs four strides with the size of him he's probably six three six four Andersson [1] I think he's gonna eat those you've got to put them in with a bit more pace [9]
- B: Yorke [7] Townsend looking for the return comes instead to Staunton Wright available on the left side [1] six or seven the other way [5]
- A: It's about the third or fourth time the offside has got them caught out I mean they've got a lot of bodies back there [1] Helsingborg [1] they hold the 18-yard box well and the midfield men and the forwards have got to make sure they don't run offside and at the moment [1] not so happy expressions and I can understand it [1] because they haven't looked as if they're gonna break down the home defence [8]
- B: His first attempt in Europe [1] just before half time [1] and it will be crucial whether that first attempt ends swiftly [3] a lot of anxious supporters behind the goal to our left [2] in these days Lantz [1] the difference between getting knocked out in this round and picking the plums of the next round could be between a quarter and half a million pounds [2] it makes a difference to the bank account [2] Draper [1] Ehiogu [2] again the shooting distance has got to get a bit better than this [2]
- A: A bit predictable isn't it that sort of thing [1] I mean it's gotta be at least 30 yards out [1] I mean Ehiogu Staunton and Southgate can come forward as far as they like the way the home side is playing but at that stage you gotta get a bit more invention than just sort of striding and hitting a hopeful drive [1] 'cause I don't think you'll beat the big fellow from that range [2]
- B: The flag stays down [1] OAKES [1] uses his head in every sense [2] and his back to cover [1] good attempt by Jonsson [8]
- A: Did well the eleven Jonsson didn't he just timed his run well I don't think he was offside [1] they try to play it flat Aston Villa but one should just stay with him as a runner [14]
- B: Wright [1] Staunton [3] Dwight Yorke is not finding him [2] it's going Sweden's way on the west coast at the moment Halmstad leading in the second leg against Newcastle United 2-1 [1] er the goal was scored by Magnus Svensson [1] Newcastle of course won the first leg 4-0 [4]
- B: Nelson [1] Staunton [4] Southgate [7] they gotta up the pace at the attack [1] they're not really asking any questions at the Swedish defence who just look on see what's coming [1] cover [1] mark well [3] I don't think that the Swedish players have been made to turns yet Trevor

- A: They don't have to think either and wonder where this one's going [1] you can sit here and say well that one's going there that pass is going there [1] it's it's too predictable and er they've never ever stretched the home side yet [17]
- B: Ehiogu [6] rather comfortably [21] Roger Nilsson [1] and this is Wibrän [2] good touch now by Staunton [3] I think he led the ball over and he did indeed [1] goal kick [2] not the most popular decision hereabouts [3] Peter Wibrän [1] three times he's played for his country [5] he scored the goal which [1] as we have said at the start has really set the pattern for this [1] second tie which has so far proven so difficult for Aston Villa [4]
- A: But it's up to Aston Villa to change it they they've got to take the initiative whether they [1] band the five at the back [1] play four push two wide in midfield [1] put three up front they gotta do something to change the formation of er Helsingborg who at the moment are quite comfortable and [1] I mean it doesn't matter if Aston Villa actually concede a goal what they must do is score [1] and at the moment they don't look like doing that [2]
- B: Of course if they conceded a goal and then got the equaliser the only situation at 1-1 in the second leg that we would have extra time [2] they really do have to gamble [2] if it stays as it is now [1] 0-0 then the away goal from the first leg will take Helsingborg through [4] Staunton Townsend [2] Milosevic [3] gotta be a bit quicker [2] Townsend [2] Taylor wanted it to the right [3] just another pass [3] like on a chess board [1] moving into position [10] Milosevic [4] Taylor [4]
- A: I mean this is a great spectacle [1] it's like a training session where your coaches organise a sort of defensive system and say we wanna attack against a defence er let's see how long they can hold out against this er attacking unit and then just clear your lines because they're not interested in getting a goal [3]
- B: Townsend [3] Staunton [3] Wright [1] more of a chip than a cross [1] but not the distance that he might have wished [5] Staunton [24] Nelson [5] free kick [1] it was against Ehiogu [10] it wasn't deliberate he came in to take the ball [5]
- A: Ehiogu has featured as their main ploy hasn't he when when they change tactics he sometimes goes up for the last twenty minutes when they're looking to to score goals as er an attacker [1] and take Milosevic off and bring Paul McGrath on and then er Johnson usually comes on for one of the midfielders but at the moment [1] with plenty of minutes to go it might be a bit early [4]
- B: As we look at Ehiogu Ljung is limping to the touch line [2] probably wouldn't have played in the second half anyway [1] but now the decision is somewhat made for the coach [1] free kick to be taken by Christof Furst [4] not particularly well but it arrived at his compatriot [4] Roger Nilsson [15] Southgate [3] last minute of the first half no score in the second leg if you joined us late [1] 1-1 in the first so on aggregate [2] things are not looking too good for Aston Villa [2] Wright [1] Townsend Ljung being applauded back onto the pitch [7] different ball in from Staunton Wright [4] and there are seven players there across the 18-yard line [2] Roger Nilsson [4] Eriksson slightly in extremis [2] but only slightly [1] Ljung has made a remarkable recovery [3] Southgate [1] that was a challenge from behind too for which a free kick is given against Lantz [9] he's looking a bit anxious not much doubt about that challenge even though he did actually get his foot on the ball [3] Staunton [4] just before the half time whistle what a good time this would be for Aston Villa to score [1] Draper [1] it would change the whole atmosphere in the two dressing rooms [2] there might just be time for the corner [1] Townsend to take [2] Dwight Yorke in the six yard area Milosevic just outside Staunton coming to the near post [1] Ehiogu up at the back of the 18-yard area [2] a pushing and shoving match at the moment [3] cleared Draper Wright [3] still five waiting Ehiogu among them [1] he got up [1] but he just knocked it wide to the right and then the shot from Southgate [1] again no no test for the goal keeper [2]

A: I don't think there are going to be too many incidents to talk over in the studio at half time [1] it's been I think a very very poor display

**C.4 Manchester Utd. v Rapid Vienna 25<sup>th</sup> Sept. 1996 ITV (Champions League)**  
(32 minutes, 3695 words)

- A: Manchester United with a Dane in goal and three Norwegians [1] Ronnie Johnsen of course [1] a Czech a Frenchman Republic of Ireland [2] and three Englishmen in the United starting line-up [11] here is Denis Irwin [5] Giggs has gone wide inside has come Solskjaer [2] Giggs again down the line very precise [1] can Solskjaer get there [2] it's a corner [2] May's come forward Pallister's come forward United looking to capitalise on this early pressure in the second half to make two goals into three [1] Beckham with the corner [2] Pallister at the near post [1] Cantona poised just behind him [1] the keeper's fists get it away for Rapid Vienna [1] Irwin [4] Beckham Irwin [8] Heraf with the throw [3] and again [2] in goes Giggs [2] nice delicate touch there by Giggs Cantona [2] into Poborsky and ONSIDE [1] SOLSKJAER can he get a finishing touch here [1] just over [1] lost his footing just for a moment just before he struck it [2] but a riveting move there for Manchester United good movement incisive passing [1] and almost the finish they required
- B: That's a great little ball in from Poborsky and Solskjaer couldn't quite get it at his feet [1] and he's just [1] unfortunately his touch has taken him away from goal [1]
- A: It's just there where he moves and stumbles
- B: Yes only just
- A: There it is
- B: He's not far adrift though
- A: No [4] of the many qualities that he's got here they say he is a tremendous finisher [5]
- B: So that was another first class moment of the er Rapid's
- A: OH Cantona up to the tricks again [1] and finding Keane and looking for NEVILLE to come through and in the end [1] they're just happy to bang the ball away INTO ROW Z
- B: He's made a lot of those forward runs on the inside positions normally you associate flank defenders going round the outside but he's made a lot through the inside
- A: Poborsky to take the free kick [4] and yellow card for Peter Stöger [6] free kick then to Manchester United [1] Giggs has come across there [5] 2-0 up and eager for more Beckham also with the free kick [1] possibility [1] red shirts jockeying for positions inside the Rapid Vienna penalty area [1] it's Beckam's towards Cantona but didn't quite reach him [4] the man they call Mister Rapid the goalkeeper [3] made a catch and a clearance [2] nearly 400 appearances er Michael Konsel has made for Rapid Vienna [2]
- B: Strange thing tonight you know he's been under heavy pressure has conceded goals [1] things have flown past him and I can't recall him making a save
- A: No [2] he was in the Rapid Vienna side also way back in 1985 when Everton beat them in the Cup Winners Cup final
- B: Was he really [6]
- A: Neville [9] Ladbrokes made Manchester United 5 to 2 on favourites to win here tonight but they've slipped down to fourth favourites to win the Champions League [3] AC Milan who they still regard as favourites Juventus and er Ajax [2]
- B: It's the big four isn't it
- A: Yes it's the big four [2] Solskjaer scored the first goal what about him [1] he looks about 14 and he is 23 [laughter]
- B: [laughter]
- A: He's a terrific little player a gem is what Alec would call him [2]
- B: I wonder whether he'll play the distance tonight or whether Alec will bring him off after so long and put Cole on [1] to try and rub it really in at the end [4]
- A: Stöger [5] back to Ivanov [1]

- B: 'Cause Andy Cole makes these sort of runs as well you know that would upset the these three at the back [1] those little darting runs between people [2]
- A: Now here's Ivanov there's a bit of pace but the pass went astray picked up by David May for Manchester United [1] Poborsky [4] and the throw to Rapid Vienna [4] working on the sidelines Andy Cole [3] came on for the second half against Aston Villa at Villa Park on Saturday [1] rattled the Villa cross bar in that goalless draw [2] and you feel he's got the sort of movement that might be advantageous here
- B: I think he's the sort that can dart between people and leave so much space between [1] a between the er markers and the sweeper and b down the sides of them that any mobile forward can go into particularly with the service that's coming from the likes of Beckham the little er balls from Giggs and Cantona [3]
- A: Prosinek down the line for Stöger but perhaps a little too firmly [1] goal kick [3] he his claim to fame was he scored a hattrick against the Republic of Ireland which stopped them qualifying for the er Euro '96 [2]
- B: Oh yes and if I remember correctly he got three beauties didn't he
- A: Yes absolutely
- B: That was that was in Dublin wasn't it
- A: That's right [6] Keane who presumably was playing that day [3] May [1] Pallister [8] Solskjaer [3] it's a free kick for Manchester United [1]
- B: No it must have been Solskjaer who has [2] er which way is it [2] the referee has given it to ManU [2]
- A: So fairly central [4] I guess 28 29 yards out [1] Beckham Cantona [1] Giggs behind it [4] Solskjaer and er [2] Poborsky there it's Cantona's SHOT [1] OH THERE WAS SOME FIRE IN THAT ONE [2] that rattled the fists of [1] Michael Konsel [3] that was a great strike by Cantona
- B: Good block [1] I certainly recall him hitting one like that against Arsenal I think it was two or three years back [1] when he nearly ripped the net against David Seaman [1] good block from the keeper
- A: Giggs with the corner [2] hits it high towards David May got his header in OK but Ivanov's there to knock it away for Rapid Vienna [2] Irwin playing it wide offside against Giggs on the far side [11] here it is sheer power kept it down superbly [2] and as you say a good parry by the keeper [2] it's handy when you've got somebody like him somebody like Beckham and Giggs all gathered around the free kick [6] Pallister [1] Irwin [8] Konsel's clearance Irwin's header Giggs' touch [2] taken away by Lesiak [3] Keane [2] and Giggs [2] Poborsky [2] Neville [1] plenty waiting in the middle and Ivanov was there as well [3] Stöger [1] not much support for him [1] Kühbauer and Wagner here's Kühbauer but May gets there first [1] good touch for Irwin [1] and safely back to Peter Schmeichel [7] Prosenik [4] Stöger [1] Heraf [4] Prosenik again didn't think he was gonna play he was injured er [1] in the victory at the weekend [3] it'll be a throw for United back it'll go to Schmeichel [3]
- B: 10 minutes of the second half gone [11]
- A: The situation here is that United really can make a statement to the rest of Europe I mean they really with this side they should be looking to bang in another two three or four [1] and the rest of the Champions League to say wait a minute [1] there is plenty left in Manchester United here is Roy Keane with a driven shot [1] straight to Konsel [2]
- B: I think they'll peg away I don't think they'll take any unnecessary risks but er I think they'll just wait for a goal to come [1] I mean they know that there is another goal or two in the lot but they I don't think it will be quite the all-out drive it was in the first half because [1] in the end of the day er the most important thing is to win the game [1] shot by May on Wagner [10]

- A: I mean from a pure game point of view er it would be great if if er [laughter] Rapid Vienna got one [3]
- B: You try you try and tell that to a few Manchester United fans around here
- A: He fancies a big boomer here
- B: Oh here we are
- A: There he goes Ivanov with a big run-up [5] straight to Cantona [2]
- B: [...] his legs but no [1] he hasn't hit quite hit the right rhythm tonight has he Cantona [1]
- A: Cantona [1] well no 'cause you normally expect him to be nine out of ten with everything he does you know his passing his lay-offs and all that and he hasn't dropped far below that [5] as you say one or two of the little things he's tried haven't quite haven't quite come off [2]
- B: Here's Irwin [7] Giggs [8] Keane [1] a lot of space [1]
- A: I think that Keane and Beckham have been phenomenal [3] complemented each other they passed it and controlled it and when it's been necessary and that's not been often then Roy Keane's made sure that er [1] he's been in the back field [4]
- B: What a delicious problem for him somehow he's got Nicky Butt he's got a high regard for Nicky Butt [1] Jordi Cruyff who somehow has to fit into the [1] into the equation [1] in midfield [5] of course many would say that's a problem worth having [5]
- A: Neville with the throw [5] they're definitely playing a little [1] a little less flat out than they were early on they certainly are [1]
- B: I mean I don't think they could ever sustain that tempo they showed in the first er 25 minutes anyway ManU [2]
- A: Here is a more promising break now for Rapid Vienna [2] Wagner on the far side [2] Kühbauer's in the middle [3] into nowhere [1] Cantona NOW it might open up [1] now it might just open up [1] no [2] there was a foul by Lesiak [1]
- B: I think he was just holding on to him because I think [1] Cantona there was just was just gonna slip a ball through through the between two defenders actually to put Solskjaer through again [2]
- A: He just can't get around [1] there's another defender closing in and he wants to play between them [1] which would have left the young Norwegian clean on [8]
- B: May to Neville [2] Poborsky [6]
- A: It's a steady slow patient build-up in their own half of the field I think they'll quicken from here [2] Cantona [2] he's shaken off Prosenik [2] good ball through to Keane OH he's taken that BEAUTIFULLY [1] then he was [1] pounded there [1] Giggs can't keep it going it took three to stop Keane there it was a lovely bit of interplay between him and Cantona [2] oh Keane's getting into the action again [laughter]
- B: Two sides of Roy Keane
- A: Yes
- B: A brilliant first touch [1] then the other sort of touch the banging one [1] who is it [1] Kühbauer [7] well it was clumsy more than anything else [1] Kühbauer is on his feet [10] out of play United's throw [13] I understand that Rapid have decided to make a double substitution [1] Stumpf for sure will be one I would have thought the number seven who's a striker and comes on in this sort of junction normally [1] it's Pallister in the meantime we'll watch this [2] and now May [2] now Neville who loves to get forward [2] it's a free kick [4] yes here's Stumpf about to come on [2] he scored the Rapid goal against Fenerbahce in the opening game [2] Barisic [2] Ivanov [1] well the crowd behind the goal there claim hand ball the linesman actually was in a good position and er saw nothing amiss [4] there's the cross towards Roy Keane [2] Stöger with the clearance Pallister keeping it going [2] Beckham [6] Schöttel [7] Giggs [3]
- A: At the moment all Rapid seem content with doing is just trying to keep the score down I think they'll be more than happy now to take the two nothing and go home [1] and I don't

- know how ambitious Stumpf is er Stumpf has got a proven record of scoring goals [1] I hope that's a positive move [3]
- B: And Barisic is a midfield player right side midfield really [1]
- A: They need some devil from somewhere don't they someone you know who er wants to grab it LOOK AT THIS
- B: There's space now there's space here now for Solskjaer [2] and the red shirts are flying into the box there [1] but Ivanov is there it wasn't well delivered by the young Norwegian [1]
- A: The incredible thing is Solskjaer's got so much space and he he is supposed to have a man-to-man marker with him [1] he's got about 30 yards of clear space there [1]
- B: United's throw Solskjaer back to Irwin [1] keeper's ball [13] May with a header [5]
- A: They've definitely dropped two gears now United
- B: Well I think they've dropped three or four I mean there was a blistering opening half an hour and I'm sure everybody at home particularly the United fans at home enjoyed every moment of it [1] it was a spectacle and it really hasn't started in the second half [2] Stöger is one who's coming off and Barisic [3] Barisic is on [10] the referee I think is waiting for the other substitution to be made [1] and number 17 is coming off Wagner [1] a striker replaced by Stumpf [1] another [2] striker [1] a couple of caps for Austria he was the top scorer in the Austrian league incidentally last season with 14 goals [5] Poborsky [2] in the path of Giggs but Giggs was always stretching for that one that wasn't a very clever ball it very nearly [1] put Keane in [1] Schöttel [2] Beckham [2] they just want something in the second half to catch the breeze [2]
- A: It's one of those things sometimes the impetus goes a little bit the momentum and they'll get Neville on a run here
- B: OH it's a great run from Neville here and WHAT A BALL FROM BECKHAM [2] AND SOLSKJAE:R OH:: HE MISSED IT [1] WHAT A SUPERB GOAL that would have been [1] a wonderful ball by Beckham a terrific run [1] by Gary Neville a good cross coming in absolutely inch perfect and then Solskjaer to his credit he had taken up a wonderful position [1] but then the finish just wasn't there [2] you should bury those all day and all night [1] Ron
- A: Great move super move they set it all really good ball in from Beckham [1] er good ball in from Neville [1] great cross and [1] not too dissimilar from Shearer was it [1] in the Scottish game or against Switzerland [4] but they've quickened as well [1] they've quickened the tempo here [2]
- B: Giggs [1] that might just get them going [1] Keane [1] Neville 2-0 up [1] Solskjaer the scorer of the first Beckham the scorer of the second [1] Poborsky [3] Heraf [1] Barisic who hasn't got into the er pace of the game yet [5] Prosenik well forward [9] can't get the better of Denis Irwin [4] goal kick to United [2]
- A: You know they deserve praise United and rightly so particularly for their opening half an hour but you have to say for a team that's got to a major European Cup final less than six months ago [1] they have been so disappointing [1]
- B: Solskjaer [1] that little touch wasn't accurate enough to find the onrushing Poborsky [2]
- A: I honestly can't remember the midfield challenging for balls [6]
- B: Oh
- A: He's the one United player for me Peter Schmeichel because he's had nothing to do goalkeepingwise and because he missed Saturday and he's not that sharp at the moment [1] but he looks decidedly edgy and he doesn't look knackered
- B: I tell you what he was apparently terribly unwell last week with this virus [6]
- A: We just nearly saw the ball of the decade there by the way [1] outside of the right foot from Cantona [1] unbelievable [1] I mean that's what you love to see don't you
- B: Yes



- A: When you see great players stretching the field [2] many European players of the sort of Di Stefano wasn't it the start of all this and also the players used to the great players always used to dominate the games [3]
- B: Oh a young player doing it wasn't that lovely wasn't that BEAUTIFUL Poborsky to Cantona [1] and now will it come to Giggs [2] it all started with a Beckham back heel that time Giggs with the outside of the boot that man Ivanov's there again for Rapid Vienna [3] Keane [1] Pallister [1] working up momentum here United Keane [1] Irwin [3] no [1] momentum lost
- A: Early on I was thinking about the comparison between Rapid and the different sort of game the game they play and Juventus [1] Juventus were hard close and got really tight into people I tell you what I bet [2] you know [1] if you only think about the Premiership games [1] this is this is a cruise for United really
- B: Yes [6] Heraf getting it back [1]
- A: I mean they've made it a cruise by their own brilliance but er
- B: Lesiak being [2] beaten there by the determination and the strength of Roy Keane the Pole comes back [1] he's gonna get a yellow card [5] er Lesiak [5] played actually his last international football it was at Wembley against England in a World Cup qualifier that England won 3-0 Gary Pallister played for England that day [5] there he is 18 caps he won for his country Poland now he's conceded this free kick which Giggs is about to take [1] laid back for Beckham will there be a drive here [1] the whistle's gone the referee wasn't ready for the free kick to be taken Giggs says I didn't realise that's what you meant [2] so [1] they get another go [3] [...] from France in charge of this game here tonight [2] hasn't been a difficult one for the referee to be er fair [1] Giggs again [1] played for Irwin [1] good move [3] Barisic [3] Giggs with a header [1] nicely waited there [1] for Beckham [2] Cantona was in the way [laughter] and Beckham in there and was determined he was gonna get it wide for Poborsky [1] NOW POBORSKY [1] flicked with the outside of the boot aimed towards Roy Keane [1] but not good enough [6] he's a tenacious little man Poborsky and er [1] he had a terrific game against Leeds United a terrific game against Nottingham Forest he hasn't really [1] caught fire here tonight [7] Stumpf's header went the wrong way [3] number 19 Zingler [1] player in the middle of the field there but they've lost it again here comes Keane [1] Giggs has made a great run down the left-hand side but the timing wasn't quite right for Keane [3] so they try on the far side the ever-willing Gary Neville's there
- A: He's got acres to play there Gary Neville he's always a good out-man for them [2]
- B: Pallister [1] space here for Irwin [5] offside [1] to be fair just as United were delighted to get away from Turin only losing 1-0 and it could have been so many more [1] this lot will be delighted if they get away from here 2-0 [20] Pallister with a header [2] the word I get from behind the scenes is that Pallister has been asking the bench how much longer to go [3]
- A: He's carrying his left leg a little by the way
- B: Yes he's carrying his left leg a bit and he does have some trouble with his back too Gary and er [2] well Zingler's coming off and Jovanovic is coming on [5] midfielder replacing midfielder [2] Zingler's off here's young Jovanovic [4] it's a free kick for United [10] Giggs with the free kick [1]
- A: I was just thinking as the crowd are chanting for Cole it might not be a bad shout that you know a little bit of fresh enthusiasm [2] he might fancy his chance of scoring some European goals [6]
- B: Well the crowd I think have got their way [2] the information I get is that Andy Cole is warming up [2] but it's with Roy Keane at the moment [1] it's with Cantona at the moment tackle from behind but he has the strength to hold it off but still couldn't keep the ball [2] Kühbauer [2] Barisic [2] free kick [11] Prosenik [2] United's throw [18]

Kühbauer [4] er there's some nice play here [1] Kühbauer [1] Jovanovic has made a break down the right-hand side [1] offside there against Stumpf [1] free kick to Manchester United [1] I had actually forgotten about number ten Kühbauer this man [1] Cole's coming on [4] and I guess it will be yes Ole Solskjaer who comes off [2] and he's getting a good reception from the crowd and so TOO IS ANDY COLE [8] I do get the feeling about Cole he's one of those strikers that thrives on confidence and so on [1] and you get the feeling if he just finds the back of the net once or twice there'll be like there was at Newcastle an absolute avalanche from him you know [1]

- A: He's like an explosion just waiting to happen isn't he [4]
- B: Get it away [1] May was first to react to that [1] finds Beckham oh a nice nice little reverse ball there by Beckham for Cantona [1] the break is on Poborsky's little flick [1] wasn't gonna find Gary Neville [5] they get it back [5] the break is on Kühbauer [3] Stumpf is waiting in the middle but cannoned off Gary Pallister [2] Barisic Jovanovic [2] Stumpf [1] Heraf [1] Prosenik [2] and Kühbauer gets it back again and PALLISTER that was a VERY IMPORTANT header there for Pallister [1] now the break if it is a quick one could be on for Manchester United [1]
- A: I just wonder whether that little bit of play might just startle United and say right we'll put them back in their place [1]
- B: Poborsky still running and getting nowhere [4] Heraf [3] United's throw [3]
- A: Quarter of an hour left one of the daft things would be if Rapid Vienna went and scored and then all of a sudden you have that little anxious bit again [1] from a game that's been won easily really [2]
- B: Cantona [2] Heraf [4]
- A: This is the longest they've been in United's half all match
- B: And they can stay there because they get a free kick for the foul by May on Stumpf
- A: It only needs big Marty at the back to whack one in now [2]
- B: Well
- A: No he's pulling people out of the firing line on this one [24]
- B: OH it needed A VERY GOOD SAVE [1] from Barisic's free kick [5] and this time Irwin got it clear Prosenik playing it in once more and Gary Neville let that one fly away [1] for the throw
- A: Tremendous shot was it Barisic it was Barisic
- B: Barisic yes
- A: As I said Schmeichel hasn't been at it tonight but he's had to really make a it may just have been wide
- B: Yes I think it might have gone wide [2]
- A: They've made some ground there
- B: Cantona [8]
- A: It would be unbelievable if United had to hang on in a game like this [5]
- B: Poborsky is coming off and Nicky Butt is coming on [2] I think they might well put Nicky Butt into centre midfield and switch Beckham on the right-hand side what do you think
- A: Well that would be the logical one because that's er that must be the most balanced but the thing about Beckham he's played so well hasn't he in that central area [1] but whether they feel they want Butt in there to perhaps stem this little bit of a flow that's coming on from er Vienna [2]
- B: I don't think Prosenik will get to that it will be a throw to Manchester United
- A: Alec might be saying alright to Butt and Keane you go and get the most of it there

## **D Football on the radio** (50 minutes, 10,000 words)

### **D.1** Newcastle Utd. v Halmstad BK 10<sup>th</sup> Sept. 1996 BBC Radio 5 Live (UEFA) (20 minutes, 4054 words)

- A: Barton on the righthand side infield to Lee Clark who's kept his place in the side with David Batty being suspended because of that contretemps that infamous contretemps with Graeme Le Saux [1] with Blackburn in Moscow last season Beardsley into the Halmstad penalty area for Newcastle tries to find Gillespie who does well to win it back now it's Clark and Beardsley left edge of the penalty area low ball towards Shearer who lets it run he was looking for Ferdinand it's swept away by the Swedes [1] everybody but one behind the ball in blue for Halmstad blue shirts black shorts for them Newcastle black and white stripes and white shorts to avoid a colour clash in terms of the shorts [1] and Newcastle United are able to break up a Halmstad attack [1] Halmstad have Nordberg in goal Wyberg, Matsson, Terry Andersson [1] and Frederik Andersson across the back in midfield it's Karlsson, Arvedsson Smith Svensson and then the other players Ljungberg who's come on as a substitute for Robert Andersson the leading goalscorer last season who hasn't been fully fit for them that's been a problem and also the other more recent substitute Leonardsson
- B: Yes I think Newcastle have got to be very pleased well they've been very positive tonight their crossing has been terrific and their aerial power has been enormous [1] the first three goals all came from Ginola crosses and er Ferdinand Asprilla and then Albert getting on the end of them and er certainly it was er a good old-fashioned English performance from that point of view and the Swedes they really couldn't deal with it [2]
- A: You're listening to the Tuesday match on *5 Live* from the BBC this is our second commentary of the evening we have 17 minutes remaining it's Newcastle United four Halmstad nil a reminder that earlier at Highbury [1] Arsenal two Borussia Mönchengladbach three was the full time score it could have been worse but for a late goal from Ian Wright there for Arsenal Aston Villa still playing at Villa Park against another Swedish side Helsingborg and that's level at 1-1 here come Halmstad a LOVELY SHOT FROM SVENSSON and it's beaten away at the near post by Pavel Srnicek the Czech Republic goalkeeper for Newcastle that was very nearly the away goal [1] as Magnus Svensson managed to sneak into the penalty area on the left-hand side right-footed in towards that near post and it was a good save in the end by Srnicek [1]
- B: It was a great run by er Svensson he got er to the by-line a great left-footed shot and er the Newcastle keeper has done brilliantly there because he got low down to his right and he knocked the ball away a good save by Srnicek [2]
- A: Latest score from the Nationwide First Division Barnsley have scored a second goal against Stoke Barnsley look as though they're gonna maintain their a hundred percent start of the season Barnsley two Stoke nil elsewhere in Europe two other full time scores Celtic nil Hamburg TWO: [1] so an excellent night for German visitors to the shores and Aberdeen three Barry Town one good effort by the League of Wales champions still in the match there and Halmstad again are attacking here at St. James's Park Ljungberg runs into a very sturdy challenge from Philippe Albert but here they come again on the near side with Frederik Andersson on the left edge of the penalty area Warren Barton comes across to meet him it's played into the box to Svensson cut back across the penalty area a SHOT comes in from Leonardsson the substitute and it's beaten away by Newcastle who come breaking over halfway with Ginola Ferdinand is behind him in space near side Newcastle right [1] attacks the captain of Halmstad and lays it back to Ginola who's 25 yards out the ball comes into the box to Shearer but he's offside [1] he heads it into the net I think it might have come off his shoulder in fact now's the second time Shearer's

found the goal [1] but on each occasion he's been denied it remains 4-0 to Newcastle United and Alan Shearer's desperate isn't he to score his first European goal for Newcastle [1]

- B: The linesman was very quick up there with the flag he was right on line I think he made the right decision on that occasion Alan Shearer will be disappointed but Newcastle have got to be careful here because the away goals [1] I can't see them getting a big problem but they don't want to concede any tonight to give the Swedes any kind of a lift and at the moment they're looking a little bit vulnerable and the Swedes have now thrown one or two more players forward which has given the Newcastle defence a little problem [2]
- A: Newcastle are playing towards the Gallowgate End in this second half which is to our right our commentary position is about halfway up the Milburn Stand the crowd is er round about 25 26.000 a good 9 10.000 down on capacity I would say maybe it's slightly more than that but [1] I think that's a little bit disappointing considering even though there is live football coverage of this match on the television er a lot of people complain they can't get into St. James's Park this would have been an opportunity to see their idols in the flesh and quite a few of the Newcastle folk haven't taken the opportunity [1] Newcastle trying to come forward with Clark but er he loses out and really a lot of the pace has gone out of this game as far as Newcastle are concerned and Halmstad are running at them all the time from midfield [1] and on that occasion it was Ljungberg who ran straight into Darren Peacock and the ponytailed man made an excellent challenge wins the ball cleanly for Newcastle and Barton [1] the former Wimbledon man plays it infield to Clark across the centre circle to Beardsley can he fire Newcastle forward for perhaps the fifth goal which really would cap things off nicely Gillespie wide on the far side the ball comes into the box it's behind Shearer he lets it run for FERDINAND who rather skips his shot and it bounces behind harmlessly for a goal kick to Halmstad
- B: Yes another great strike by the big er Ferdinand but still there was him and Shearer in the box a cross by er Keith Gillespie just caught in behind the Swedish back four and it was just a poor finish er he must be disappointed by that because he's played very very well tonight Ferdinand [2]
- A: Well the last time Newcastle played in the UEFA Cup was the season before last they had a thrilling start they beat Antwerp 10-2 on aggregate 5-2 there in Belgium 5-0 here at St. James's Park then in the next [1] match in the second round against er Athletic Bilbao they were 3-0 up after 69 minutes here at St. James's Park but they went for more goals and were caught by two punches it finished 3-2 and ultimately they went out on the away goals rule and there are one or two slightly haunting memories of that here at the moment because if Halmstad get one [1] they could get a sniff of a chance considering that last season in the Cup Winners Cup they did beat Parma 3-0 in southwest Sweden
- B: No it wouldn't surprise me they're very quick and er they've got players who look as if they could be very sharp when they do get forward and certainly the first [1] goal for Newcastle very early on took the sting a little bit out of them but in the last ten minutes we have seen enough from the Swedes to say they could be a problem [1]
- A: Newcastle have rather fortunately been awarded a corner it's taken short to Clark his ball comes in from the left edge of the area headed away by Tommy Andersson it breaks for Philip Albert near side for Newcastle tries to take it to the by-line for a right-footed ball in towards the near post and easily claimed by Björn Nordberg who is regularly the reserve team goal keeper for Halmstad but gets an outing here in European competition it's full time now at Villa Park that other Anglo-Swede confrontation Pat Murphy
- C: It's Aston Villa one Helsingborg one a late equaliser from Peter Wibrän and in actual fact a lot of Villa fans are applauding the Swedes off the Park [1] Tommy Johnson scored in the first half Villa terrible they've been held 1-1 at home by Helsingborg [1]

- A: That's gonna be tricky for them Helsingborg is just down the coast in southern Sweden from Halmstad [1] er Newcastle United [1] hopefully won't have any problems in their second leg 4-0 up they are here at St. James' Park Barnsley now 3-0 up on Stoke in the First Division Andy Ledell with the third goal Barnsley making an excellent start of the campaign Gillespie comes infield here for Newcastle playing towards the right as they are in the second half the ball is with Lee Clark it just eludes him in fact he shuffles it crossfield left-footed to Beardsley beyond him is [1] Gillespie who tries to ride one challenge does WELL to find Clark now right-footed ball tucked in towards the edge of the area Shearer finds Asprilla in space on the near side O:H he went for glory at the near post got it all wrong he might have flashed it across the face of the goal where Alan Shearer was looking as though he wanted to bundle the ball in but instead it was well wide Asprilla a little bit rash there
- B: Yes it was a wild shot good play by Alan Shearer even better play by Lee Clark to get the ball to Shearer when the ball was played to Asprilla he had a couple of choices he could have shot er certainly more accurately than he did [1] he went for the near post and it went harmlessly past if he had gone for the far post the keeper might have saved it Alan Shearer would've been there to get the goal that he deserves or if he had played the ball across then Alan Shearer and Ferdinand were both there so that was poor play although Asprilla has been very very exciting tonight [1]
- A: And his goal was enjoyable wasn't it a really theatrical volley from close range which gave the goal keeper no chance at all and he celebrated of course [1] as you do these days by pulling his shirt over his head here comes Gillespie excellent pace by the Northern Ireland international on the far side until he's brought down and it'll be a free kick to Newcastle in a very progressive position on the left-hand side and a chance for them to pack bodies into that Halmstad penalty area
- B: Yes it was a great Asprilla goal great cross by Ginola he's crossed the ball superbly well particularly in the first half [1] but I was so pleased that Beardsley scored I thought that was wonderful
- A: Ginola's ball in from the free kick is punched away by the goalkeeper who came well off his line doesn't find touch there on the near side it's fed back by Peacock to Asprilla a better ball this time to FERDINAND a downward header is wide at the near post well Ferdinand has had opportunities to score a hattrick [1] so far he's just on the one goal it remains 4-0 but Newcastle beginning to create again [1]
- B: Yes this is where the Swedes have been struggling desperately the crosses have come in and er their two central defenders haven't really dealt with the aerial power of Ferdinand and Shearer and the keeper has been quite poor on the crosses [1] and er that is what's let them down very much defensively tonight [2]
- A: Nine minutes to go [1] Newcastle United four Halmstad nil the last [1] major competition which Newcastle [1] won a long time ago 27 years ago was actually this very same competition in its former guise as the Intercity Cup they beat Ujpest Dosza [1] of Hungary 6-2 on aggregate way back then in 19[1]69 under the management of John Harvey and it's been a long long wait for a major trophy for Newcastle and [1] Kevin Keegan I think Brian is right in saying that Europe isn't just a side-show as they chase the Premiership they want to do well in this competition as well [1]
- B: Oh I think it's important to do well in this competition for the er er we need English clubs to do well here because I think it lifts the prestige of English football and gives the players a great insight in playing against a foreign opposition I think we missed out desperately during those years when we were banned and it's great to be back so it's important you stay as long as you can in the competition
- A: Again Shearer through on the goalkeeper oh that was a good save by the keeper Nordberg a lovely flick by Ferdinand who released Shearer in space inside the penalty area [1] it

was a fifty-fifty ball but the keeper got there ever so alertly at the feet of the England captain made a smothering save and held on so it stays at 4-0 [1] 4-0 to Newcastle here but Brian very disappointing scorelines for English clubs elsewhere

- B: Yes very disappointing indeed and er as I say it's so important we stay in these competitions I think coaches managers they need the experience playing against them for it's so different playing against the world-class players er from the different countries [1] er we just talked there tonight about Ferdinand and Shearer er their last movement that was absolutely brilliant quick feet er played a one-two off each other and the Swedes were very disappointed that er they Shearer wasn't given offside but superb play by the front two [1]
- A: Where do you stand on the great debate will they or will they not jell Shearer and Ferdinand as a partnership
- B: Well I think tonight they've been excellent [1] to be fair the crosses have been superb and I think the Swedes have been left a little bit to desire defensively in the air [1]
- A: Gillespie chasing away down the left-hand side gets beyond Medsson is towards the by-line needs to pull it BACK [1] GILLESPIE ALL THE WAY OH IT'S OFF THE LINE BY A DEFENDER who scooped it back into the arms of his goalkeeper all the Newcastle fans around us are screaming that that was a back pass but it was a total miskick by the defender and he was mighty fortunate that wasn't an own goal it landed in the grateful gloves of his goalkeeper that could easily have been five [1] whistles around the ground but I think the referee was right the defender did not deliberately play that to the goalkeeper
- B: Well I think er it would be very hard to debate the referee made a very quick decision and I wouldn't argue with him but a magnificent run by Gillespie got right to the by-line a great pullback how that ball stayed out I just don't know [2]
- A: It's full time at Oakwell in the First Division and Barnsley have beaten Stoke 3-0 I think it was it's finished it's Clark on the near side for Newcastle [2] the ball comes across the penalty area and it's headed behind by Halmstad's Mats Carlsson for a corner to Newcastle to be taken by Keith Gillespie [2] a former Manchester United man [1] on the left-hand side he'll curl it over right-footed Albert is up from the back and so too is Peacock at the near post it's beyond Peacock towards Ferdinand headed away to the edge of the penalty area and Lee Clark back to Asprilla [1] right on the corner of the box now he's forced wide by two defenders as he has been most of the evening and one of those defenders is actually the attacker Ljungberg all the way back there and he makes the tackle and Halmstad in blue come forward Ljungberg now up towards the halfway line needs support wants somebody to make a run on the near side Svensson obliges it's forward now to Leonardsson [1] back to Svensson wearing eight near side Leonardsson 25 yards out good build-up by the Swedes Ljungberg tries to play a one-two with Leonardsson but it's cut out by Philip Albert [1] now it's Clark wearing 20 for Newcastle [2] we have [1] four and a half minutes remaining it's Newcastle four Halmstad nil it's Alan Shearer on the far side [1] full of running as ever [1] goes wide to pick up possession when he needs to now takes up his more natural central position as Gillespie er makes a run on the far side cuts infield from the left finds the dark-haired Clark on by [1] Ginola towards Gillespie back to Ginola who has to do some work to retreat it wasn't the best of balls puts his foot on the ball has time to launch a right-footed ball over 30 yards crossfield right onto the boot of Peter Beardsley [1] round of applause for that crossfield ball now it's Clark from distance it's blocked by the defender comes back to Albert crossfield to Ginola again the Frenchman comes infield he'd like to get on the scoresheet as well tries a delicate ball out towards er Gillespie this time and Halmstad have it back and they come up towards the halfway line with Svensson who's looked to me their most lively performer wide on the near left-hand side for them wearing number

eight but he loses out this time ASPRILLA with a chest-down for Newcastle he's given the ball back almost by a defender but Frederik Andersson who's been another of their better players [1] he's number 13 on the left-hand side he's said to be interesting Wolverhampton Wanderers he's a former [1] international player for Sweden at Olympic level and he clears but Newcastle have it back again they're finishing the match full of energy seeking that fifth goal and it's Gillespie on the far side tries to come infield [1] is forced to retreat finds Beardsley in towards the edge of the area sees Shearer battle his way forward beyond Wyberg the right back did well scrambles it clear and that's a lovely touch as well by Anders Smith for [1] Halmstad finds Ljungberg on the far side but again a very beefy challenge by Darren PEACOCK and Newcastle have it back interesting to see a player called Smith in the Swedish team because you don't get many Smiths in English football these days Brian

- B: No to be honest I'm quite impressed with the Swedish players because I think that when they have come forward they've been accurate very quick some great touches and they could have had a goal or two so er the 4-0 scoreline certainly doesn't flatter Newcastle because they've been super tonight and should have had more goals but er I think there's still a few goals in the Swedish team and there is still a little bit to play for in in the second leg [2]
- A: Yes but 4-0 they won't throw that away will they
- B: Oh no no no the the tie's over I mean Newcastle won't lose this but I think there's still a bit of work to be done because the Swedes have actually been quite exciting when they got people forward and they could have had one or two goals [2]
- A: They have a player called Arvedsson and surely Newcastle have got to sign him haven't they [1] so they can say [...]
- B: [laughter]
- A: Surely and here he COMES right on cue Arvedsson wearing three into the penalty area that's a nice back heel to Svensson Svensson's beyond the defender tries to drive in a low shot it gets away back off Svensson unluckily and that's gonna be a goal kick but that really was good trickery on the ball from the Swedes [1] they are part-timers but part-timers train as much as full-time professionals don't they quite often
- B: No that doesn't mean anything in Sweden they're very athletic they love their sport and people do er work but they play very hard at their sport they work at their sport and er when you talk about part-time players they'll train probably as often as our full-time players will do [3]
- A: As Blackburn found out when they lost to Trelleborg [1] a couple of years back [1] Alan Shearer was on the losing side then against Swedish part-timers it won't be the case this time surely over the two legs Newcastle 4-0 up Shearer with a lovely whipped cross beyond the far post Gillespie attacks the ball [1] his firm header though goes behind and it will be a goal kick to Halmstad
- B: Surely that's the wrong way around surely it should be Gillespie crossing for Shearer to head [1] on that occasion it was a great cross by Alan Shearer he's been so desperate to score a goal tonight he's tried on every occasion and he he has been looking to get that European goal for the Newcastle fans I think that disallowed goal the first one [1] is a real mystery it would be very interesting to hear why that one was disallowed [1]
- A: Ljungberg now for Halmstad right edge of the penalty area [1] Arvedsson makes a run inside him LEONARDSSON has space on the edge of the area just couldn't quite control the ball that was a a let-off for Newcastle but they still have it Smith in towards the edge of the area again Ljungberg chips it forward straight through to Pavel Srnicek [1] and the Swedes might go back into their dressing rooms a little bit disappointed they haven't scored one tonight

- B: I think that's right I think they've been quite exciting when they've gone forward they have really not released many players when they had possession they've defended very solidly with six seven and eight to nine players but when they have er certainly in the second half put one or two people forward they've been very quick very swift and they have been disappointed that they haven't scored surely er Pavel [1] Pavel Srnicek made a great save er and that could have given the Swedes a goal [1]
- A: We've played 90 minutes now Gillespie on the far side for Newcastle beyond the defender as if he's not there excellent pace from Gillespie the tackle comes in and Gillespie can't control the ball at the second attempt it trickles away off his ankles and it's a goal kick to the Swedes and they're in a hurry to take it they still feel they they can sneak one in these dying seconds of the match here at St. James's Park the crowd [1] a little impatient now for the full-time whistle they can see that if the match does progress the Swedes could get one and they're coming forward again on the far side [1] Carlsson into the penalty area ARVEDSSON STRETCHES AND HITS THE POST OH MY WORD that was very nearly the goal for the Swedes and it's been adjudged to have been a save by goalkeeper Srnicek the linesman's awarded a corner not too sure how much the goalkeeper saw of that it was a stretch on the right foot from Arvedsson and it hit the base of the post [1]
- B: Well they've been threatening for the last 15 minutes they've thrown more people forward as I've said and they have looked very threatening when they've got it in their possession one or two good saves one or two good tackles and on that occasion they were fortunate Newcastle that the ball came back off the post
- A: Asprilla now [1] shirt outside his shorts [1] deep inside the Swedish half of the field his ball in isn't the best not the service Shearer required easily away back in by Beardsley into the box it's a a very deep crossfield ball controlled well by Ginola on the right left-footed ball [1] too close to the goalkeeper who bends down and picks it up inside his six yard box [1] we've played a minute and 30 seconds over the allotted 90 it's Newcastle United four Halmstad nil the referee I think is about to blow the full-time whistle yes he is



**D.2 Helsingborg v Aston Villa 24<sup>th</sup> Sept. 1996 BBC Radio 5 Live (UEFA)**  
(15 minutes, 2700 words)

- A: Steve Staunton once of Liverpool another Irishman slides it forward for Yorke to try and turn on the halfway line Yorke is closed down swiftly Draper was available to him Ehiogu helped him out in any event [1] and Ehiogu now meanders up to halfway hits a right-footed ball into Milosevic's inset Milosevic er surrounded by Swedish players [1] but Draper hauls one of them who is Ole Jansson to the floor and er Helsingborg have a free kick
- B: I think in the early stages it's very very apparent that Villa have got to try and get the ball wide er Helsingborg doing very well across midfield whenever they lose it the two wide men tuck in and get across to the ball so it's very very tight in there and in addition to that the two full backs are just not coming forward at all [2] all the space is outside the wide men and Villa's full backs have got to try and get into the game and Draper's got to try and get them into the game [1]
- A: Our expert now on *5 Live* we're delighted to say is the former manager of Leeds Sheffield Wednesday and others Howard Wilkinson who's had a few [1] interesting European experiences himself over recent years [1] it's never been dull Howard has it
- B: No very interesting roundabout twelve months ago [1]
- A: Absolutely they haven't reached the second round have they
- B: [laughter]
- A: Oakes hits it long left-footed to the edge of the penalty area [2] partially repelled comes down for Andy Townsend now Wright Staunton left-footed infield for Draper Taylor is available to him big gangling long-legged player right-footed pass from him to this near side and Fernando Nelson and then Ehiogu coming forward [1] one of the three centre backs and patiently almost laboriously turning it back to the halfway line
- B: And Helsingborg now with all ten outfield players in the defending third so their intention or their actions [1] if actions mean anything [1] quite clear their intention at this stage they're gonna defend try and keep a clean sheet and force Villa into desperation later on [1]
- A: Well now there's been a bit a bit of a misunderstanding in the Helsingborg half and it was close to being a situation where Milosevic was in but Roland Nilsson was er just strong enough and he got it away for the Swedish side only for the pass from midfield to be a really poor one and for Michael Oakes uncontested to run across his penalty area [1] and pick up the loose ball blond-haired goalkeeper [1] getting his chance because of Bosnich's absence hits it high long towards the edge of the penalty area YORKE gets up well heads into the box but Sven Andersson has no problems in coming to [1] collect it Ian Taylor if you're just joining us was preferred to Tommy Johnson in Aston Villa's midfield it was an open secret really from the point when Brian Little fielded his eleven in training very open training last night he's reverted to the team as close as possible to his Wembley line-up in the Coca Cola Cup final he hasn't got Gary Charles available and he hasn't got Bosnich available but er other than that he's got his nine familiar winning faces [1] and just at the moment er they're labouring to try and find gaps in the Helsingborg's massed ranks in midfield and in defence and they haven't got through we've played nearly a quarter of an hour it's still 0-0-on the night and it's 1-1 on aggregate [1] [short reports of other games]
- A: It's 0-0 here and Aston Villa have had one shot cleared away Andy Townsend a left-footed shot over the bar we talked briefly Howard Wilkinson about the need to entertain or perhaps it's not a need but on a night like this it's hard to see [1] how anyone is really going to entertain it's not gonna be a thriller is it

- B: No but the prize is just so big I mean even bigger for Helsingborg than potentially for Aston Villa because the er the money is something that that they all need and at the moment Helsingborg show absolutely no sign of being out there to entertain at all what they're out there to do is defend the result they got at Villa Park [1] hoping they're gonna frustrate Villa and at the moment they're doing just that they're keeping very very compact very very disciplined they're not committing men forward and it's Villa who are making all the mistakes at the moment [1]
- A: Wibrän for Helsingborg takes it to the far touchline their right-hand side midway inside the Villa half quickly closed down by Staunton over there but it breaks nonetheless for Mats Jonsson ball infield from him for Ole Jansson and now wide again for Roger Nilsson coming forward from right full back [1] standing 20 yards outside the penalty area is Wibrän again right-footed ball played in headed up in the air still not properly away by Villa played towards the edge of the six yard area and hooked to safety with determination by Fernando Nelson but still not properly cleared RIGHT-FOOTED SHOT driven in by Markus Lantz it's gotta be a goal kick to Aston Villa we'll be back in just a second but first we're going to York [1] [short report of another game]
- A: Well that's interesting [1] here a decent attack by Helsingborg and
- B: Early signs of nervousness you saw there as soon as Helsingborg got into [1] Aston Villa's half and put three or four passes together you know the the back five of Aston Villa started to look decidedly nervous and the shot high and wide as it went was I think a big relief to Alan Little [1] Brian Little sorry
- A: Alan Little's a lot happier [laughter] his team have just scored Freudian slip there [1] Callson made him very happy
- B: Yes quite
- A: It's 0-0 here 1-1 on aggregate and we've played 22 and a half minutes I can't say it's slow but it's your turn Alan Green [1]
- C: It's very dull [2] that's er about the truth and I would say a little worrying for Aston Villa [1] a lot of the ball but not doing very much with it here is Draper fifteen yards over the halfway [1] line good ball to the far side to Staunton Wright is wide of Staunton but he chose instead to play towards Milosevic didn't find Milosevic and away come Helsingborg and the fans are bored too they're practising this stupid Mexican wave it's chipped forward now and it's [1] er chased after didn't get there and it's cleared by Villa Staunton to Draper [1] now on the far side Townsend and Wright back to [1] the skipper Andy Townsend swept forward to Yorke controlled by Yorke back to Milosevic that's better play Taylor to Draper now right in the centre circle 23 minutes gone Helsingborg nil Aston Villa nil 1-1 in the first game Andy Townsend comes forward NOW DRIVEN SHOT LOW the keeper dived to his left and pushed it behind for a corner and it's the first serious occasion in which Villa have threatened [1]
- B: And the first time really that they stuck the ball in the front men area I didn't think they'd try and do that at the moment they've got a lot of possession in front of Helsingborg and I think they've got to try and get it into the front men as early as possible and I think the front men have gotta do a better job in showing and holding the ball up
- C: Townsend's corner deep towards the post end and headed away well by Jansson to the far side collected by [1] Jonsson and Jonsson runs towards the halfway line he's only got one er colleague upfield and he runs the ball out of play [1] and it's a throw-in to Aston Villa
- B: In Helsingborg's club constitution by the way I'm trusting the translation since it's er the club's own it says regulations stipulate that the team is committed to an offensive technical and entertaining style of football [1] come off it [1] I think that's
- C: You can't really blame them
- B: It's political document style
- C: Absolutely [1]

- B: Yes I was diplomatic
- C: [laughter] I think you could challenge that er constitution [1] now Townsend's getting himself into a little bit of a problem here [1] er Wycombe one Nottingham Forest nil so it's 1-1 on aggregate that's an interesting score from the League Cup second leg this is [1] the UEFA Cup's second leg [1] still 0-0 here in Sweden but Helsingborg have the ball and they play towards the near side and they might be caught on the counterattack here they committed quite a few players upfield Milosevic to Draper left of the centre circle running forward he's got Yorke to his right Townsend to his left [1] the Villa skipper holds the ball up back to Wright and the Swedes have got many more players behind the ball now Milosevic just stabs it towards the left-hand side he was caught and the referee from Luxembourg spotted it so it's a free kick to Aston Villa it's about eight yards from the edge [1] of the Helsingborg penalty area to the left as Villa look at it [1]
- B: And they've had now I think two corners and a free kick in a situation on this side [1] and a free kick here and in tight games like this you're really looking for people to make your set-pieces work [1]
- C: Well they've only forced one save from the goalkeeper so far [1] that's er it's rather ambitious a shot from this range but they've still got four players in the Swedish wall which is too close to the Villa free kick and the referee has ordered them back
- B: I hope the free kick's as good as the one at Chelsea the other week [1]
- C: We'll see Draper's there and Townsend [2] up in the penalty area Ehiogu maybe Andy's gonna strike this [1] Wright lurking just at the left of the penalty area the whistles from the home fans it's teed up now and the shot driven in by the er Villa midfielder Taylor all along the ground and straight in the arms of the goalkeeper [3]
- B: It was Yorke not Taylor [1] didn't matter did it it was not too much [1] well it was on target if it's on target you've got a chance [1]
- C: Ehiogu feeds the ball back Southgate takes it on his chest just outside his penalty area and glides it to the far side [1] to Wright infield to Draper the pass back to Staunton a little underhit Staunton lets Draper know it still keeps the ball in Villa's possession though to Ehiogu now to Yorke Yorke back to Draper Draper tackled and Helsingborg have the ball once more inside their own half admittedly now chipped into the Villa half but beyond Ljung and it's easily collected by Staunton well do er do you think they er the Swedes are only playing just just one up front it's a little extravagant still to play with three centre backs in this situation
- B: It is [1] the question is where does this spare man go and I think in Villa's case if you look at what people are good at the man to get forward is Staunton [1] if he can get into that hole on the left-hand side and as I say [2] make them play two against one down that side they've got a chance but at the moment they're not getting it out there quick enough [1]
- C: 0-0 and we've got 18 minutes left to half time reminding you that earlier Hamburg beat Celtic 2-0 Celtic had two players sent off so er the Glasgow club lost 4-0 on aggregate [1] it is Barry one Aberdeen two and Halmstad nil Newcastle United one [1] it looks like Aberdeen and Newcastle for the next round of the UEFA Cup [1] will Villa join them [1] Ehiogu joins his colleagues upfield he's midway inside the Helsingborg half right to Nelson infield to Taylor and now Staunton to the left of the centre circle as Villa probe down the left instead it's chipped forward edge of the penalty area Townsend had made a good run but the ball didn't reach him and it should be cleared by the goalkeeper Andersson but there's confusion there between him and a defender and the goalkeeper just watched the ball out of play for a throw-in to Villa [1]
- B: It's one of those games Alan where you're sitting there and you're just hoping and praying that your two front men maybe a midfielder can produce something inspirational [1] you know something out of the ordinary when the ball stuck into the feet I just feel

that Dwight Yorke Savo Milosevic have just gotta hold on to it a little bit longer and try and get turned [1]

C: It doesn't look likely at the moment Howard it really doesn't er Halmstad have equalised against Newcastle United 1-1 but Newcastle remember won the first leg 4-0 so er they're not exactly in crisis there er the longer this game goes at 0-0 [1] the bigger the crisis will become for Aston Villa [1]

B: The longer it goes the more Helsingborg are gonna play the way they're playing [1]

C: Can't blame them either I mean they don't follow their constitution but the the truth is they're doing the right thing [1]

B: Yes

C: And er as English club managers have known increasingly over er recent seasons Howard it's it's not so much what you do at home [1] anymore it's what you do away from home

B: What you do away from home

C: And they got the goal the away goal

B: There's gonna come a crucial time in the match when [1] Brian Little maybe has got to decide to be perhaps a little less cautious in addition to that I just think sometimes you know

C: Draper plays the ball in good header away by Jan Eriksson FALLING FOR STAUNTON driven shot by Staunton but it er reaches the wrong netting it's the netting above the goal to our right and it's behind for a goal kick

B: You know your very patience can become predictable and now and again just to knock one in there [1] for big Savo Milosevic just to fight for even he just stops them getting it away and come in on the back of that pick up the knock-downs maybe get a corner or a free kick off something just to create a little bit of pressure in and around the goal area where it matters [1]

C: It's er with Dwight Yorke now he hasn't scored for would you believe it 14 and a half hours for Aston Villa played towards Taylor and Taylor is hoping to win a corner and he's not gonna win a corner it's it's er you know Yorke had such a magnificent spell last season but er it's it's a long time to go without a goal

B: His career has been er of er that sort of pattern you you get the feeling with Dwight Yorke that once he gets one or a couple he's on his way [1] and at the moment [1] that's what he needs and I think he's just gotta be he's just gotta put a little bit more faith in himself [1]

C: Now Helsingborg on the attack Jonsson gives it to the far side and Nilsson once at Sheffield Wednesday forward to Jonsson again it's er a bit tight and congested on the far side and they were looking for a free kick just for a second I thought the referee had blown his whistle but play continues and DRAPER wins the ball back for Aston Villa over the halfway line now Milosevic to his left Yorke approaching the penalty area played to Milosevic should have crossed first time maybe keeps the ball and when he decided to knock it it's deflected away by the defender Draper collects and seems to be impeded there as he turns and he's furious that he didn't get the decision [1] but here come Helsingborg up through the centre circle again they've committed a few more players forward played towards Ljung but underhit that pass Ehiogu with a pass back and the clearance [1] by Oakes up over the halfway line we've got 13 minutes left in the first half it's it's er not looking that clever for Villa so far Helsingborg nil Aston Villa nil

**D.3 Manchester Utd. v Rapid Vienna 25<sup>th</sup> Sept. 1996 BBC Radio 5 Live (CL)**  
(15 minutes, 3246 words)

- A: Er I remind you that that Manchester United had to make one enforced change during the first half er Johnsen had to go off and was replaced by David May who came on and settled straight into it alongside Pallister I'll give you the line-up of Manchester United in a moment just looking around the field er [1] I don't think Rapid Vienna have made any changes but they need to change certainly their outlook as Solskjaer chases hopefully down this near side and Schöttel is there for er Rapid Vienna they've got seven Austrians two Poles a Bulgarian and a striker from the Czech Republic Wagner who should be Austrian with a name like that really but he's from the Czech Republic now the Manchester United team is Schmeichel Gary Neville May Pallister Irwin Poborsky Keane Beckham Giggs Cantona and Solskjaer Solskjaer who scored the first goal in the Champions League [1] we might be inviting an Austrian reporter into the commentary by the way just a couple of yards away from us on the phone to Vienna it's a long way to Vienna and I think you might pick up some of it on *5 Live* in a few seconds anyway here is here are the thoughts of Mark
- B: I think he's ringing his girlfriend in Australia but I'm not sure about that I think it's important for Rapid Vienna that you know they get themselves organised defensively if they're gonna have any chance whatsoever of getting in this game never mind going forward they were such a shambles in the first half partly due to Manchester United but they have to sort that out that's the first thing they have to do [1]
- A: Nice little spin there from Solskjaer and it's very effective down this left-hand side as Solskjaer goes to the for the return ball by the corner flag fed by Giggs oh he did wonderfully well there he just played the ball off Schöttel wanted a corner got it and here it comes taken by David Beckham and May and Pallister coming forward in search of a third goal [1] Manchester United two Rapid Vienna nil it's still Rangers nil Auxerre nil and er the Beckham corner as people are still settling down here for the second half Beckham's corner goalkeeper fisted away ball comes out to Denis Irwin 25 yards out being put under pressure but still managing to find Beckham [1] Beckham rides the challenge bit of a half-hearted one it was as well really in midfield from Rapid Vienna and in the end Beckham's been unlucky losing possession throw to Rapid Vienna who have this team Konsel the captain in goal and the defenders Lesiak Ivanov and Schöttel and er Prosenik Heraf [laughter] sorry I'm hearing the Austrian radio correspondent loud and clear at the moment er Kühbauer Zingler and Rataczik and Stöger and NOW Manchester United GOING FORWARD SOLSKJAE:R LEFT-FOOTED STRIKE OVER THE FAR END into the old Stretford End and it dips as well in the last minute but Konsel doesn't have to [1] be called upon there let me just complete that line-up let's get it out of the way Rataczik Stöger and Wagner right we got that out of the way referee is René [...] and Mark Lawrenson is our Champions League man Mark
- B: Well Solskjaer is really immaculate his shot was always right it was it didn't have any great subtlety it came onto his left foot and he thought oh dear I'm eight yards from goal I'd better hit this and see what happens unfortunately for United nothing did [2]
- A: So we settle back and er [1] remember it's the points really the important thing in the Champions League [1] if it comes down to it in the end if two sides are level on points then they do look at the results and the points obtained in the in the games between those two sides but that's a long way down the line beautiful exchange now between Cantona and Keane Keane's made such a difference not the greatest of balls now on to Gary Neville and it's Schöttel away to the far side but if if Rapid Vienna have come out with any kind of ambition for the second half they've immediately been pushed back here by Manchester United United looking to well and truly kill the game off remembering what happened here against Galatasaray FOUL on Poborsky [2] and a yellow card being shown to the guilty man in fact Stöger over on the far side that's a long way away from here and he hasn't turned round yet I think it's the number six Stöger anyway it's a free kick to Manchester United and er Beckham as always will take responsibility Giggs is there as well

over on the far side free kick to United leading here by two goals to nil a lot of movement in the area er Pallister hasn't gone forward this time but David May has Cantona's trying to shake off the wolfman [1] Ivanov [1] here it comes free kick from Beckham comfortable save comfortable save by Konsel [1] but er I hope I'm not er speaking too soon but you cannot see Rapid Vienna getting into this game Mark can you [1]

- B: I've got trouble seeing them getting out of their own half at the moment Mike I mean they don't seem to have made any changes I'd be interested to know what the manager said to them at half time they were such a shambles complete shambles this is important for United and they do everything correctly if anything for the first 15 or 20 minutes just think defensively and and that's not trying to be negative at all that's just making sure that the door remains closed and that you invite Rapid Vienna to come out when they do come out and they lose the ball which undoubtedly they will because their passing has been poor then you can start to pick them off and you can go and enjoy the game [1]
- A: Actually that was the only German I understood from the guy who's following this also he said shamblish I think that was one of the words that he used when he was describing the er first half performance
- B: [laughter] I think you've just thought of a bottle of shamblish
- A: [laughter] Pallister and May combining Pallister moving smoothly [1] and er there's nobody coming towards him in a green and white shirt they're backing off there [...] and Zingler gives up the chase but Manchester United are trying to keep the momentum going here but they lead 2-0 and they know that that might be enough
- B: But it's also important that they keep the ball in that end you know Giggs er just had a look and he thought Solskjaer could play him in er the ball he gave him er well it wasn't a ball at all was it it was five yards ahead of him five yards above his head he had no chance of getting it you just keep the ball all the time invite the tackles I think if you invite the tackles you'll get a few free kicks and quite automatically you'll get forward [1]
- A: Don't forget tomorrow night Alan Green on his European travels again he's er doing the circuit he's got Liverpool and MyPa from Finland tomorrow night that's live on *5 Live* the the Cup Winners Cup Liverpool with a 1-0 lead from the first leg that's your Thursday night football [1]
- B: I think Alan Green is going around the world on his airmiles alone from this week
- A: [laughter] He's not gonna get too many from Macclesfield to Anfield now Ivanov [1] bringing the ball out and then then er giving it back to Manchester United David May looks down that far side Poborsky's there Poborsky taking on and going a long way around against Lesiak who had a very clumsy first half and in the end Poborsky gets nowhere fast and that's the flags flying over on the far side for this er Rapid Vienna team [1] that's er rapidly running out of ideas well they've never really shown too much the best chance they had I suppose was the one that Schmeichel gave them wasn't it when he threw the ball out to Wagner I can't remember anything else
- B: Yes and then even then it never really turned into a chance because the United defence got red shirts back didn't they and that was just I think a bit sloppy from Schmeichel we saw him the first ten or 15 minutes and somebody said he'd had a virus from the weekend he didn't play at Aston Villa and he was playing like he'd had a virus at the weekend for the first 15 minutes
- A: *5 Live* Trevor Brooking's football night big European night and er big domestic night in the League Cup all those scores coming in a few moments Stöger gives up the chase near side and that's a goal kick to Manchester United remember Manchester United [1] after this one have got back to back games with Fenerbahce [1] in er Turkey the first one in three weeks time away from home and then a couple of weeks later at home to the Turkish side those will be crucial matches
- B: Quite interesting you said back to back in Turkey

- A: In Turkey you mean [2] [laughter] back to back in Fenerbahce that's what you were getting at of course weren't you
- B: I was indeed yes but you got there eventually
- A: I got there eventually yes there couldn't have been any other interpretation could there now May for Pallister [1] inside the United half er he can't go forward so he gives it back to Schmeichel who's been er really untested so far in that United goal clears from right to left Solskjaer goes in with Lesiak who has no idea where the ball is [1] and in the end er the referee has given a free kick to: [2] who he's pointing sideways at the moment
- B: I think he's given it to Vienna has he
- A: No no no he's given it to Manchester United
- B: I think it was the block on Solskjaer wasn't it
- A: Right it's a free kick to Manchester United in the centre just about 26 27 yards away from the Konsel goal away to the left [1] and er Gary Neville's pleading for the ball over on the right-hand side he's all on his own and Giggs [laughter] Giggs sees him and instead gives it to Cantona RIGHT-FOOTED RATTLING SHOT SAVED by Konsel did well really it was a stinging right-footed drive and Konsel it came on to him quite late cleared it away for a corner kick to the far side we'll be going to Ibrox in just a second where there's been a goal we'll just stay with this Manchester United corner spanking effort from Cantona and Ryan Giggs now who's quickly over over on that right-hand side now to take a left-footed corner for Manchester United leading 2-0 against Rapid Vienna here it comes hanging David May heads it back in Ivanov claims the ball heads it out of the area let's go to Ibrox and Ronnie Forsythe [short report of another game]
- A: Thank you Ronnie I mean that's catastrophic Mark er having lost in Zürich if they lose that one that's almost goodbye Vienna isn't it
- B: Well er I mean er then the next two games are back to back against Ajax aren't they we shouldn't be surprised Mike though really because you know apart from when Rangers play Celtic their own defence never ever gets tested through the rest of the season so it's no surprise if they concede goals left right and centre in the Champions League against quality forwards
- A: We're going through the motions a bit here in this second half Manchester United have got the two goals they lead 2-0 Trevor Brooking will be joining us in a moment with his thoughts on the second half United er [1] well the the invitation is there for them to score more goals because Rapid Vienna are once more having to defend as Gary Neville plays the ball into the area Ivanov is there once more waiting to head the ball out the ball drops to Stöger the referee played advantage I think he might have penalised the challenge from Beckham Stöger's ball in towards Wagner but David May can switch that to this near side to Denis Irwin and back again it goes to the United area and to Schmeichel who tidies up and punts the ball back towards Irwin near side all very good [1] composed stuff from Manchester United who've been working hard behind closed doors over the last couple of few days in preparation for this game [1] reminding you then Rangers a goal down to Auxerre and er in this group by the way Fenerbahce nil Juventus one [1] those are the big European scores Ajax nil Grasshoppers Zürich nil also in Rangers' group Steaua nil Borussia Dortmund two Widzew Lodz one Atletico Madrid two [1] Porto nil Gothenburg nil and Rosenborg one AC Milan three remember AC Milan lost to Porto at home couple of weeks ago [1] er League Cup is it really Chelsea nil Blackpool one yes it is but Blackpool remember still two goals down from the overall on aggregate Derby two Luton one Leicester one Scarborough nil Peterborough nil Southampton two er Portsmouth one Wimbledon nil QPR nil Swindon one Tranmere one Preston er Tottenham one Preston nil Keane now for Manchester United all along on the floor and neatly er gathered in by Konsel once more the Austrian goalkeeper and West Ham nil Barnet nil [1] and it's now Porto one Gothenburg nil remember with the away goals in the

League Cup they will count after extra time if necessary so in other words if it stays like that at the Baseball Ground Luton will go through having scored Mark

B: You've got your [...] with you then

A: [laughter] I don't know what you mean by that [2] now oh we've got tom-toms from er Rapid Vienna at the moment [1] three or four hundred of them belting out the rhythm away to the right and er the reason for that is they can see themselves inside the Manchester United half [1] and they've got a free kick 2-0 they trail Ivanov might fancy this one from almost 35 yards here he comes Ivanov right-footed awful straight to Keane Ivanov goes in again and misses the ball totally and er the ball is played straight back to Manchester United and Eric Cantona this is pretty poor stuff from Rapid Vienna without wanting to run Manchester United's performance down er it it really does have to be put into perspective I mean the difference between Rapid Vienna and Juventus is like night and day it really is let's go back to London and Trevor Brooking Trevor watching this game what are your second half thoughts

C: Yes it is a bit er sort of going through the motions I can't believe er Ivanov keeps trying to shoot from about 40 yards he hasn't hit one decently yet but I er I'd like to see Manchester United get the third goal 'cause if they want to just cruise along and then they give a sloppy goal away suddenly the odd nerve ends will start shredding won't they

A: Giggs for Manchester United [1] I think I think that's what but er I really don't think Rapid Vienna are in even in the same class as say Galatasaray when Manchester United did go to pieces I'm not quite sure this Rapid Vienna team are able to turn the screw like Galatasaray

B: No no not like that I've just watched them before Mike when they when they moved down the right-hand side and the ball and the move broke down and you know seven or eight of them heads down thinking oh well this isn't our night please blow the whistle [2]

A: Austrians er in terms of international football haven't been in this country to play England since er a 7-0 beating oh 1973 it was [1] Austria and England really haven't met too many times in the last 25 years or so and er Manchester United have put this Rapid Vienna team away quite neatly here this evening they look to have the points safely in the bag and er that will give them a lot of confidence for the trip a very difficult trip to Fenerbahce in three weeks time [1] throw-in to Manchester United over on the far side and they they gain about 15 yards and if you're just joining us on 5 Live the first half goals came from Ole Solskjaer he got the first for Manchester United after 20 minutes and the second and the second from Beckham after 28 appalling defending on both occasions now Cantona loses possession and Rapid Vienna with the tall number 19 Zingler coming forward working it down the left-hand side this is a bit better from Rataczik now who played in this competition for Legia Warsaw a year ago but that's straight back to Manchester United cleared downfield Eric Cantona trying to get away from his man OH and if he could have slipped that through Solskjaer was in space but he didn't put it through because he was fouled referee has given a free kick

B: Good refereeing Mike as well he was waiting to see what Cantona did with the ball the referee before he made his decision he was seeing that Cantona was being pushed from pillar to post he waited very very good refereeing [1]

A: There's not a single player in this Rapid side who's making a mark here Konsel was quite neat and tidy in goal

B: He's the only one they've got

A: Yes Ivanov [1] well we noticed him for all sorts of reasons I suppose but er there's nearly nobody here making any kind of impression is there

B: I think Ivanov's only been noticed because he he takes free kicks from 47 yards out

A: It's a bit of an embarrassment for the strikers I have to say as well if that's the best they can do [1] now Pallister for Manchester United very precisely in to Cantona Cantona [1]



who'd love a goal in the er Champions League it goes without saying in to Keane Keane gets away from HIS MAN INTO THE AREA KEANE GOOD thundering challenge IT MIGHT FALL TO GIGGS Giggs oh has been just [1] crowded out as he was moving on to that on the left edge of the area Rapid Vienna clear not very far in goes Irwin with oh [1] it was a combination job there of Irwin and Keane

B: [laughter] the two Irishmen together it was a sandwich Mike

A: And who's gone down I cannot see from here it could be Stöger who scored a hattrick against them a year ago [laughter]

B: Quite possibly he's looking for a stretcher I think to get off he's had enough

A: No it's not Stöger I can see Stöger but it was about a year ago er in September when er in Vienna [1] those two men Keane and Irwin were er spanked by the the Austrians and by Stöger 3-1

B: Free kick

A: And they even messed that up they cannot even take a free kick it's gone out of play for a throw to Manchester United [1] and er in Rangers' group Ajax nil Grasshoppers one [1] wow Ajax nil Grasshoppers Zürich one I wonder if that was our friend Kubilay Turkilmaz who's a great player

## E Tennis on TV (158 minutes, 10,000 words)

### E.1 Tim Henman v. Sjeng Schalken (Wimbledon) 29<sup>th</sup> June 2001 BBC Two (56 minutes, 3706 words)

- A: Ah well played [1] couldn't get to it [3]  
 B: He got himself prepared very early [1] and that ball just long enough and you can see Schalken not nearly as effective when his balance is off [4] this would be great for Tim if he could sneak out a break here and start serving in the second [4] out the wind took that one no such luck this time [27]  
 A: He looks about seven feet tall from this angle  
 B: [laughter] Has not broken a sweat he has [1] just got himself in pretty tiptop condition I guess or he's a pretty mellow guy because he just [1] 5 all first set third round of Wimbledon OK it's not that hot [1] but it's not that cold and you think he'd be working up a bit of a lather [22]  
 A: Oh lovely depth on that backhand volley [5]  
 B: One thing I like about this is he's ready for the next volley he's not taking anything for granted [2] very few people could do anything with that type of volley [1] that excellent depth [23]  
 A: WOW [laughter] [2]  
 B: That's why I worry about that kid's serve Schalken sits deep and loves it right there [2] man did he step into this [20]  
 A: Oh my word [2]  
 B: Er that's one advice hit it to his back and er [1] he tried to slice it but that didn't do any good either [2] Schalken with two monstrous forehands [6]  
 A: Lucy and Bill Knight sitting to her left as we look at them [25] well this is nothing but the truth [3] this had been threatening in the two previous service games 0 30 then first 15 30 next now for the first time 15 40 and two break points [21] well full marks to the Dutchman he took it well  
 B: You've got to respect him [9]  
 A: Well played [3] calm as ever [7]  
 B: He's gonna have to play like that now you see Schalken is closing in so it's the only way back in in this set [15] yes unfortunately the chalk did fly up [3] another one for Schalken  
 A: I've got news for you it's titanium pigment [laughter]  
 B: [laughter] not even a little bit of chalk [2]  
 A: Another ace that's first ace for Schalken [5]  
 B: Titanium pigment [12]  
 A: Er nice idea [2] but er it flew long and we have a couple of set points here [20]  
 B: Not just yet [4] I thought for a second he was gonna change racquets not that after that shot [2] still another set point for Schalken [8]  
 A: OH that would have dealt with that [1] that certainly can fire him up [4]  
 B: You can hear this big forehand exciting the crowd [32]  
 A: Well he had the chance on that forehand returned the service and Schalken mishit didn't hit the volley he really wanted to [2] but again it's set point [23] oh my goodness [7]  
 B: But the level of play has certainly risen in the last couple of games [1] Schalken hits the volley just inside the base line [1] Henman with a nice touch pulls it across the court for a winner [1] a lot tougher than it looked [29] well done that [21]  
 A: How about that [4] he knew he had to put the first ball in there the pressure on on the second serve has been immense [2] after three set points gone [32]  
 B: Henman must have thought that point was his [1] Schalken lays it all out six foot three inches stretches as wide as he possibly can and another set point [16]

- A: So one tremendous finish to that er [1] set which has taken 48 minutes [30]  
[short report of another game]
- B: It was very inviting again for a winner this one great point for Schalken [3]
- A: Again those serves have to be a lot wider than that last one
- B: Er as a matter of fact what he should do is hit it a lot softer and get a better angle it would be more effective [2] it's so easy here isn't it [laughter] [24] he caught him in a part of the court where he didn't quite know what to do with himself he was stuck didn't know whether to move forward stand there he was right inside the base line [1] and hadn't kept his cool [35]
- A: Well the double fault department has often been er his Achilles' heel in close matches [1] four already and that one has given Schalken a break point [42] dangerously close to the top of the net hit that one [1] he's hit a lot of beautiful winners on returns today [10] well served [18] I'm just thinking John that players don't only have to contend with competitors and opponents but they also have personal tragedies in their lives this man in 1999 won the tournament in Auckland on the day that his brother the younger brother who was 15 died of cancer and he dedicated the win to his brother [1] and you know to bounce back from that and at the end of the year he had to have er the arthroscopic surgery we spoke of so they do have a lot to contend with sometimes
- B: I was thinking of that as we speak er it puts into perspective how great a job this really is that you're able to go out to the tennis court play a game [1] have a professional life as a sportsman and all of a sudden something as horrible as that happens you have to find a way to dig deep into the soul and say I'm gonna keep doing this [2] credit to Schalken he's made himself an excellent professional [1] he's a dangerous player to play against he's certainly proving that today against Tim Henman [1] with his hands full right now [26] certainly an anxious attempt at a pass there [2] he's not been able to get into any sort of roll he's not been able to get the crowd as into it as he would like [2] could he possibly force the issue a little that's what I say [2] I guess it's just not his personality [2] but they say it about Todd Martin too John he's had a couple of runs in the US Open when he's [2] looked like a guy you never saw he'd got fired up you saw that even at his previous match here at Wimbledon when he came through in five sets [2] to me he plays a lot better when he does so I think Tim would be a better player as well [21]
- A: Well he's kept the double faults down that's only his second [19] that's a great touch of him there [6]
- B: It's all about understanding where your opponent is [1] that play is [laughter] for Tim it's gonna cover a lot of ground to ever have a shot at it [14]
- A: So his second ace following following his second double fault [1] and Schalken looking to me so composed today [1] as he did to be fair when Henman beat him in Paris he didn't show any sort of anxiety in his demeanour as he was losing but and he was contesting everywhere and very very fiercely then [1]
- B: Well he's certainly a different player than the player er Tim was up against a couple of weeks ago er he has really picked his game up [4] we'll see if these new balls can help [17]  
Suddenly Henman's serve has got a little bit more bite to it Schalken's arm feels a little heavier catching that ball late [1] the tide has officially turned [26] he chooses to play it over his body now not with his forehand because look he's out of this point there's just one last-ditch attempt good preparation there so that's the thing you've got to learn as a tennis player get that racquet right back [24]
- A: You said something very interesting just then about the turning of the tide as a player you feel the momentum shifts don't you
- B: Not only the player but the fans [1] I mean everyone this is a very knowledgeable crowd they're picking it up in a hurry [3] unfortunately so is poor Sjeng Schalken [2]

- opportunity gone just a couple of minutes ago he had break point to go up in this set with a break [21]
- A: Well an apology but there's no need there's nothing to apologise for it was a fine return of serve and had it not hit the net it would have been a handful [51] and I think they're beginning to enjoy themselves most of the crowd
- B: You see they're taking deep breaths it's like a seventh innings stretch in baseball in America people standing up the sun's coming out their man's back in the hunt [1] the match to be level at one set all here tied a few minutes ago
- A: But you know we often say that one point can turn the match it's certainly true and certainly in this case the one you've mentioned [1] certainly turned this set [3]
- B: Well when you have er a match and you're not expected to win and you're playing a player who has more experience Henman has more more [1] more goods on this court than than Schalken has had better results here it all comes down to where you can really dip your energy and your confidence with what appears to be not that important as a break point you can also say I'm playing great it's gonna happen again you don't know if that's the case [2]
- A: You've got to take your chances when they come along especially on grass [1] 2 5 [19]
- B: Have you seen this forehand return [6] Schalken thought he had hit a pretty good second serve well he did just that Henman hit one better [41] that's well played out there they should share that point [2] you never know maybe that'll help turn things round for Schalken because he seemed out of the point would probably have lost the point but the ball clipped the tape [1] and threw Henman off [18]
- A: It's a very different Sjenken now [12] you noticed my abbreviation
- B: [laughter]
- A: I er put the two words together Sjeng Schalken became Sjenken [laughter] [26]
- B: You wonder how he missed this [1] it wasn't easy [3] put that out of your mind not an easy thing to do [21]
- A: And he's walloped that in at 118 miles per hour his fastest [17] yeah he did well to come out of that did Schalken [8] and from his point of view absolutely essential to keep the pressure on Henman because Schalken is still leading by a set er hasn't lost this one yet [2]
- B: That's what he's trying to show Henman here I've got lots of energy I'm eager ready to go I still think I have a chance in this second set [9]
- A: Down to 50 percent of first serves in [16]
- B: That was all nice and relaxed and just as he was about to hit the ball firmed it up [24]
- A: Well he can't do much when he's blasting them like that Todd Martin played like that for returns he goes for broke and just hopes to connect four times in a set [3]
- B: Especially if you're trying to kick that serve against big guys like Schalken or Todd Martin it sits up there nicely for them [9] you see that serve came out of nothing not paced but er some nasty spin it was spinning away from Schalken [1] Tim Henman only two points from level in this match [29]
- A: How many times today has Henman had to play a half volley after the serve [1]
- B: It's the same serve as last time it's the same result Schalken hitting the ball right there in the shoulder area he'll he'll make that shot all day [18]
- A: WHAT a volley [7]
- B: I was just thinking Henman should serve that ball out wide because the right is the way it should be right now the shadow's started to come over I think there's no way Schalken could possibly see this he just crushed the return crushed it but Henman still won the point [1]
- A: And is at set point [13] and all credit to Schalken keeping the pressure on making him stretch [52]

- B: Another good volley by Henman some scrambling by by Schalken once again Tim with the second set point [7] I don't think he should kick it to his backhand this time
- A: [laughter] [22] Well here is the British Lion celebrating [7] and not not much of a smile from Lucy there but I'm sure she is pretty relieved about the situation because it didn't look er too bright halfway through that set when he might have been a break down but here we are 1 set all after an hour and a half [6]
- B: Well she's been through that with Tim before John right and she knows it's er best of five at the big events they're just getting started here [1] just approaching 7 pm [1] London time hopefully as people pour in to join us and as we speak there are blue skies what a way to end this day on Friday Henman's levelled the match things are getting really interesting the crowd is ready to erupt I mean you can sense that if he's gonna get that second win too and if Tim can just get off to a good start here they're gonna really get behind him
- A: What a difference between a best of three set match and a best of five I mean that point we spoke of it's something which in a three set you want to avoid everything would have depended on it but he could afford to be so calm in best of five
- B: But still [1] if he was at 2 sets to 0 right now he would not be a happy chap so this is now an opportunity for him to know [1] that he may not er should not have been in this position and yet here he is and now he can start er playing his best stuff I mean he hasn't done so and you pointed out quite correctly that he really didn't have much of er much of a go first couple of matches and that may have hindered him early in this match Schalken's just happy to be here he was down 3 0 in the fifth set against Stefan Koubek who Stefan Koubek so er Schalken er he's got the bathroom break worked out you get two of those two of those in a best of five match and now they let you guys do that remember in the old days we couldn't even take bathroom breaks in the old days tough luck [laughter] four hours and you need to go in the bathroom well you waited [1] so they treat the players pretty well these days in the big events [1] even giving chairs to sit on [4]
- A: Well we must celebrate the capture of that second set 1 set all it's Schalken [49]
- B: I thought the big man was in trouble but he made a nice little [2] shot right to Schalken's feet but he showed some feathery touch there [10]
- A: More feathers
- B: [laughter] I don't think he had a chance with this stuff flying around [3] Schalken catching the line and he knows he's in good shape here [11]
- A: Well that was one of the few volleys he's had to play on return of the serve Henman has been returning a bit harder than that for most of the match [2]
- B: I can assure you he's trying to get it low it's easier said than done [1] quite a big guy it's tough to tell where he's going [2] he put so much pressure on himself to finally win this thing [3] there's a perfect example he's just trying to get the ball low [2] let's see if these two players hussle back on to the court [1] not that I suspect them to stop or anything
- A: [laughter]
- B: [laughter]
- A: You were talking about this the other day the rule is that they should change straight down to the other end
- B: And they just sat down for two minutes the previous game so this is really a habit of not going straight and they're just being forced by the umpire [1] and I think the players it will be fine for the players [1]
- A: Oh he's on the phone just now I wonder what that's about I didn't notice either of them asking for a trainer [12]
- B: How about umpires John if they need a bathroom break it's gonna be tough for them ha just stuck out there naked in the open [2] what am I feeling sorry for them or something

- I'm getting old [laughter] [14] is that a broken racquet he was trying to kick that ball and doesn't get out wide enough and Schalken just smacks a winner [37]
- A: Well the shine seems to have gone off his game I would think it started so well his game but it had to fall off that peak one felt [32] Sir Alex Render's there with [1] Rickie who is the girlfriend of Schalken must be just a little bit anxious
- B: It's the first time we've seen Schalken just muttering to himself a little there just a little bit more uptight not as relaxed as he was [16]
- A: And a more confident stride from Henman and no wonder [1] 1 all in the third set all to play for here [21]
- B: That was a really tremendous return I thought that was gonna be an ace from where we're sitting now we know it was not an ace he got it to his feet and Schalken hit it off and he finished the deal [2] staying with that backhand [1] beautiful way to start this game [19]
- A: Well he can hit that with his eyes shut the backhand such a natural shot
- B: It really is it's a beautiful shot to watch this time he goes up the line and he's got some momentum here [31]
- A: What a chance now [6]
- B: One chance has just slipped he's at about one out of seven but he's got his chance here of three break points [32]
- A: From when you're 0 40 down the first service is essential and he's done it twice can he do it a third time [20] and what a beautiful winning serve that was
- B: It really was just inside the line it took guts to go for that and Schalken not surprisingly is fired up to get out of that hole [59]
- [short report of another game]
- A: Three chances have gone and it's two [17] oh that's a beautiful pass it really is [1] and he's pretty pleased with it
- B: And he's really pleased as well with how he's held serve the last game that's allowed him to relax a little bit [1] he gets those ground shots flowing again he's gonna be trouble [3] er that's amazing he's only hit two winners this whole match [2]
- A: That's all the passes yes [5] there's another [7]
- B: He gets the ball nice and low which allows him a chance for a pass and [3]
- A: He aims right for the gap
- B: OK if you say so [1] he's hit a good ball this man that's for sure [17] now what will happen John [1]
- A: Another momentum shift if you remember [1] the break points that Henman just had three of them have gone and now here he faces three [15]
- B: Er of course if you're able to hold here then there'll be a momentum shift in his favour [4] it certainly happens at least a few times in a best of five set match [12] two gone one to go [8]
- A: And interesting the break points they've both had so similar [3] Schalken's made two of seven Henman two of six [16] uncannily lucky [3]
- B: Schalken with a chance of a second serve there at 30 40 he can't get the ball in the court [20]
- A: Either a movement in the crowd or some noise [8] uh a late call [2] came no bleep from the Cyclops [4] and the linesperson [7] ha [laughter] [3] so that is very interesting Schalken is pointing to a spot [1] on the court [3] and there was no bleep that was the point [4] and so it is advantage Henman and he makes it his first ace [18] but he's not out of it yet [7] I thought he took that reversal er reversal very calmly [3]
- B: Why are you staring at me when you're saying that [1]
- A: [laughter] [1] [laughter] [10] OH brilliant [1]

- B: How did he come up with that [3] he showed some pretty nice flexibility that was a strange looking return [1] he sure got what he wanted there [1] and then takes up the offer just flicks it comes up with that angle here comes another break point [15]
- A: Is that a string gone or no it's just what he wants to prevent [1] a string breakage [1]
- B: I er wonder why he takes what he's got in his hand
- A: Well at least a psychological prop [laughter]
- B: He could use his fingers and do that couldn't he [2] he's stalling using his gamesmanship [8]
- A: Ah well played [2] it might have been very tempting to have left that ball [2]
- B: It's a good thing he wasn't too tempted because that ball was definitely gonna go in [1] I've always thought that that was the toughest shot ( ) backhand overhead up high he showed some nice strength placement and a chance to level this third set [6]
- A: Well played [16] so we've had two very pivotal games in this [1] third set 0 40 both men and each has survived [2]
- B: Well just the same as pivotal could be [laughter] meaningless to say oh he held we're having a go at 0 40 and he did it now Sjeng with some fresh balls which means be careful [1] those balls are gonna be going through the air a little bit more quickly a little bit tougher to control [1] players have to play just a little safer [8] which means place more spin on the ball aim for a spot [1] a little bit farther away from the line so that these balls get a little green on them [10]
- A: Well that wasn't the toughest shot he will tell us
- B: That was a miserable one and for me as a matter of fact when I grew up I was taught er to avoid that shot at all cost try to hit the regular overhead [1] some of these guys are actually a lot are so strong they pull it off without much effort [18] he's not happy with that he made the extra effort [1] Schalken rewarded him with a good chance [2] er but that pass just floated on him see that was the new ball just flew [9]
- A: Well often the mishits are the best way of winning points [5]
- B: There's the mishit return and Schalken tries a shot that's way too long there [19] here we go again a new break point [41]
- A: Er two marvellous first serves one on the break point and another there [60] OH what a gift [4]
- B: I thought that serve looked long I mean we don't have a good angle but [1] Tim Henman thought the same thing but still that's a point he should have won

**E.2 Tim Henman v. Roger Federer (Wimbledon) 4<sup>th</sup> July 2001 BBC2**  
(26 minutes, 1164 words)

A: Great tennis [2]

B: Henman just now here near but that's just too good [3] ferocious forehand [2] it's his real weapon [40] so there is the difference between a man who's used to putting away such a volley and a man who's still learning it [19] there's his quickest shot of the day 126  
[short report of another game]

A: The snappers are all here [1] getting the pictures for your morning papers [3] no breaks yet in this second set [52]

B: Henman with no chance he needs to do a bit more with a couple of those volleys [1] and you just can't give this man this much time [30]

A: Well that backhand what a shot it is [5]

B: To get that much power from that high up is unbelievable [2]

A: Accelerates the wrist there [1] out in front beautiful backhand [23]

B: A little psychological thing going on here [13]

A: AH good serve body line [2] he would have had difficulties to return that wouldn't he [6]

B: He's done it about four times [1] but that was a very important serve for Henman at 15 30 first real trouble he's had in this set and he dealt with it very well [18]

A: Ah what a volley [5]

B: Again a huge point [1] not that easy a volley especially not to hit it that hard at such a big point at that depth and power [22]

A: And they are level with his second ace today [32]

B: He's doing the quick er [1] he's complaining about the quick serve again appealing to the umpire [47]

A: Well he had a couple of really crisp forehands that's encouraging too [66] and John you know when you consider how this young man has improved and in fact he's won more tournaments than anyone except er more matches in tournaments more than anyone except Hewitt 43 against Hewitt's 51 won his first title this year [1] and er that was in Milan and so he's an emerging talent beginning to believe in himself knows all his qualities and what talent it is

B: Oh you look at his game and he's it's very adaptable and he can play on all surfaces he's proved this now on grass obviously er on clay courts he's very comfortable he can play indoors on any surface this man is a threat and his composure that's what I think has been so impressive in this tournament and against Sampras we saw that going up against er the champion and showing no nerves we didn't see any and here he is again playing up against Tim Henman and the crowd 99 percent against him but he's still handling it very well and and looks just totally composed [6]

A: So there they are still enjoying themselves out on the hill [3] still no breaks 4 5 [17]

B: Solid serve it's up well there [1] once he sees his ball floating he closes quick and that's the end of that [18]

A: Interesting he's up to 70 percent now first serves his opponent on 71 so they're running neck and neck in that department [17]

B: The third one for Henman [63]

A: Very good reflexes again from Henman [5] seeing the ball so early today [6] so again into the business end of the set and the excitement is mounting [18]

B: It's the first time we've seen that today [2] Federer serve and volley on the second serve and Henman chipping and charging right after it [1] and Federer er a bit nervous there saw Henman running and then pulled the volley wide [13]

A: Yeah he's just a little [2] just asking for confirmation from Wayne McEwan [7] well the composure you were speaking of absolutely necessary there [3] he seems to be unfazed



- by anything [24] so here is the most important point [1] certainly in this set [16] and what does he do cool as ice [1] his second ace [31] WHAT A POINT [2]
- B: Well that was a great point the best play in this match so far unbelievable [1] what a drop volley that was [2] long and superb there the whole point [1] and finished off with an exquisite drop volley [91]
- A: And for the first time Henman has overtaken Federer in terms of first serves in 71 percent against 70 [12] and I think in a match that's been as close as this it's perfectly fitting that a tiebreak will decide this second set [2] there's been not a whisker between them [28] well he might have lost the point but the tactics were right [1] throwing down the gauntlet to Federer saying look I'm coming in and threatening you at every opportunity [36]
- B: Well that's superb volleying from Henman to stay in that point [2] he had to dig out the first volley it was so tough and once he got up there he just stayed in that point so well no wonder [2] there was three tough shots he had to withstand there to keep himself in that rally [19]
- A: And another one of those [2] it only points this time from Federer's point of view a slight mishit return just as Henman had done a few games ago and it fell just long [22]
- B: Well the length was great there [5] but spinning that with no depth
- A: And he couldn't handle it [1] first mini break [6] well he thinks it was well long but [2] no bleep [2] let's see if we can decide on the replay well [1] it hit the line I think [32]
- B: Well just too good in this point [1] how Henman got to that first one I don't know but no chance on the second one [2] and there's the reaction [7]
- A: So honours even one point each against the serve [7] so a real test of nerve for both of them now [12] ha and Henman gives him a little nod of respect [2]
- B: This was frightening the pace he got on that backhand [2] and Henman with this nod said that it was just too good and it was [23]
- A: Federer has overtaken Henman in the aces stats 4 3 [20]
- B: That was a lob which was just not there Federer arrives at the net and gets a volley [3]
- A: And rather as he did against Sampras Federer pouncing at the net at the crucial stages and he's got three set points [51]
- B: Lovely forehand volley here against the Swiss opponent [7]
- A: Two have been saved here is the third [9] OH very unlucky there to slip [5]
- B: Er it is bad luck but what a return shot anyway there from Henman [1] and I'm not sure there was that much he could have done with it anyway [2] that was a beautiful serve from Federer too [2] and Henman stayed in the point magnificently [5]
- A: I think the temperature of the patient is rising Henmania is now coming up all over the centre court [8] and if this has got no effect on the youngster from Switzerland [3] then he has a temperament that all players would envy [24]
- B: Well it seemed it seemed like an eternity to see whether that was gonna go in or not both players just staring at it [1] and could that be any closer I don't think so [2] what a shot [2]
- A: And doing just what you wanted him to do a little earlier when his opponent was hanging over the net for the first time [1] set point for Henman [25] and he has done it

**E.3 Venus Williams v. Justine Henin (Wimbledon) 8<sup>th</sup> July 2001 BBC Two**  
(31 minutes, 2133 words)

- A: It's her second serve it is often good if you can string these pressure returns together [9]  
 B: Well played [2] Henin's missed  
 C: Hit a great return but you know she hasn't hit a volley the whole match long and now she has a sitter of course of course you have to make it good against Venus Williams and she just pushed that ball [1] Venus having her day with that passing shot [18] pretty smart play here bringing the ball down she didn't have the opening so set up the next shot got the ball at Venus's feet [1] got up to that ball very well [7]  
 B: MAGNIFICENT [3] close call [9] so break point [3] they've called it out in fact it was a very late call  
 A: Yeah that was very confusing for everybody we couldn't see the linesman make the call [8] from our commentary box we cannot see the line we can see the line we cannot see the linesman make the call it was clearly out but then we couldn't hear the score either it was a mystery so no break point instead 3 all [35] and again opening up the court with that crosscourt forehand dipper hard to get down enough under that ball for Venus Williams she's got a long way to go to bend those knees smart play by er Henin [66]  
 B: And a second 0 game in this second set for Henin who only managed to hold her serve once in that opening set [1]  
 A: You see in the last couple of forehand shots Venus Williams hit they were returns of serves they were very makeable and she missed them both and I think that is now what Justine Henin ought to think to herself this next game if I can let's test this forehand it's usually in a match Venus Williams goes through a stage where she is a little shaky on that side [4]  
 C: Hard to think that well during a match but hopefully she would have been made aware of that before the match by the coach and er so is looking for that perhaps to happen and then it'd be easier to pick it up and er pick on that side of course the danger again if you go too much to the forehand is that she'll improve so you still need to mix it up go right go left go straight at her but er that forehand definitely the weaker shot [1]  
 A: Justine Henin did get closer that last service game got Venus Williams almost to a break point she's still looking for her first [4]  
 C: That was the first time Ve Venus Williams was in trouble on the se first serve Henin where Henin had a fantastic return right in the corner Williams did great just to get it back [1] and Henin puts it away overhead easily great return [1] she needs more of those [10]  
 A: First big sign of nerves for the champion that was one of her mishit second serves halfway up the net [49]  
 C: First break point for Justine Henin in this match [1] and she must take the opportunity great chance at 4 3 15 40 [33]  
 B: So suddenly Justine Henin serves to make it 1 set all [50] it's out [6] only her second point in the last eleven for Venus Williams she did well Henin [1]  
 C: But that does still not help Justine Henin that time we thought she hit a winner but of course Venus Williams got to that ball still doesn't have the luck with her [22]  
 B: OH just out there [3] but how much it means [3] two set points [2] we rarely had a crowd here on the centre court that wanted someone to win more than now [32] well what would be the reaction should she win [laughter] but the pattern maintained through her entire championship slow to start but when she gets into the game she really is playing well  
 C: I said at the beginning of this match that she really needed to get off to a fast start because she wouldn't later have such an easy time stopping Venus Williams's run but able to do it

really mixing it up [4] a great positive image obviously she's happy she's back in this match but she was able to turn it around there

- A: The fourth time in this championship it takes seven to win and for Justine Henin she's looking to this would be the fourth time that she drops the first set and then comes back to win a match or if she can do it against Capriati and then Venus Williams back to back it would send a shock wave through the tennis world 19 years of age [1] just about a month ago she had a set and 4 2 against Kim Clijsters in the semi-final of the French Open which prior to this was the biggest match of her young career [3] surely [8] let's see how Venus's second serve holds up in this opening game of the third set [48] Venus Williams looking to start off the third set well like the other day after losing the second set to Davenport steamrolled [11] Williams is very resilient seldom gets down on herself for long [12]
- B: Ah I don't believe it [2] she really had a tough time at the net [3]
- C: Well we've talked about the like before she gets two nets in this point Venus does and for the second one she's almost there
- A: The third one
- C: Yes the third one we'll have to start keeping new stats [1] of course Henin only had one net ball and Venus was able to get to that one actually two net balls and Venus got to both [30] and Venus was questioning this line call we thought we saw a puff of white it was clearly seen on the replay [19] Henin knew Venus was just off a little bit at the end of the second set [1] but this time I mean she's striking it perfectly and she's so tall that she has a very large strike zone on that forehand tends to but the ball sort of wanders around that strike zone but she's or found it again [35]
- B: Simply an outstanding backhand by Henin [3]
- C: Of course it's a good drop shot here but she stays on the base line and and you've got to come in when you see your opponent's gonna be hitting up either you intercept the volley or chances are Venus Williams will be hitting the drop shot she loves to do it hit a drop shot off a drop shot she's done it time and time again [7] of course how well did she do to get to that ball she's so fast amazing athlete Venus Williams [39] and again Venus Williams very nice touch at the net she likes to hit that drop volley [2] and she loves to put you on your heels so it's hard to make yourself run forward when she's at the net [2]
- B: Break point [12]
- A: Only the second break point that Justine Henin's faced since the first set only faced one in the second [22]
- B: She'll be coming back here for many years and the time will come when she'll follow that type of opportunity in but now she faces break point again [4] DIDN'T TAKE TOO LONG DID IT
- C: Fantastic stuff from both players I mean look at Venus's arm stretched out this is the end for most players and look at it she's still able to force this and then Justine hitting a great shot [1]
- A: Since the rain delay she's coming in so much more and successfully she's won five points at the net only one prior to the rain delay [31]
- B: Third chance [28]
- C: Venus Williams forcing the action really attacking Justine Henin moving her around and coming in forcing her into hitting great shots and she's got the early break [25]
- A: Too much power look at that backhand grip [22] some power coming down now from Venus Williams's racquet 118 the fastest serve at the final [21]
- B: A champion's performance finally taking the break at the third attempt and promptly serves a 0 game
- A: Well just what we saw the other day against Lindsay Davenport Venus Williams in in that match had a set and 4 1 and then Davenport got on track won the tiebreak Venus

didn't play a good tiebreak at all and you'd have thought the momentum would have been with Davenport instead Venus Williams regrouped during that change of ends the break between sets and she's doing the exact same thing here it's very impressive the way she [1] bounces back

- C: And in the Davenport match Pam I thought that Lindsay really didn't come out of the gates in that third set but here Henin still playing well and er Venus Williams just taking it to her taking the net away as much as Henin was trying to be a little more aggressive and come to the net more Venus er presses on her on er Henin's serve and then of course she backs it up with the biggest serve er of the match yet er 118 just picking it up
- A: And if Venus Williams wins the championship the second game of this third set with Justine Henin her long service game and Venus prevailed that would be the key game [5]
- B: And we're counting an hour now of what's proving to be a fascinating final [1] 0 3 [18]
- C: And Venus Williams playing absolutely flawless tennis the net ball once again not helping Justine Henin during the rally and Venus wrongfooting Henin just playing great tennis right now [55] and this really a must game for er Justine Henin if she wants to stay in this match to go down two breaks to Williams the way Williams is playing right now is is the match would be as good as over she has to win this game [8]
- A: 15 30 second serve [16]
- B: Just a slight problem with er the graphic here 15 40 so two break points for a 4 0 lead to Venus Williams [20] that's the first er loose shot from Venus Williams for quite a long time [6] here's a second chance for her [10] double break done and I saw a few drops of rain in fact just recently
- C: Venus is rushing
- B: It's not raining quite hard she wants to get on with it [3] but I can't believe they'll be able to go on [18] well I think er perhaps a more experienced player out here would be saying hey umpire what about this at 0 4 in the final set [11]
- C: Well it's a very strong drizzle that's coming down here and er [2] the court's gotta be slippery [19]
- B: The referee came to have a quick look play continues [29] serving for 5 0 40 30 [14] and Venus Williams would prefer not to sit down but to continue so that she can finish but Henin sits there very quietly and er one has to admire her attitude as well as her play
- A: And Justine Henin at 4 0 I'm really surprised she didn't take her time a little more look at the chair of the umpire because a lot of times a player can sort of force the issue a bit and it's raining hard enough here for people to put up their umbrellas and for Venus Williams to tuck her extra racquet away in a racquet bag
- B: It's raining every bit as hard as when er play was called off previously [2]
- A: We see Jane Hardy who's been in this chair four times for a final for a number of rain delays [1] sitting on the fence wondering what to do but looking for Alan Mills who has appeared in the corner [8] let's really just hope that the players do not hurt themselves [1]
- B: And I have to say at the risk of taking sides I hope that Henin can prevent this from being a 0 final set
- C: And the only reason they have not stopped play is because it is 5 0 [8] I think if it was 2 all or something they would have stopped because it's er it's got to be wet and that'd be an advantage to Venus Williams as if she needs any [42]
- B: That net does not love the Belgian player [2]
- A: That net must be from Palm Beach Gardens Florida where Venus Williams lives and trains [2]
- B: And she's two points away the American [14] championship point [2] she'd be the first to retain the title since Steffi Graf [44] ah the dance we saw last year the nice smile from the loser [1] Venus Williams retains her title [4] 6 0 final set [1] and the heavy drizzle that for a moment seriously threatened she just raced away to become the Wimbledon champion

for the second year in succession [1] fine performance disappointing end though for Henin after the young Belgian showed we'd see a lot of her in the near future

C: Henin will be back there's no question about it she's 19 years old she's made great improvements er this year

**E.4 Lleyton Hewitt v. Yevgeni Kafelnikov (US Open) 8<sup>th</sup> September 2001 Eurosport**  
(36 minutes, 2483 words)

- A: And he's really played this backhand down the line he's on the stretch there Kafelnikov's in control but look where his direction is [1] straight down the middle and he can manufacture the angle from that position [37]
- B: He's so composed isn't he so in control of himself [4]
- A: And Kafelnikov looking a little groggy [26] he was with the company Fisher for a long time one of the reasons I'm sure why he plays Kitzbühl every year they're an Austrian based company [24]
- B: Struggling in his matches Yevgeni Kafelnikov is used to in his first round he lost the opening set to Kratochvil of Switzerland lost the first two sets against George Bastl a fellow Swiss in round two and the first set in the third round [18]
- A: As Lleyton Hewitt takes another game Arnaud Clement and Gustavo Kúrtén were out by much in his next two matches so it really is a struggle for the seventh seed  
[commercial break]
- B: Welcome back live Yevgeni just about ready 1 set down 1 2 down [4]
- A: Trying to buckle the shoe up [24] I just love watching this chap get down to return of serve [2] he virtually strangles the Hudson one on one side and one on the other [2] the legs are so far apart [39]
- B: The bets are against Yevgeni but we've seen enough of that to know [2] he's a masterstroke player in this department
- A: Well he's found the right length there he strikes it down there at his beckoning [1] amazing two-handers down the line by Hewitt [22]
- B: Good passage of play is a question asked by each player Yevgeni has changed that a little bit with a certain volley here [1] Hewitt provides the perfect answer [15] and when you feel the question you're asking [2] is fruitless [4] it could be very demoralising [3]
- A: Well the performance so far by Hewitt is the is absolutely tiptop he's defended well but much more impressively [1] he's attacked well [1] counterpunching he's always been good at today he's [1] superlative [2] a real headache for the Russian [8]
- B: Well that's looking good [3]
- A: Er you said straight sets
- B: [laughter] [61] he is human he's missed one [3]
- A: The difference as well is that Kafelnikov used the single-handed approach and er hit it deeper and of course the big difference [1] that Hewitt missed [1] the depth was important Kafelnikov was able to get a bit closer to the net [25]
- B: Hewitt's played the two-hander so well down the line [1] very often it's a shot that Kafelnikov uses so well [93] it's fantastic again from Lleyton Hewitt how low he got that pass this time on the forehand [3]
- A: I wonder whether Kafelnikov was beginning to play er Rolland Garros type tennis as in the preceding rally of course he won the French in '96 [2] semi-finalist there as well but then of course he came in [1] just a little bit more swerve on the forehand volley which he ends up playing pretty flat he doesn't get the the slice that he does get on the backhand side [33]
- B: Well Lleyton Hewitt a set and 4 1 in 44 minutes stay with us to see if Yevgeni can come back  
[commercial break]
- there's a time when you rethink replan the route ahead Lleyton Hewitt has no such problems superb performance so far for 1 set and 4 1 hasn't had a lot to be it has to be said but when he's been asked a question he has produced and that has destroyed Yevgeni's gameplan I believe but more important than that his confidence [3]

- A: It seems to me that Kafelnikov's plan A which was er to be a bit more aggressive to attack dictate the net a bit more as Kürten tried against him has failed [1] I would not pursue it for too much longer I would say that I'm out here for the long road I'm gonna play Roland Garros type tennis slow it down a little bit but it means a lot of running and a lot of time [9]
- B: He's only won a game against Hewitt a game at the Rocher's Club in Düsseldorf on clay [21] even the trademark mishit [12]
- A: Well I mentioned there was always the chance of a self-detract here as with er Kürten he loses this point and I think it is [1] except we've got a [1] dip from Lleyton Hewitt [18]
- B: Absolutely rock solid and now confident enough to take the initiative himself much to the delight of his girlfriend the loser in the quarter-final of course to Venus Williams [1] enjoying the sunshine and the form [1] of Lleyton Hewitt [9] [laughter] that stripe on his shirt is gonna turn into a big round golden blob [3] can't miss [3]
- A: Just outstanding counter counterpunching [3] 40 0 opening game to Kafelnikov since then [2] Hewitt hasn't looked back [31]
- B: He doesn't need to change the gameplan Lleyton Hewitt I'm surprised to see him press [4] he almost wants to rub his nose in it [20]
- A: Kafelnikov had lost 79 games coming into this semi Hewitt just er three games more [31] Patrick Seguera the Ecuadorian who er has lived in the States for many many years one of the great brains of tennis [2] has lost the amateur ranks because he turned professional very young [1] wonderful two-handed forehand single-handed backhand [4] one of the first to use it not the first but one of the first [15]
- B: He has a great brain I wonder what he is making of this match so far [4]
- A: Well I'm sure it has to be thoughtfully directed by Kafelnikov at the moment [61]
- B: Little skip as if to say to himself that's better this is what I was looking for right from the start of the match [8]
- A: Allows him to concentrate a bit more on playing the shot that Hewitt likes which is just the one he's played with the arched forehand [24]
- B: The round of applause signifies the first real reward for Yevgeni Kafelnikov's efforts a break of serve but he still trails by a set and 2 5 [8] at least it's kickstarted him [2]
- A: Yes that'll give him a great boost and perhaps [3] impress on Hewitt that it's not er going to be as easy as it perhaps seemed at er 6 1 5 1 not that Hewitt's thoughts would have gone too far ahead I'm sure [1] young but experienced enough he's been through enough Davis Cup matches to know that Kafelnikov he might lead but when you're up against quality there is always the chance [3] I was mentioning the errors he's made crosscourt on the forehand and look at the forehand unforced errors there [1] so maybe he's got to concentrate and when he goes forehand when he goes crosscourt with a forehand to play it a bit more safely just minimise the errors there and wait for the opportunity to play it [2] to the Hewitt backhand side [7] were you surprised to see Lleyton Hewitt there looking to come in twice including the break point he lost in that game not really mainly because he's so on his game he probably feels he can do everything but it can be dangerous to change a winning game [7]
- B: These are the cheerleaders of the various universities who are in courtside [2] pretty popular with the youngsters Lleyton Hewitt [14]
- A: Ha it's a magnificent point [51] well it wasn't a bad approach and had a fair amount of depth but er again right down the middle sometimes people recommend that but er Hewitt has not been fazed by it at all they recommend it because they believe it cuts out the angle [16]
- B: Two chances of course to take a 2 sets to 0 lead in this semi-final [9]
- A: Actually went through the net I believe [12]

- B: [laughter] [1] as if to make it worse a piledriver down the line winner the first verbal come on 57 minutes three minutes shy of the hour only three games for the Russian [commercial break]  
 we said it in the first set didn't we a bit disappointing even more so for the Russian after set two Sampras against Safin will follow and just to let you know dear viewers wherever you are it will be not before 2100 CET that is 8 o'clock in the evening in the UK [2] we'll show you some women semi-final action should we be running short of er 9 o'clock [1] the set two summary it's just lacking one thing the word dismal [4]
- A: Well of course also what it lacks is er the forced errors [1] Hewitt has played an absolutely superb couple of sets [2] Kafelnikov has come from 2 sets to 0 down three times in his career did it here at the US Open last year in the first round different opposition then it was Donaiachev then [3]
- B: And of course this year here as well in the second round against the qualifier George Bastl from 2 sets to 0 down [13]
- A: Yes it's a good point against Bastl when you think of Kafelnikov's early draw I mean Kratochvil I thought might be a difficult match for him the Swiss who took him to five but Kratochvil Bastl and then Nalbandian [11] the sort of draw [1] that er most players would perhaps dream of at a Major [1] and yet he struggled in them [1] and then both Clement and Kúrten really frankly seemed to lie down to him [3] just how deep is his reservoir of self-belief and confidence [16]
- B: It's filling up nicely the Arthur Ashe stadium court [26] the crowd are trying to lift him [1] they want to see more of a contest down here [23] good solid game though from the Australian he's been faultless today hasn't put a foot wrong hardly [2]
- A: And when he has it's worked out well for him because he lost his serve but as a result of breaking Kafelnikov he ends up starting the er third set so always ahead [5] at least he'd hope so Kafelnikov always behind that's much more of a struggle [3]
- B: It's so tough isn't it to see Kafelnikov turning this around it's been so one-way [1]
- A: Almost an impossibility
- B: Yeah [5] new balls [1] 2 sets down 0 1 down [23]
- A: There have been times when er I wondered about er Hewitt's finishing touches he hasn't really been able to hammer home the advantage sometimes but he's playing aggressively enough I think to er [1] be able to achieve that alright today [14] in other words part of his problem is he tends to play the percentage tennis that he usually plays when obviously the other player is [1] upping his game in order to fight back [9]
- B: [laughter] [2] you've got to feel sorry for Yevgeni as soon as Lleyton Hewitt hit that he knew it was going over his head and it'd be fruitless to chase it [4]
- A: Well the forehand topspin and the backhand topspin probably the two shots he enjoys playing most [67]
- B: Well er the crowd are now starting to whistle a little a few boos ringing out Yevgeni Kafelnikov is trying 100 percent out here it just will not work for him and this man [1] is playing superb tennis [1] to make it doubly as miserable [2]
- A: Well he has the tenacity of a terrier he just hangs on Hewitt and er last year he was the best in the world at breaking opponents' serves and that's been borne out Kafelnikov's lost his serve seven times [19]
- B: 6 1 6 2 2 0 [7] incredible [22]
- A: This is er Hiddy Hewitt [7]
- B: He must be starting to feel excited inside the goose bumps must be rising [2] the thought will cross his mind at some stage hang on a minute I might be in a Grand Slam final [2]
- A: He's probably his biggest enemy in this match [43]
- B: Running he hopes to the finishing line Lleyton Hewitt it's looking really impressive isn't it



[commercial break]

spare a thought for Yevgeni this is a horrible feeling it's a Grand Slam semi-final his second here at the US he's tried everything he can nothing has come off [1] he has reduced him to that scoreline Lleyton Hewitt has been terrific [1] played exceptionally well [2] you don't want to see this in a semi-final [15]

A: Well in '96 in the semi-final here Michael Chang beat Andre Agassi 3 2 and 2 [2] the most one-sided before that in '93 Sampras beat Volkov [2] 4 3 and 2 [20]

B: Well he said he was gonna teach er Hewitt a lesson the first time they met [3] that was 4 5 and 2 to Hewitt [16]

A: It's just been one of those days [4]

B: She's keeping her hat on at the moment she knows there's still a way to go despite everything [6]

A: Plumb I would say [16] Alexander Volkov who er has been director of the tournament in Moscow [2] the left-handed Russian [35]

B: Two games away from going a step further than twelve months ago Lleyton Hewitt [3] you can be sure of another tornado hitting the US Open [2] he's surely going to achieve just that [19]

A: [laughter] well I wondered at the beginning of the tournament what the the golden streak was [2] down the back there [2] now we know [1] a man with a golden touch [19]

B: [...] now as well doesn't he Hewitt [4]

A: In many ways it's quite mesmerising [2] breathtaking [35] to make somebody so good [2] look comparatively second class [1] takes some doing [12]

B: One game away now and only three games dropped in the match thus far 74 minutes we'll be back

[commercial break]

you and I sat in the commentary box at the change speechless [3] so

A: Some will be pleased at that won't they

B: [laughter] yeah might be [3] surely not a bagel set for Yevgeni Kafelnikov in the third set that would be too much [1] a 1 2 and 0 hammering he doesn't deserve but that's what it's looking like he's fighting for some sort of credibility here Yevgeni Kafelnikov the crowd recognise it but there is not a lot of spirit in the applause 0 5 serving to stay in the semi-final [8]

A: Well I don't think we've had a 0 set in the semis er in the Open era [11] we had one in the final of course I remember when er Connors beat Rosewell 1 0 and 1 [1] in '74 [32]

B: Remarkable [2] we've all witnessed something remarkable thus far [1] Yevgeni at least can say to himself there was some comeback [1]

A: And I've held my serve once in each set [20]

B: All facing in one direction [12] two points from sheer delight for Lleyton Hewitt [16]

A: He's hardly faltering [3]

B: Three match points [2] and a dream come true a place in a Grand Slam final [9]

A: [laughter] it was net

B: [laughter] well that was a rehearsal [4] [laughter] [17]

A: Well a pity in many ways because I feel he should possibly have ended with that shot [3] he marked his territory earlier with it [47]

B: Two gone one to go [31] celebrated victory already Lleyton Hewitt don't forget [laughter] the hat's off now [2]

A: And he's tried it all hasn't he [1] he tried with the backhand then he tried the net approach then he tried the percentage game the typical Hewitt approach to winning matches [31]

B: Match point number four [9]

A: He was almost up again [30]

B: [laughter] THE CELEBRATION FOR REAL THIS TIME FOR LLEYTON HEWITT carries on where the great Pat Rafter left off in 1998 he's put himself now within one match of lifting the US Open title [2] he has hammered Yevgeni Kafelnikov 6 1 6 2 6 1

**E.5** Barbara Schett v. Anke Huber (WTA Tournament Leipzig) 25<sup>th</sup> September 2001  
 Eurosport  
 (9 minutes, 514 words)

- A: I'm sure plenty of home interest here with the German and the Austrian on the other side of the net and Huber to start us off [29] this tournament has been good to Anke Huber over the years this is her tenth appearance she's won it a couple of times '95 and '96 and a semi-finalist in '97 so she had a great run in those years [8]
- B: Yeah you might wonder why Anke does so well on this fast slow-bouncing surface but she does tend to play well she gets down to her shots even with that extreme grip she has on the forehand side she manages to get below the ball and drive up with her legs [22]
- A: And giving her a mighty start early on as she tends to do [4] of course if they weren't wearing different coloured shirts it would be difficult to tell between them really
- B: It would yes [24]
- A: Fortune for Schett there [3] Huber was dictating the point until that net caught [6] so break point for the first time [14] and another double fault hardly the way she would want to [1] complete that game [2] and the initiative straight away to the Austrian [2] Barbara has three titles to her name but er none as yet this year and neither too Huber who's just one year older [2] but er is going to retire after next year's Australian Open [10]
- B: Of course Anke's been on the tour for quite a long while I remember when she won Stuttgart that was in '91 so [1] only 16 at the time [14]
- A: That's a bit better and it worked in the end as well [6]
- B: You can see there she uses the legs to drive right through that shot [63] there wasn't any movement at all there [1] on Anke Huber [11]
- A: It hit the line well [2] she served well there Huber did but that's a 2 0 lead [4] her best win of the year was that first round victory over Venus Williams at the French Open big big upset for her but when she's come up against other top tenners she struggled a bit hasn't quite pushed through [12]
- B: That was a good shot from Huber she was well into the court to take that nice and early I think that serve's going a bit more the first service game wasn't great from her but that was a beautiful shot [15]
- A: Good depth with the backhand [48] took it so early lovely down the line [2]
- B: What a good point I thought from both of them there a lot of variation a couple of slices from Schett [1] but er she does have a superb backhand that one down the line is er lovely to watch [25]
- A: So a chance for Huber to get on the scoreboard [18] and that she does [1] so a much better service game on that occasion but still a break down Schett 2 1 in the first set [commercial break]
- welcome back to Leipzig Barbara Schett with a 2 1 lead over Anke Huber in the first round here [1] Schett serving [13] well [1] it's what it deserved really
- B: Yeah you can see
- A: Short ball
- B: Yeah Huber was very quick

## **F Tennis on the radio (56 minutes, 10,000 words)**

### **F.1 Tim Henman v. Sjeng Schalken (Wimbledon) 29<sup>th</sup> June 2001 BBC Radio 5 (30 minutes, 5402 words)**

- A: Sides were swapped at the beginning of the set Henman served in the opening game of the match then breaking back immediately since then he's been 0 30 down and 15 30 down on his serve but could come through both times with some good volleying and now it's Sch Schalken trying to serve to stay in this first set [1]
- B: This er giant Dutchman who finished last year strongly winning the title in Tokyo and the backhand reply is mishit from Henman into the side lines and then he reached the final of Shanghai he's won titles [1] er just here and there throughout his career er Schalken promised more than he's delivered really because he's a talented performer but er he's never really shown in Grand Slams never been past the third round in a Grand Slam but he's won titles in Auckland and Boston and Jakarta and Valencia all over the shop but er his biggest impact on a Grand Slam was that match we were talking about against Mark Philippoussis last year which he lost 20 18 in the fifth set the longest fifth set ever in a Grand Slam [1] might have been enough to finish some people off but er Schalken's a a good tough Dutchman he bounced back and er DOUBLE FAULT from Schalken at 30 15 that makes it 30 all and Tim Henman skips to his place behind the deuce court to receive serve in front of the royal box we saw a skipping Taylor Dent and a jumping Taylor Dent around here yesterday a real bundle of energy he was [1] big contrast with Sjeng Schalken and who's a very reserved character on and off the court and got back by Henman on the forehand but too easy for Schalken who just has to whip away a ball that only just cleared the net and bounced high for him and standing there waiting for it and just swatted it away crosscourt so Henman's service return not good enough to give him a chance forcing a set point which [1] would have been the reward for winning that point so it's now 40 30 to Schalken at 4 5 and a forehand service return backhand volley Henman with a backhand crosscourt and that's TOO GOOD for the Schalken volley which goes into the net [2] and the crowd er aroused by that because they realise that Tim Henman is just two points away from taking this first set if he can come up with a couple of good service returns this is the moment [1] to do so [2] Schalken bouncing the ball down there at the far end of the court he serves backhand reply backhand volley Henman with a high lob goes up into the sky and er no that's too long he put up a a lob earlier that must have appeared on the Heathrow radar screens it was so high and Schalken actually blew it on the smash but er that one was just a little bit overhit and probably had the wind with it [1] so it went long and so Schalken is now at game point to level at 5 all and he has done so because the serve was good on to the Henman backhand and Henman couldn't get it back so we're poised at 5 all how do you feel David
- A: I think Tim will be disappointed with that game Schalken was serving against the wind there and a couple of times hit his racquet on the return and he was muttering to himself afterwards especially at 30 all but er he had a good game going here and er we'll see what can happen in his next service game [1]
- B: 5 all first set and we'll leave you for a moment because we're heading towards 6 o'clock [6 o'clock news] one of the best returns you've ever seen in your life and another good serve and backhand volley and Henman goes down the line and MAKES it just squeezes the ball down the line past the big Dutchman [1] that was a great backhand by Henman he had absolutely no room to manoeuvre at all and it's got him back to 15 all he needs to break here because Schalken is serving for the first set at 6 5 there was two huge forehand service returns and then he finished it off after Henman had double-faulted with a very good backhand service return down the line off a first serve and there's an ace for

Schalken going away to the forehand side so you couldn't say that Schalken didn't deserve that game he broke

- A: No it's fantastic tennis huge returns and er nothing Tim could do about it and that is actually Richard the first ace of the set
- B: [laughter] amazing [2] so that was an ace to take Schalken to 30 15 he's missed on that first serve and Henman will be very anxious to make something of this second delivery [1] because Schalken is just two points away from the set and Henman gets the ball back backhand volley from Schalken is right on the base line the topspin lob from Henman is just too long he flicked the wrist and put it over the Dutchman's head which is not easy to do but er it was perhaps six inches too long beyond the base line and Sjeng Schalken now has set points to take this first set against Tim Henman [3] 40 15 at 6 5 [2] serves forehand reply is DOWN THE LINE clean winner from Tim Henman [3] beautiful riposte from Henman who's not happy about something he wants his string thing does he yeah rushing back to the umpire's chair or his own chair rather to get it and and he's now ready down at the far end of the court and Schalken still on set point at 40 30 and serves forehand reply backhand volley from Schalken and Henman with a FOREHAND PASS AND HE'S MADE THAT TOO [1] glorious pass Schalken's volley very deep right on Henman's base line but Henman wasn't fazed by that he went for the forehand and made it what a great forehand that was
- A: Great forehand and now Tim's replying to what Schalken did to him in the last game we've certainly seen some high quality tennis here it's not being lost it's being won at this stage [1]
- B: And so we're back to deuce from 40 15 down and two set points and Schalken serves down the middle and missing on his first serve [1] now Henman creeping a little closer he's standing right on his base line to receive this second serve and he'll take it on the backhand and mishit it and er backhand volley from Schalken and Henman's forehand is not good it's wide at the side line [1] Henman didn't get hold of the service return and he might have made more of the Schalken volley but er it was fairly firmly struck and and deep enough and that forced the error from Henman and we're back to set point for the third time Schalken serving first serve missing Schalken not getting his first serves in giving Henman a chance to stay in this game or even break back but this is set point [2] and a forehand reply backhand volley and Henman with a crosscourt backhand AND THAT'S IN lovely angled crosscourt volley rolling the wrist rolling the racquet over the ball bringing it down just inside the side line on Schalken's backhand side and it did the trick
- A: Great point again by Tim Schalken at this stage cannot be second-guessing how he's played these set points he's done everything right and every time Tim's come up with the answer and knocked it by him
- B: So once again back to deuce [1] this is great tennis because as David Fellgate says the points are being won [1] by winners [2] and er Henman has come up with a couple of beauties as did Schalken to break the Henman serve he came up with three unreturnable service returns and that's a little tough [1] that's a pretty high standard of play on a grass court and here is Schalken now at deuce and a forehand dug out on the volley and HENMAN PASSES HIM because the big Dutchman was in trouble it was a good forehand service return crosscourt which the big man had to get down to and all he could do was shuffle it back over the net and Henman was there well in position to smooth away a forehand down the line and give himself a break back point [1] after saving three set points [2] so Schalken now with the first serve backhand and the forehand volley is put away because Henman's backhand service return was high and inviting on to the Schalken forehand volley

- A: Good serve there by Schalken went more for the body didn't allow Tim to have a swing at it and no volley is easy out there in these blustery conditions [1]
- B: Cloud cover overhead we had rain earlier in the day but not for some hours now thank goodness as Schalken goes down the middle with a serve that's long [2] play was delayed right at the start of the day [1] and then Greg Rusedski came out and produced a masterclass on the centre court [1] and a backhand reply and a forehand volley and Henman can pass him down the line but it's cut off BRILLIANTLY by the Dutchman OH what a fantastic backhand volley that was that was using his height and his reach and he did it because Henman was going down the line and was going to beat him and suddenly out of nowhere the great racquet appeared and angled it away for a clean winner and that has given Sjeng Schalken his fourth set point [3] Henman way behind his base line for the first serve it goes down the line and he doesn't get to it and Schalken has that first set well played the Dutchman [2] he struck it well didn't he David
- A: He certainly did and for me this is the best tennis I've seen so far this Wimbledon quality striking going on and er as I say Tim should be sitting there at the changeover he shouldn't be he shouldn't be concerned as he's sat down but he's doing everything right Schalken's coming up with the answers and hopefully we'll get more of this quality tennis later on in the match
- B: Well we certainly hope so but at the moment Sjeng Schalken leads Tim Henman by one set
- [short report of another game]
- he turns back towards the royal box to pick up the loose ball having got himself back to 30 all in this service game from 15 30 but er as David Fellgate was saying at the moment it's Schalken winners that are causing the problem rather than any poor play on Henman's part as he comes up with the first serve and there goes Schalken again down the line with a clean winner off the first serve now David he's still serving out there to the forehand and it's not the first time he's been beaten
- A: No it's not and er I think that's an area on that side he maybe has to change that maybe go for the body serve a little more into Schalken's er backhand side because he's got these long arms Schalken and that was almost like McEnroe the way he clipped that off the er court and pushed it down the line and it passed it before he even got to the service line
- B: Now another crisis for Henman he's break point down at 1 all in the second set having lost the first and er just long on the first serve and er and so [1] facing a battle here no question about it Tim Henman on his favourite centre court [1] second serve and a backhand reply and a forehand played very carefully by Henman and a backhand volley and he doesn't have to play the return because it's into the net and er that was a little bit of cat and mouse at the net but he placed the ball well didn't he David just just awkwardly for Schalken at his backhand side deep enough
- A: Very awkward it wasn't easy to put the ball away he waited he waited for the net shot and that was a huge point break point Schalken was on to it again and Tim really getting pumped up after that point he knows this is a crucial stage of the match let's see what he does with this serve here [1]
- B: Is he gonna go wide to that forehand again it's to the deuce court and he goes down the middle or tries to but bounces off the top of the net and goes long so he's got a second serve now at deuce 1 all second set after one hour and two minutes of play and oh that's a double fault just just fractionally that's his fourth double fault and they've all been a matter of centimetres just beyond the service line as he tries to make sure that er Schalken doesn't come up with any more of these crunching service returns but it's put him in trouble again at break point down [1] a chance for the giant Dutchman to get ahead in the second set having already won the first set 7 5 [1] so Henman now serves oh that was a

very deep first serve right on to the service line into the body a little bit Schalken didn't move out of the way quick enough and put it into the net

- A: That was a good serve used the bodyserve there I think that's something he's gotta use a little more out here not give Schalken a swing at it
- B: So Henman is back to deuce beat Schalken as I said in straight sets at the French Open but this is a very different situation indeed [2] and there's a good first serve and this time Schalken [laughter] Tim went for that forehand again
- A: He's dancing with death there I think it was a good idea that he won the point but Schalken was right on to it and it clipped the top of the net and Tim would have no chance if that was a centimetre higher
- B: Ah well it's throwing down the challenge isn't it saying go on can you keep on doing this well here's another and Schalken that time couldn't manage it but here's a game point for Henman going down the middle and that's a great first serve down the middle so Henman comes out of a crisis a double crisis because there were two break points against his serve [1] but [1] he showed a bit of British steel [4] and that'll only give him confidence won't it David
- A: It will do that was a good game to get out of Schalken was right on to his serve again and now he has got to go out there and see what he can make happen on Schalken's serve at the moment Schalken's picking off the first volley very well not something you usually associate with Sjeng Schalken the serve-volley but he's right up for it in this match he's played on many a big stage many a big occasion especially with the Dutch in the Davis Cup so nothing will really faze him out here and you know some guys can rise to the occasion when they come out on centre court to play against Tim and other guys don't enjoy it but er Schalken seems one of those guys who thoroughly enjoy the occasion and ride into it
- B: But er he he is a player who's never really been er at the top he's never been a top ten unlike Tim Henman his er current position is 28<sup>th</sup> in the world you wouldn't expect a player of his history to maintain the winners that he's finding at the moment through five sets would you
- A: No you wouldn't and er that's what Tim has to be telling himself and keep doing the right thing you wouldn't expect it but it does happen as we know in this world of tennis and for Tim's sake I hope it's this isn't one of those days but er you gotta get bouncing out there make Schalken play a lot of first volleys and hopefully get some cheap points
- B: So Schalken serving from in front of the royal box to Tim Henman [1] but the first serve misses Schalken for those of you who are just climbing into your cars won the first set 7 5 and he's 1 2 down in the second set and a lovely low volley from Schalken gets down well for a big man and Henman netted the backhand [1] 15 0 for Schalken having had two points against the Henman serve in the previous game but Henman came out of it well er it looks a bit brighter overhead now although there's still a mass of cloud up there but er no hint of rain since the stoppage of the delayed start we had here at Wimbledon and that will be a major relief for the thousands who've poured in here three days of 41,000 crowds here at Wimbledon this year and er mishit backhand from Tim Henman gives Schalken 30 0 and er I must say they've been rewarded with some great tennis the Taylor Dent Lleyton Hewitt match on centre court last night was one of the most dynamic encounters I can remember and there's been some great play outside Patrick Rafter winning brilliantly yesterday [1] and so the people who have come I think have got their reward especially those who queue and sleep outside the fanatics they deserve to see good tennis and there's a double fault from Schalken going down the middle and missing [2] but so far touch wood it's been a great Wimbledon [1] and er with Greg Rusedski into the second week it's now up to Tim Henman to cap it by following with a victory here this evening but there's a lot of work to do Schalken serves at 30 15 a backhand volley from

Schalken and a backhand down the line from Henman but a wonderful forehand volley very stylishly played by the Dutchman crosscourt and fast as er Henman saw it and fast as he ran he was never gonna make it and it's 40 15 to level at 2 games apiece in the second set for the Dutchman [2] and to the deuce court [2] there's an ACE at 104 miles an hour not quite at the Andy Roddick speed but nevertheless it does the job 2 all second set

[short report of another game]

Tim Henman's relieved the weight's been lifted off his shoulders because he's had his back to the wall metaphorically [1] throughout the second set and now he's serving at 4 2 and that's a bad backhand service return from Sjeng Schalken who we've been saying can't keep it up because he'd been playing at such a high level he'd been hitting so many winners and it's such a tough call isn't it to go on doing that

A: It is and he would just swing at everything and time it beautifully and all of a sudden the last four or five returns from Sjeng he's mistimed them off the frame and that one went nowhere near the court

B: So now Henman has just got to batten down the hatches and do those important things properly and there's a half-volley and Schalken's got a chance for a a lob an overhead backhand from Henman is brilliantly played and he's got to run for that and he puts a WONDERFUL FOREHAND CROSSCOURT ABSOLUTELY BRILLIANT PLAY BY TIM HENMAN because he had to play a very awkward overhead and then run far to his right to pick up a very deep return and whip it crosscourt [2]

A: For the first time today the crowd has come alive [2] that's the noise you'd come to expect when Tim is out here performing at his best

B: And that was absolutely brilliant from Henman [1] and it got him to 30 0 and he serves again first serve into the net [2] and er you couldn't ask for a crowd rouser better than that [2] second serve down the middle backhand reply backhand volley from Henman and into the net from Sjeng Schalken the mistakes are starting to spill off the Dutchman's racquet [1] and the grimace on his face tells you the story [2] and Tim Henman now picking the ball makes a big fuss about the right ball to serve with doesn't he David

A: He does he likes three balls every time has a good look at them

B: So here he is at 4 2 in the second set a set down serving at 40 0 and down the middle just missing and the lady line judge down there had to take evasive action as the ball sped at her at 122 miles an hour but it wasn't good and that one is off the top of the net but is good luckily so a fifth double fault is averted [2] but er Henman needs a good second serve he doesn't want to let Schalken have any kind of respite now [1] and it's a good second serve and a great reply OH off the top of the net giving Henman absolutely no chance he ended up trying to play it between his ankles er and he had no chance the ball just clipping the net and er Schalken did get a good hit at that one [1] but still [1] 40 15 to Henman trying to stretch this sudden lead that he grabbed for himself to 5 2 in the second set Schalken took the first 7 5 [3] and so Henman to the deuce court and that's just long [2] the crowd silent and full of anticipation now packed centre court 15,000 people [1] and a good second SERVE and Schalken into the net Henman punches the air because he knows he's done exactly what you need to do when you break he's held and lengthened the lead [4] let's go to Tony Adamson on court number 1

[short report of another game]

so thank you Tony and here on centre everybody is feeling a little bit better because er Tim Henman has got a 5 2 lead and that running forehand crosscourt was just what Tim needed to really give him that sort of psychological boost as well as everything else wasn't it

A: It was and it helped stamp the authority of the break and the crowd got into it and there's a whole different feeling out here now [1] Tim bouncing around [2] let's see how Schalken deals with this



- B: Even the sun trying to break through I don't think it'll make it because there's an awful lot of clouds up there but er Schalken from his great height comes er down with a big serve which just misses the side line [1] serving from our end of the court the royal box end to the deuce court and A CROSSCOURT WINNER BY TIM HENMAN who's really starting to put it together now [2] forehand service return crosscourt winner that was the sort of shot that Schalken has come up with early on but now Tim Henman dancing around on his feet down there behind the base line waiting to receive serve at 0 15 and 5 2 up and Schalken missing going down the centre circle er centre line [2] and Henman switches around to give himself room on the forehand side but still has to play a backhand that tactics didn't work Schalken saw that manoeuvre and went to make sure that Henman would still have to play a backhand [1] so that's 15 all [1] the Dutchman puts er one ball in his shorts and serves to the deuce court and a forehand reply and a low half-volley from Schalken and up goes the lob and Schalken plays it off the top of the net and Henman can't get oh that was a bit unlucky because it was a very awkward lob Henman shot up Schalken did well to get it back over the net but he found the top of the net in the process and the ball died in the grass and Henman was on to it but couldn't get it up properly over the net so that's 30 15 to Schalken now serving that's off the top of the net too and that's a long first serve [2] so Tim Henman crouching and looking very interested in this and dancing around a bit waiting to receive serve and er that's enough to put Schalken off is that a deliberate ploy David is that something you've taught him
- A: No nothing I taught you see a lot of guys doing this he's moving around he's trying to catch the eye make Sjeng think he got the double fault and how he'd love to break again here because it would start he would start off serving at the beginning of the third set
- B: And that's always a good advantage to have Schalken 30 all and a oh no he's just missed I thought that was gonna just curl back in on the forehand service return but it was too deep and it was wide as well just out of his reach good serve er from Schalken and he's at 40 30 but 2 5 down and he serves off the top of the net again [1] getting a lot of net cords the ball girl's got a bit of a chase down here for the loose ball but she manages to gather it up [1] and Schalken with a second serve and a backhand and a forehand volley OH AND HE'S MISSED IT an easy backhand er forehand volley from Schalken and he just put it on the top of the net and it bounced back at him so a bit of a [1] free point for Henman because it wasn't the greatest service return in the world but he got a bit lucky he's been a little unlucky on a couple of net cords so things even out so they say [1] and a backhand service return into the net not with England and no balls that take wickets but we won't go into that that's another story er [1] luck is evening out here a bit on the centre court but it's now game point to Sjeng Schalken [3] what's he doing the toss just isn't high enough is that the problem
- A: Yes it is it's coming out of the hand pretty low I'd love to get this game to make Tim serve out [1] up against the wind
- B: So here's another from Schalken on to the forehand AND THAT'S AN ACE straight down the middle so Henman has got to serve out for the set [2] he was pressing pressing but er Schalken showing character and courage playing here in front of a crowd that is about 95 percent for his opponent [1] this er [1] player from Holland I think we can be heard on the fringes of Holland so I'm not sure I'll try and pronounce the place that he er was er born Sjeng Schalken but I might try it as Henman serves to take the set Weert would that be it Weert anyway I can't er speak Dutch so it's probably wrong but that's where Schalken was born [2] and he is waiting to receive serve and a backhand reply and a deep volley from Henman and a forehand crosscourt volley from Henman reaching high to his right hand side turning the racquet head making no mistake just the sort of clean hit he wanted [1] and the first point of the game that should give him [1] the second set he's a set down the British number one and he's serving to the advantage court and a

backhand reply AND a volley NO: it was a nice service return from Schalken because it just popped over the high part of the net and stretched Tim Henman just further than he wanted to go and er there was no power in the backhand service return it was a little chip it was a floater tantalising and Henman lunged for it and couldn't get it back over the net so 15 all [1] and Schalken [1] looking and hoping for the break back [1] and a forehand reply but that's too good [1] from Henman on the serve and er Schalken can't do anything on the forehand service return with this flying high and long down Henman's backhand side [2] so 30 15 there is blue sky above [2] amazing haven't seen much of that today so 30 15 to the advantage court Henman doesn't like his toss quite rightly he lets it drop to the ground [1] and tries again [1] and this time it's better and er it's long however and Schalken just plays a loose practice forehand and then settles down just about er two feet behind his base line to receive this second serve Henman serves at 30 15 backhand reply and it's a good service return again from Schalken right at Henman's feet and he can't do anything with the half-volley the second serve was nothing to write home about and Schalken just stepped forward and put his racquet in the right place and er placed the ball [1] in difficult fashion at Henman's feet

- A: Well when he went for that last first serve which he missed there was a huge gust of wind Tim laughed afterwards after missing it there wasn't a lot he could do with that [1]
- B: So here we are at 30 all and Henman trying to close out this second set and there's a good first serve and a MIGHTY FOREHAND SERVICE RETURN from Schalken but Henman DOESN'T BLINK and just keeps his wrist firm for the forehand volley which turns into a sort of stop volley and quickly as Schalken was on to it he couldn't do anything about it and you can't hit a forehand service return any harder than that David
- A: No he was waiting for that one absolutely ripped it great athleticism there from Tim leaped to his right stuck his racquet out and got his just rewards set point
- B: What a deadly eye now we've got set point for Tim Henman at 40 30 and he serves and a backhand reply and a forehand from Henman he's on the stretch and it's long another of these tantalising backhand service returns that wasn't particularly well struck by Schalken it was a little bit lucky but it did the job because it made Henman stretch to his right he couldn't control the forehand volley and the set point went begging [3] but that there've been three forehand service returns from Schalken two of them which paid off which were hit so hard and for Henman to have er stood firm and and got that forehand volley back the last time was really great play and great reflexes by the Englishman [2] so that first serve missing so we're at er deuce 5 3 Henman trying to level the match one set apiece and a backhand reply and a forehand volley from Henman and a backhand lob from Schalken and Henman's there for the smash and Schalken tries to get it back again and Henman's watching it like a hawk but it falls outside his side line and he's got himself another set point as the sun does come out and bathe about uh about a quarter of the court in a quarter of the spectators shall we say in sunlight but er none of the actual playing area is in sunlight that's in the shade of the stand as er Henman serves for the second time to the advantage court on set point at 5 3 second set [2] he serves and a forehand reply and a backhand dug out by er Henman and Schalken GOES CROSSCOURT AND IT'S WIDE he had the opening but he missed and HENMAN HAS LEVELLED THE MATCH at one set apiece [3]
- A: That really was a great set Tim got the break but in the end Schalken started to get his return back which is a little ominous going into the third set had a couple of opportunities there and we've got a great match on our hands and a lot more tennis to come
- B: So one set apiece and Schalken's going for a bathroom break

**F.2 Tim Henman v. Roger Federer (Wimbledon) 4<sup>th</sup> July 2001 BBC Radio 5**  
(13 minutes, 2210 words)

- A: The centre court still bathed in sunshine it's a very hot and sunny afternoon here at Wimbledon and a great forehand service return from Henman and he's there to cover the backhand and er Federer's into the net and Henman goes crosscourt but is wide [1] Henman forehand crosscourt but er Federer looking far more like a grasscourt player David than Marat Safin did he's coming in he's [1] getting to the net
- B: Yeah and that was good play there he had to come in made Tim come up with a pass played the point very well
- A: So Federer at 15 30 down stays back just inside his base line backhand crosscourt from Henman Federer forehand Henman has to slice his backhand down the line and now running for a forehand crosscourt gets it back and Federer makes him run again and Henman is out of that one he did well to get to the forehand but Federer cool as you please just er swept it away to the backhand side and Tim wasn't in the race
- B: Great quality of hitting there 15 30 down it was a huge point he didn't back off captured the ball and has put himself right back into this game
- A: 30 all serves first service long [1] getting er well he's up to 72 percent of first serves but not er that kind of average in this game Henman at 65 which is OK [3] backhand Henman coming in but he got it wrong took the backhand service return very early but couldn't direct it into court put it wide [1] right tactics though David
- B: Yeah perfect tactics he was smiling to himself 'cause he knew it was the right tactics [1] he was almost ahead of the ball there though [2]
- A: So 40 30 Federer from 0 30 down forehand over the net and a half-volley from Federer into the net because the forehand service return from Tim Henman is perfect and he's punching his fist and looking at the bank of spectators to his right and saying yes come on I need you come on help me here [1] this is deuce this is 2 all in the second set first set to Henman 7 5 and a backhand reply and Federer thinks about playing the forehand volley but doesn't and that is a correct decision from the 19-year-old Swiss because er Henman never really controlled his backhand service return [2] so Federer now for a chance of nosing ahead again in the second set and yes that backhand service return is quite a slice from Henman but he never got hold of it properly [3] so David Fellgate what's your assessment at the moment
- B: Well Tim's striking the ball beautifully I think Federer is as well
- C: It it depends on the courts you know somebody will be doing serve and volley on one court and somebody will be doing backhands and forehands on another but they all seem to have some sort of er terrific verve about it
- A: Well it's certainly produced a new superstar for the men's game to join Martina Hingis in the er pantheon of great Swiss tennis players they haven't had too many in the past Marc Rosset an unfulfilled talent in many ways could have done so much more with his career [1] and er a forehand service return into the net by Roger Federer with Tim Henman serving at the royal box end at 3 4 having taken the first set 7 5 [1]
- B: Federer a little upset with himself there that second serve stood right there asking to be hit on the forehand clipped the top of the net [1]
- A: And so he just er adjusts that thick white bandana around his forehead the young Swiss down at the far end of the court and hops about on his the balls of his feet and waits to receive this serve and Henman with an interesting looking volley and Federer's there for a BACKHAND PASS off the second Henman volley Tim had to come up and over the ball on his forehand volley did that well but er Federer was on to it quick as lightning they're both so fast these players and then went behind Henman for the pass [1] 15 all
- B: Mishit return there but it was just dropping over the net and Tim had to improvise couldn't get enough pace on it and allowed Federer back into the point
- C: Do you think he should have let that one bounce David
- B: He might have done [3]

- A: So Henman to the deuce court at 15 all and missing on the first serve [2] just quickly wipes away some sweat off his forehead this is a hot afternoon at Wimbledon we've had a few of them this year and a backhand REPLY and that's SO: WELL [laughter] how well hit was that
- B: Not very well but that's one all Richard at 5 all in the first set Tim hit one of those to bring up break point so in the course of a five set match you know some are gonna go for you and some against and er Tim just has to put it out of his mind think about where he's gonna deliver this first serve and make a nice big one
- A: The backhand service return was slightly mishit by Federer it went past Henman giving him no chance it's now 15 30 Henman just er in a little bit of trouble doesn't like his service toss lets that bounce settles down wipes the sweat off the palm of his hand and the crowd are murmuring a little bit and Tim is walking away
- B: Mobile phone going again [2]
- A: And er Wayne McEwen says thank you trying to settle down the crowd because Tim is grappling with his concentration at the moment and it's so important he gets in a good serve here and he has and that is brilliant that is so good that is a deep first serve straight into Federer Federer tried to play it off his forehand [umpire asking for mobile phones to be turned off] [1] well that will get him a round of applause [2] quite right too I wish I'd remembered to turn mine off [laughter] so 30 all
- B: Everybody is scurrying in the box here to check their mobile phones Ian Carter Christine Jones are they all off I haven't caught up with the high-tech world yet I haven't got one
- A: [laughter] well done David [1] 30 all down the middle backhand volley from Henman OH that's brilliant that is a wonderful backhand volley he played it out of in front of him he was on the stretch a bit but he popped it deep into Federer's forehand corner [2]
- B: It certainly was a great backhand volley there Federer did everything right got the big serve back made him play held his ground [1]
- A: So from 15 30 it's 40 30 to Henman who is trying to level at 4 all in the second set down the middle that was good [1] that was only his SECOND ACE OF THE MATCH [1] but it was exactly what he wanted when he wanted it [1] and he's levelled everything up [6] so the crowd really into this they've had a feast of great tennis because Goran Ivanisevic for two sets was majestic against Marat Safin before the Russian grabbed the third but er Ivanisevic came through to win the fourth and there's a good first serve from Federer fluffing a service return is Tim Henman on the forehand [1] to give Federer 15 0 at 4 all but Henman is a set up [1] and a forehand service return and a backhand volley from Federer and Henman goes down the line but misses he's wide [1] and Henman is still unhappy about something that's distracting him over by where the photographers are [1] and in front of the royal box the sun fully out again just a thin layer of cloud we've had just recently [1] but what a hot afternoon it is and hot work here for Tim Henman who's on the stretch for the forehand volley and up goes the defensive and Tim watches it er land on his base line comes up with a good forehand but a LOVELY stop volley from Roger Federer it was a great lob it was just inside the base line Henman watched it like a hawk got round well hit the forehand pretty well and made Federer come up with a lovely forehand stop volley [3] 3 all first set on court 1 between Andre Agassi and Nicolas Escudé [1]
- B: That was an inspired point by Federer beautiful lob the way he stretched for the volley Henman did nothing wrong there [1]
- A: So Henman 0 15 down serving to stay in the second set [1] and that's a good first serve and the forehand service return is going over his head right on to the service line he's got the depth of these serves absolutely down to an inch hasn't he

- B: Yeah he's using the body serve quite a bit Federer wasn't happy with er that serve I thought it looked a little bit long and it was exactly the same position that Tim complained about a serve a couple of games ago
- A: So maybe maybe Cyclops is sleeping in the sunshine but er whatever it was he didn't bleep the umpire didn't correct and it was a point to Henman and there's another point to Henman as the first serve goes in wide to the Federer forehand and the 19-year-old can't handle it and although Henman's only served three aces the same number as Federer he's come up with 27 unreturnable serves [1] and er [1] that is the way he's been serving when he gets it right tough to get it back just off the top of the net in court he'll get another first serve at 30 15 serving at 5 6 down [2] and [1] a rapt centre court crowd is hushed as Henman goes through his routine of picking the right ball out of three throws the other one away [1] and Roger Federer down at the far end crouching forward to receive serve and a forehand reply is INTO THE NET because the serve was down the middle and er not quite as deep as the previous one but brilliantly placed right near the centre line deep enough to put Federer on the stretch on the forehand service return and he couldn't get it over the net so these points now 40 15 to take the second set into the tiebreak [2] and Henman serves DOWN THE MIDDLE and that serve is just wide uh only just backhand service return is inches away from the side line [2] but the tiebreak is upon us confident David
- B: Nervous Richard
- A: [laughter]
- B: Like I'm coaching again now it's as tight as it's been all championship
- A: Well it's a big moment for Tim Henman because a 2 set to 0 lead would be very very useful indeed against a talent like Roger Federer and if he can win the tiebreak that's what he'll have first serve [2] to Roger Federer from the far end of the court to the deuce court and a forehand service return Henman's in behind it for a low backhand volley and it's just long great play from Henman and just an inch long on a difficult low backhand volley he took the attack to Federer and exactly the right tactics David
- B: He really did and er interesting that Federer stayed back in the tiebreak [1] Federer did well to make the shot and er it was only just long from Tim [1] right tactics now the pressure's on him
- A: But as Andre Agassi would be saying on number one court you have to execute and er that's what Tim's got to do on his serve now he's serving to the advantage court from the royal box end 0 1 in the tiebreak first serve into the net he's er serving at 72 percent of first serves at the moment Tim Henman [2] this is a second serve [2] and a backhand reply and a forehand volley is dug out by Henman and a backhand stop volley from Henman RIGHT IN FRONT OF HIS BODY all he did was just put his racquet in the way of the ball because Federer wound up a forehand and smashed it right at him and Henman stood absolutely rigid and played it straight back and Federer made the error
- B: What a great first pick-up there from Tim stretched away to his right and made Federer play the extra shot I'm surprised that Federer went for the body [2]
- A: Tiebreak record for 2001 for these two players twelve to eight for Henman and five to four for Federer so Henman's had more practice at them and there's a good first serve and Henman [laughter] just for a flicker of a second he must have thought oops have I let it go but he did let it go and it was behind the base line off the service return and he has 2 1 on serve in the second set tiebreak Tim Henman took the first set 7 5 [1] and now at crunch time the sharp end of the second set as Federer serves and puts his first serve into the net and Tim Henman just moving around a little bit on his feet

**F.3 Venus Williams v. Justine Henin (Wimbledon) 8<sup>th</sup> July 2001 BBC Radio 5**  
(13 minutes, 2388 words)

A: She's forced Williams on to the defence the defensive and the the American couldn't get the ball back into play 15 all 38 minutes is all they've been on court and remember Venus Williams took the first set 6 1 in just 20 minutes [2] doesn't tell the whole story of that first set though as Henin goes down the line this time a good forehand and Williams just scrapes it up and the whole court is open to Henin and UNFORTUNATELY SHE FAILED THE PENALTY because she didn't put the forehand volley away as indeed she should and Williams was able to pick her off at the net

B: Well you know that was she played such a fantastic er return of serve she looked for the volley I'm amazed she went for this sort of slight volley rather than the the big drive volley she could have put that ball away

A: She should have done not could have done she should have done the whole court was open to her and that was a mistake on on the Belgian's side now Williams is at the net a forehand right into the forehand corner er Wil er Henin just Henin just gets it back and now she goes DOWN THE LINE and Williams comes to the net for the first time and she paid the penalty [5]

B: Such clever play there by Justine Henin instead of trying to pass Venus there she played a short sort of a shot which made Venus come up

A: So 2 3 30 all Williams serves Henin gets it back it was a good big serve Williams is at the net again HENIN GOES CROSSCOURT AND IT'S O:H IT'S RIGHT ON THE LINE OH DEAR well she thought and I thought that her crosscourt topspin backhand er which hasn't been her luckiest shot today she's missed quite a few of them I thought that was a good one but it it must have fallen just the wrong side of the side line so instead of 30 40 it's 40 30 and Venus Williams now just er just settling and er taking a little bit of a breather there because she's been up against it in this particular game she has and that's a GOOD SERVE down the centre plenty of power and accuracy in that and plenty of bounce as well and Henin couldn't block the return into court

B: Well that was just a glimmer of hope there for Justine Henin and those are the kind of little opportunities that will be presented to her and she just wasn't able to sort of take them at that point so er let's hope she can come up with a good service game now [1]

A: Yes she needs to now it's getting to er the sharp end of this second set as she a backhand slice down to the centre of the court Williams forces her into the forehand corner now she forces Williams back on to the back foot Williams goes DOWN the net gets a lucky net caught and then with that the backhand that slice lovely gorgeous backhand slice Williams is at the net Henin goes crosscourt WILLIAMS NET [4] good rally great rally [2]

B: You know what's so exciting about Justine Henin's game is that she isn't just a hitter from the base line she actually does something more imaginative with the shots and plays them short and dips them and catching Venus out there

A: 15 0 royal box end Henin serves right to the er forehand Williams gets it back there's a GOOD backhand she really did get hold of that forces Williams on to the backfoot and Williams net but Henin coming in and charging up to the net [2] I must say when if you're Henin and you see Williams come towards the net it it must be frightening just like a steamroller bearing down on you

B: Very daunting prospect very daunting

A: And only the net to defend you

B: [laughter] oh

- A: Really very daunting but she has stood her ground very well in this match and she still is 3 all 30 0 royal box end she's serving er now wide to the forehand and back into the NET by Williams [3] the score worth repeating 40 0 to Henin
- B: And again that forehand return by Venus Williams quite uncharacteristically she makes mistakes on that [1]
- A: She's a great great fighter she is this Belgian and make no mistake about it and she won't be out until the last point you can be sure of she serves a good serve down the centre and she forces another mistake from er the defending champion whose forehand falls out over the base line [5] well I had to miss the old sermon to get here this morning but er although my prayers weren't answered at least it's worth getting here isn't it it's been a great match so far
- B: Right I don't know where it ever came from but someone once said to me it's a bit of a conversation stopper but all good things come in small packages and being over six foot tall I didn't know quite what how to answer that
- A: [laughter]
- B: But I think in Justine Henin's case
- C: [laughter] I think he's lost faith in you after you've said that Christine
- B: I didn't know where it's come from but I I I always think that I've got good things too haven't I
- A: Of course you have for goodness' sake don't be ridiculous
- B: But I think that Justine Henin does express that very well because she's got so much in her little frame that is so good on the tennis court and she can do so much with the ball that makes her very exciting
- A: Mind you when you look back there are lots of good little packages do you remember er Yvonne [...] she was a good little package wasn't she
- B: [laughter] I I agree it's you know just a funny er
- A: Arantxa she was good I thought there were some good big packages Margaret Stack was a good pack package
- B: Well that's what I wanted to hear really
- A: Yes of course
- C: [laughter] I'm speechless [laughter]
- A: So what's the score here Williams is a set up and she's serving at 3 4 down in the second she could be in trouble oh that's a great return from Henin who's under a lob from er Williams AND THIS TIME A BIG SMASH FROM ER HENIN from mid-court she had to be careful she wasn't exactly [1] looking down the barrel at Williams she was mid-court and she had to be very careful with that with that smash and she was it was a good powerful good length er er smash from Henin deep to Williams's backhand for a clean winner and it won her the first first point of the eighth game as Williams serves a double FAULT [1] well how are we going to see a walkabout by er Venus Williams it's about time because her last two matches have contained a four and five game walkabout and er that's what Henin would hope as Williams serves into the net remember she dropped her the first two points of the match serving two double faults so she is capable now she serves that's a loose second serve but she just about gets gets the return up on the two-handed backhand there's another backhand from Williams and this time Henin [1] to the great disappointment of this centre court crowd she puts her backhand into the net the backhand of course under a lot more pressure today that famous backhand of which McEnroe is so proud she er it hasn't been working quite as consistently she undoubtedly would like [1] 15 30 though Williams's serve under pressure that's her second serve now as she digs it up on the two-handed backhand goes down the line but it's into the sidelines from Williams who smashed that a little bit looked looked a little too keen a little too urgent to get to the net there and she made a mistake on her backhand [1] and I do believe

this is the these are the first break points that Henin has had in the entire match 15 40 Williams serves wide to the forehand where Henin runs round the backhand plays a forehand and DOWN THE LINE AND HENIN HAS MET IT GOING CROSSCOURT AND JUSTINE HENIN HAS BROKEN TO LEAD 5 3 IN THE SECOND SET AND THAT IS EXACTLY WHAT THIS HUGE CROWD around the centre court and I'm sure everybody listening and watching anywhere in the world wanted to bring this particular match alive Justine Henin has broken the Williams's serve to lead 5 3 she's serving to level at 1 set all and well [1] those of us who are totally partisan just want her to win this game don't we [1] don't we

B: Venus is nervous I think uh

A: And as Henin serves to the Williams forehand and Williams for the first time looking a little bit befuddled she shook her hand she's looking all around there for a little bit of assistance a little bit of inspiration but er the Henin game has suddenly come alive she serves now from the far end down the centre and she has Williams on the stretch Williams reaches for that forehand but she can't direct that ball back into play the serve was too good 30 0 Justine Henin 19 years of age playing in only her second Wimbledon the eighth seed is within a couple of points of taking this match into a third set Wi Williams goes down the line Justine goes crosscourt Henin now with a forehand crosscourt again plenty of power in that a return with power er from Venus MY WORD THEY'RE HITTING BULLETS AT EACH OTHER AND THEN A LUCKY NET CAUGHT WILLIAMS IS AT THE NET HENIN GOES CROSSCOURT INTO THE SIDE LINES O:H dear [1] WHAT a rally they really did open up on the forehand side they and they were cracking thunderbolts at each other [1] it was a test to see who can hit the ball the hardest and I'm not quite sure who won I know that Williams won the point but what a point Henin 30 15 serves down the centre Williams just helps the ball back down the centre of the court now she goes crosscourt does Williams now she goes crosscourt again on the two-handed backhand Henin just gets the ball back in play now a backhand from Henin Williams with a two with a topspin backhand now she has to scamper across the base line the ball skimming the top of the net and she hits a forehand down the line Henin just digs it up on the backhand NOW WILLIAMS GOES DOWN THE LINE AND IT'S OUT SHE GOES DOWN THE FOREHAND SIDE WITH THE BACKHAND AND IT'S OUT [8] we have a match here now

B: We really do

A: We have a match here now 40 15 and it's the little Belgian against the tall powerful Venus who has set point at 40 15 serves wide to the forehand Williams just gets it back into play HENIN CROSSCOURT AND COMES TO THE NET A DROP VOLLEY WILLIAMS IS EQUAL TO IT GOES CROSSCOURT AND HENIN SECOND SET COUNTERED WITH A BACKHAND VOLLEY DOWN THE LINE AND JUSTINE HENIN HAS LEVELLED THE MATCH [1] AFTER 48 MINUTES [1] JUSTINE HENIN AFTER A QUIET START HAS CREPT SLOWLY BUT SURELY INTO THIS MATCH and in the last three or four games has produced the most majestic tennis the tennis of which she was very capable we knew because we'd seen her beat Jennifer Capriati many people's favourite in the semi-final and that was the kind of tennis she played in the semi-final she reproduced it just there and in fact in the last two or three games we have 1 set all and my are we in for a decider

B: We really are and the pressure is right on Venus Williams now I mean you can just tell that er last service game from Venus that double fault proving extremely costly and er when her rhythm starts to go on that serve it becomes very very shaky and the rest of her game doesn't back up against it if she gets that first serve in the whole shape of the rally is completely er different the whole point is constructed differently but once that service rhythm starts to go and she gets nervous and tight on it you can see what damage Justine



Henin can do in the whole way that those points were shaped up and what a way to take that second set I mean just stunning performance from er Henin and I love the aggression that she came you know that she brought to the court she didn't hold back she didn't get tight even though she was serving for the second set she was going for every point and to close it out with a beautiful backhand volley like that brought the crowd the crowd to their feet

- A: Absolutely I I I mean er she was my pick at the start of the final and she still is I think she's got everything I think she's got tremendous concentration huge confidence she's got nothing to beat and she's a hell of a tennis player Christine
- B: She really is she's found her way it took her a set she seems to like to give herself a set but her er feet are going so well now and Venus's footwork's slowed down and that's how
- A: When I said she's got nothing to beat of course I meant she's got nothing to lose er
- B: [laughter]
- A: But you're absolutely right Christine er [laughter] it's er 1 set all they've been on court for 50 minutes and Ian Carter [1] we've got a great match on our hands here
- D: Uh Justine Henin saves the day on centre court in every respect whichever way this tantalising deciding set goes because had that final gone very very quickly well people who'd bought tickets for the men's final would have felt seriously short-changed but that thrilling counter from the Belgian has really set it up wonderfully well and she goes with a forehand reply to a backhand of er Venus

## **G Horse racing on TV (55 minutes, 10,000 words)**

### **G.1 Grand National 7<sup>th</sup> April 2001 BBC Two (13 minutes, 2076 words)**

- A: That's it and they're racing and standing at the start is No Retreat one of the first away is Moondigua right out there in the early stages is Esprit de Cotte now Edmond taking up over on the far side is Papillon last year's winner who's riding from Moral Support as they charge over and we join John Handmar
- B: And Edmond is definitely one of the leaders towards the outside Beau is not much behind them either nor is Moral Support Esprit de Cotte is up there Edmond's taking safely the leaders are over safely but but Spanish Main is a faller and also Art Prince they appear to be the only two at the first as they jump the next and Beau is right up with the leaders with Esprit de Cotte and Hanakham has fallen at the second [2] Addington Bay has gone as well and Tresor de Mai has fallen as they jump they jump the open ditch fence number three it's Beau who's still in the lead [2] with on the near side Esprit de Cotte we've got a couple of fallers there Hollybank Buck is one the other jockey is still on the floor I'll try and identify that in a moment but as they jump the fourth it's Beau on the outside with Edmond Esprit de Cotte Merry People the other faller is Kaki Crazy Earthmover has gone at the next and also Inis Cara has gone at that one as they jump the fifth I should be handing over to Teddy O'Hare but unfortunately we've got no power at Bechers and I can see the back ones better than the ones up front we've got Supreme Charm out at the back and Djeddah as they come now to Bechers Brook and Beau on the outside is in the lead as they come to it Merry People's there Edmond is between the two Esprit de Cotte's right up there on the inside there's some fallers towards the back [2] but as they come now to the following fence the seventh it's Beau Merry People Edmond Esprit de Cotte and Merry People made a very bad mistake there and is now riderless but Beau is out there with Edmond as they now come out and there's Blowing Wind who is in third place Brave Highlander has moved up behind there's Exit Swinger there is some carnage at the back as they come now towards Valentine's Brook and Beau is out in front [1] Beau leads and in second place Blowing Wind Edmond is close up [1] Mister One has gone at that one as they come now to the with Edmond just in the lead now from Beau Blowing Wind and Tony McCoy well there on the inside Brave Highlander is not far behind them as they go now to the eleventh fence and it's Edmond in front from Beau in second place Smarty is third then Blowing Wind is fourth then in fifth place just behind them is comes Esprit de Cotte who's a faller gone at that one Esprit de Cotte a faller Unsinkable Boxer has moved up and Papillon is in a very good position too as they jump the twelfth and the leader is Edmond from Beau in second Smarty third Blowing Wind four Papillon five then [1] just in behind them comes Noble Lord then Unsinkable Boxer is next with Listen Timmy [1] and as crossing the Melling Road now tailed off is Supreme Charm as we join Jim McGrath [1]
- C: Well by my reckoning there are 13 horses left in the Grand National with well over a circuit to travel so testing are these conditions here at Aintree today and Edmond a proven mud runner is out in front by two or three lengths to Beau ridden by Carl Llewellyn who very very quickly went up towards the lead Smarty is next as they come now to fence number 13 further back then is Blowing Wind who's handling these conditions very well they're nicely clear then of the chasing pack Moondigua's there as well but as they come now to the 13<sup>th</sup> it's Edmond who leads over from Beau and Smarty a faller back in the field there Noble Lord has gone at the 13<sup>th</sup> as they're in now for the 14<sup>th</sup> and it's Edmond the leader from Beau and then on the outside Smarty as they're in now for this one this will be the last this time round they're followed by

Blowing Wind behind them Papillon last year's winner further back in the field Moondigua Brave Highlander is still there Unsinkable Boxer is still fighting on as well and they've kicked right away from Supreme Charm and Listen Timmy as they come now to the Chair and it's Beau the leader Beau gets over OH Edmond's gone a shocking fall there and Moondigua's gone as well Listen Timmy made a remarkable recovery and Supreme Charm has gone so they're gone at the Chair as they go towards the water Beau at the top there in front in second Smarty then in third Blowing Wind they're followed then by Red Marauder who's gone into fourth and running well followed by Papillon they're followed next by Unsinkable Boxer followed then by Brave Highlander as they race out there are only seven horses left in the Grand National seven from 40 runners as they go out now with just under a circuit to travel and the leader is Beau putting out a great stride in front from Smarty they're followed by Red Marauder and Blowing Wind then Papillon followed then by Brave Highlander behind them Unsinkable Boxer they're the only ones continuing in the Grand National as they go out with just under a circuit to travel we rejoin John Handmar

- B: And the seven of them there are just as many loose horses with the field it's Beau out in front just from Smarty then Blowing Wind on the outside Red Marauder on the inside Red Marauder led at that one but Beau and Unsinkable Boxer made mistakes coming to fence number 18 Red Marauder on the near side Beau out in the middle who's jumping to his left but Beau jumped that one well from in second place Blowing Wind then Smarty Papillon on the outside now Carl Llewellyn switched positions has gone right over to the inside to jump the open ditch fence number 19 and Blowing Wind has refused at that Papillon has refused and also Brave Highlander has refused so we've just got Beau now from Red Marauder and Smarty and er Unsinkable Boxer also refused Beau is ALMOST DOWN he is down at the 20<sup>th</sup> Carl Llewellyn is trying to hang on to him and we've only got two left Red Marauder and Smarty as they go now to fence number 21 the one before Bechers Red Marauder on the inside Smarty on the outside Carl Llewellyn is running after Beau but I'm afraid he's not fast enough and going to Bechers for the second time just the two in it and I don't know if anyone else is going to remount but Red Marauder Red Marauder and Smarty as they come to it [2] this is Bechers Brook loose horses everywhere here come Red Marauder on the inside jumps it well so does Smarty just nodded slightly on landing Smarty but Red Marauder who's been in great form of the stable of Norman Mason coming to the next fence and they're going really steadily now as you'd expect Red Marauder [1] leading from Smarty and Lance Armstrong has remounted I don't know where he is at the moment and there are several remounting and jumping the open ditch I'm trying to judge them Lance Armstrong excuse me Papillon and Blowing Wind are continuing and they're only coming at the 20<sup>th</sup> fence over the canal it's Red Marauder on the inside and Smarty and Blowing Wind and Papillon jumped the 20<sup>th</sup> together [1] meanwhile at Valentine's Brook it's Red Marauder Red Marauder on the inside Smarty jumps it well on the outside they've got five to jump now and not much to choose between them they're not racing at the moment Red Marauder and surely coming to Foinavon and Smarty jumps that just better but then Red Marauder travelling well on the inside for Richard Guest Timmy Murphy on Smarty as they come now to the next fence [1] Red Marauder and Smarty and a hesitant jump by Red Marauder that's a pretty big open ditch when the horses are turned Smarty takes a three a three length lead Papillon is over Bechers with Blowing Wind but they've got no hope of catching the two up front unless something happens and Smarty well over the third from home five or six lengths clear of Red Marauder [1] and the other two are about four fences behind but as they go across Melling Road with three to go it's a match between Smarty and Timmy Murphy and Red Marauder and Richard Guest as we join Jim McGrath [1]

C: Well you have to go back in the history books to 1928 the last time two horses completed and that was Temporary Tim and Billy Barton Billy Barton was remounted we've got much the same scenario here as we've got two fences to jump in the 2001 Martell Grand National and Richard Guest takes er Red Marauder into a clear lead now from Smarty Richard Guest having his eighth ride in the race this 35-year-old experienced jockey who was second on Romany King in 1992 he's well clear of Smarty Timmy Murphy he's having his fifth ride in the race the other two have remounted but we can't see them at the moment as they come now to the second last Red Marauder WALKED over that one dragged his back legs through this is real stamina sapping stuff in second place Smarty they're the only ones in camera shot as they've got one fence to jump in the Martell Grand National AND OUT IN FRONT RED MARAUDER COMES TOWARDS IT NOW GETS OVER IT RED MARAUDER WELL CLEAR AS THEY RACE UP NOW TOWARDS THE: ELBOW NOW IT'S RED MARAUDER WHO'S IN FRONT battling on in second is Smarty I'm looking well down the track to try and find Papillon who's been remounted BUT AS THEY RACE TOWARDS ELBOW THIS IS A FAMOUS VICTORY FOR RED MARAUDER AND RICHARD GUEST AS HE RACES NOW PAST THE ELBOW UP AND RUNNING NOW TO THE CHEERS OF THE CROWD THEY ARE ER APPLAUDING A VERY BRAVE HORSE AND A GREAT RIDER IT'S A GREAT RIDE BY RICHARD GUEST TO GO ON AND WIN THE 2001 MARTELL GRAND NATIONAL ON RED MARAUDER RED MARAUDER COMES OUT ALONE Red Marauder the winner of the Grand National has won it by a distance in second is Smarty we look back down the track I'm looking back down there it's Blowing Wind and Papillon they have been remounted Blowing Wind's been remounted by Tony McCoy Papillon by Ruby Walsh they race now they've got two fences left to jump and they look like they will attempt to complete the course and they're just hacking home here for the minor money Smarty just crossing the line in second [1] and there are the remaining two who have been remounted Papillon on the far side and on the near side Blowing Wind [2] Tony McCoy [3] determined to at last complete the course but there is at the top of the screen we see Red Marauder's jockey Richard Guest one of the most experienced riders in the field [1] here they come now towards the last and it's Blowing Wind Tony McCoy who goes into third after having remounted Papillon last year's winner Ruby Walsh looking over his shoulder no point in pushing that one out to the line now [2] and they're racing towards the Elbow but there is the winning jockey Richard Guest he was second in this race in 1992 on Romany King [1] he's having his eighth ride today and he's been a 33 to 1 winner of the Martell Grand National [1] as I speak here is Tony McCoy bringing Blowing Wind home in the third spot [3] and coming home fourth is last year's winner Papillon and there are four finishers I look back down the track I can't see any others who have remounted or are attempting to complete the course

**G.2 Royal Ascot 4.20 20<sup>th</sup> June 2001 BBC2**  
 (2 minutes, 427 words)

A: He's locked away that's it they're ready for the start of the Royal Hunt ready [1] set [1] and RACING and Monica's Tier in the inside with Mastermind they're two of the first away with J.R. Stevenson in the early stages Atavus began OK as well also Crimson Tide they're grouping up now near the stands rail another group there on the far rail as they sort themselves out and er back in the field here is Border Subject they're all settling down now and it's a great battle for the lead here over on the far side it's Korovski who's showing out there with Creator and on the near side they're very strongly grouped up there as they go down past the five furlong marker Sugarfoot is fairly prominent so too is Peartree House and Sir Firmat further back there is Duke of Medina and Crimson Tide is not that far away either further back in that pack is Calcutta and coming up to the stands rail is Border Subject in company there with and just being tracked by the other runner in green colour which is Big Future but as they go now towards halfway on the near side it's Border Subject who just shows the way and it's Border Subject who's in front of Atavus and Crimson Tide and Region Star just behind them they're followed by Tough Speed being shaken up now by Fellon wide there out now it's er at this stage Celebration Town over on the far side it's Korovski running a big race there in company with Soviet Flash and Lucia running on from Sugar Foot and also Surprise Encounter over on the far side as Atavus who's the leader but here comes Big Future with a solid run on the stands rail they're followed by Tough Speed who can't fight much more it's Big Future who's in the lead now Big Future on the far side SURPRISE ENCOUNTER SURPRISE ENCOUNTER HAS COME TO BEAT THEM ALL Surprise Encounter has won the Hunt Cup from Big Future Lucia in third just behind them in fourth in the centre there is Blue Mountain followed then by Korovski and one of the last that finishes is Bolder King but that's over on the far side where the action is Surprise Encounter and Frankie Detori has won it quite easily [1] on the near side in second there is Big Future then in third Lucia tight fourth Atavus on the near side from J.R. Stevenson Blue Mountain Mastermind and Korovski they're followed then by Tough Speed

**G.3** Newmarket 3.00 23<sup>rd</sup> June 2001 Channel 4  
(2 minutes, 388 words)

A: Will he be a winner in this Fred Archer's Stakes or won't he and that's Main Day in the yellow jacket and he's in the race now and that I think puts a different complexion on it if he runs sweetly and comes home safely he might just surprise all bookmakers the front horse and er just a little behind Lear Spear and [...] who by his standards he's certainly in the race with a chance they just come in view to the grand stands now they're taken along by Curtis who has a three length lead over on the far side with Muftaker in second place there Compton Bowler in third these are the leaders on the rail on the inside out there goes King's Ville who can't get any closer now [1] they come down the home run and it's Curtis with the advantage he has also won the Epsom Derby this year from Muftaker who's in there as well today Compton Bowler runs on the inside in third and on the outside goes Lear Spear behind and then King's Ville he is here and ridden by George Hancock last year he was third on that occasion he is in er [1] six or seven at the moment and there's Main Day in yellow right at the back of this group he's swinging along there very nicely indeed he certainly can finish in third or second and have a good run so it's Curtis with the advantage and Muftaker on the outside then Three One who picked it up well who's third there and he's certainly going well enough and you would love to see him do well [...] and LOOK at him there here comes Lear Spear Richard Quinn has pulled out wide in the red and white striped cap the blue colours there are Muftaker's Richard Hill the jockey and he's coming on there near the rail one length he's gone in the lead now Muftaker in front there and it's Muftaker who's taken the race just by a neck now Lear Spear just plodding on there Curtis defying his odds MUBTAKER UP TOWARDS THE LINE THERE IT'S GONNA BE MUBTAKER he ran well away there Curtis comes in second from Lear Spear who's in third Compton Bowler in fourth in front of the other horses

**G.4** Doncaster 2.40 24<sup>th</sup> June 2001 Channel 4  
(2 minutes 20 seconds, 454 words)

A: And they're running here for the 15<sup>th</sup> time [1] they get away with the exception of Optimate who was er virtually left in the stalls he is a little bit of a character the early pace here could go to Lemon Toff who has the edge here and who is by a couple of lengths the front runner he cost 15 grand when he was born in the [...] riding in second place is Stallone running away in third is Matthew Rix Angus-G with a good early stride is just behind him and last of all is Optimate Bozio is in a midfield position so they begin to turn round by the mile start on the round course and it's Lemon Toff that still shows the way to Stallone apparently in good shape this horse sitting in third is Matthew Rix Bozio is pulling just a little bit truly to the outside [2] and then Sharp Play comes up and on the outside in the dark sleeves is Scheming at this stage and Optimate at last has still not recovered from that late start we're coming to the halfway of this Sunday Racing Stakes race that is in its 9<sup>th</sup> year Lemon Toff leads to Stallone in second place Matthew Rix and Sharp Play and then Scheming making ground on the outside of Bozio with Angus-G next to the rails and Optimate still the back marker coming down the home run and it's Lemon Toff that has the edge to Stallone white cap blue colours out wide is Sharp Play then comes er Scheming with the white nose band er that's the 7 to 2 joint favourite with Stallone OPTIMATE is making ground on the outside Matthew Rix runs along the rail but Angus-G is coming with a run Bozio on this fast ground not really liking it and has to pull out wide for a run trying to pick it up now though as they come now past the two it's Scheming who takes up the running here from Stallone in second in the maroon jacket Angus-G going for his seventh win he has to switch to the stands side but it's Scheming going for win number four Angus-G for win number seven they're coming over here it'll be a close finish BOZIO IS SPRINTING ON THE OUTSIDE THEY'RE INSIDE THE FINAL FURLONG NOW ANGUS-G TAKES COMMAND ANGUS-G BY A LENGTH MATTHEW RIX FOR SECOND MATTHEW RIX IS SECOND then coming home for third we have Scheming and then a bunch of four and so the result of this the Sunday Handicap it's a win for number eight Angus-G in the colours of Mr W. Johnson trained by Barry Green winning at 11 to 2

**G.5** Doncaster 2.10 30<sup>th</sup> June 2001 Channel 4  
(30 seconds, 125 words)

- A: As they come to halfway Raised the Bar in the blue jacket runs along the rail in the pink jacket on the outside Rough Seas these are the front two dark blue jacket Happy Union is a strong finisher and in the er centre field position Princess Electra isn't done with either and as they come down towards the final furlong it has all changed up front and it's Happy Union now that goes on and on the outside Princess Electra these are battling for one and two Raised The Bar has faded dramatically but inside the LAST 150 YARDS IT'S PRINCESS ELECTRA BATTLING ON COMING BACK FOR MORE IS HAPPY UNION BUT AT THE LINE PRINCESS ELECTRA WINS from Happy Union in close second



**G.6** Doncaster 3.15 1<sup>st</sup> July 2001 Channel 4  
(2 minutes, 413 words)

- A: It's probably Nigrasine who goes through into the lead with Downland in the rail position these are one and two Bold Raider runs into position out wide in yellow is Bahrein these are one two three and four with the blue sleeves More Sirens can make the running he's halfway back in five with next it's Theatre Lady holding sixth Greenaway Bay in seven up on the outside of these er trying to come up running is Kinan and then Topton Apache Point is running in ten and then pushed along already in the white colours is King Priam behind these Unshaken Knocktopher Abbey now at the back Nashaab is at the side towards the back Hadleigh is in arrears as well at this stage so too is Spin A Yarn Tornado Prince and Silk St. John still at the back 3 to 1 the price collapsed on Clever Girl and that's sitting at around fifth place as they pass the third pole and it's probably Nigrasine with Bold Raider and More Sirens one off the rail right there these sit on one two and three Bahrein and really cutting through the pack strongly is Tornado Prince and also Topton coming with a run and they come down to the final furlong marker now and it's going to be Bold Raider in the lead here from Nigrasine red jacket and very wide Unshaken and now Nashaab and NASHAAB AND UNSHAKEN DUEL IN THE CENTRE FIELD THEY'RE JUST A LITTLE BIT CLEAR FROM HADLEIGH WHO'S REALLY PICKING UP WELL AND WITH ONLY A FEW YARDS TO GO IT COULD BE ON AND ON UNSHAKEN AND NASHAAB NASHAAB UNSHAKEN AND HADLEIGH and Bold Raider for the four and then Silk St. John Knocktopher Abbey and then More Sirens followed by Nigrasine and then Topton after these came Markusha and after these Theatre Lady and Greenaway Bay and then came Bahrein and Apache Point and Tornado Prince and Spinning Yarn and after these Clever Girl who faded quite dramatically and King Priam who finished last of all those who had come it's a very close call indeed but we think number nine Nashaab has won it there's the evidence that's the judge's photo finish he's got there first to the line and WHAT a touch a good draw position helped enormously here second horse home is number eleven Unshaken took command with 100 yards to go and I think it's a close call for third place

**G.7** Curragh 3.30 1<sup>st</sup> July 2001 BBC Two  
(2 minutes 40 seconds, 549 words)

A: Golan over on the far side also up there in the early stages is Pugin who's going along there through the inside rail from Mr Combustible and out deep on the track Ice Dancer trying to work into a decent position they put in a bit of pace early Galileo has taken up a beautiful position Pugin on the rails tucked in behind him further back in the field then as they pass that camera point is Morshdi and then Vinnie Rae well back is Golan on the outside of the runners about third last they're followed by Dr Brendler who's second last and as they continue their journey down the back it's no one most advanced of all but Pugin it is who cuts out the running here Pugin by a length and a half to in second Mr Combustible then in third is Ice Dancer who's beautifully poised up on the near side as we change that er camera angle there Galileo is just tucked in behind further back in the field then you can see Golan last of the main group on the outside about er second last at this stage hasn't been able to put any cover at all but still as they go down the back Pugin shows the way from Mr Combustible and Ice Dancer Galileo and Morshdi March King is just behind them they're followed then by Cashel Bay on the outside further back in the field then is Pebble Island followed then by Exultation tucked away on the inside by Vinnie Rae and about four or five feet behind them is Golan and Dr Brendler last of all they reach the highest point of the course running downhill now five and a half furlongs out in this Budweiser Irish Derby Pugin kicks for home now from Mr Combustible Ice Dancer on the outside Galileo the favourite is going well in fourth followed then by Morshdi and March King from Cashel Bay Golan has taken to the outside as they run down towards the entrance of the home straight of the Budweiser Irish Derby inside the half mile it's Pugin who's now being challenged by Ice Dancer and Mr Combustible GALILEO IS SITTING BEHIND AND SWINGING ON AS THEY SWING INTO THE HOME STRAIGHT NOW FURTHER BACK THEN IS VINNIE RAE OUT THERE WIDE FROM MORSHDI HEADS ARE TURNED FOR HOME NOW AND LOOK AT GALILEO IN THE CENTRE GALILEO IS BEING HELD UP AND WITH EIGHT LENGTHS TO MAKE UP BUT HE'S STILL GOING ON GALILEO INSIDE THE TWO TAKES HIM OUT CLEARLY NOW SPRINTS IN FRONT OF PUGIN FOLLOWED BY MORSHDI AND MR COMBUSTIBLE GOLAN CAN'T FIGHT MUCH MORE AND IS RUNNING BEHIND THESE HORSES BUT THIS IS A PROCESSION INSIDE THE FINAL 100 YARDS AND IT'S GALILEO HOWLING AWAY TO COMPLETE THE ER THE ANGLO-IRISH DOUBLE as they go up to the line Galileo beats Morshdi tied for third it's a photo Golan and er Pugin we need a photo for third followed by Exultation Mr Combustible then Vinnie Rae from Ice Dancer Pebble Island behind them Dr Brendler Cashel Bay and March King as last to finish well what an exhilarating win an exciting performance by a true champion [1] he's well on his way to a great career

**G.8 Market Rasen 1.20 6<sup>th</sup> July 2001 Channel 4**  
(4 minutes, 798 words)

A: We're in this John Smith's Summer Special here and it's Green Card along in great style a little surprising possibly handicappers would argue on what is achieved Mini Vet who ran very well last time up on the flat is in second place and Ingle Tony winner of eight races is in er shared third with Magic Combination who er ran a good race here last time but this time round it's a better race the yellow colours of Sarangan showing up well on the inside there of Whistling Dixie who jumped that well with Mick Fitzgerald the white jacket on the outside in the colours of the [...] partnership that's er Tony McCoy on Major Lando who we remember did win the obvious race last time but it's a packed field as they come now past the judge with a circuit to go and the pace is being set by Green Card better grown on this side of the track slightly soft big green lush grass here at Market Rasen plenty of fertiliser put on and warm weather and rain has made the grass grow Mini Vet is in second in third Magic Combination on the inside in fourth [1] a couple of lengths back to Ingle Tony and then we have Major Lando with Sarangan and Whistling Dixie the big gamble of the race pink cap green colours Mick Fitzgerald at the back they swing right hand around towards the back stretch end and it's still Green Card that shows the way and Mini Vet is in second a length and a half back then to Magic Combination and Papua followed by Major Lando pulling a good jump there he's biding his time on Whistling Dixie he's gone past Ingle Tony and Sarangan in the yellow colours just creeping in the pic picture he's a powerful finisher and they're half way but he is last and is about eight lengths off the disputed lead now red cap Mini Vet and James Thornton jumps it well on the outside of [1] Green Card Green Card and Mini Vet going one and two Papua in third Magic Combination in fourth Major Lando is making ground with Tony McCoy just a length behind them there is Whistling Dixie doesn't do things easily just nodded on landing there Whistling Dixie and he shakes the reins then trying to get into this race Mini Vet then on the outside there of Green Card sitting in one and two Papua then the white colours of Major Lando showing up on the outside a little slap on the neck there by Mick Fitzpatrick on Whistling Dixie as they start the out of the back straight and at this stage now going better than Major Lando who's creeping up on the outside of Papua and Green Card has done his running Mini Vet's left in the lead now as they start the turning now look at the yellow and black Sarangan is a strong finisher and er Wilson Leddick has got him well placed on the heels of the favourite they start the turn for home just two more flat hurdles to take now on the left red cap Mini Vet white colours is Major Lando between the pair in blue is Papua in the green and pink sleeves comes Whistling Dixie green and yellow Magic Combination yellow is Sarangan here we are two out and a bold lead there by Major Lando here comes Whistling Dixie though in full throttle on the outside THEY'VE GOT ONE MORE FLAT HURDLE TO JUMP AND IT'S WHISTLING DIXIE WHO GETS THERE UP FRONT HITS IT GETS AWAY WITH HIM MAJOR LANDO IN SECOND AND IT'S TIME FOR THE PUMPS NOW BACK IN THIRD IS MAGIC COMBINATION THEY'VE GOT A FURLONG TO GO AND IT'S WHISTLING DIXIE WHO'S GONE INTO THE LEAD NOW FINISHING STRONGLY IS MAGIC COMBINATION WHO'S PUTTING IN A TREMENDOUS DRIVE HE'S GETTING WITHIN HALF A LENGTH HE'S GETTING WITHIN A LENGTH AND AS THE POST COMES HE WINS it's Magic Combination from Whistling Dixie Sarangan in third and then Major Lando then Mini Vet then Papua followed by Green Card who needs to be given a break by the handicapper and the old boy Ingle Tony er finished last so the result then of this Summer Special Handicap Hurdle it's a win the fifth win for this senior horse Magic Combination trained by Eileen Lungo and ridden by Tony Darby who brought this horse who in his

day won the Imperial Cup with a wonderfully timed challenge I would have thought that Whistling Dixie was going to collect as he jumped the last but he did without the thought of the strong finishing Magic Combination who came er in tremendous style his second course win

**G.9** Newbury 1.30 6<sup>th</sup> July 2001 BBC 2  
(2 minutes, 395 words)

- A: They're ready standing and racing Pan Jammer missed half a length or so Superstar Leo first to begin Dr Spin beginning OK on the far side on the near Bannister and er Bouncing Bowdler are DRIVING through Dr Spin deeper on the track in company there with Firedome they're followed then by Mugharreb getting on there up on the near side there with Pan Jammer trying to make up ground on Invincible Spirit the favourite right out at the back coming up with er half a mile to travel in the Open here at Newbury and Superstar Leo in the green sleeves and cap just shows the way from Bouncing Bowdler in the black cap on the near side is Bannister out deep in the red cap then Dr Spin followed further back by Pan Jammer who comes up Mugharreb going well in the striped cap needs a run though Invincible Spirit switched to the far side now Firedome is dropping away two furlongs left to go and it's Bouncing Bowdler and Superstar Leo in the lead now now from on the far side Dr Spin Mugharreb STILL LOOKING FOR THE RUN HERE IS INVINCIBLE SPIRIT PRODUCING A GOOD RUN OVER ON THE FAR SIDE COMING HOME WELL FOLLOWED THEN BY PAN JAMMER WHO'S BLOCKED FOR A RUN A FURLONG LEFT TO GO NOW SUPERSTAR LEO GRABBED NOW BY INVINCIBLE SPIRIT ON THE FAR SIDE FROM BOUNCING BOWDLER MUGHARREB IS NOW STARTING TO FORCE THROUGH INVINCIBLE SPIRIT THOUGH RACING AWAY Invincible Spirit goes on to beat the unlucky Mugharreb then in third Bouncing Bowdler followed by Superstar Leo Pan Jammer Dr Spin Bannister and last home is Firedome the favourite has got up there number three Invincible Spirit owned by Prince Faisal trained by John Dunlop and ridden by Pat Erie getting up there to defeat Mugharreb [1] but there was a traffic jam behind as you can see very clearly here's Invincible Spirit going over the line clear of Mugharreb and then in third is Bouncing Bowdler Superstar Leo fourth Pan Jammer fifth [1] just had difficulty obtaining a run Pan Jammer in the final furlong and a half then Dr Spin who's up on that line on the far side and interesting that they came up on that stands side as you would have expected them nearer to where the stalls had been set up

**G.10** Doncaster 1.55 26<sup>th</sup> January 2002 Channel 4  
(7 minutes, 1251 words)

- A: The grass is certainly sogged with heavy patches but it is gonna take some getting they're not gonna get off at a million miles an hour unless one of them cocks his jaw and goes off fast but I would anticipate a steady run here but we'll soon find out Stromness the one to beat GG [Graham Good] would you agree [2]
- B: Oh I think so yes er Stromness looks the one to beat indeed I've wondered if Too Forward at 11 to 4 jumping off in last place here could be a little bit of a surprise package here [1] although trainer Mark Pitman wasn't that keen on his chances on this ground here although he's a bit of a heavy ground expert first time he's racing on the extended three miles and half a furlong eleven hurdles to jump and it will be steady for most of the way one would imagine [1] really desperate ground and they've had some holes on this ground Proper Squire on the inside in the pink cap worn by Julian McCarthy as the first come down towards the first hurdle it's a bit of a [...] jump that's it they're all over the first and Too Forward is er blocked at the back with Adrian Maguire [1] so they just stride on [1] having jumped one [1] it's going to be Proper Squire with the advantage to black and white colours Sconced and then in red white and blue that's Circle of Wolves in third place in the yellow jacket that's Stromness who's improved after his [...] operation finished the race strongly last year Stromness that's in yellow in third [2] and then we've got in the white jacket Spring Song coming forward Spring Song at the back of the picture [1] so they continue this run towards the second flight they've got three flights to jump in the home straight and it's going to be Proper Squire with the advantage and Sconced stands side then Stromness in third and white cap of Circle of Wolves in maroon and white coming forward [3] as they pop over that the leader does jump well and he really has something that caught the eye in the parading it's an exciting individual and er his run last time wasn't too bad but he wasn't the winner here the feet off the ground Proper Squire comes to measure this at the same time as Sconced who's scampering along stands side and then Stromness I still strongly believe in that horse in the yellow jacket he's got [1] a fairly low jacket Stromness in shared third with Circle of Wolves and then the two forward [1] on the inside of Spring Song so they come up past the enclosures [1] on this fine day here Stromness next to Circle of Wolves while Proper Squire and Sconced are sharing the lead here so the animals are going two by two as they head past the er start and already getting out in the mire at the back is Spring Song a bit forlorn here nevertheless he's getting back on track [1] so they're heading away towards er flight number five [1] three flights of hurdles to jump on this stretch of the track Too Forward has got a bit of a triangle of horses against him here and it's Proper Squire going strong on the inside followed by Stromness out wide is Sconced [1] and then Circle of Wolves followed by Too Forward [2] and as we've got hurdle number six it's Stromness there on the inside and Adrian Maguire looks across Too Forward coming up on the inside Sconced John Kavanagh in the black and white on that horse moving well these Too Forward and Adrian Maguire on the extreme right of the picture there as they head down towards flight number seven and just er leaving Spring Song behind there in fact he has been pulled out Spring Song there so just the five left in this [...] and they head down past their point of departure and it's Stromness there with his head up high he's just a little about half a stride faster than Robert Thornton wants him to [1] and it's Proper Squire who's being pushed along [2] and so as they continue the run along the far side of the rail pulling down towards flight number eight four more to jump [2] and you can see the way they're ploughing up the ground it's such a testing ground here at Doncaster but Stromness still running well quite well on the inside of Proper Squire Circle of Wolves coming there it looks as if Sconced has done enough there as Stromness jumps well there

and Adrian Maguire content to watch them all on Too Forward in the maroon and white sash the one who's got to be beat has clearly made up his mind now he's in the yellow colours here on the inside that's Stromness the hattrick seeking Stromness this horse and there Too Forward who's in a mighty stride to get in here Circle of Wolves on the outside of Stromness they're starting the turn towards home now just over half a mile to go [1] and er Sconced in the black and white at the top of the picture there looks to have done enough I think we can rule him out Circle of WOLVES is a surprise package here the little four-year-old but Stromness there on the inside has the edge to Circle of Wolves and then Too Forward in third place now it looks as if Proper Squire has done his running so they're certainly dropping away here in this war of attrition as they come down the home run near the river past that hurdle three more flights of hurdles to take Too Forward look at his springing heels in third place Stromness there still going well the horse in front how do they take that one he jumps it well Too Forward a little bit of nodding there but has he got enough speed and look at him this Too Forward getting a little bit closer to Stromness Thornton hasn't looked round yet but no doubt he will almost feel Adrian Maguire closing in this is two from home Stromness just finds a bit OH but he fiddles it and Too Forward with a better jump and a stronger jump too as they come down towards the final flight he's looking the wrong side it's Stromness with the advantage Too Forward pushes the button when he pushes the button WILL THERE BE ANYTHING THERE THEY RATTLE THEY RATTLE UP TOWARDS THE FINAL FLIGHT NOW HERE COMES TOO FORWARD STANDS SIDE OF STROMNESS AND STROMNESS WITH A BETTER JUMP TOO FORWARD THE STRONGER HORSE AS THEY RACE UP TOWARDS THE LINE IT'S TOO FORWARD WITH THE LEAD STROMNESS DIGGING DEEP TRYING TO COME BACK BUT TOO FORWARD HAS A LENGTH LEAD GOES FORWARD A LENGTH AND A HALF TO TWO GOES UP TOWARDS THE LINE IT'S A GREAT WIN FOR ADRIAN MAGUIRE he wins on Too Forward Stromness comes second and a very remote third but a wonderful third will be Circle of Wolves in his own time and finishing fourth Proper Squire the money for fourth place 3 to 1 winner though of this race is the easy-to-back Too Forward who showed heavy form after Folkestone and he's won it and a very patient run by Adrian Maguire Adrian's 14<sup>th</sup> of the season and for Mark Pitman who is here this afternoon will be pleasantly pleased with that

**G.11** Doncaster 2.30 26<sup>th</sup> January 2002 Channel 4  
(7 minutes 10 seconds, 1356 words)

- A: It's the Great Yorkshire and the man to call it Graham Good [1]
- B: They're still all down there at the start and Jerry Scott the Yorkshire racer starting his last Great Yorkshire Race Chase a race that he never won [2] that's what the odds are Moor Lane 7 to 2 Valigan 11 to 2 13 to 2 Frenchman's Creek and they're on their way 18 fences to jump in this Great Yorkshire Chase and as they organise themselves coming down towards the first the favourites or the horse with the noseband on the inside in the light blue jacket and in the yellow colours that's Strong Paladin here out wide in the maroon and white that's Kit Smartie they're the front three Heidi in the blue jacket is running in fourth and then just behind Native Wit in five and Frenchman's Creek in or midfield position Bank Avenue towards the back and so too is Ever Blessed as they come down towards the first over which the leader pops [1] and they're all safe and Ackzo is probably just the back marker they swing to the left there just a short run before they come towards fence number two [1] and Heidi on the inside of Strong Paladin whilst out wide goes Kit Smartie in third Moor Lane in four Native Wit five and then Weaver George in six and Tresor De Mai Roddy Greene following that one through in the purple colours [1] and on the outside of him Frenchman's Creek and Bank Avenue and down towards the back in grey is Valigan Tony Dobbin rides here and they pop over the third Ackzo towards the back and Ever Blessed also at the back so Heidi takes up the running under Seamus Durack and has the edge here to Moor Lane in second place on the inside in his juvenile days well-documented this horse won by a distance in front of Looks Like Trouble but here the facts and he takes the lead as they come down the home run for the first time and are over fence four [1] Moor Lane Heidi Strong Paladin one two and three Native Wit ahead of Frenchman's Creek very wide on the park is Kit Smartie you would fancy Valigan you would fancy Kit Smartie as well Kit Smartie finished twelve lengths in front of Valigan on the run last year but Moor Lane out in front under Barry Fenton on Exeter last year [2] and has been boasted for this race for quite some time this is fence number six [1] and or there's little change up front there's Moor Lane battling at the front some value seekers took the risk at 6 to 1 on Wednesday and bought him and not today they've certainly beaten the market sitting in second place Strong Paladin Heidi is third and Native Wit [2] and then Valigan with Frenchman's Creek and Bank Avenue along the inside Weaver George and Ever Blessed out wide and then Ackzo and Tresor De Mai just the back marker but it's Moor Lane plodding along at the front [4]
- A: Well there's some news from Cheltenham in addition to the high-profile absentee Morwen Le Roi has just been taken out of the hurdle at 3.25 also because of the deteriorating ground [3]
- B: Well back at Doncaster we had a couple of non-runners in this Great Yorkshire Canbury Cross and Burling Blue those were non-runners earlier in the day and it looks as if Richard Guest on Kit Smartie wants to go on the very wide route as they come down towards the first of the fences on this side of the track Moor Lane just shakes the reins back Kit Smartie going extremely wide under Richard Guest who's trying to find the best ground up there is Strong Paladin [1] and it was Strong Paladin who led there Strong Paladin from in second place Moor Lane out wide is Kit Smartie and then behind we've got Valigan they're in much closer order than Frenchman's Creek and Ever Blessed is going very wide on the course Tresor De Mai who in fact had a very bad jump there hasn't been that fluent is on the extreme right of the picture Tresor De Mai rather towards the back end as last year but you never can tell so it's Moor Lane and Strong Paladin who sit in one and two and then Native Wit getting a bit closer out on his own in the black colours Kit Smartie is out wide and then Ever Blessed getting a bit closer and Ackzo



Adrian Maguire nudging him forward to a challenging position Frenchman's Creek is back there Bank Avenue is probably the back marker it's Strong Paladin who leads under Henry Oliver enjoying his best season from the Greyson stables he has been there earlier in the week these horses are healthy but Moor Lane 4 to 1 next to the rails the favourite the horse with the noseband Heidi is just being pushed along possibly from the Brook stable he's been on a bit of a losing run but Heidi is a great battling horse and we already we see Seamus Durack pushing him along to keep close Native Wit's back there from Venetia Williams she had three horses entered in the race elected to run this one but it's one of the er semi-neglected Kit Smartie who's out wide on the course as they come to the next one you've got a big jump there Bank Avenue is probably just the back marker now Tresor De Mai isn't really firing they swing left-handed and head towards the next and it's going to be Moor Lane on the inside of Kit Smartie and then behind these er making a bit of ground is Native Wit Valigan behind that comes Ackzo with a run and Frenchman's Creek already getting reminders not a good sign so they head down towards the fifth from home Moor Lane on the inside of Strong Paladin one and two Kit Smartie on the outside blunders through that green and orange colours is Native Wit who's getting closer yellow jacket on the outside that's Ackzo in five then Valigan and then Frenchman's Creek and so the pace just being raised as they turn for home [1] and it's Moor Lane with the advantage here making the best of his way home Strong Paladin in second place maroon jacket out wide Kit Smartie back in fourth place is Native Wit and just touched down a little bit off the pace there and these four kick clear of Ackzo and Frenchman's Creek and it looks Moor Lane with the advantage here as they come down towards the third last in the Great Yorkshire Kit Smartie in the maroon's on the outside they're tied there with Moor Lane who's the stronger finisher here and Kit Smartie here when push comes to shove back in third is Strong Paladin and they come down towards the SECOND FROM HOME AND IT'S GONNA BE MOOR LANE HE'S OPENED KICKED CLEAR BY FOUR TO FIVE LENGTHS HERE WE ARE AT THE SECOND LAST MOOR LANE POPS OVER KIT SMARTIE IN SECOND BACK IN THIRD IS UP WITH THE PACE STRONG PALADIN THEN NATIVE WIT AND THEN BEHIND THESE COMES FRENCHMAN'S CREEK JUST ONE MORE TO JUMP AND IT'S GONNA BE MOOR LANE BAR A FALL HE'S CLEAR BY TEN PALADIN IS FINISHING STRONGLY BUT THIS IS THE 18<sup>TH</sup> AND FINAL FENCE HE COMES TO IT OH HE'S SPRINGHEELED LIKE IN THE GRAND NATIONAL NOW MOOR LANE GOES ON HE'S GONNA TAKE THE GREAT YORKSHIRE CHASE COMES UP towards the line it's a great performance in these conditions but Moor Lane comes home under Barry Fenton it's his 17<sup>th</sup> of the season Moor Lane of the Balding stable wins Kit Smartie is second running home for third is Frenchman's Creek and four Strong Paladin finishing five Native Wit there clear of Ackzo who's in six and then came Weaver George and then Valigan and Tresor De Mai and never really got into it Heidi was a disappointing run from the stable of Andrew Crook

**G.12 Cheltenham 2.45 26<sup>th</sup> January 2002 Channel 4**  
(8 minutes, 1202 words)

- A: A big race for Richard Johnson on Legal Right in the green and white jacket first big race he's right back from injury as they jump away they now only have 19 fences to cross it would have been 21 but they're still omitting that third last fence the first fence Rince Ri in the striped jacket with Go Ballistic on the inside Legal Right on the inside next from Paris Pike in the black [1] and at the back there Lord Noelle in green and blue body green sleeves Cyfor Malta last of the half dozen [1] with just under two circuits to cover [3] and Rince Ri [1] and Ruby Walsh riding for his father Ted making the running to Go Ballistic [1] Go Ballistic the 13-year-old with Joe Tizzard in the saddle successful of course on Solitaire [1] they jump the second Paris Pike on the outside then Legal Right Lord Noelle at the end and Cyfor Malta Cyfor Malta winner of this race in 1999 [1] next is the water jump [3] Rince Ri and Go Ballistic [2] Go Ballistic was second in the Gold Cup here [1] the 13-year-old they jump the open ditch Paris Pike with a mistake there Legal Right on the right over on the far side Lord Noelle and Cyfor Malta under heavy restraint in these early stages over the next fence Paris Pike again not completely convincing over that fence jumped right-handed [3] and now another open ditch [2] Go Ballistic on the inside of Rince Ri Legal Right in third Paris Pike four Lord Noelle and Cyfor Malta Tony McCoy [1] only content to look on approaching the seventh [2] Go Ballistic takes over at this spot from Rince Ri Legal Right in third place and Richard Johnson [1] it was three months ago at Exeter that Richard broke his leg he only returned at Plunkton on Thursday was just beaten by McCoy in a close finish so today he's still looking for his first win since coming back [6] they jump that tricky fence where Alan Boyd so nearly came to grief in the last [1] a long [1] now until they're required to jump again [3] as they bypass this next fence [6] just to remind you that er in our next race the Cleave Hurdle an important defection Le Roi so these ground conditions today tended to persuade one or two trainers to [...] and wait for another day [2] they've nearly completed a circuit and it's Rince Ri on the outside of Go Ballistic three lengths to Legal Right half a length to Paris Pike then Lord Noelle and Cyfor Malta [2] pretty good jumps all around there [3] on to the tenth it will be the 19<sup>th</sup> after another trip round Presbury Park [2] there may be very soft ground but these horses are jumping immaculately [1] at least they have been so far as they turn away in front of the stands Go Ballistic from Rince Ri to you John they all seem to be going OK at the moment
- B: Yeah they've got a nice even gallop the two in front they seem to be jumping best out of the conditions at the moment Simon very often the way you get horses in front nothing to bond them er and not having to adjust their stride at the last minute and er Tony McCoy at the moment just biding his time just doesn't want to switch sides from one to another too quickly gets him into a nice place behind the mid-three but at the moment they'd be just thinking er about beginning to er make their way get into a decent position before they get to the top of the hill so that they can er just er sit and have a little bit of a tow coming down and heading down [3]
- A: I just wonder how Lord Noelle is travelling at the moment er just hidden there Jim Culloty he was reeling for a stride or two on the right of the frame that's not his ideal ground he's riding quite close to Cyfor Malta over that ditch it's still Rince Ri from Go Ballistic [1] Legal Right in third Paris Pike Lord Noelle and Cyfor Malta he's asking Cyfor Malta just for a good jump there and er he received one from the 9-year-old and both Cyfor Malta and Lord Noelle getting a little bit closer than they were plunging their way towards the next open ditch [2] Rince Ri with a mistake Go Ballistic on the inside jumped it better Legal Right Paris Pike on the wide outside Lord Noelle [1] and then the menacing McCoy in last place but close up on Cyfor Malta over the next fence all over

safely again Paris Pike just being pushed along in fifth now Lord Noelia's improved in third [1] as they make this top turn they've got three fences to jump but they're far enough from the finish one or two riders beginning to ask some questions now McCoy's riding outside on Cyfor Malta as they run down towards this third last now Rince Ri and his jump is falling apart this Irish horse that's two consecutive mistakes Go Ballistic on his inside and then Lord Noelia and Cyfor Legal Right Cyfor Malta and Paris Pike down the hill in the Pillar Property Chase we're now on trial for the Gold Cup ground conditions could be very different come March but who's going to win today it's Go Ballistic and Joe Tizzard going as well as anything now from Rince Ri then Legal Right on the outside Cyfor Malta working his way into fourth place then Lord Noelia who's just beginning to struggle one feels Paris Pike Rince Ri challenging Go Ballistic on the outside as they stretch now for the second last Go Ballistic takes over AGAIN from Rince Ri and then Legal Right running towards two out there Go Ballistic on the inside Rince Ri in the centre RINCE RI NOW WIDE GO BALLISTIC HAD A BIT OF A GO AT HIM BUT HE GOT TO THE OTHER SIDE RINCE RI IS COMING BACK TO CHALLENGE HIM AGAIN THOUGH THEN LEGAL RIGHT ON THE OUTSIDE CYFOR MALTA IS MAKING NO IMPRESSION THE IRISH HORSE IT'S BACK TO THE LEAD NOW FOR RUBY WALSH AT THE LAST RINCE RI GO BALLISTIC GETTING TIRED THEN LEGAL RIGHT AND CYFOR MALTA RUNNING UP THE HILL AND TWO TERRIBLE MISTAKES RINCE RI IS FORGING CLEAR NOW FROM GO BALLISTIC LEGAL RIGHT ON THE NEAR SIDE A TIRING RUN FROM RICHARD JOHNSON RINCE RI IS TIRING UP IN THE LAST 50 YARDS BUT HE'S STILL FOUR TO FIVE LENGTHS CLEAR AND RINCE RI WINS THE PILLAR PROPERTY CHASE LEGAL RIGHT IN SECOND GO BALLISTIC ANOTHER TREMENDOUS run by Joe in third Cyfor Malta was fourth Lord Noelia who got very weary in fifth and last was Paris Pike how Rince Ri stood up at the third last I'll never know and what a horse he must be to come back from that mistake to beat his five rivals here in this Gold Cup Trial he was close to winning the Gold Cup a couple of years ago his jumping let him down then and it's always got to be a question mark

**G.13** Doncaster 3.05 26<sup>th</sup> January 2002 Channel 4  
(2 minutes 20 seconds, 476 words)

- A: And er lining up but er Red Ark's anticipated the start Ilnamar and Roddy Greene in the purple with the yellow chevron 9 to 4 the joint favourite plenty of pace on here Jungli a front runner Ichi Beau is a front runner B The One a front runner big horse B The One on the inside John Kavanagh rides him but in the green jacket there Jungli a front runner won the race here last year when he beat er B The One and Ichi Beau who reappear both today and Jungli kicking his feet down there for the first of twelve fences ridden today by Jim McCarthy who's won eight times on this course and the horse has won eight times and they're all safely over the first interesting Ichi Beau who can front run is being held up today so it's Jungli who shows the way to Ilnamar in second place and B The One on the inside [2] then we've got er Red Ark in four and the back marker is Ichi Beau as they swing left-handed and race far to the starts next to take is the border jump here at sunny Doncaster the sun's come out and it's Jungli with the advantage to Ilnamar who sits in second place a proven heavy ground performer that Ilnamar [2] then in third is B The One a horse that has much improved this year [1] [...] is the trainer Ilnamar coming up to take on the front runner and Red Ark with his tail tied up there on the extreme left of the picture the horse with the noseband in the striped jacket and Ichi Beau is hitting five and five as they skip over the next hurdle over which Jungli and Ilnamar go head to head and then we've got Red Ark out wide and then er B The One in the darkish jacket on the inner OH and Ilnamar's gone there Ilnamar out the side door Roddy Greene trying to get on his feet but the horse is OK so we're down to four [1] Jungli and Jimmy McCarthy going the shortest way and giving the lead to B The One and John Kavanagh meanwhile out wide we've got Red Ark showing the way to Ichi Beau [1] they head down towards the next and up and over Rose Hill a real speed performance here as they cross that one it was Red Ark that's gone into the lead here Jungli the 9 to 4 joint favourite Ilnamar out of the race there's Ichi Beau in the red and yellow disk blue cap [2] very much a touched horse last week not attacking over the hurdles didn't really shine but according to Teddy Murphy a very sturdy horse he certainly had problems over the hurdles last week Jungli going the shortest way in the dark jacket

## H Horse racing on the radio (49 minutes, 10,000 words)

### H.1 Grand National 7<sup>th</sup> April 2001 BBC Radio 5 Live (14 minutes 30 seconds, 2641 words)

- A: THEY'RE OFF THEY'RE OFF FOR THE GRAND NATIONAL and very slow away was No Retreat he almost missed the break but up front Esprit de Cotte [1] up there also Beau streaming away in the lead er is Edmond I think Edmond is probably the overall leader from Esprit de Cotte then Kaki Crazy as they cross the Melling Road over to Dave Smith
- B: 30 fences to jump then they're on the rush down to the first it is Edmond who is the leader from Esprit de Cotte as they come to the first and they're followed further back as they go to the first er fence by The Last Fling one or two have fallen at the first which we'll have to pick up later 'cause it's hidden by the jockeys at the moment er Spanish Main went at the first coming on to the second also Art Prince has fallen at the first fence the others are intact as they come to the second fence and Esprit de Cotte is er the leader here from Edmond in second Papillon's behind these Addington Boy is a faller at the back and another's gone as well that would be Hanakham coming to the open ditch Esprit de Cotte over in front from Merry People Unsinkable Boxer and then behind these coming next is Edmond with Beau at the back of the field Paddy's Return is a faller at the ditch and also gone there is Hollybank Buck is a faller over the fourth fence and Esprit de Cotte is over from Beau in second place in comes Edmond and er behind these one or two at the back have made bad runs hidden by the fence and they have to pick them up
- C: As they race now to the one before Bechers and this is fence number five Edmond in the centre of the fence The Last Fling as well there to Beau running very fast towards the outside of the course and it looks as though Inis Cara came down at that previous fence as they race now towards Bechers Brook and it's Edmond and Beau and also there still Esprit de Cotte and Merry People just switching inside there The Last Fling was a faller at the previous fence as they race now to Bechers Brook [1] and it's Merry People leading over from Esprit de Cotte Edmond over third then Beau out very wide they're all coming over Bechers Exit Swinger has come down there so has Northern Starlight both of Martin Pipe and er also Strong Tel so the three fallers they're all from the same stable as they take now the next one which is the Foinavon fence and a couple of blunders there and it looks as though Merry People was the only faller at that fence now as they go towards the Canal Turn [1] it's Beau on the outside of the course running very fast and taking them along Unsinkable Boxer is right there too as they come over this one and er Beau who's cutting the corner there and got a clear lead as they head towards the next Blowing Wind up in the second place and then Edmond in third and the next fence is Valentine's Beau the leader from Blowing Wind and Edmond and as they clear this one Smarty making ground on the outside as we join Colin Slicers
- D: And we lost General Wolfe at the Canal Turn and there's a faller at Valentine's as well that could well be Mister One on towards the next though and it's Beau who is overall the leader with Carl Llewellyn with Edmond right up there er and er where all are jumping all the leaders jumping satisfactorily Edmond surrounded by loose horses very very prominent at er this stage now as they run on er towards the next one which is number eleven and it's Edmond who is the leader over this one from Beau racing in second then we've got Blowing Wind racing in third position absolutely covered in mud and running with that one er at this stage looks to be er it's er Smarty who's made up good ground Papillon is with it last year's winner Unsinkable Boxer and Brave Highlander they are there so is Noble Lord and so is Listen Timmy Moondigua is there and so too is Red Marauder we've still got Supreme Charm we've got one other still to come and jump the

next fence and that is number twelve er and the horse concerned is No Retreat who's coming to jump it now and that is your lot as they cross the Melling Road we've lost Esprit de Cotte as well who's unseated his rider [2]

- A: Yes and as they come over the Melling Road Edmond is in charge but Beau is only just behind him Smarty is in a close-up third position right behind them is Blowing Wind those are the first four and they're quite a long way clear of the rest of the field at the moment riderless horses everywhere there was a huge pile over at the Canal Turn a lot of horses never got over it and the Grand National field has been reduced down to a mere handful Edmond is running the race in the lead he's coming now towards the 13<sup>th</sup> fence which is the second last first time round he's a very very brilliant steed he's got clear colours there's a faller there and that is NOBLE LORD THAT'S DOWN at that fence Noble Lord fell at the 13<sup>th</sup> fence now that they're coming to the next there's just a handful left and it's Edmond who leads from Beau Smarty is there in good third on the outside right behind them is Papillon he's still in the race I can just about see well Moondigua he's also still in the race it looks as though it could be Brave Highlander but he's covered in mud and there's another blue horse and I think that's Unsinkable Boxer now they're at the Chair and EDMOND GOES DOWN AT THE CHAIR CRASHING FALL AND MOONDIGUA HAS GONE AT THE CHAIR and a very bad mistake and also at the Chair SUPREME CHARM is out at the Chair [2] gone the leader and it's Beau that leads from Smarty and Blowing Wind then Red Marauder then Papillon behind Papillon is Unsinkable Boxer then Brave Highlander and THAT is ALL there is one two three four five six seven horses go out on the er second circuit er Edmond's all right he's up on his feet Moondigua's up on his feet so too I'm pleased to say is Richard Johnson and as they come over the Melling Road there's just a mere handful for you Dave Smith Beau and probably Smarty and on the inside up there Red Marauder
- B: This is the smallest field ever to make it out to the second circuit just seven runners and we're coming up to the first fence on this second circuit and the lead is with Beau who's gonna jump towards the centre of the track and he's jumped that first fence he made a very bad blunder but the jockey did well to stay on board and Beau leads them down towards the next plain from Red Marauder Unsinkable Boxer behind these then Brave Highlander and er not far off the pace neither is Blowing Wind and Papillon still continues and at the back of the field the only who's left is Smarty as they come towards the open ditch it's the third on this final circuit and Beau has a two or three length there to Blowing Wind in second they're all very tired all these remaining runners and Beau jumps the open ditch he's over safely from Red Marauder in second place we've got one refused there Brave Highlander refused Papillon has refused and Blowing Wind has refused as well and also Unsinkable Boxer so there are just three runners left as they come towards the next plain one and it's Beau who's gonna jump it first and he's er FALLEN BEAU Beau's fallen so Red Marauder and Smarty are the only two left to Lee McKenney
- C: And the most extraordinary sight as they come to the one before Bechers the fallers at the Canal Turn first time round were Feels Like Gold Mely Moss Dark Stanger Moral Support Mister One and Village King er Lance Armstrong also came down and remounted and continued for a while but er it looks as though it is indeed just these two horses now as they race towards Bechers for the only time and they've still got about another mile to go with Red Marauder out in front from Smarty as they come over it it's Red Marauder clearing Bechers and as they come up past me now er with just er [1] this fence here which is the Foinavon fence with Smarty in pursuit of Red Marauder just these two horses now Red Marauder on the inside his jockey last year said that he was frightened by the fences but er he's certainly cleared them better than most of them this time round Red Marauder and Smarty the one in second place er loose horses everywhere

you look but just two horses continuing in the Grand National in one of the most er amazing spectacles we've surely ever seen here at Aintree now the Canal Turn there's a loose horse running across the fence which nearly got in their way but it's er Red Marauder over it in front with Smarty in pursuing second place as they head to Valentine's just two remaining horses now and Red Marauder comes in to jump Valentine's over with a lead of a length as we join Colin Slicers

D: So they come now towards the next number 26 of 30 with Red Marauder and Smarty these two they're pretty much locked in battle the two horses as they come to it now Richard Guest on Red Marauder Timmy Murphy on Smarty they took off together they landed together and they run on towards the next absolutely together number 27 Timmy Murphy perhaps just looked over to look at Richard Guest perhaps to say something as they come to this next fence it's Red Marauder with a narrow lead from Smarty here they come to it now hold your breath they're both over AND SMARTY got over quicker and they're SPLASHING around in the water on this part of the course they're coming now to number 28 three from home AND SMARTY FROM THE PITMAN FAMILY HAS A LEAD OF TWO AND A HALF LENGTHS OVER RED MARAUDER HERE HE COMES TO THE NEXT SMARTY HE JUMPS IT WELL YOU WOULD HAVE THOUGHT he'd just be galloping in the mud for all this time because he looked pretty happy about things Timmy Murphy on board of this horse in the pink and purple colours and he gets er a slap of the whip down the neck as he comes down towards the Melling Road his lead is about three lengths Richard Guest on Red Marauder he spits out some spittle there that he wants to get rid of so he can concentrate Timmy Murphy looks round over his shoulder and it's over for the last time in the Grand National an extraordinary Grand National to Peter Bromley

A: Well two horses coming into the home straight and it is Red Marauder leading by three lengths from Smarty the whole field distilled down to these two brave horses and quite an extraordinary field as jockeys covered in mud two fences between them and glory and it is Red Marauder that actually leads as they come to the second last fence [1] a loose a loose horse in front of them jumps it successfully he's not gonna cause any trouble Red Marauder comes to it pops over it leaves it behind Smarty jumping in second place probably ten lengths adrift in second one more to jump there's a loose horse a long way in front of Smarty the loose horse jumps the last and here comes Red Marauder to jump the last [1] HE'S SAFELY OVER HE MUST HAVE A FABULOUS RUN BECAUSE HE IS [1] SMARTY IS SAFELY OVER THE LAST TWO HORSES IN THIS RUN-IN BUT THEY'RE SEPARATED BY ALMOST A FURLONG ALMOST TWO FURLONGS NOW AS RED MARAUDER COVERED IN MUD COMES TO THE WATER A HISTORIC RACE AN EXTRAORDINARY RACE OF ATTRITION A RACE OF SURVIVAL HERE THEY ARE TWO SURVIVORS THE ONLY TWO SURVIVORS RED MARAUDER AND RICHARD GUEST TO THE CHEERS OF THE CROWD SALUTING THEM FOR A BRAVE AND QUITE EXTRAORDINARY PERFORMANCE RED MARAUDER WINS THE NATIONAL [1] COMING UP THE STRAIGHT STILL A FURLONG TO GO AND VERY TIRED SMARTY TIMMY MURPHY JUST NURSING HIM ALONG he'll finish in second place and he will be the only other finisher as we come to the last 100 yards for Smarty Smarty just easing up he's all right he's safe and sound he's HOLDING SECOND PLACE second in the National and with me the trainer of Smarty's mother Red Marauder and Smarty Debbie that was almost too agonising to watch for you

E: [laughter]

A: [laughter]

E: You know well I [laughter] am you know what an extraordinary night for Norman this is gonna be he's had three winners here beside Red Marauder er he's had three winners at er

this festival I think you know it's been a most extraordinary race and Smarty has run absolutely out of his skin but you know take nothing away from that winner you know it was a great race Pete

A: It was lovely to see the big jockeys coming home together hunting together helping each other out

E: Absolutely absolutely

A: I don't think I would have minded if the other had won and then all of a sudden Smarty outjumped Red Marauder and the next thing the other happened

E: Yes Peter I think from the Canal Turn the jockeys quite clearly had a chat with one another and said look let's keep one another company or else there'll be no winner

A: OH I think there's another finisher [1] while we've been talking Blowing Wind is coming home [1] where he's come from I don't know I hope he jumped the last if he has [1] Blowing Wind has jumped obviously jumped all and he is now finishing having fallen and remounted Blowing Wind and Tony McCoy and PAPILLON HE'S coming through too we have missed them coming over the last two fences but Papillon has finished fourth so correction to that four have finished I don't think there's any more Red Marauder 33 to 1 Smarty 16 to 1 but even in defeat er you must admire he did a he did you proud

E: You know Peter the one thing I've ever always admired over the years is yourself and on behalf of the racing public that have listened to you for donkey's years I would like to give you a heartfelt thank you

A: Thank you

E: And if anybody tells you that retirement is easy it ain't [laughter]

A: It ain't well I'm retiring now after probably one of the most memorable races I have ever had to describe I've seen a lot of history here but never ever have I seen such an attritional race it just was extraordinary and gradually they just whittled themselves down to two and the much battered Richard Guest who will be coming back to you in the unsaddling enclosure in a moment I've got some prices for the third Blowing Wind 16 to 1 fourth Papillon who having both of these horses were remounted and finished third and fourth thank you Debbie thank you she's got to see a very proud [1] Mark Pitman who trained the runner-up Smarty



**H.2 Royal Ascot 4.20 20<sup>th</sup> June 2001 BBC Radio 5 Live**  
(5 minutes 30 seconds, 1137 words)

- A: It's over the straight mile and er this is one of the biggest er line-ups of the whole week and it should in theory be quite a difficult race to bet but Jim has got news of the favourite I think we've got a hot favourite here Jim
- B: We have we have indeed Lee 30 runners taking part but Tough Speed is a very very well-backed 7 to 2 favourite which is extremely short in a race like this but 7 to 2 so clearly somebody does fancy him er at those sort of odds it's 8 to 1 then Surprise Encounter 10 to 1 Camberly and 11 to 1 Atavus it's 12 to 1 both Border Subject and Korovski 16 to 1 Mastermind and 20 to 1 both Soviet Flash and Duke of Medina 25 to 1 on all the rest but Tough Speed is the 7 to 2 favourite
- A: And the crowd still buzzing after that superb performance by Fantastic Lice in our big race this afternoon The Prince of Wales stakes he beat Callenesty the 2 to 1 favourite comfortably by a rather wide margin Tough Speed now down to 3 to 1 I'm hearing 3 to 1 favourite in a line-up of 30 horses you wouldn't believe it would you and as we look down we see nearly all the horses in the stalls now stall one is on the right as we see them and stall 32 will be on the left er because originally there should have been 32 runners and Mastermind is going to stall 16 he's got a blindfold on because he's proving to be a little difficult today this horse Tough Speed ridden by the former champion jockey Kieran Fannon who's in great form at the moment and trained by Sir Micheal Stacks he had a disappointment with Callenesty in the last race but this horse Tough Speed has been touted around for this race for about the last month [1] Jim any late bettings on this one
- B: Still 3 to 1 Tough Speed Lee we still see extremely short odds 7 to 1 then Surprise Encounter 10 to 1 Camberley 11 to 1 Atavus and it's 12 to 1 both Border Subject and Korovski 16 to 1 on all the rest but Tough Speed the 3 to 1 favourite now
- A: Duke of Medina is the one holding us up but he has finally consented to go into the stalls now all 30 are loaded and we're waiting for the starter's signal Mastermind er very keen to get away from his stall near the rail number 2 [1] and they're running Celebration Town was a bit slow to stride but as far as I can see it was a pretty good break and at this point of the race we always try to work out how they're going to divide and in fact they've got two groups as we er more or less expected and a slightly larger group is racing towards the stands side of the course and er we've got about a dozen towards the far side who are headed at this stage by er Bold King and also there Korovski I can see Creator showing good speed far side and er Sugarfoot is right up with the leaders in that group over there as they complete the first two furlongs and meanwhile down towards the stands side we've got about two thirds of the field here Peartree always likes to make the running is up there alongside Monte Castillo those are the two who are cutting it out as they reach the halfway stage and they're followed through by Worldly Treasure I can still see er Bold King tracking them who is now on this side of the course along there Duke of Medina is running down the centre Sir Firban is down on this side and also Atavus on this side of the course too and right up against the stands side fence is Border Subject and they're three furlongs from home now and er towards the far side Soviet Flash has moved through to dispute it there with Korovski and Crimson Tide on the far side with Sugarfoot Lucia chasing them there far side Creator's started to weaken and then Peacock Ally meanwhile on the stands side Atavus has come to the front with Big Future Border Subject looking back Mastermind is looking for room Parisian Star on this side but favourite Tough Speed is coming THROUGH LATE ON THE STANDS SIDE OF THE COURSE BUT IT'S IS BIG FUTURE IN FRONT OF ATAVUS AS THEY RACE ON TOWARDS THE LINE BUT FAR SIDE IT'S FRANKIE ON SURPRISE ENCOUNTER RACING THROUGH TO TAKE IT UP AND SURPRISE

ENCOUNTER HAS GOT THERE ON THE FAR SIDE of the course to beat Big Future on the near side Lucia and a blanket of four with Blue Mountain Korovski and Mastermind on the near side along with Monte Castillo well it was a case of which side was in front and it didn't look as if there was much in it actually until suddenly with a late burst on the far side of the course Frankie Detori and Surprise Encounter came whooshing through from a long way behind to take up the running and in fact has gone through to er win it quite comfortably in the end and in second place I think I called Big Future on this side and then Lucia there are a whole load of horses in a photo for the places quite surprising actually when you get a race er this competitive and win it comfortably Surprise Encounter at 8 to 1 was the winner trained at Newmarket by Ed Dunlop and Tough Speed well the favourite I can see him work the way through the pack on the stands side of the course er for a moment it looked as if he might get into it but he couldn't quite get there in time [1] well there is the result as we have it so far according to the frame it simply says first number 15 Surprise Encounter and then a black P on a yellow background indicating that there is a photograph for all the places I'm afraid we can't really tell you any more than that but er at least we've got something to be going on with for the meantime and we'll round up exactly what's happened just hearing for the places now [2] number 18 was second that's Big Future 12 Lucia was third and I think I heard 26 that's Atavus who was called fourth so that's the result Surprise Encounter 8 to 1 the winner Big Future was second Lucia was third Atavus fourth and we'll have the stats shortly er hopefully in the er Sportsdesk coming up shortly

**H.3** Curragh 3.30 1<sup>st</sup> July 2001 BBC Radio 5 Live  
(3 minutes, 584 words)

- A: And Dr Brendler rather slow to find his stride but he's happy at the back as Pugin goes on to make the early running pushed into an advantage of three parts of a length Mr Combustible is running second and then Ice Dancer a handy third on the outside of those two and a gap of a length and a half then back to Morshdi who's running in fifth place and er pulling fourth place and pulling quite hard at this stage hasn't settled March King on the outside then and Galileo both running midfield then on the outside Cashel Bay has got a nice stride ahead of the horses about two thirds back then we have Pebble Island who's towards the rail along with Frankie Detori on Exultation Vinnie Rae one from last two from last Golan is last but one and last of all is slow starting Dr Brendler the field covered by eight to ten lengths as they go halfway along the back straight [1] the pace is ideal for a classic it's testing but not too fast er Pugin leads by a length and a half and one of the British runners Mr Combustible is sitting on his tail there in second place then we have Ice Dancer who's in third place one of Dave O'Brien's runners in fourth then is Galileo just sneaking up on the inside a daring run from Mick Cunan Morshdi bright yellow colours racing on the outside of him back then to March King who's running midfield as they reach the end of the back straight and now they take a right-handed turn and they go slightly down the slope er towards home Galileo still sitting in the middle of the bunch about er fifth on the inside I hope he manages to get a run from there and Golan who's having to come slightly wide off the turn is three horses out from the inside rail has got three behind him as they turn for home but it's Pugin really going for it now Brian McCorrick asking him for a bit more effort trying to pick up the pace but he's got several sitting on his tail going well Mr Combustible running second Ice Dancer is going to come three wide round the home turn Galileo moving through to fourth place sitting there full of running then Morshdi Vinnie Rae on the outside of those being asked for an effort and Golan is way back in seventh place trying hard that horse but lacking power at the moment **AND NOW GALILEO QUICKLY RACES THROUGH TO TAKE THE LEAD TWO FURLONGS TO GO GALILEO WENT PAST THE OTHERS AS IF THEY'RE ALL LAMPPOSTS THEY'VE GOT A FURLONG AND A HALF TO GO GALILEO IS STREAKING AHEAD THREE OR FOUR LENGTHS MORSHDI IN PURSUIT IN SECOND PLACE BUT IT'S A VAIN CHASE HE'S NOT GONNA GET THERE IN A MILLION YEARS AND GALILEO STORMING IN HE'S THROUGH BY HALF A TRACK AND THIS IS IMPRESSIVE GALILEO FIRST PLACE** GALILEO KING OF THE CURRAGH second was Morshdi and Golan in a photo for third with Pugin back then to Exultation who was never in it and then to Mr Combustible Vinnie Rae and further behind then to Ice Dancer Pebble Island [1] and the last three over the line were Dr Brendler then er it was actually Cashel Bay actually beat Brendler on home this was March King we were expecting Cashel Bay to finish last but he didn't

**H.4** Cheltenham 2.45 26<sup>th</sup> January 2002 BBC Radio 5 Live  
(6 minutes, 1295 words)

- A: His trainer Freddie Murphy wanted to give him plenty of time to recover and even now having taken a whole year off the track he's only a ten-year-old and who knows he may well be back along with most of these for the Gold Cup itself in a couple of months' time just under a couple of months' time now isn't it time flies but it's Go Ballistic and Rince Ri over the next fence together as they go on towards the top of the hill and they're all still running these six horses Marlborough the non-runner big disappointment not to see him in the field because he was certainly fit and ready to run here this afternoon after recovering from a little physical setback and [1] the next fence comes here Cyfor Malta clearing it in last place he's quite er way off the lead there too as they start the run down the hill Cyfor Malta Tony McCoy so well-known for leading on so many of his horses he's already ridden two winners here this afternoon Tony McCoy again I seem to say this so often but on this occasion with Cyfor Malta he's happy to drop the horse quite a long way behind and allow the leaders to just run themselves into the ground the pace is pretty good as it has been all the way so far now they come down the hill for the first time and this is the point where they're going to miss out this fence because of waterlogging they've got some bright coloured objects in the fences orange and white ones to er tell the riders to go round the outside of it and it's Go Ballistic still on the inside of Rince Ri [1] Go Ballistic in turquoise and grey diamonds Rince Ri in maroon and white stripes there's a gap of three lengths to Legal Right and Richard Johnson who's made his comeback this week after three months out because of a broken leg Legal Right sitting in third place there on the inside of Paris Pike as they turn round into the straight they've nearly completed the circuit so almost at halfway Rince Ri and Go Ballistic matching strides now two and a half lengths to Legal Right on the inside of Paris Pike and still Lord Noelle and Cyfor Malta no move from either of those two at the back as they clear the first of two fences in the straight over they come and [1] as far as Cyfor Malta goes it looks as if it's going to be somewhere on the final mile that McCoy's going to finally put him into the race no sign of any concern [1] with the champion jockey so far as they jump now the one in front of the stands there's a circuit to go from here Go Ballistic the inside of Rince Ri [1] and there's just a neck between those two three lengths back to Legal Right and Paris Pike who've been side by side all the way and another three lengths to Lord Noelle who's jumping better than he has done in the past he's hit the deck a couple of times here and he's sitting off the pace still with Cyfor Malta and McCoy just behind him so at about ten lengths comes the field now as they go out to this line er of four fences to our right [1] and it's Go Ballistic and Rince Ri Go Ballistic a veteran 13 years of age now [1] clears that one alongside Rince Ri three lengths to Legal Right Paris Pike just finding the pace a little bit testing at this stage he has to be nudged along to stay in touch with the third horse but still at the back it's Lord Noelle and Cyfor Malta waiting waiting for their moment they don't want to come too soon because the ground here is very testing here this afternoon it's officially changed to heavy now er much better as the leaders blaze away and wear themselves out and then the ones at the back can sweep through if of course they get the pace right if they misjudge it and the pace is not that strong then the leaders have got every chance of holding on Rince Ri and Go Ballistic still as they head up towards the top of the hill they've cleared that last fence on the side of the course and now up towards the final five fences the next one is an open ditch and Rince Ri pokes his nose back in front from Go Ballistic they've been at it all the way these two [1] with Paris Pike clinging on there disputing third with Legal Right now the two are coming from the back Lord Noelle has to come out wide for his run and Cyfor Malta and Tony McCoy have closed up right behind the other five now so they're

bunching [1] as they start the downhill run and over the next one Rince Ri Paris Pike just trips slightly going over that fence he's being driven hard from that fifth place now downhill for the final time and this next one would normally be the fourth last but today it's going to be the third last we have got a real race on our hands here and it's Rince Ri for Ireland and Ruby Walsh leading with Go Ballistic to his inside Lord Noellie's made good headway wide of the runners as they come over this one Lord Noellie slightly to the left Rince Ri was on his nose Ballistic is cantering on his inside the old-timer so down the hill for the last time but they won't be jumping this third last today and just about any one of these six today can still win although Paris Pike has been hard at work for some time and it's Rince Ri and Go Ballistic with two more to jump but still with just under half a mile to go Legal Right has switched outside those two to challenge Cyfor Malta is about three lengths away Lord Noellie is in TROUBLE he's being driven hard in fifth place he's not finding much and Paris Pike is being dropped by the other five now as they turn for home which of these is it going to be it's developed into well it could be a three-horse race here Rince Ri in the centre the veteran Go Ballistic to the inside Legal Right is wide out these the leading three Cyfor Malta is struggling to get into it five lengths off AND GO BALLISTIC LANDED IN FRONT AT THE SECOND LAST BUT HE HIT THE FENCE REALLY HARD AND THAT BRINGS RINCE RI BACK IN AGAIN LEGAL RIGHT A LENGTH AWAY THIRD ON THE STANDS SIDE ONE TO JUMP AND A GREAT FINISH IN STORE RINCE RI LEADS BY A LENGTH AT THE LAST RINCE RI RINCE RI OVER RINCE RI FROM IRELAND GO BALLISTIC SECOND LEGAL RIGHT THIRD CYFOR MALTA CANNOT WIN THEY'VE GOT 200 YARDS TO GO AND IT'S RINCE RI BY THREE LENGTHS DRIVEN CLEAR HE'S GETTING TIRED LEGAL RIGHT'S TRIED TO WEAR HIM DOWN SO HAS GO BALLISTIC BUT HE'S GOT TOO MUCH OF A LEAD 50 YARDS TO GO AND RINCE RI DRIVEN HARD IS GOING TO HOLD ON LEGAL RIGHT'S TRYING TO CLOSE THE GAP BUT RINCE RI BUT RINCE RI WINS by three lengths Legal Right is second Go Ballistic is third Cyfor Malta never dangerous at all a lifeless sort of race Lord Noellie finishing fifth Paris Pike sixth Rince Ri has won for Ireland right back to his best and must surely enter the Gold Cup calculations on that the winner at 9 to 2

**H.5** Cheltenham 3.20 26<sup>th</sup> January 2002 BBC Radio 5 Live  
(3 minutes, 591 words)

- A: Lady Cricket lost ground Julius Bay is on the march out wide on the track Turgeneb has been patiently ridden is tucked back on to the end of the main group but there is eight lengths now to Hopeful Lord so up to the top of the hill for the final time Aisley Brook still leading there at that ditch from Folly Pleasant only a length behind they're packing up behind a length and a half to In The Blood who just shares third from Logician and Turgeneb and Mister Backs To Basics against the inside and er a group of about seven to eight horses chasing these two leaders as they take the one at the top there Aisley Brook from Folly Pleasant not much in it then Mister Backs To Basics has moved smoothly into third place two lengths off the two leaders then In The Blood who's one outside him as they start down the hill for the final time Turgeneb is making swift headway wide on the track two lengths then to In The Blood and back then to Logician and Just Jasmin as they reach now the third last today because they miss out what's normally the third last because of waterlogging AND THERE'S A FALLER THERE and it's Aisley Brook who's gone the leader er disputing the lead he was there with Folly Pleasant but he crashed out there In The Blood was hampered and is being pulled up so down the hill for the final time it's all changed up front it's Folly Pleasant Lady Cricket works into the action now Julius Bay is close behind the two leaders Just Jasmin is there with a chance so is Mister Backs To Basics the leading group of five there's a gap of three or four lengths opening up to the others now Logician looks out of it Turgeneb is well beaten too as they reach the final turn and they've got two more to go and it's Folly Pleasant Lady Cricket on his outside just half a length away as they swing for home and then Mister Backs To Basics about two lengths away in third Just Jasmin makes a run along the inside then Julius Bay there are five who can win it from here as they race to the second last it's Folly Pleasant who takes the lead with Lady Cricket THEY'RE GONNA LAND TOGETHER no Folly Pleasant up by a length there Lady Cricket wandering around a bit getting a bit tired then Just Jasmin third Julius Bay is fourth the others are beaten it's Folly Pleasant races to a lead of two or three lengths ONE TO GO HERE HE GOES O:H HE'S FAR TOO CLOSE when he took it up AND HE DID WELL TO SURVIVE BUT HE'S VERY TIRED LADY CRICKET'S CUTTING BACK THE LEEWAY A HUNDRED YARDS TO GO AND FOLLY PLEASANT'S OUT ON HIS FEET LADY CRICKET CLOSING IN WITH WHATEVER HE'S GOT FOLLY PLEASANT PLODDING A LITTLE BIT MORE BUT LADY CRICKET INCH BY INCH IS GETTING THERE FOLLY PLEASANT FIGHTS A BIT MORE HE'S GOTTA HANG ON FOLLY PLEASANT WINS DESPITE THAT MISTAKE BY A LENGTH AND A HALF LADY CRICKET is second Just Jasmin third Julius Bay fourth Mister Backs To Basics is next then Logician the Australian horse who's known as Skippy 'cause he jumps like a kangaroo but certainly today he ran like an Indian [1] er over the line those six nothing else finished and Folly Pleasant 4 to 1 the winner

**H.6 Aintree Hurdle 2.55 6<sup>th</sup> April 2002 BBC Radio 5 Live**  
(5 minutes, 1062 words)

- A: Charlie Brooks is with us this afternoon again your thoughts about this one Charlie
- B: Well it's a very interesting it's two and a half miles it's a clash between the two-milers and the three-mile hurdlers I think Brother Joe should be ideally suited to it as well as the little one from France Bilboa she's bound to run a big race she looks pretty happy at the moment just settled at about third or fourth
- A: Meanwhile the Irish horse Grimes is still leading against the inside rail comes over a length in front of Mister Morose Azertyuiop's a handy third tracking them against the rail with Rooster Booster right behind him and Bilboa's wider out towards the centre of the track then Blue Royal very wide Geos just inside him Ilnamar's right in the middle of the pack with Bounce Back and Brother Joe and in the rear still The French Furze It Takes Time and Rodock so out towards the flight in front of the stands and a circuit after this and this fence is fence number five Grimes with a big lead there by over a length and a half from Mister Morose Bilboa up into third Azertyuiop is fourth Ilnamar travelling well fifth Geos just wider than him and Blue Royal Rooster Booster a bit cramped for room against the fence but travelling well The French Furze just outside him and as they pass us you hear the huge cheers from the crowd Brother Joe out wide is still there with Dibeas Times going and The French Furze against the fence has got two behind him It Takes Time and Rodock two of Martin Pipe's horses right at the back there and as they turn into the back straight Grimes is gonna try and do this the hard way from the front
- B: He is he's having at a pretty good pace I'm pleased to see Thierry Dumet riding a proper sensitive positive race he's up there in second or third he's not going too wide he just can't do that run a short mile track and he's giving her every chance Lee
- A: This big Irish horse Grimes they've had a pretty good meeting here so far and they've got six in the Grand National later this afternoon it's Grimes leading he's opened up a bit by three lengths over here Bilboa is in pursuing second Mister Morose struggling with the tempo now third passed by Ilnamar Rooster Booster is on the move there goes fifth Azertyuiop has pulled off the fence to get a run there a clever piece of er jockeyship that made sure he wasn't cramped for room and he's gone fourth now then Dibeas Times and a big rush on the outside of Blue Royal It Takes Time and McCoy creeping through at the fence Bounce Back is just behind him Rodock's out very wide then Brother Joe Mister Morose has dropped to the rear now as they clear the next one in the back straight where Brother Joe wasn't too fluent and up to the last one on the far side it's four from home and Grimes still saying catch me if you can they're not too far away about a length and a half Rooster Booster disputing second with Bilboa and Ilnamar a further two lengths then to Azertyuiop then Dibeas Times It Takes Time is up into seventh then Brother Joe Bounce Back and Blue Royal out very wide from The French Furze then Geos on the home turn Rodock struggling with Mister Morose and it's developing up front between [1] well four of them I reckon Grimes Bilboa Rooster Booster and Ilnamar and maybe Azertyuiop which one of those would you back if you had to at this stage
- B: Well I think Rooster Booster is going really well if you back Geos you've done your money she's just turning in Bilboa she's right there but in the middle Rooster Booster coming in Grimes is hanging on in there
- A: Blue Royal pulled up Geos pulled up that's the third last and BILBOA NEARLY DOWN AT THE THIRD LAST she made a shocking blunder and that's completely knocked the bottom out of her she's gone from third back to about seventh place Grimes still leading from Rooster Booster and nothing between the two and they landed together Ilnamar's a length and a half away in third It Takes Time and McCoy trying to salvage something and Azertyuiop appears to be a losing cause at the moment one to go GRIMES ILNAMAR

IN THE CENTRE ROOSTER BOOSTER ON THE GREAT STANDS SIDE ILNAMAR AND GRIMES THEY'RE OVER TOGETHER GRIMES DOESN'T WANNA BE PASSED HE'S PULLING OUT ALL THE STOCKS ILNAMAR'S TRYING TO GET PAST HIM THEY'VE KICKED AWAY FROM ROOSTER BOOSTER IT'S ILNAMAR WHO GETS ON TOP NOW INTO THE FINAL 100 YARDS ILNAMAR A WINNER AT CHELTENHAM AND NOW A WINNER AT AINTREE FOR RUBY

WALSH AND TRAINED BY MARTIN PIPE Grimes was second It Takes Time was third and McCoy on the wrong horse [laughter] er then Rooster Booster a long gap then to Azertyuiop Brother Joe and Bounce Back then The French Furze and Mister Morose and Blue Royal coming in well some of these pulled up so I won't run through them now

B: Interesting that Tony McCoy has had a similar er start today to er Cheltenham he's he's been on the wrong one there he'll be spitting about it he got beaten in the first when he got interfered with he's now got to really grab a hold of himself and put the whole thing out of his mind and think right Blowing Wind that's all I'm gonna think about the Grand National

A: Innamar 9 to 1 Grimes 9 to 2 It Takes Time 9 to 1 of course there are a lot of people who think he's on the wrong horse in the Grand National

B: Well I wouldn't be surprised if Martin Pipe wins it with the wrong one so to speak

A: Absolutely he's got plenty of other wrong ones hasn't he he's got about eight in the race so there are seven wrong ones for McCoy to have chosen Innamar though 9 to 1 he bolted up in Cheltenham it wasn't quite so easy today but er he did it alright and it's the champion trainer Martin Pipe yet again



**H.7 Grand National 6<sup>th</sup> April 2002 BBC Radio 5 Live**  
(12 minutes, 2690 words)

- A: Majed's at the head of the group there the 40 runners are all at the start but now he's come facing the runway Lyreen Wonder is going to be one of the first to jump off by the looks of it with er Inis Cara and Samuel Wilderspin he's been well backed today and the latest news of er any er what was I gonna say
- B: Still Blowing Wind the clear favourite at 8 to 1 10 to 1 Ad Hoc and David's Lad 11 to 1 Beau and Paris Pike 12 to 1 Samuel Wilderspin and What's Up Boys 16 to 1 Smarty 18 to 1 Kingsmark 20 to 1 Marlborough 22 to 1 Alexander Banquet Ackzo and Bindaree 25 to 1 Mely Moss as they line up
- A: And this is the second attempt at a line the first one completely broke down so they've had to come in again of course the difficulty here as you've got 40 horses and you can't afford if you're the starter anyway not to give them all the best possible chance Ackzo and Streamstown and Inis Cara right in the front line there with Ad Hoc and Bindaree [1] AND AWAY THEY GO for the 2002 Grand National What's Up Boys has settled in the rear [1] along with Djeddah and You're Agoodun and Niky Dee but as they head to the Melling Road Streamstown is the first to go on from Inis Cara Alexander Banquet very fast on the outside Ackzo Red Ark Lyreen Wonder and Ad Hoc chasing them too with Marlborough and then Mely Moss in a good position and The Last Fling is out very wide with Wicked Crack as they cross the Melling Road here's Ian Bartlett
- C: As they're coming down to fence number one The Last Fling is just about gonna be the leader and CARRYONHARRY goes down Wicked Crack is a faller and there's quite a few gone at the first fence er it looks as if Djeddah might well have been down there In At The Top is down Wicked Crack's a faller Carryonharry is also gone Logician was a faller Goguenard was down at the first and also Red Ark was a faller there as well they come to number two they're all over safe here's the big ditch now coming up Supreme Charm The Last Fling together from Mely Moss and Celibate Blowing Wind David's Lad is next to the field from Spot Thedifference and What's Up Boys then Manx Magic Inis Cara next from Ad Hoc who's towards the inside with Alexander Banquet then Kingsmark just in behind these is er Samuel Wilderspin as they go over fence number four What's Up Boys is in mid-division the back marker is Smarty jumped there very slowly indeed Samuel Wilderspin was a faller at that one and Niki Dee is also out of the race here is Dave Smith
- D: And we're on to fence number five Supreme Charm has er just a fractional lead at that fifth fence from er The Last Fling we've lost one at the back of the field er with Iris er Iris Bleu er who is a faller at that fence but heading down towards Bechers the front two are nicely clear at the moment they are Supreme Charm and The Last Fling they've got a good seven or eight lengths to the others as they come over Bechers and The Last Fling landed in front there but only a by half a length to Supreme Charm behind the runners no casualties at all at Bechers and they head off then towards the Foinavon fence and The Last Fling has the lead from Supreme Charm they're four or five lengths clear from Mely Moss and then comes Celibate third and fourth and they're followed further back by Beau who's got a good heading position at the moment Smarty has tailed off heading now off towards the Canal Turn on this first circuit and just in front is The Last Fling who's got an inside position er as they make that er Canal Turn first circuit from Supreme Charm over in second place in comes Celibate Mely Moss behind runners with Beau and they're then followed by Ad Hoc David's Lad Inis Cara is just behind the pace as well heading off towards Valentine's for the first time and The Last Fling's now four or five lengths clear after jumping Valentine's heading off to the next here is Pat O'Flanigan

- E: Yes and The Last Fling making a lot of great running in this race so far and he comes down towards the next one cleared The Last Fling towards the centre from Supreme Charm and then comes Celibate Mely Moss goes off as they now come on to the next number eleven and still The Last Fling out in front to Supreme Charm er Celibate er towards the inside and wider out there Beau er going quite well Mely Moss jumped that towards the inside followed then by David's Lad er wider out there on the track there comes er Frantic Tan as they go past us now down towards the turn The Last Fling the leader The Last Fling lands at the lead by a couple of lengths to Supreme Charm on the outside Supreme Charm on the inside Celibate's following them by Mely Moss on the inside er wider out there is Beau followed by Bindaree very wide out is David's Lad followed then by Majed er behind Majed then towards er the centre of the pack er towards the inside rather I can see Bindaree as they race down now er past the Melling Road and it's over to Lee McKenzie
- A: With The Last Fling leading on that part of the course to Supreme Charm and Celibate a lot of casualties early on these out of the race Carryonharry Wicked Crack In At The Top Logician Red Ark Samuel Wilderspin Niki Dee and Iris Bleu
- B: And racing there towards the next one this is fence number 13 The Last Fling has been jumping brilliantly in front he's got a loose horse alongside him Beau and Celibate and Supreme Charm are in hot pursuit as they go over this one The Last Fling not too good there but got away with it Mely Moss is running next and then Bindaree along the inside Majed is next Inis Cara is right in the middle of the bunch Blowing Wind is just outside those David's Lad is making a forward move then Royal Predica and BEAU IS GONE BEAU IS GONE AT THE 14<sup>TH</sup> one of the fancied runners out of the race er The Last Fling still leads Beau he was the only casualty there Murt's Man is the back marker at this stage with Manx Magic now they come on to the Chair fence this is number 15 The Last Fling asked for a big one at the Chair and he got it er Celibate over second with Supreme Charm then David's Lad travelling very well in fourth Majed next then Bindaree and Mely Moss then creeping up on the inside Ad Hoc getting closer Royal Predica and Blowing Wind then Spot Thedifference and Kingsmark going midfield they're still there as they pass us now Djeddah is still in the race as they clear the water they're going out on the next circuit there What's Up Boys er Streamstown next as they go left-handed then Birkdale heading off towards the Melling Road behind er Birkdale then is Super Franky then You're Agoodun well back is Ackzo a few loose horses crashing through the running rails there Lyreen Wonder is still going too Manx Magic is just about the back marker no Murt's Man's still going last of all it won't be long before he's pulls over the Melling Road back to Ian Bartlett
- C: I can tell you Smarty's pulled up also first time round Marlborough and Struggles Glory were both fallers at fence number one they come to it again now it's number 16 it's The Last Fling with a couple of loose horses around him from Supreme Charm he's over it safely he's about six lengths clear David's Lad and Celibate on the outside from Blowing Wind Royal Predica's still there next in the field is Kingsmark then comes Birkdale Ad Hoc and then Spot Thedifference towards the inside Bindaree and Mely Moss still in a good position as they as they jump the next plain fence er getting over that one and Super Frankie was a faller at that they come to the big ditch there The Last Fling out in front he's six or seven clear from David's Lad who's moved into second from Supreme Charm Bindaree Royal Predica Blowing Wind Celibate Mely Moss Ad Hoc Djeddah then comes Lyreen Wonder from You're Agoodun Streamstown What's Up Boys next in the field and er behind there's Spot Thedifference Birkdale towards the back Inis Cara next behind him as they come over the next plain fence right at the back Ackzo looks like being er pulled up and Manx Magic I think was a faller there as we rejoin Dave Smith

- D: I confirm Manx Magic was a faller at the previous fence they come in towards the plain one before Bechers and The Last Fling's lead's being reduced all the time by David's Lad who's travelling really well in second Bindaree under a tight hold close behind him in third then comes Supreme Charm they're only the first three or four heading off towards this er Bechers fence at the back of the field I can tell you that Lyreen Wonder was a faller at the previous fence over Bechers Bindaree just jumped to the front from er The Last Fling and on this circuit we've lost one at the back Majed the only casualty at Bechers in the race of the Grand National 2002 as they head off then towards Foinavon and Bindaree in front from The Last Fling on the inside David's Lad is next and then behind these runs Ad Hoc who's running a big race just off the pace as well comes er under pressure is Spot Thedifference with David's Lad out wide Blowing Wind giving giving A.P. McCoy a dream ride heading off towards the Canal turn for the final time and Bindaree on the inside is gonna jump it in front by a length or so to David's Lad and then behind these in third place is Blowing Wind with also Kingsmark with Kingsmark is Ad Hoc and they're followed by er Mely Moss who's behind the pace but now being chased over Valentine's then for the final time and Bindaree by a couple of lengths to David's Lad they fight and jump in the 2002 National here's Pat O'Flanigan
- E: Yes and that's it after this last round Bindaree's still the leader towards the inside David's Lad out towards the centre of the track er these two over that one from What's Up Boys towards the outside followed there by Blowing Wind as they come on towards the next one and er trying to make ground just in behind these is Ad Hoc with the leader over that one was Bindaree and we've lost David's Lad there and Ad Hoc's gone Spot Thedifference has gone and Bindaree is the leader now as they go on towards the next one from What's Up Boys er Blowing Wind towards the outside er Kingsmark getting there on the inside a gap to Supreme Charm and then towards the outside is er Royal Predica farther back then You're Agoodun from Celibate on the inside then Mely Moss and behind these then is Birkdale and er Streamstown comes out of these but as they cross the Melling Road now and race on with two to jump it's over to Lee McKenzie
- A: And Bindaree is leading from What's Up Boys then Kingsmark and Blowing Wind and we're not gonna get nearly as many finishers as we thought we would
- B: These are now all out of the race Lyreen Wonder Marlborough Beau Samuel Wilderspin Inn At The Top Wicked Crack Ad Hoc and David's Lad
- A: And Paris Pike was an early casualty too Bindaree leads from the grey What's Up Boys there's a gap of eight lengths there to Blowing Wind and Kingsmark who are scrapping out third the second last in the National BINDAREE AND WHAT'S UP BOYS WHAT'S UP BOYS HAS TO WATCH OUT FOR THE LOOSE HORSE WHO IS OUTSIDE WHO COMES ACROSS THE LEADING PAIR IT SEEMS TO BE BETWEEN THESE TWO NOW AS THEY RACE TOWARDS THE FINAL FENCE NOW WHAT'S UP BOYS STANDS SIDE BINDAREE AND THEY'RE OVER TOGETHER BLOWING WIND IS GONNA COME TO JUMP IT THIRD KINGSMARK IN FOURTH THEN YOU'RE AGOODUN WELL OUT OF IT WITH ROYAL PREDICA THEY'RE ON RUN THERE WHAT'S UP BOYS QUICKER OFF THIS HE TAKES THE LEAD OF A COUPLE OF LENGTHS BINDAREE SWITCHES OUTSIDE TO HAVE ANOTHER CRACK IT'S NOT OVER YET THE TWO RACE TOWARDS THE ELBOW WITH TWO LENGTHS BETWEEN THEM BINDAREE SWITCHING OVER TOWARDS THE INSIDE AGAIN WHAT'S UP BOYS IS STILL IN FRONT BY A COUPLE OF LENGTHS BINDAREE WITH ONE LAST GO ALONG THE INSIDE RAILS WHAT'S UP BOYS BINDAREE RACES THROUGH TO SNATCH THE NATIONAL BINDAREE WINS WHAT'S UP BOYS AFTER A GREAT RUN SECOND AND THIRTEEN LENGTHS TO BLOWING WIND who finishes third Kingsmark the grey finishes fourth just coming up to the line now is

Supreme Charm who's fifth then Celibate and You're Agoodun and Royal Predica and just a couple more to finish just coming up to the line Supreme Charm is fifth coming up to the line now are Streamstown and Birkdale and that is it we thought there were going to be more than twenty finishers in the National [1] there was a lot of grief out there it took us completely by surprise but Bindaree has won Jim Culloty has won he's won not only the Grand National but also the Cheltenham Gold Cup what a season

B: And he was inspired there he was beaten at the shoulder and as the other horse went past and he just made a final lunge for the rail on the inside and he just got another run out of Bindaree had the rail to run alongside and he just picked up again it was a fantastic bit of riding

A: And this is a jockey who for so long has been kind of oh sorry Jim we don't need you today because Tony McCoy is available

B: That's right he used to be nearly-man he's not any more [laughter]

A: I think he could be on everybody's shopping list now and Bindaree who looked beaten halfway up the run-in rallied to snatch it from What's Up Boys in the last 50 yards what an exciting National Bindaree 20 to 1 What's Up Boys 10 to 1 Blowing Wind 8 to 1 favourite and Kingsmark 16 to 1 and Nigel Twiston-Davies the trainer who's done it before last time he wouldn't give us an interview he said he didn't do interviews do you think he's been practising and still will

B: No actually there's no chance of him giving you an interview whatsoever even though the boys will have a go I'm sure

A: Well his other fancied horse more fancied horse perhaps Beau was an early casualty he came down passing here with a circuit to go but what a brave race What's Up Boys ran didn't he he so nearly did it

B: Yes you're right he's a hero he won the Hennessey this year and he looked like he'd got it but the loose horse funny enough I think helped Bindaree he just gave him something to run along with and he just he looked beaten at the Elbow but he was so brave he came again Jim just switched him back to the inside that was a manoeuvre

## Part II Recordings made between 2013 and 2015 (80,000 words in total, listed according to sports, chronologically)

### A Cricket on TV (115 minutes, 10,000 words)

#### A.1 England v India 16<sup>th</sup> Aug. 2014 Sky Sports2 (5<sup>th</sup> Test of 2014 Test series) (27 minutes, 2200 words)

- A: People are looking at something or people are talking the analysts talk with their the batsmen is that something about showing about showing them and say look at this [1] we just saw from one of them [2]
- B: Yeah, I mean they have to be careful about giving Joe Root tips on technique [3] I think what he would do is he would supply that information to the coaches and just leave it to the coaches whether to approach him or not because you can end up overanalysing everything can't you and the coaches have got to decide when is the right time to talk to Joe Root about that
- A: Yeah do you think they would say they had spotted something just have a look at this or be wary of it is this something they do practise the throw down practise the way forward [3]
- B: Yeah I'm sure that's something that Root does as a matter of course twice he is waiting for the ball [2] it's something that he has to really consciously [2] work on [3] and if the coach wants to back up his point then it's great to have some sort of [1] photographic evidence of what the point is he's trying to make
- A: Yeah, you spoke er I suppose you really emphasise that to young cricketers as to why did this happen that's a lovely shot gone for four and it's just that one aspect where his body's leaning back so the ball goes in the air so a bent front leg on the drive and get your body weight coming into the shot and er it's just basic stuff that you're looking at watch and watch you've got your body over the front knee [3]
- B: Oh a swing and a miss [1] well he had the width and the length to really climb into that one [3]
- A: Yeah and this is Root's strength as well off the back foot through to the offside [3] 75 miles an hour without a hit [14]
- B: I think they'll only get [1] a couple yeah [4] two off the over it's 289 for 5 [27] the Oval a good place to play test cricket England getting their lead up to 143 it's 291 for 5 [2] Root's looking good on 38 and Josh Buttler's busy 28 off 51 as well as 6 boundaries [12] Ishant Sharma again and in the commentary box a change Michael Holding's with Harsha Bhogle [4]
- C: Well that'll be 4 pulled out wide of course Buttler doesn't miss out on anything all the nice clean hit too and all the way for four [3]
- A: That didn't sound like you Mikey
- C: Yeah nicely timed he is a good timer of the ball Josh Buttler the only thing he had to wait for [1] was to make sure he just got past the fielder but there was enough timing enough power enough weight into the shot there [6]
- D: It's just one of my skills David of doing other people's voices imitating other folk [9] 66 run partnership now between Root and Buttler [4] one of these partnerships just pushing this lead heading towards 150 now England [3] India are trying desperately to stay in this game but once you get bowled out in your first innings for 148 it's pretty difficult after that [2] unless of course it's a minefield of a pitch and you have a chance of bowling the opposition out cheaply as well but this is certainly no minefield [4] missing again [31] Shami went off the field earlier and Sharma is on Nasser Hussain was arguing earlier on that he should have been on all the time in the final eleven [7] glad to hear Nasser after all

this time finally coming around to my way of thinking six batsmen a wicket keeper and four bowlers it has taken a long time but he has finally finally arrived

- C: Yes it's easier if the quality is there in every department [3] I suppose what India need Nasser's point was a good one India need the strength of the batting after those last three or four innings worth have all been cheap dismissals as a side and [2] nothing above 200 they've needed the strength of the batting [3] hence you know you know someone like Sharma someone who's just gonna bowl maybe just a few overs of spin and off-spin and should get you runs [1] as he is a good player and could do you better than someone who's neither one thing nor the other I don't think has er more talent than Murali but I think he could be we saw it at Lord's for instance he could be a very effective batsman but at this stage I wouldn't say he's er consistently gonna do that and as a spinner he's still ordinary and [2] Binny could be a decent batsman without becoming outstanding necessarily we'll see how he develops [2] doesn't offer you huge firepower [12]
- D: 296 for 5 Ashwin is back [15] 19 overs Ashwin [1] 2 for 52 [8]
- C: Yeah just er the point about selection Binny has bowled 9 overs here and none for 33 so he's been the least effective [2] the least used [2] and he could have done with some runs that Sharma might have provided [11] calm down there [4] fenced in yes 'cause it was full enough but er too wide and swinging [4] and in the end this is one of those runs when you think maybe but maybe not in the end try not to go for those 'cause you even if he'd made contact there Buttler would have had precious little chance [1] to keep control of the shot could have gone anywhere could have gone straight to slip [6]
- D: That was a much better-looking shot [8]
- C: Yeah the big difference here it's much closer to him in terms of the line this time the balance is good this time he's in complete control so a very different kettle of fish that one [73]
- D: There are a few around haven't seen too much support for India in the last couple of [1] test matches I suppose they are right to be disappointed with the performance of their team [8] I suspect when the ODIs start you'll see quite a few more [27] Vijay is having a word with Bhuvneshwar Kumar about the ball perhaps or just in between there it's not looking all that wonderful to see if the umpire would be willing to change it [1] he says no quite happy with it [8] oh the gap again he is just such a timer of the ball [2] he should get three here comfortably [4] 3 more for Buttler he moves on to 40 the score moves on to 303 for 5 and Paul sitting at the Pavilion for the drinks

[commercial break 114]

They've had 91 overs and England have lost 5 wickets [3] that was early this morning India got the breakthrough didn't take [2] another wicket for quite some time though and Alistair Cook was then dismissed [2] Ashvin finally got one had been working so hard for a wicket Gary Ballance then went quite quickly [2] and Moeen Ali was then at second thinking about leaving the ball trying to leave it but dragging back onto his stumps [3] that's where England's innings stand nice healthy lead at the moment 155 the lead [1] and a lot of time left [3] 148 the first innings for India pretty difficult to come back into a test match after being bowled out so cheaply [1] and the standout man in the Indian innings the captain M.S. Dhoni [1] fantastic [7]

- C: Still the highest individual score of the match so far [2] yeah a lot lies from India's point of view on how they bat second time around their last four innings have been poor ones collectively [3] it suggests unlikely they're suddenly gonna make you never know they're suddenly gonna make 400 or 500 and at least conditions are improving the pitch has settled a bit [2] the weather stays fair [2] that should make life slightly easier too and in terms of psychology you'd think India have a lot of problems to overcome [1] and then you've got scoreboard pressure to add to that [2] at the moment of course India aren't

anywhere near to thinking about batting yet there are still half the England wickets still to be taken [3]

- D: Yeah, that could take a long time [3] we've seen the lower order for England do very well in the past [2] these two youngsters at the crease at the moment have potential to get three figures each [4] Dhoni still attacking as much as he possibly can though three steps forward short leg short mid-wicket [3] and a single stolen there [2] ball passed behind Buttler no chance of him being out [5]
- C: Well actually Pujara despite the initial misfield does pretty well here the throw's spot on but it had to travel some [1] 40 odd yards or so [3] the only minor thing I would say is actually that the misfield didn't go far it wasn't as if it bobbled five or six yards behind him it was only just behind him [34]
- D: Great effort from India for that last delivery from Ishant Sharma [35] a bit more effort to be a bit shorter it wasn't a bit higher but just a fraction too high [92]
- C: It seemed to be covering about four miles there [7] it's easy for short there gets himself into a position to sort of think about pulling he sees I think the fact that the ball doesn't come off too quickly it was er a slower bounce the ball's now not travelling on the pitch [2] so he has to pull out of the pull shot [1] start to think about a cut shot and then start to think about just giving up altogether [16]
- D: 304 for 5 [38] looking across the city of London [1] it has been a much better day today weather-wise [5] EDGED and found the gap [7]
- C: Found it absolutely perfectly too [3] no one moved [3] three or four men four men in that cordon [2] no one had half a chance even of getting a hand on it [8]
- D: He was very disappointed with the shot [4] Buttler immediately started to kick the ground when he realised that he had played that shot [13] well a bit of confusion as he hit it flying [1] he had to miss he had to hit rather and he missed [2] opportunity for a run if Broad could get up he couldn't [7]
- C: Just a hit would have done it [4] would have done it by about a foot and a half [14]
- D: Another opportunity goes [1] er begging for India [1]
- C: Yeah you saw the apology from Buttler who's acknowledged responsibility I think [35]
- D: Sorry you're not the one we're interested in [7] Sharma's played almost all the spins in the second over [42] waiting for the signal if one comes yes leg-bye according to the umpire [27] oh a lot of good movement there coming in there quite sharply [1] well played 309 for 5

[commercial break 34]

Buttler on 45 Root on 38 partnership is 80 and a change in the commentary box Nasser Hussain is with Ian Botham [4]

- E: There's Ishant another one and in the end it was a fair delivery [1] has he done too much [6] first instinct [3] height as well
- C: Yeah there's always height with Ishant isn't it tall bowler can't believe it [2] had some close ones but not close enough [3] it's the back leg [4] high score that's why it's a good appeal they wanted the on-field decision they didn't get the on-field decision [22]
- E: Well this partnership has stood the ground [2] for England [3] there was a bit of a wobble there [2] when 91 for 2 became 201 for 3 204 for 4 and then 229 for 5 and now they're at over 80 from 187 balls more importantly from England's point of view [1] they lead by 161 [52]
- C: Well there you go [1] clipped it [3] you see Sharma delighted [2] feels relieved I think apart from everything else he's bowled well his figures are good [3] now there's the check on the front foot [2]
- E: He's always close Ishant [2] and that's why Dharma's saying always check they checked on the er previous wicket [1] Ishant Ishant looking to make sure [2] and I think his heel is fine there

C: Just but that's fine [6] he hit it pretty well Nasser [8]

E: Yeah I think they deserve that wicket to be honest India bowled pretty well in that session just Buttler played well he's gone for 45 309 for 6



**A.2** England v India 2<sup>nd</sup> Sept. 2014 ESPN Star Sports (4<sup>th</sup> One Day International of 2014 Test series)  
(16 minutes, 1712 words)

- A: It's the seventh over none for 36 [2]  
 B: So how did he get that easy single [1] just skipped down the pitch [1] put bat to ball you get one down to long [2]  
 A: I've been coming to this part of the world since 1996 playing cricket watching cricket in the last couple of years [1] I think this has been one of the poorer performances of one-day cricket from an English side  
 B: You mean consistently throughout the series  
 A: Consistently [2] I mean in 2002 when England played the NatWest quarter final India got 300 they did manage to get it in 2003 for three one day internationals good scores they went down to the final there at Lord's this is just you know one-way traffic [2] it surprises me this performance [3]  
 B: It's that single again it's an easy single [2] both batsmen looking to play down the ground [2] good footwork 68 required [12]  
 A: A bit of bounce [1] not out says Tim Robinson [2] India need 68 157 deliveries [19]  
 B: Four from the over [2] 140 without loss [3] so Alistair Cook has got to look at this and think that 67 required [1] foregone conclusion to everybody I would think but he's got to try and take some wickets [2] a ten wicket victory is on the cards 67 from 156 India required and not against the clock [2] a bit of dancing [2] and with a whistle there he goes  
 A: I'm amazed to see the amount of Indian supporters in the crowd [3] they have outnumbered the home supporters  
 B: The lads like a dance don't they [11]  
 A: They will be scrambling to come back for the second and that's very good running he makes it easily [4] it takes him on to 80 [2] 20 away from his first one day hundred 91 is his highest and that was against England in Chandigarh and in Mohali [1] hopefully it's the start of a good one day career [2] 73 64 against Bangladesh 56 against Afghanistan so his goal he'll want these numbers to disappear quickly from his scorecard [19] just have a look at this he hit he was pre-determined to hit it mid-on [1] the moment he realised that it was close to his body he just blocked [1] so every batsman in world cricket when it comes to one day cricket plays some pre-determined shots you see the state of the game you see what situation the over is and and make an effort to get the maximum [1] but at the same time be aware to change [2]  
 B: Well he's got it this time it was the shot that he was looking to play and just see here it is difficult to explain in a 50 over game and the big difference is that the Indian batsmen are looking to hit the ball and going to hit it for four [3]  
 A: Very good shot he's trying to pass the man at mid-wicket he's got him out a few times [2] this time he said it's my time you are a yard quicker than what you were last season [commercial break 20]  
 B: Er he doesn't like that he's taken him on Steven Finn [1] 8 from the over [5]  
 A: The Indians want to finish it in a hurry [1] good for us [2] 59 of 152 and there's a wasp here one hundred percent [3]  
 B: [laughter] The wasp has flown they can be very irritable wasps in August in early September [9]  
 A: He will be looking to come back for the second and once again very good running [1] he knew exactly where the fielder was [3] great cricket great positive batting [1]  
 B: Well just with you let's go back to the boundary before and look where he is this 85 or 86 miles an hour big tall fast bowler he's down the pitch he's advancing there go back to England against Kumar 77 miles an hour stay right in the crease gotta come at him

- A: You posed the question of a new ball and an old ball [1] this is an oldish ball it's 25 overs old Bhuvneshwar Kumar nicked it with the old ball that's a better length [2] he's just kept bowling that length right throughout there's still 150 for no loss [1] coming back to Bhuvneshwar Kumar the way England played him I'm not a big fan of doing it straight away [1] first three overs yes you can you can use the speed and not try and bang it especially when you've lost wickets in the morning and it's doing it a bit try and change his length and once it goes past three overs four overs your eyes get it maybe then you can play that shot [2] second 50 coming in at 150 it goes to the third one even quicker [1] 43 [2] England at this stage were 87 for 3 and England 100 er India I beg your pardon 150 for no loss [2] that's been the difference between the sides in this game and right throughout the series [12] he is bowling at 6 an over such a good batting surface [1] the dancers and champions want to appear on TV have a look at them it's pretty this this [2] a new stand it wasn't there 15 years ago when I came here for the first time probably 17 years ago [1] that's the blue press box where we are the commentators' box [2] beautiful bright sunny day [1] the best time to be here [8]
- B: And a change in bowling then Chris Woakes he's just had the one over in over 12 is back into the attack India just need 57 [30] I mentioned earlier before you came that there's another one-day international at the minute South Africa versus Australia Mitchell Marsh when I got here he was 22 of 29 finished off 86 of 51 and so he changed gear he hit Dale Steyn for three consecutive sixes and it's what we were saying just gotta give yourself a chance and then when you get in change gear
- A: Absolutely I'm a big believer in that [1] yes every now and then you will get an absolutely belter of a batting surface like this one in the second innings not the first one not the first half some wickets in the subcontinent they have just suffered they need time more number of times [1] you have to give a little bit of time to settle down 15 20 deliveries is easily [2] makeable at the end once you're set if you lose early wickets you get to 90 for 3 50 for 3 [1] you're playing a catch-up game and that's what's happening to England [1] Alastair Cook needs to go back to his normal game yes there will be a few odd balls that's the way he plays [3] slow delivery [11] it's a good delivery a good slow delivery [1] at the back of it there [2] but completely deceived by it [7]
- B: Improvised [2] Rahane with a one-day international career best he's wanting to go on he's 92 [2]
- A: How good was that shot [2] his best so far had all the time in the world [1] such a good batting surface this is no movement just coming on to him and just helping it along
- B: So Rahane was 3 off 15 deliveries now 92 off 88 [1]
- A: Absolutely vital keeping wickets early in these conditions [2] once again down to third man [3]
- B: It's a lesson this is [2] real champions though they did not have things their own way in recent times India but when you look at the line-up you think they are going to come good [1] we don't see too much in this series not seen much of Dhoni we've not seen much of Jadeja wonderful players when it matters
- A: Yeah they are a good one-day side and they've become a good one-day side because the top order gives them runs gives them good starts when you keep exposing Dhoni you keep exposing Jadeja in the 20<sup>th</sup> over 25<sup>th</sup> over 30<sup>th</sup> over it may not be Dhoni but Jadeja and [2] and you are in trouble in fact England haven't bowled a lot of length in these conditions should have bowled a lot further up 106 for none
- [commercial break 32]
- B: Another bowling change with India just requiring 51 it's been over in a flash has this match Harry Gurney comes back into the attack Pavillion End [2] the crowd er they're just having fun they're enjoying themselves I'm not sure they're watching the cricket they know the result [1] a bit of singing a bit of dancing [2] wondering what they will do

on an evening in Birmingham [3] a few lads dancing about [4] so Rahane he's on 93 [1] 9 fours 4 sixes [21]

- A: That's how good that surface is [2] it was just a push [2] he's such a smooth timer of the cricket ball Aiinkya Rahane whistles off the bat [3]
- B: I wonder if he's going to go the big way [1] one hit [1] he's on 95
- A: Gone for behind hasn't got a one-day hundred yet [1] desperate to get that [3]
- B: You can see er there just the intent that's a no ball so this is going to be a free hit [1] it gets worse for England [1] the intent is I'm going to hit the ball [2]
- A: Hoping that it will get to the other end [2] a free hit [2] what a time to get a free hit when you're on 96 but unfortunately he will be at the non-striker's end [3] fabulous fabulous stuff [3] big no ball [5]
- B: Rahane he's got a free hit he can have a real welly at this [19] OH EVERYONE'S a winner OH what a wave back here WAY WAY back into the crowd [3] oh this is a big shot [3]
- A: If it was my time I wouldn't get out if I missed it [1] I'd keep it in the kitchen sink slow delivery [1] whacked it it's gone all over the wicket boundary
- B: Well this is it the picture that you see at the Pavillion watch the bat lift there FLOW oh [3] he's moving on to 62 [2] what a back lift [1] he's not looking for a single there [11] that'll go down to third man [6]
- A: 11 runs from the over [1] have look at that [1] created room and bang [1] all up the wicket [2] it's gone the distance have a look at the back lift that swing [1] full rotation of the body and right off the middle of the bat [2] take that he's given everything he's had all the frustration of the whole series [2] one down to point and Rahane on from 96
- B: Well Sourav that that free hit the one with the back lift and then the follow through [2] it's gone a long way

**A.3** England v Australia 8<sup>th</sup> Sept. 2015 Skysports2 (3rd One Day International of 2015 Test series)  
(59 minutes, 4642 words)

- A: Think of Pattinson er who's clocking up over 90 miles an hour regularly here and Cummins will do the same Stark probably almost touching 90 [4] easy pace [2]
- B: Two fielders outside of the circle third man but the final leg is really square just back with square leg [42] away this time look at this fast OUTFIELD [2] WOW [3]
- A: Yeah [1] judging from what we've seen so far you'd think there's a decent chance of this being a high-scoring at bat it's a fine outfield as evidenced there looks rapid there's just a bit of swing for Pattinson the only thing so far we've seen that's in the bowler's favour [2] a few green marks on his back there Alex Hales which suggests he's been spending a bit of time on the indoor machine [4]
- A: Two overs then seven without a loss [2] exciting pace from Pattinson [3] right up there 92 miles an hour that last delivery [17]
- B: I asked Eoin Morgan at the toss the decision to bring in Bairstow for Buttler rested in whether they considered playing Sam Billings behind the stumps who is obviously in the squad [1] Bairstow has been brought in from outside [2] he said that the selectors have made the decision before the start of the series that if there's an injury or if Buttler was dropped rested whatever and Bairstow would be the replacement and not Billings so Billings is only in the squad as a batsman [5]
- A: Must win game here to stay in the series for England two nil down against an excellent team world champions Australia three changes today [5] if you watched the game yesterday at the Oval [2] [...] played fabulously
- B: Masterful wasn't it [3]
- A: Two good semi-finals I felt just sorry the final it's a shame er I thought it was a shame that domestic players sorry international players couldn't play back in the day you would just go from a test match the next day and you'd play in the quarter final semi-final and you'd really want to play
- B: Straight down to third [4] still a shame [...] and not just for the supporters and the players not just Jason Roy [1] Hales and Taylor others as well [2] great great games to play if you can in the cup semi-final [9]
- A: Good fielding position in modern cricket just behind square on the leg side rather than quite fine
- B: Yeah especially for Jason Roy who plays that kind of flip off his hip very well length just back of a length he knocks it around just behind square so rather than have an orthodox fine leg it's er almost in a deep backwards square leg position [4]
- A: Doing well for these matches I think if you look at the forecast there's the three matches still to be played there's this one then Headingley on Friday Old Trafford on Sunday [...] to get the weather this time of year get nippy tonight nippy last night [1]
- B: And it's not always like this up here September
- A: Well September can be just
- B: Balmy sunshine
- A: It can be just on the turn [3]
- B: He ordained it Paul Allott Mr. Old Trafford ordained the sun to shine [laughter] [2]
- A: Three overs done 12 for none
- B: The whole pavilion's been revamped re-styled [3] parts of it still there the towers [1] Paul Allott's on the right there Gareth Shaw that's his mate on the left [laughter] Big Walt there has got his mates with him [3] familiar face at Old Trafford Neil Fairbrother there [4] now that's hit for five [2] he'll be back there at square and just gets there to him [7] there's another look at him Reddie [3]

- A: Loves his football loves his cricket [2]  
 B: Like he loves his wine [8]  
 A: Oh that's a good shot through mid-wicket under control [2]  
 B: Well Jason Rose looked in good touch in this series so far and he'll be saying to himself don't waste this good form [1] not always that you come out and drive the ball as sweetly as you did in the last game and has started to here hoping to go on and make a really significant score looks in good touch [8]  
 A: Get a single it was a terrific interview last night with Sanghar he got 166 50 overs and just as a matter of fact he said yeah I played sensibly for 50 overs long time to bat 50 [8]  
 B: Yeah tempo is the thing particularly for somebody like Jason Bride who's not played that many games but is under the impression that it's up to him to force the pace at the start of the innings  
 A: Later after the semi-finals is a great day out September 19th is the final the 50 over final Royal London late in the season I'm just recalling when we used to go down annually to play a final down with the boys apparently it was the first week in September [4] Gloucestershire versus Surrey in that final sure it'll be a cracking game [4] four overs 20 without loss.  
 [commercial break 45]  
 B: Roy 11 Hales 6 just one slip now [46]  
 A: I bet these two at the crease have talked about the timing it's a high pitch it's not absolutely racing through [27] it's just outside leg stump [12]  
 B: Patterson has swung the ball but Stark hasn't [2] real inswing from er Stark that pitching well outside leg stump just on the angle [13]  
 A: To the three down towards the Point always to the Point standing room only no seats up there [3]  
 B: Pitched and out of play similar to when Aaron Finch put one on top of the Point last year I think he was a bit further over towards it to where we are now [2]  
 A: I'd say it's where the next one-day international will be played [1] he's homesick [5]  
 B: He did it two in two Aaron Finch right on the top bit the top bit of red at the Point [2] should be time for another point shouldn't there there'll be a bit more development going on going to the other side of the pavilion I think over that side there's gonna be a hotel complex [2] in time [11] 24 without loss  
 A: I trust we won't be losing the other stand [2]  
 B: It's gone the stand that's it it used to be it used to er  
 A: An architectural delight that's it  
 B: What did it use to be it used to be the Red Row Suite and of course back in the day that would be yeah it was in line with the pitch it's been turned around the other way [24]  
 A: They're just timing this aren't they [3]  
 B: Now Hales has hit the field as well the couple that he has timed he's timed a couple of drives one has gone straight to cover one straight to mid-off just hit the field [2] find the gap [2] the second slip has gone out now an extra man in the covers on the off side [4]  
 A: It's him again just for a single [4] we had that bizarre dismissal of Ben Stokes it's still raging on in social media I'm thinking of other modes of dismissal which might be unusual and watching today for timed out [2] you've got three minutes to get in at the fall of the wicket [3]  
 B: Have you ever known anybody to be timed out  
 A: No but I think it's coming [laughter]  
 B: I don't think I've played in a game where somebody was timed out you always have that nightmare don't you as a batsman dream of scrambling around with your pads on not ready in time every batsman who's ever lived has had that dream [2]  
 A: They've got three minutes as soon as that wicket falls I'm gonna put a clock on it three

minutes he's got three minutes to get from that top wherever he is the balcony down onto the pitch [4] he doesn't have to get to the middle it's just as he gets onto the pitch and then somebody if he's three minutes if he's late he can shout how's that and he's got to turn around and go back

B: You can't have it all you're always complaining the game's too slow [4]

A: At times get on with it [11]

B: Swoosh [2] 18 balls for 7 just a boundary for Alex Hales strike rate of 38 just step up on that but as we said 50 over's a long long time quite [4] he hasn't quite got going yet [11]

A: Quiet start 27 without loss [9] not much to report so far easy-paced pitch [2] the crowd content but quiet [6] all the knee-bee sweaters later on it will get chilly chilly at night-time [5] majestic

B: Yes it's Jason Roy who looks the better touch of the two at the moment

A: Just incredible [2] dismissed this through mid-wicket [3] sumptuously dismissed [3] Richard Starc will send one in a bit short and a bit quicker that's the question again [14]

B: And it's sensible because after the pool shot Smith took the slip out put in the mid-wicket but there's no slip in place now and Roy knows that Starc is not swinging the ball and the angle there just going across him and he just held that down fine to the third man so er good smart batting from Jason Roy [48] [...] a bit slower

A: Feels so good for Jason Roy when it hits him [20] 4 more [7]

B: It's lovely this I just had the impression that Starc was a little wider on the crease there certainly the ball ended up wide to Jason Roy [2] because it was so full so smart he didn't really try and hit the ball all he did was just er open the face of the bat open the blade and run it away behind square again using that pace that Starc has got [4]

A: Left the ball in the outside [2] second seam in this over

B: Contrasting Roy 32 from 22 striking at 145 Hales 7 from 19 striking at 36 [14] 17 from the seventh over England at 44 without loss

[commercial break 45]

C: And England needed that last over Hales just needs to find the middle of the bat [2] he'll soon catch up he's got off to a flyer looks in better nick [61] for Hales is that on a couple of occasions he's been caught in the ring hasn't he a mid-wicket caught cover [1] he's a little bit concerned about taking the aerial route [2] six people in the ring now four off two leg [12] died a bit was that a slower ball bouncer Beefy or just didn't come off the pitch right

D: I was gonna ask you the same question Athers I'm not sure

C: I asked first

D: All right [laughter] OK I think it might be a slower ball with the fingers it's hard to tell from there isn't it usually with fingers it's spread but it's just died [13] [...] is building here on Alex Hales he's been around a while as far as domestic one-day cricket so he'd been in this situation before no need to panic the other lad's going well

C: Exactly you can't both be smashing it or it can happen but it doesn't happen all the time when one guy's going well just play for him you'll pick up the boundaries it's easier the longer you're there [3]

D: It's the only thing I'd say about England is that they haven't ticked it over as far as ones and twos there's lots of boundaries there's already been six boundaries here but just in the series so far rotate to strike being busy that's where they miss Joe Root a little bit very busy cricketer 44 for none a maiden [3]

C: You know it's not as if he's in some bad nick he's just hit the field a few times Hales [12]

D: 32 dots in eight overs that's something er England will have to look at [5] next thing they'll have to look at is a bit of spin into power play Ashton Agar got his cap his ODI cap from Tom Moody earlier today [2] more than two years after his test cap which also his debut test cap came against England Trent Bridge he made 98 didn't he Beef and he

played beautifully

- C: Yeah he was very unlucky as well to get out the way he did [4] what a cricketer there he is Tom Moody man of the moment [3]
- D: A big man as well Tom Moody handing it over [2] to Wisdom [2] rolling in the powerplay mid-off and mid-wicket back [2] that's through the outfield and really quick first ball in ODI cricket and it goes for four [4] there he is the 21-year-old seems to have less grip though
- C: I think Tom Moody told him short wide one is the best way to go to Roy up front [3] better [3] Alex Hales played that brilliant knock in the T20 game in Sri Lanka [2] smashed it everywhere sorry it was in Bangladesh against Sri Lanka but he plays spin well a good sweeper and slog sweeper of the ball [21] 50 partnership and a good start from England only these two if not both need to go big
- D: It's a good surface as it always is up here [39]
- C: Little bit of grip just holding in the surface in the one that Roy cut you have to wait for [15] that man at deep mid-wicket so I also keep strike 52 for none here's Nick Knight
- E: Thanks you have days don't you as an opening where you do find the middle of the bat straightaway and you have days where you don't and Alex Hales is having one of those sort of days I want to just take you back though to the first game 'cause I think he's aware of this [1] this is the short ball probably just gets away with it and goes for six and then he follows up with the dismissal where he's always looking to hook up he has problems there so he loses his wicket on that occasion but as you're comparing it to today he may be having to work really hard but I think that's in the back of his mind he's now not gonna be suckered into the poor shot on the up with his hands high there you can see he's trying now to hit the ball down so he's reacting to what happened in that first game and he's just having this sort of a day at the moment where he's just finding the field he's a pretty orthodox player if you watch him set up he looks to hit down the ground so he's in that phase now once he's got nine off 28 and we're just gonna have to stick at it in a way Jason Roy's helping him along don't worry about Jason all right just go along with the ride just look at the scoreboard in its entirety you got 52 don't worry so much about your contribution it'll come
- D: Yeah absolutely er it's a good spot that he does play that full hook shot from down to up Australia especially with the pace of Cummins will try him out every now and then there's only one man out there he does come into test match cricket Hales who some believe he might there'll be two men out for him [8] so we're the final over the first powerplay it's been a good start from England [1]
- E: Yes it's well you know don't lose your shape he's trying to hit the ball a bit harder he hasn't got any runs it'll come it really will [51]
- D: GONE CLIPPED IT IN THE AIR that's three times now he's been caught in the ring and the change to Cummins has worked
- E: You just got the feeling something's going to give [4] he's worked this through that mid-wicket area it's pretty full he fails to move [1] disappointing disappointing his teammates will be disappointed but they're delighted they got the break-through [2] and Hales [1] he has to go for nine 52 for one
- [commercial break 63]
- Made two starts in the two games of the series couple of 40's 98 came at the MCG in the first game of the World Cup 38 not out he's a good player very good player [36]
- D: No real change in field there was the option of moving another slip in [2] the harsh days of short mid-wicket where the catch was taken [9] felt something had to give really a lot of ducked balls Hales was struggling kept finding the field up eventually he did try and take the aerial route clipped it straight to mid-wicket so that's two caught mid-wicket and a caught cover in the series field placement as well from Steve Smith [3] made the

- change earlier in the over actually brought Marsh in catching swapped him with a man on the boundary better off than on [5] have a look at the three dismissals and fails in the series caught mid-wicket short mid-wicket in the first game for cover catcher and the captain here again today so something for Hales to work on up and over the net someone might shout good shot and again you're out [6] Roy on the other hand just nails it for four along the ground end of the power play last pull goes for four 57 for 1
- E: Roy just playing very very well [2] it's the timing [1] just seems to find a way through the field nicely timed [1] to the wicket that's Hales bogged down [15]
- D: So one man one more allowed out in the circle as Steve Point goes out throughout the powerplay [17]
- E: And that was the last four of the powerplay dispatched through extra cover and we're 42 from 27 [7] that was the problem isn't it I think for Hales it's nine coming off 31 deliveries the pressure was building [1] and in the end he succumbed [43]
- D: Oh nice spin there [1]
- E: Fabulous place to play cricket this is you get pace and bounce for the seam bowlers and then your spinner comes on and he just tweaks one [3]
- D: Anderson this ball is only what in its sixth over really a ball at each end so [1] you'd think it would skid on but no that grip nice bounce as well you always get here
- E: Good for two good [23]
- D: Just keep one for one [3]
- E: Yeah it is a good ground to play cricket on now we've turned it around as well we've moved the square and remember it used to run the other way so no problems with the sun well it turned up [2] so yeah it is a good ground to play cricket on quick outfield [1] good for all the balls you bowl well you get rewarded if you bat well there's runs to be had [3] is that good ground for you Ness
- D: [laughter] I knew that was coming [laughter] [2] not particularly Beef no the sun was always in the eyes batting the other way around but we've got a million facing this way [24] one thing that Australia have done well in this series is work on the ball saw earlier Nick Knight did a piece on how er they've used the middle of the pitch a lot of those deliveries will be cross seam scuffing up one side of the ball hence by the end a bit of reverse swing so the likes of Starc have come in not massive reverse swing but just enough England haven't found any of [2] EDGE no slip in slip was taken out because Roy's in such good nick [7]
- E: That's a genuine edge 91 miles an hour not nice for the slip [3] I suppose he deserves that 'cause he's pushed the fielder back he's been aggressive [2] moves him to 49 [3]
- D: 50 er for Jason Roy and he'll come back he'll have to hurry but he'll come back good running moves to 51 in just 34 deliveries don't mess with form he's in really good nick and he'll say to himself now go big [5]
- E: And that's what England haven't done in this series I mean apart from Eoin Morgan in there [3] not caught [2] set their stall out now for a big score in the first innings put the pressure on the Australians scoreboard pressure [10]
- D: He'll enjoy the conditions Jason Roy brought up at the Oval similar surface a little bit of bounce a little bit of turn but also a similar place to bat with a quick outfield [54] some bounce again his finger's down at the side of the ball 69 for 1 [5] good to watch from the moment he's walked out there he's found the middle of the bat he quite deliberately ran down that one [3] that area that was a beautiful shot it really was timed well placed well
- E: Very good that was a genuine edge gets away with it [1] taking the slip out because he forced them to by scoring quickly back to that mid-wicket area just square of the wicket [11]
- D: I just wonder if England thought of the option of Moeen Ali at number three the only problem with Moeen Ali coming in at three would be you'd probably have to move



Morgan down to five Morgan's such a good player you want him coming down at four Moeen Ali would have batted seven or eight for Worcester Warwickshire batting out of position [1] also having a left-hander in with a left arm spinner hitting with the spin they'd have to maybe turn to Maxwell a bit more flexible with batting line up also move Stokes down a bit which is I think good if you look at that line up the all-rounders are coming in a little bit early there Stokes and Bairstow get us a proper batsman Ali I know he is an all-rounder get Ali up there are options for England [6]

E: The thing is Bairstow's had a great summer hasn't he with the bat [...] I've seen Stokes has looked in good nick most of the summer [1] difficult

D: I just like the lad's batting you can't have it every time but lad's batting in a position that they're used to batting for their county the role that they're used to that they know what they're doing finishers [1] half stopped they'll come back for one [59] 75 for 1 [33] two overs for Cummins he has the wicket 1-13 Agar three overs just been milked after that boundary off his first delivery Australia made three changes no Warner Finch came in for him Pattinson came in for Coulter-Nile and Shane Watson who announced his retirement from Test Match cricket this week he's got a calf strain Agar came in for Watson across his stumps well stopped that would have been four they'll come back for two anyway but at least it's saved two runs

E: Yeah he did well didn't he he's a big unit [6]

D: There's been lots of those deliveries from Cummins in particular [6] did well certainly saved a couple of runs [11]

E: One of the rare occasions he's found the fielder

D: Smith's done that cunning ploy hasn't he just when you don't notice the fact that he edged one in the over and there was no slip in he just waits a few deliveries sneaks the slip in there waiting for the edge now [5]

E: He'll go through the air at mid-wicket now [3]

D: Up and over an example of how you take being caught in the ring out of the equation make your mind up to go up and over early

E: Yeah you're right no intentions did he of playing this any other way trying to get on top of it there you go no one catching out there safe and well played [105]

[commercial break 30]

D: Welcome come back after 82-1 no problem with the weather up here beautiful conditions change in the com box [3] Holding and Gower [13]

F: It's that little bit of turn again [12] look at this though it's that little bit of grip Roy just controls it OK though [20] inside edge thick outside edge perfectly safe but the evidence is there there is that grip and if you're just getting in as James Taylor is and you need to respect that don't you think [4]

G: Or get very close to the pitch you certainly don't want to play against the spin unless you can smother that spin [8]

F: Well that was full enough picked up two easily enough as well [2] yeah if it's that ball you can get away with it if it's just sort of a half-volley sort of natty then [2] he needs to be thinking about that there is the man at long off so if you just want to nudge it down the ground straightish it goes through mid-off alright and leads to sort of thinking about playing on-side there for against the turn [6] exactly there [7]

G: Coulter's dropped the spin [laughter] I know it's [1] yeah I didn't think he had the patience [laughter]

F: [laughter] See a little bit of advice now and again [25] OH he's got him [1] hunched it straight to er sort of cover tried not to overhit it and Glen Maxwell just palmed it up catcher calls catcher heads and to the rebound [2]

G: Willy Agar gets his first oh yeah wicket perhaps he would have been better off really bumping it hitting it hard over extra cover he wasn't trying to get it down to long-off so

he would've been safe if he'd lobbed it a long distance he didn't get quite as many as he had hoped himself Jason Roy

[commercial break 60]

F: The games through the series so far Jason Roy has started well played beautifully today and he's gone in the 60s again 63 this time it's the major sharer of [...] 86 for 2 and Morgan comes to crease [8] there's some time left 15 overs exactly since that second wicket fell [3] but the lessons England need to learn from the first two games are the lessons that have been learned before and have no doubt talked about at length before are that now at this stage in the middle overs they need partnerships good partnerships don't want to fall away as they have done in the previous two games chasing was a little bit different on setting a target of batting first but the effects can be the same because if you lose wickets in the middle then you just lose them everywhere [...] go down leg-side is the obvious response

G: We've had some very good international cricket here at Old Trafford [2] he got past the first man he hit it cleanly this is perhaps just a chip and follows looking

F: I suppose without the first pitch he's trying too hard trying too hard it's the time of course he's been trying to ease to keep it under control and he's just done it perfectly could not have hit it

G: Again the backwards position that David Lloyd talked about earlier comes into play normal taking it having at least two runs [31] oh at short leg comes in [2] two men out deep as well so they know what the plan is at some stage [5] so all the fielders on the onside are there for a specific purpose the short ball whether they want to try and fend it off or whether he tries the hook shot two men in the deep it doesn't get enough bat on it [2] no one else could be brought into play he doesn't play the shot very well [2]

F: Beautiful shot nothing wrong with that [5] Cummings apparently can't understand it got this field that has one thing in mind short leg breach the bad angle those men there you get this full-on volley just outside off-stumps knowing Morgan he's gonna say thanks for that I'm not sure there's another one coming soon though [4] that's more like it as far as bowler and catcher I'm sure are concerned good bouncer actually [3]

G: I can understand what Cummins was trying to do though there's also a slip so he was thinking OK the field is obvious at some point you will be getting a short ball but let me try and pitch one up a bit of movement away from the left-hander he's a right-hander so it's easy to push the ball across the body of the left-hander and see if I can get an outside edge he was just a bit too full

F: Oh that's a good bounce that is good pace now it's what's known as a belated appeal not convincing and unlikely therefore to get much of a response [3] listen to them call good pace

**A.3** England v Australia 13<sup>th</sup> Sept. 2015 Skysports2 (5<sup>th</sup> One Day International of 2015 Test series)  
(13 minutes, 1446 words)

- A: 38 so Australia strong favourites but in this game we'd like to say you never know so that's the situation let's take you back now to the commentary box waiting there Tom Moody and Nasser Hussein [3]
- B: Very odd day so far here at Old Trafford everyone thought it would be trial by spin on what is generally a flat pitch well 11 12 wickets have gone to er seamers to Agar with the one wicket of Reece Topley and it's been a very low-scoring affair 138 plays 36 for 2 Australia have to bat 10 overs 'cause they were so good with the ball bowling England out quickly and cheaply about 10 overs before they got themselves a bit of lunch [1] that's Taylor captaining England in the absence of Eoin Morgan he will realise that they need wickets that's the only way they're gonna win this game bowl Australia out keep catches in they have two they need eight more [13] good crowd here it was a good atmosphere just before lunch and er the England players were really up for it they've not given up on this game yet Australia need just 103 more [1] this will be the start of the second powerplay four fielders out how will [7] Australia go about this
- C: Well I'd like to think very positively just before lunch their ten overs those tricky little ten overs but I still feel it's an opportunity to really stamp their authority on the chase being a small one but I would imagine er George Bailey and Aaron Finch will give a quick look and then to put the foot on the gas to try to break the back of this title only 103 required [1] guarantee hé will [9]
- B: Wickets have er fallen Willey with one that one went across Burns and then a tired shot really from Steve Smith off Wood who's bowled well 2 overs 1 for 4 [20]
- C: We saw David Willey swing the ball up at Leeds and that was really a recipe for his success up there he got great swing and went quite a distance he's not quick he's just medium pace he's around that 80 [1] miles an hour so he has to swing it really it's his er main weapon if it's not swinging er he has to resort to maybe possible changes of pace [8] it does look like er [1] the honeymoon is over with regards to the swing of the delivery similar with the Australian innings Mitchell Starc brought the ball to swing in his first three or four overs and he was deadly [1] following with a good pace but shaking the ball back into the right-handers [1] quite often with these white balls they only swing for a couple of overs [15]
- B: Looks like it's gonna be Wood from the Pavilion End he's getting loose nice little spell just before lunch [19] Willey starts with a maiden 36 for 2 [12]
- C: So a bit of a look for George Bailey Finch now on strike to knock Wood who bowled with good pace before the lunch break interesting listening to Michael Holding talking about his run-up [3] how explosive he is as a bowler and he is concerned about the fact that er he may not have longevity in the game if he [1] he needs to ask so much of his body just at the crease not taking advantage of er his run-up more [16]
- B: Australia have two tests coming up in Bangladesh in a couple of weeks' time no Warner in that he's gonna be injured with that broken thumb we'll talk about who England will be open to batting with in the UAE who do you think will come in at the top of the order for Australia you're shaking your head [laughter]
- C: Understandably [2] you look I think one that's being talked about er and quite rightly so er is Sean Marshall will be coming into the opening slot [3] he opened in the West Indies before the Ashes for the two Test matches there that Australia had I'd imagine he'll come in and partnering him I think er Joe Burns was possibly on an audition here the other game and he didn't do himself any favours young Cameron Bancroft is a young right-hander from West Australia that has impressed a lot of people in Sheffield Shield cricket

- the last couple of seasons and had a good tour to India just recently so it wouldn't surprise me to see him at the top of the order [7]
- B: He's down at the non-striker's end lots of changes forced changes for Australia obviously Clark retired Rodgers retired Watson retired Haddon retired Harris retired it's half the side really what will they do with Voges so many decisions to make
- C: I think with Voges they'll stick with him I think given that they've lost so much experience Voges has got a lot of cricketing experience he may not have international experience but he has a lot of cricketing experience [4] he captains er the West Australian side so he's got leadership skills he's a natural leader he's a good player of spin as well so going to Bangladesh that will be important I'd imagine they'll stick with him another one that will probably come into the reckoning will be definitely come into the reckoning will be Usman Khawaja the last time he actually I think I'm correct in saying he played an international game was here at Old Trafford where he had a shocking decision [2] which was er his last innings [3]
- B: Short arm jab there was a short leg in it it just sailed past his helmet to be honest for four
- C: It was really telegraphed this set-up from Wood with the short leg in place he was always going to bang one in short but Bailey was nearly tuned back waiting for it it was well played got on top of it early kept it down hit with great power [9]
- B: Five runs from that over 41 for 2 [11] England managed to bat just 33 overs nothing wrong with the surface might have been a little bit sticky it sort of nibbled a bit but nothing more than that lots of lbws Mitch Marsh bowling stump to stump very close to the stump's line bowler he's got three lbws last wicket lasted 10 overs from that 33 [2] Taylor feels it's time for a bit of spin [5]
- C: I think it's a good call too England in desperate need of wickets if they're gonna get back into this contest and Rashid has been impressive yeah he's bowled some poor deliveries waist-high full tosses a couple half trackers but in and around that there's been some good deliveries he's turned the ball he's got a good wrong 'un good change of pace he's a good cricketer [1]
- B: Yeah this will be a good contest George Bailey in particular has used his feet to the spinners Rashid hasn't really got him away but he's been using his feet a lot Finch er interesting to see how he goes against Rashid Yorkshire to YORKSHIRE [1] Finch gets the first ball away for four [3]
- C: Australia's been very aware with er Rashid that if they can put him under pressure early in his spell it just [1] makes it hard for him to settle in on a good line and length and therefore you know a good rhythm which is so important when you're bowling out of the back of the hand it's hard enough as it is you know the batsman is after you
- B: He's gone after that one THERE IS A MID-OFF THERE BUT IT SAILS OVER HIS HEAD FOR SIX [3]
- C: That brings a 50 up for the Australians Finch just fetching a wide slow leg break reach out for it slap it over mid-off it's brute power from Finch [10]
- B: Googly good comeback from Rashid it doesn't look like the Aussies want to hang around it's been a long tour they want to finish off quickly gives Rashid a chance though [21] and a wrong 'un I think it was picked by Bairstow he just didn't grab it [7] back for three the umpires might check the fielding from Topley [3]
- C: You said you think it may have been picked by Bairstow but I know it wasn't picked by Finch [laughter] yeah good effort there from Reece Topley down there he's a big man long way to fall [10]
- B: That was picked by Bailey the wrong 'un [2] three wrong 'uns out of five so far from Rashid [8] and another with only googlies 54 for 2 [10]
- C: Your brute power from Finch [2] the foundation of his game is great strength [18]
- B: Two men now on the hook one of the slips comes out a short leg is gone

## **B Cricket on the radio** (54 minutes, 10,000 words)

### **B.1** England v India 15<sup>th</sup> Aug. 2014 BBC Radio 5 Live (5<sup>th</sup> Test of 2014 Test series) (26 minutes, 5106 words)

- A: Running through the crease and you have to say to him listen that's not gonna cut it and Raymond would often say John I want four overs flat down I don't want six or seven I want four you're my wicket taking bowler four two or three loose ones now give it everything there's a difference it may be five miles an hour seven miles an hour look how we talk about that is it Kumar for India
- B: Sure
- A: He's gone from 82 to about 77 [1] I mean I've seen spinners bowl as quick as that I mean that's why he's he's not effective
- B: Anderson in now to Dhoni Dhoni hit on the pad Anderson bowled three big away swingers Dhoni had left alone and then this one jagged back up the seam going down leg in the end [1]
- A: So I gave you the point cool man it was brilliant at Lord's nicking it wasn't he a little green top nicked it 82-3 miles
- B: OK
- A: He got to Old Trafford and he was like 70 odd miles-an-hour he was totally inoffensive as a bowler
- B: I'm gonna stop you there for one second because I think that [1] er although the general principle of bowl hard and hit the pitch is normally the right one as Anderson is in now and bowls and Dhoni defends and gets away with it inside edge to square leg who fields er it's Robson end of Anderson's over 43 for 5 two maidens to start the afternoon session there are some pitches and you'll know this far better than me uncovered pitches where at the phrase you kiss the top
- A: Yes yes
- B: And Lord's on the first couple of days you actually didn't want to hit the pitch too hard it sounds ridiculous but sometimes if you just pitch it up and bowl that bail length Kumar style 80 miles-an-hour and I think it's certainly disorientated being the bowlers who aren't used to that sort of green top then they went to Southampton and they've taken a lot of stick as you've just been describing and they're all like right we're back on a sort of dry flat-ish style pitch and we're gonna do what we do best we're obviously gonna just bowl back of the length channel English sort of classic test match cricket and they got back into rhythm
- A: And they did have a big score to bowl with
- B: Yeah
- A: And they did have lot go their way with Cook dropped at slip on 15 Bell given not out on nought
- B: Broad new over wide will it be given a wide will it no just gets away with it no shot for Binny
- A: Things started to go for them didn't it
- B: Sure
- A: A little bit and again I think they got complacent their cricket was poor Dhoni wasn't up to the mark captain Seethorp where's the captain you know spread out you know when England were plundering runs second innings is he still had three slips [laughter] I mean you thought what the hell's going on I mean [1] you know there is er [1] everybody has different views on things but not when they're plundering runs still three slipsers
- B: Broad in now bowls very short bouncer well taken from Buttler [laughter] Stuart Broad has bowled nearly a wide down the outside now nearly a wide down the leg side so he's

- got away with both 43 for 5 still not a run in this afternoon's session and Paul Kemp has emailed in trying to list the now Geoffrey don't look so I'm gonna test you in a second
- A: Oh go on then
- B: Listing the first class grounds in Yorkshire Headingley Scarborough Prammel Lane Abbey Dale Sheffield Bradford Middlesbrough Hull and now I'm stuck which I know that one the now I'm stuck ground
- A: You're stuck you're stuck what about Barnsley
- B: Ooh swish and a miss from Binny terrible shot one of his flat-footed plunges
- A: What about Saville Park Dewsbury you've got them [2] where is he
- B: I've got a few making me with some prize winning radio coming up where Geoffrey goes through the greatest grounds
- A: There's one at er Leeds long before right early was it Hunslet we played
- B: Don't look at me Geoff even though I have Yorkshire lineage from my grandparents
- A: I'll give you a few was it Hunslet somewhere in Leeds we only played one match there so I'm thinking right it's might've been two but I think it was one [laughter] yeah it's one of the suburbs
- B: Broad in now down leg side and Binny doesn't hit it but it hits his pad and one more to the total well you must have got a slight inside edge before the pad here is the list no it's been taken away again they're trying to test Geoffrey some more all right what have we got here Eckland Park Argyle Street Army Ground Centervale Clifton Park Ground College Grove Collingham and Linton Creek Club Ground Bramal New Ground Dewsbury Savile Ground Fartown Ground
- A: Huddersfield I've played there Huddersfield
- B: Firm Park Great Horton Road Hall Park Ground
- A: Great Horton Road
- B: Hyde Park Ground
- A: Is that Linthorpe Road
- B: Mount Pleasant
- A: Why are you giving me all of these
- B: Anyway I've run out of time
- A: I think somebody's guessing here
- B: Broad in now and there's no shot outside of the off-stump Buttler takes I'm afraid at this point I'm just reading out places I've absolutely no idea
- A: No idea there's Hull and Argyle Road
- B: It's just a list of cricket grounds in Yorkshire
- A: Yeah that's not right
- B: This is unverified INFORMATION I want a fact checker I want this New Yorker style OK Aiden's responsible for this list I'd like to point out not there's been no official verification Aiden of that list
- A: No I know that's not right
- B: I want that going through a much more rigorous fact-checking team at the back of the office here
- A: I played at Huddersfield I once got lost me contact lenses
- B: Broad in now bowls and Dhoni leaves alone outside the off-stump Andrew Sampson who's a man who speaks sense he's grasping the world
- A: Well sometimes
- C: Sometimes sometimes yeah not too often Hunslet
- A: Hunslet
- C: 12th of July 1869
- A: Yeah
- C: Yorkshire

- A: I didn't play in that one you know
- C: Didn't you [laughter] were you injured
- A: I was injured [laughter] dropped and left out
- C: [laughter] Yorkshire beat Cambridgeshire I'm sure you'll be pleased to know
- A: Did they
- C: By innings and 256 256 runs
- B: So Cambridgeshire were a first class county then
- C: They were for a little while yeah
- B: OK I didn't know that and when did they cease to become re relinquish first class status
- C: I'll tell you now
- B: I didn't know there had been more counties than they're had been a contraction that was news to me
- C: It was obviously before the official [...]
- B: Sure sure sure
- A: It was only 1873 when the official county championship was started but teams were playing like Yorkshire were formed in 1863 and there were about five or six counties formed before Yorkshire so I mean they were all playing
- C: Anderson oh beautiful ball sorry to interrupt Geoffrey it was such a good ball just outside off-stump and defeated Binny's defensive shot 44 for 5 and we've had three overs and one ball off for lunch and only one run scored so far
- A: They're not good enough to nick them are they when they bowl like that [2]
- C: It is amazing the the tradition of the country championship think about [2] how long it's been played it's absolutely extraordinary as a sports competition as a discreet and proud competition with incredible history [1] Anderson in now bowls I think he did leave that one
- A: And here's one for you in the first about 90 years it were played after 1873 I think we won 30 of the championships
- C: I was gonna say I thought we
- A: Get that one in YEAH I WAS GETTING THAT ONE IN YEAH [laughter]
- B: Geoffrey I thought you were gonna give me a chance then to say
- A: ONE FOR THE YORKIES [laughter] we haven't been so good afterwards though I accept that
- C: David Mortimer has a list which I think is right Headingley Sheffield Bradford Scarborough Hull Harrogate Huddersfield Middlesbrough Sheffield the second Dewsbury Bradford Halifax Anderson in now and again big away swing an offense and a miss e:r Barnsley Holbeck Middlesbrough Hunslet Wakefield Hull again Horsforth York and Castleford there you go that's a lot of first class grounds in one county isn't it
- A: Swatters car at Middlesbrough réally er I know there's about 20
- B: Cambridge have played first class cricket between 1857 and 1871
- C: OK thank you Andrew I've got two very highly technical conversations going on in two directions this is challenging Anderson in now bowls and Binny wants a single sent back by MS Dhoni I've got Andrew checking out the history of Cambridge Cricket Club I've got Geoffrey checking out all the grounds where cr first class cricket was played in Yorkshire and out in the middle India struggling to get a run
- A: Not difficult for somebody with your education
- C: Don't know about that I'm feeling stretched to the limit
- A: [laughter]
- C: Feeling stretched to the limit feeling stretched to the limit and it's not an easy time for batting let me tell you Anderson and Broad are bowling and grey clouds overhead and every run feels like a victory for India here's Anderson who bowls and Binny once again plays and misses how many player misses have there been since lunch seven or eight

- A: [laughter] How many has he hit [laughter] I tell you there's about two where I see [1] he'll never nick these the lad look he's a modern day international cricketer a young kid come in what cricket has he had since he last played an international match he has no chance to play on a pitch like this against one of the world's leading great bowlers and on a surface which is perfect for him that type of English surface how can the kid be expected to get runs he hasn't done any cricket whatsoever
- C: Here's Anderson again and Binny does does hit this one it goes to straight to Point and that's the end of the over a maiden 44 for 5 three maidens and one over yielding one run is the running total after lunch here [1] at The Oval after England won the toss decided to bowl good decision I had a chat to a few people in the England camp before here beforehand and I think most people felt that bowling first was gonna be the likely option and good decision from Alastair Cook
- A: Good decision [2] well listen if you're an opening batsman and they decided to bat you should have hit him on the top of his head with a bat what are you talking about good decision let's be real
- C: Well I don't know look at the corner look at the no Geoffrey The Oval can be a good place to bat
- A: No no
- C: It's a sensible decision it can be a good place to bat
- A: Oh no not like that look at the colour [1] look at the colour [1] look at the overcast sky
- C: The sun was just poking out it could've backfired I thought it was a good decision
- A: And pigs might fly [1] [laughter] I know when I want to bat and when I don't
- C: [laughter] Broad starts a new over bowls to MS Dhoni leaves outside of off-stump he's watched carefully outside off-stump MS Dhoni
- A: Oh [1] look it's difficult I feel for Dhoni's been playing every week and it's difficult for him but I feel for the kids like that guy at the other end and the modern day youngster like him who's not in the side regularly it's a nightmare for him they get no no games in between to get any practice just go to the nets then they're going to come out and play and even if it was a flat pitch it's not easy then you come and play in these conditions and it's impossible [3]
- C: Broad in again ball's to Dhoni who once again watchfully leaves outside the off-stump
- A: And it's got total crazy administrators have got so sucked into having that much cricket they need all of the money they can get from television radio sponsorship advertising everything to keep up the game in all of the first-class avenues it's become a vicious circle hasn't it
- C: Er
- A: They don't know where to stop they know they're playing too much
- C: Er
- A: They know it's no good for kids like Binny and you practise between tests but nobody knows how to stop it anymore
- C: Broad in now Dhoni plays one of his extraordinary shots a bottom-handed whip which he manages to time unto his left toe which he is now wiggling in a most uncomfortable manner [3]
- A: It's like trying to take tell footballers which is going to start out tomorrow [2] well hang on years ago I who used to go watch Man United every other Saturday because that's all they played at home
- C: Yeah
- A: And there was no midweek they only have the FA Cup game after Christmas after New Year now there's Champions League they play weekend and midweek and it's automatic now now isn't it how do you stop it you can't it's become like a a rolling stone going downhill and it's there's that much money involved [1]



- C: Having said that I actually think the change in schedule has damaged football much less than cricket I think that you can rotate more easily they have bigger squads shorter games
- A: Yeah it's three hours shorter games isn't it an hour and a half
- C: It's different
- A: If you're by the side you can be done and dusted in three hours that's why 20-20's taking off off cricket in the busy lives of people three hours is you know yet this is the best game of all if you play it on you know between two competing teams
- C: Broad in now Dhoni leaves outside the off-stump just to show you how wet it was this morning the the slip fields have actually made quite big brown patches where they're standing particularly at Broad's end who's bowled for much of the day from the Pavilion End big foot marks underneath all four slip-fielders it was pretty wet today they did well to get out there actually
- A: Oh what in this day and age with all the covering all the tarpaulins covering every old bit
- C: Geoffrey I give you so many opportunities to be generous and you've passed them all up
- A: Yeah because I don't believe it we've seen this day that we've spent millions on the ground
- C: Broad in now bowls to Dhoni it's an absolute beauty how would you have played that one
- A: Er preferably at the other end
- C: [laughter]
- A: I'd have been good enough to get a single they probably aren't not my problem like I said
- C: It was a good ball
- A: Yeah
- C: Back of the length and it's seamed away quite extravagantly and bounced too short they say OK even that wasn't good enough
- A: No you've got to get it up a bit you've got to get it up once you get back have time to draw the bat drop the hands anything fraction of a second makes all the difference you've got to commit them forward or thinking of coming forward then you're in trouble
- C: Broad in now DHONI GETS HIT the ball just jagged in this time [1] that's the end of Broad's over more thoughts from you Geoffrey Boycott and I'm going to make way for Simon Mann
- A: Good [2] difficult I don't know yet I have to say this but I don't know whether there's any truth in it or not [2] I can't believe you can get this sort of pitch unless England have asked for it we have these hovercrafts now that cost what 50 60 70,000 pounds we have tarpaulins that stretch for 60 yards 50 yards either side of the match pitch so everything's dry and we've seen it many occasions now the drainage has been spent a million pounds plus England must have asked for this sort of surface I hope I am not doing them a disservice but I can't believe that the groundsmen has not made the normal dry surface that's pretty good for batting [2] do you do you think I mean
- D: 44 for Anderson 44 for five and in he goes that one jacks back it's covered up Binny away on the off side and it's stopped and there's no run and there has only been one leg-bye since lunch is that right Andrew so a leg-bye in 20 minutes what two things I would say is one look at where the slips are standing there clearly this outfield has taken a a lot of punishment
- C: Yes
- D: It has rained it has rained torrentially in London this week and we're we're up in Yorkshire
- A: It rains more up North
- D: Well down here we've had
- A: We got all the rain for Lancashire to make it there it comes over the Pennines

- D: Here's Anderson bowling here to Binny finds that one inside the off-stump the batting is so difficult out there and they they've really struggled out there today it's been harder I think if any if anything it's been harder since lunch than it was before lunch
- A: They're better bowlers
- C: They've barely laid a bat on the ball
- A: You've got the better bowlers bowling I knew I was saying it was going to get harder it's not going to get easier 'cause you've got the two match winning bowlers got 600 test pitch wickets between them
- C: Er anyway difficult batting conditions yeah
- A: Very difficult and Stuart Binny I mean the kid I feel for any kild like that it's it's just [laughter] he's had no match practice for a couple of weeks
- C: A bit different from Trent Bridge when he batted so well on that Sunday to help save the game and THE BALL'S OFF HIS EDGE AND CAUGHT AT FIRST SLIP BY COOK Anderson gets his second wicket of the match and there was an inevitability about that it was such a struggle for these two Binny being tested out around off-stump and that one he nicked and Cook took a comfortable catch India are 44 for six
- A: He was moving forward didn't he he's thinking he's trying to get forward er not a full stride but he's coming forward the foot's gone forward and [1] and to someone like Jonathan bowled in English conditions years ago donkey's years ago mind you he's got that much hold in now but when he used to bowl these were er not every week but you'd come across these a few times and there's someone you think oh this'll make up for all those good batting pitches
- C: It's like batting at Lord's
- A: Jonathan says you either bowl well and hit it properly at Lord's you'll hit a lot better
- C: Yeah
- A: But pitch too tough there and I don't care who you are it's very difficult look the better the player OK you might get a away with them too but it can't be difficult to get a 45 50 on here and by the time England's back they have a little roller it'll ease out a bit more and they'll say oh it's not so difficult this and there'll still be something in it later [1] won't be quite as much though
- C: What may have happened [1] what could have happened of course is the little indentations on the pitch er that have been made because it was a bit soft there might be those in the pitch and later on [1]
- A: It won't matter much later on
- C: That's potentially the problem
- A: We won't be here don't worry you won't be here much later on tell your kids you'll be home very early from this test match sadly
- C: When then when will they be home then Geoffery
- A: If England wanted they could be home and finished in three days
- [short summary of England's women's match]
- C: And Ashwin takes his first ball from Anderson and it's outside the off-stump
- A: [laughter]
- C: It's jaggig back in again it's a thick inside edge past his leg stump it goes down but it goes
- A: [laughter]
- C: Back down there for four
- A: [laughter]
- C: Well that was a fine ball
- A: THAT WAS A BANANA COMING IN
- C: Yeah well he didn't judge that one at all
- A: Oh I'd definitely have played that from the other end

- C: Goodness me
- A: [laughter]
- C: A boundary that's the first runs off the bat since lunch and it's taken [2] 27 minutes
- A: And a whopping inside side edge as he jagged down with it I think that was Katherine Cross did you say K. Cross I think er the name was Katherine I played golf with her dad Barnsley at Wortley she's from Barnsley isn't she
- C: 48 for 6 here's Anderson going in [1] to bowl to Ashwin who's forward playing defensively to Chris Jordan fielding at extra cover and there's no run so Binny was out for five Vijay 18 Gambhir nought Pujara 4 Kholi 6 and the heartache what a struggle it's been the green pitch and the slow outfield and the overcast conditions and the 31st over that's 48 to 6 I haven't seen a test match like this for a while [1] where batting is is is so difficult the side asked about first putting India in Anderson bowls and an away swing to Ashwin who plays a walking defensive shot who goes to Jordan again and that's a successful over for Anderson 48 for 6 his figures let's have a quick look at the bowling figures [1] 10 overs 3 maidens 2 for 20 so he's inching closer to Ian Botham and he's up to [2] where's my list [2] er [1] I'll find it somewhere where is it 378 so he's five away from equalling six away from beating under perfect conditions to go past him in the game he's got every opportunity here he hasn't seen an Oval pitch like this one before
- A: No he hasn't I think I've got the girl wrong Katherine Brunt is it
- C: Yeah Brunt
- A: Brunt that's the guy I play golf with him but I was like Katherine Brunt is part of our commentary team on that women's test match the commentary continues on the BBC Sport website here's Broad going in to bowl to DHONI DRIVES TO THE OFFSIDE this could be four more it goes across the the old pitches here this elongated square and it goes to the extra cover boundary so we've had two fours in quick succession and India's 50 is up 52 for 6 [2] not a full half volley but it was pretty full from Broad outside the off-stump and perhaps Dhoni's inclined to play a few shots now that India are six to a head Michael Vaughan's here
- E: Afternoon [1] yeah they might as well I just look at the game situation and they might as well swing India and try to get a few because they're gonna get bowled out anyway and you say that the best time to bowl and get is today so they might as well get the ball back in there
- C: Yeah well like in one of those old games on uncovered pitches where you declare
- E: Don't mention that [laughter]
- C: Broad bowls he's gone it's alright outside the off-stump
- E: He's like a sticky dog isn't he
- C: Yeah
- E: From the Lancashire league or the Bradford league something like that I have to say it's not a good test wicket
- C: No
- E: It isn't yep it's favouring the England side it was a good toss to win and England are well on top 52 for 6 but you can't tell me that this is a good test match wicket far too in favour of the bowler and you've got to get a balance I thought Old Trafford was the balance I thought it was perfect this is too far in favour of the bowler [1]
- C: How would it compare with the Lord's pitch
- E: Same [2]
- C: Broad [2] moves in from the Pavilion End and bowls outside the off-stump there's no stroke from Dhoni he's on 10 with that boundary 10 from 46 balls have you seen at the start of Dhoni's test match career he played an innings 10 not out from 46 balls sometime in the future you'd barely believe it the way he played at the start he was trying to thrash everything it might well be the that's the best way to play

- E: But it's
- C: Best way to bowl
- E: Yeah yeah yeah I agree I mean you look at Adam Gilchrist in this situation you just come out swinging but you look at the Indian score at 52 and I and I I don't know how they've got that many what have they got the 52 from [1]
- C: How many boundaries have we had how many byes four byes earlier Broad bowls the standard leg side and Buttler dives across his left to take it [2]
- E: Four byes and three fours
- C: Well there we are don't often have that in the er first three hours of a test match these days three boundaries three boundaries fours and er four byes you can see as Broad walks back there you can see the dark patches the run-up has made and er very distinct Broad's run-up compared to Jordan's just inside Broad's comes from a bit wider Broad bowls VERY FULL it's driven by Dhoni this could be four more and it will be no point Jordan chasing that as it scuttles across the outfield the outfield is quite slow but most of that went away off the the pitches here it's vast square as it's called although it's a huge oblong
- E: Yeah why do we call it a square it's not
- C: I don't know well I suppose it's because in the old days when you only needed [1] four or five pitches it it would be a square it would be a square area and there are some grounds where
- E: Let's call it for the change now Simon let's call it
- C: Where they only use three or four pitches
- E: Let's call it the oblong yeah let's call it that for the change from now on and that's not the score any more
- C: There's Broad at 56 for 6 bowls to Dhoni outside the off-stump Dhoni doesn't play and it's through to Buttler so 2 for Anderson today 1 for Broad and 2 for Jordan and 1 for Woakes something we haven't mentioned er about this developing England side with Moeen Ali and the spinners had a huge impact all summer on the series really is the fact that England are able to keep the pressure on because of the four-man pace attack and whoever whoever they've got in that four-man pace attack it's it's a lot easier for batsmen when you've got proper bowlers coming they haven't got a fifth bowler Woakes is not a fifth bowler he's or Jordan they are they are part of a reasonably strong with Broad and Anderson as well a reasonably strong four-man attack and it does make a difference [3] Anderson begins a new over 56 for 6 bo:wls to Ashwin who pushes forward and beats the dive at point it's going out towards the boundary it won't get there as it slows up practically stops by the time the fielder arrives and Dhoni hustles back for three runs runs beginning to come now 59 for 6 and India clearly under [1] a lot of pressure here and it's something that England will be able to do [2] er in the foreseeable future as well remember that yeah a lot of their sides were based on six bats with a wicket keeper spinner and three seamers but they will be able to balance they've got at the moment and the fact that they've got all those bowlers nearly all those bowlers can bat they will be able to rotate a bit with the likes of Stokes to come back in and Plunkett both of whom can bat for example Andrew what have you spotted
- F: Oh well for those of you who want to celebrate the 50th anniversary of Freddie Trueman's 300th test wicket to the minute you can do so now
- C: There we go yeah 2.44 Anderson BOWLS and that's dabbed away by Dhoni not allowing the ball to come to him running that towards backward point and there's no run
- E: Yeah the ball's about with flip-flops on that one
- C: Yeah yeah 30 all out before lunch 2.44 50 years ago Fred Trueman took his 300th test match wicket yeah short run flip-flops on cigarette in mouth and a thought about for 20

no short balls everything pitched outside swinging away just nipping back outside the off-stump

- E: Leaving the gate open 300 wickets won't be long
- C: Anderson is looking for a record of his own in this match BOWLS and inside edge onto the pad there Ashwin or Dhoni rather comes forward back up the pitch and Anderson stops it after a fashion and there's no run Bob Willis the next man er to do to go to 300 wickets to go past Trueman and Ian Botham went past Bob Willis Anderson's passed Willis now and [1] closing in on Ian Botham five wickets away from [1] equalling him [1] although I think when Botham was asked er er was asked to comment on Anderson equalling him he said well he's going to get 15 test match hundreds as well mind you
- E. [laughter]
- C: Anderson outside the off-stump goes straight from Dhoni taken by [2] Buttler between first and second slip there just to give an indication of how that swung away from Dhoni the weather this afternoon one or two very small patches of blue sky overcast the lights are on it's a bit brighter now than when the players came out after lunch at ten past two [1] they put the covers on for a moment
- E: It's like Lords there's a humming at Lords isn't there like a car
- C: Er it's a humming noise at the rt Oval but I'd say it's a bit louder I don't know there seems to be a bit more
- C: There's a gentle one at Lord's isn't there er Anderson in Dhoni swinging away and he edges it by he played with soft hands half stopped [1] in the slip cordon and they get through for singles

**B.2** England v India 2<sup>nd</sup> Sept. 2014 BBC Radio 5 Live (4<sup>th</sup> One-day match of 2014 series)  
(23 minutes, 4002 words)

- A: It's up out in the deep and it's Chris Woakes who is doing it just a single and India off the mark now 1 without loss five balls into this first over [1] it brings on Shikhar Dhawan it's a strike a left hander they just have a little meeting of minds
- B: Er er you know yourself as as as a bowler that when you don't get runs on the you know and you have the speech don't you before you go out come on lads you know and it takes it only takes nine balls to get nine wickets we're in this but you kind of sit there it it does sort of sap you a bit as a bowler doesn't it because you know that really something special has got to happen if you're going to stop India winning this
- A: Do you just want to get them nine out [2]
- B: Did I only say nine out
- A: [laughter] Yeah yeah enjoy that curry did you here comes Anderson bowls [1] an in-swing to Dhawan he just jams it out between bat and pad that's the bowler and it's the end of the first over a good one from James Anderson no chances really but a little bit of swing out there for him it's 1 without loss so specifically turmeric
- A: Well no well I mean it was very nice of course it was very nice perhaps a bit of cardamom
- B: They come in pods don't they
- A: And er put them in the rice
- A: You know you know when it's a cardamom pod and not a piece of rice don't you
- B: You do you do indeed but and and isn't it fine that when the batters don't get you runs you know you just start that little divide starts to happen doesn't it in the dressing room even though I loved my batters I loved my batters because you know they did sort of stop me from certain death so I was always behind them but you do start come on lads give us lot a chance to try
- A: Yes absolutely
- B: And win this game for you
- A: It's amazing the little clubs that the cleats and clubs that actually set up well you know you're chasing 350 and the bowlers are there just hiding away the batsman looking at you with devilish eyes and then there's a bowler when you but but this is the thing as a bowler here you're defending 200s you have absolutely nothing to lose so you might just might as well give it all here comes Gurney left arm over from the Birmingham End and it's outside the off stump across the right hander and it goes through to Jos Buttler
- B: Yeah er and that obviously you can't have you have to go through the rhythm of one day cricket a bit and slips and then put your men out da da da as you said you may as well go down as a lion instead of a lamb you know you may as well try and go for the win and keep that extra slip in for an extra five or six or seven overs or something like that there's no point in just losing [1] gracefully if you know what I mean
- A: Here comes Gurney again charging towards us very lean thin bowler swing and a miss outside of off-stump by Rahane a little bit loose not a great deal of foot movement from him nor was there a great deal of movement off the pitch but it was a top ball
- B: I I think that's what the boys were saying at er er lunchtime now as long as you're learning from your mistakes and trying to make things happen you know in this situation here what what is the point of England being beaten in the 4::3rd or 6th over or something you know what I mean by 6 wickets or something you know you may as well go hard at it and try and make something happen
- A: Sun pops out again as Gurney bowls flashed away down towards 3rd man Alex Hales will field off off Rahane's outside edge and India move to 2 without loss good line from Gurney

- B: Would have gone to gully little gully in there so why not have a go at it and have a gully there's your point why not a gully perhaps you know we're we're up against it here why not instead of having an extra cover let's just stick one [1] in the gully and see what happens left-armers going across
- A: Little formulaic rather than actually taking the bull by the horns and saying actually we've got some good bowlers here we're going to bowl you out
- B: Yeah and if we're going to go down we're going to go down with eight slips and a short leg [laughter]
- A: My that's the field isn't it [2] two slips in place one of them Balance at second and Cook crouching now as Gurney comes in tries to swing the ball away from Dhawan it's back of the length and played out into the off-side it remains 2 without loss I was having my lap earlier on and actually just went over to see a friend of mine over on the far side near the scoreboard goodness me it was a scorcher out there it was boiling
- B: Was it
- A: Yeah
- B: Lovely
- A: In September
- B: Shirt off
- A: No not mine stayed on I'm saving that for the TMS calendar [laughter] here comes [1] Gurney bowls and that's worked out down to third man by Shikhar Dhawan down to
- B: I'll tell you something
- A: Steven Finn for a single 3 without loss
- B: That's not a bad idea
- A: Have I have I clocked on to something now Adam Mountford our producer is looking [laughter] worried [laughter] well you know the Calendar Girls did it tough and all with a score card in front of you
- B: I think I'd be July
- A: Would you
- B: Yeah
- A: Summer month
- B: Yeah
- A: What sort what sort of background would you have
- B: Cricket
- A: Here comes Gurney bowls shot and BEATEN outside of off-stump lovely delivery from Gurney decent pace as well 85 miles an hour it's clocked at on the speed gun end of the 2nd over India 3 without a loss Dhawan is 1 Rahane is 2 so you wouldn't pick a winter month then
- B: Well no
- A: We could be overseas usually we're overseas in the winter
- B: We could get yes the winter where where where are we off to well where's TMF off to this
- A: There's Sri Lanka first
- B: Lovely
- A: And then there's Australia for the Tri Series then the West Indies after the World Cup in Australia
- B: On the beach
- A: Imagine you at the Waca Aggers er on the beach or something in a hammock [2]
- B: Could be anything the mind boggles [2] I think we might look into that look into that
- A: Wow just throwing it out there just here comes Anderson start of the 3rd over bowls and an away-swing not quite timed by Dhawan tries to drive the ball through extra cover ends up at mid-on [2] July

- B: Yeah [1] Mister July [2]  
 A: Glorious day here  
 B: Just a pair of sunnies on [2] shorts on a beach somewhere watching the cricket  
 A: You won't make any money if you're wearing shorts no one will buy it here comes Anderson bowls away-swinger outside the off-stump goes through  
 B: Well left  
 A: At good pace to Jos Buttler there is no run  
 B: Not getting lured  
 A: Geoff Boycott's agreed to do the nude calendar  
 B: Has he [laughter]  
 A: Apparently he favours he favours things being uncovered  
 B: What month would Boyc's be [1] goodness me  
 A: Oh make use of that hat I'm sure [1]  
 B: Yeah early season I reckon Boyc's [1]  
 A: On a green in April here comes Anderson bowls outside the off-stump have to let him once more good lines from England here probing chasing this target of 207 your mind's gone to a completely different place now hasn't it  
 B: It has indeed not being lured in Shikhar Dhawan there by Anderson they've got the two slips waiting there and then Anderson's almost hanging it out there content just to let it go such a small target all the time in the world  
 A: Joe Root trying to encourage or doing his bit to encourage the England fielders and bowlers here comes Anderson bowls that's just been jammed and a half appeal it's just a little high and I would argue as well just sliding down the leg side as well swinging into the left-hander I think that might have just pinned Shikhar Dhawan on the inside thigh and he's moving just a bit gingerly much like you with your hamstring problem  
 B: I know  
 A: Anyone offered to give it a rub I wonder if they would if you did a nude calendar  
 B: Ah disappointing pulling a hamstring first time in 48 years never pulled a hammy [1] it's a sign [2]  
 A: Anderson sets off again past umpire Rifle bowls and that's watchfully defended by Dhawan back to James Anderson on his follow-through and there is no run [4]  
 B: It was quite a decent looking commentary team really I mean you know we're not we're not shabby [2]  
 A: Decent wheels good shapes [1]  
 B: The old Blowers everywhere  
 A: Oh Blowers  
 B: Blowers  
 A: Here comes Anderson charging away bowls and that's full and around off-stump again awkward length for Dhawan to play with but he does it nicely with a nice straight bat it's a maiden from James Anderson England going nicely here it's 3 without loss three overs gone that target of 207 if you are just joining us then there was fabulous innings from Moeen Ali earlier on and really showing the rest of the England batsmen how to play one-day cricket it was free it was lovely expressive stroke play from Moeen Ali he made 67 off 50 balls elsewhere after England were 23 for 3 at one point after the 8th over Bhuvneshwar Kumar doing the damage put in a partnership did Morgan and Root taking it to 103 for 4 Morgan out for 32 off 58 Root 44 off 81 and then bits and bobs as Gurney starts a new over coming towards us it's been driven very SMARTLY but well fielded up at mid-off by Chris Woakes tumbling away to his left hand side and you just feel as well [3] that with every dropped ball with India 3 without loss and and no doubt India aren't worried at all but you just get a little bit of [1] buzz about the field you start counting dropped balls you let the batsman know that they're not scoring runs [2] here comes



- Gurney bowls as there it's been squared up Rahane diving away to his right hand side is Owen Morgan stopping any chance of a run [2]
- B: We got a text what's this e-mail got an e-mail from
- A: Just had an e-mail through saying what would Blower's choose to cover up his dear old thing [2] need to say that was given to me on my screen in front of me anyway [3]
- B: Gurney [2]
- A: Comes towards [1] us passed on by Robinson left arm over bowls left alone by Rahane quite extravagantly with
- B: A decent shot as well I mean why not why not get rid of Moeen Ali at sort of like a mid-wicket there he's looking to go across the right hand as you say he's not looking to swing it back in too much if he wants to play across the line
- A: Go for it
- B: Good luck
- A: Good shot that's the thing you you're trying to er make something happen and you just feel the pressure is not going to do it it's got to be wicket taking deliveries forcing the batsman it's been pulled and straight at Moeen Ali a short delivery from Harry Gurney and another dropped ball is collected by India 3 without loss but that's that actually is unfair what you're talking about there is the flick through mid-wicket with the straighter bat
- B: And I'd like to think
- A: Rather than a pull
- B: I'd like to think if he had two slips and a gully he wouldn't have bowled the short ball
- A: Correct
- B: All right next up
- A: So so the point is completely valid [3] Gurney again sets himself [2] comes towards us bowls and misses tucked off the KNEES of Rahane down towards long leg where Steven Finn fires the ball into Jos Buttler and another single only one run coming off the over 4 without loss four overs gone but yeah Harry Gurney he he er came onto the Leicestershire staff as a youngster I remember being there when he was 17 18 years old and then he he he had a little bit of a he couldn't really make the grade a little bit and then he had a very good 2011 in the T20
- B: Yeah
- A: Where Leicestershire won it that year here at Edgebaston and he took 22 wickets and bowled well up front well at the death and that change of angle the left-armer
- B: Found himself a little bit
- A: Absolutely
- B: Or a or a or a format which looked to suit him
- A: Absolutely but he didn't play a great deal of four-day cricket well as soon as Leicestershire find a decent cricketer they move up the A46 to Nottinghamshire here comes Anderson bowls and in-swinger it's been WHIPPED OVER THE TOP for 4 what a LOVELY SHOT that is from Rahane it wasn't that bad a delivery maybe angling a bit too much towards leg-stump but he really has made something from nothing there Rahane whipping it over the top of straight mid-wicket and it's the first boundary of the Indian innings they're 8 without loss
- B: Wow what a delivery he's taken that off middle stump just angling in from James Anderson decent delivery decent length that was hitting middle of middle stump and just foot across clipped it mid-wicket right out to meet the bat delicious sumptuous shot
- A: So that takes it out to put the short extra in in comes Anderson it's on the leg-stump this time it's been whipped away FOR 4 through square leg I'm sorry I don't understand 12 without loss Rahane to 11 you take out a slip you put him at short extra cover Anderson then spears and in-swinger onto leg-stump [1]

- B: It's very easy set-up here Charles as we all know but you seem to be able to see it glaringly don't you you know I mean you've got your man extra on the off-side perhaps now start looking to perhaps hit there but don't bowl and in-swinging on leg-stump
- A: Rahane waits for Anderson bowls an away-swing forward comes Rahane [1] moves his feet after the ball hits the bat and it just plops out to Moeen Ali at mid-wicket and there is no run
- B: Do you think do you think you do too because what's his name er Bob Warner wanted to get the ear piece in didn't he with Hans Zirconia which was all but you do seem to see things a whole lot more than when you were down there I mean I can I can remember when I was down there it was never that clear as sitting up here watching it what was going to happen you can almost see it unfold
- A: Anderson bowls forward comes Rahane punching it past short extra it scurries away FOR 4 NO CHANCE for Alex Hales to cut that off and again perfect timing bit too full and wide from James Anderson not overly so but again just the timing the placement was just perfect for Rahane and India move onto 16 without loss 3 4s in this over from Anderson so far
- B: I want his bat that is a good bat he has just forward pushed that and it's flown past the man on the drive Steven Finn couldn't get round it at mid-off if that is Finny yeah Finny at mid-off and er that has absolutely flown through extra cover and all he did was defend it
- A: Well we've got a change of field oh that's not nice I think it's Moeen Ali that's getting booed out on the deep square boundary and this is an away-swing which has been turned through mid-wicket STRAIGHT MID-WICKET AGAIN Ali's going to do really well to cut this off JUST BEATS HIM TO THE BOUNDARY rope the 4 4 in this over from James Anderson all have been with exquisite timing and placement 4 4 dot 4 4 and there's a very pensive and thoughtful look on Alastair Cook's face India move to 20 without loss it's beautiful from Rahane
- B: It's just pure timing pure timing er it doesn't matter it doesn't seem to matter where James Anderson lands the ball he gets in a position where he's going to hit it through the gap somewhere beautiful timing by Rahane
- A: Anderson comes in and it's defended on and around off-stump into the off-side by Rahane and there is no run 20 without loss 5 gone
- B: What what is poor old Moeen getting booed out there what's he done
- A: I'm I haven't I'm not sure why
- B: Who's he upset [2]
- A: Well Ali's taking it all in his stride he went over to deep square I can only imagine it was him that was getting booed as he as the field changed
- B: There's a fine line
- A: I can only er I'm not saying that I agree with it but you can understand the James Anderson thing from the view of the supporters because a bit of pantomime villain with [...] and all that but Moeen Ali's not doing anything wrong I don't think anyway Steve McCullough in Exeter has e-mailed [1] TMS@bbc.co.uk re our calendar
- B: Yes
- A: Would Geoffrey would Geoffrey be posing with a stick of rhubarb
- B: Between his teeth [laughter]
- A: That's quite the vision I like how you take it on to the next level [1] I'm sure the hat would be employed somewhere here comes Gurney start the 6th over towards the leg-stump just down and getting in a tangle hits his thigh pad and it goes out into the leg-side there is no run
- B: I reckon I reckon this has got some legs you know
- A: I don't think there's many commentators who will be thankful that I brought it up

- B: Oh come on we'll do this we're going to do this
- A: TMS nude calendar
- B: Yes definitely is David Bailey still knocking about
- A: He was the keeper at Man United wasn't he that was Gary Bailey [2] Gurney starts again past umpire Robinson bowls and that's whipped away by Dhawan THAT'S GOING TO BE 4 [1] CAN'T STOP IT YET ANOTHER BOUNDARY much to the delight and an explosion of colour in the Hollies stand the orange white and green of India being proudly waved at all corners of that huge stand to our right hand side well they might celebrate 24 without loss [2]
- B: Well England have just [1] seemingly lost the plot a little bit here everywhere every plan they've got the Indians are just negating it and just hitting the gaps every just hitting the gaps with every shot they play
- A: Gurney what's his response comes in this is a drive not quite timed by Dhawan out to mid-off and there is no run 24 without loss David Lloyd has e-mailed in not the David Lloyd
- B: No
- A: No re the cricket commentator calendar
- B: Yes
- A: Says hopefully Geoffrey Boycott will have his corridor of uncertainty modestly covered [3]
- B: I reckon it's a goer
- A: Well [1] just throwing it out there
- B: I'm in I'm in
- A: Here comes Gurney bowls back of a length turned round the corner by Shikhar Dhawan down to [1] long leg for a single 25 without loss but just on [1] what you were on talking about ear pieces I was actually we tried it because Bob was our coach at Warwickshire when I signed on and we tried it in er South Africa pre-season dear Bob dear Bob rest his soul he had quite a novel voice did Bob quite high pitched [...] that's how he sounded one slip and a gully in place as Gurney comes in forward comes Dhawan sorry yeah Rahane in defence played out to mid-off every ball so you're going back to your mark and you've got this ear piece in and the bowler has changed over whoever was bowling had to take the ear piece and you've got Bob back in the pavilion telling you what to bowl where to bowl
- B: Oh not just the captain had the ear it was the bowler had one
- A: The captain had one then the bowler had one
- B: Oh wow
- A: Absolute mayhem
- B: Yeah chaos
- A: After about I think it was the bowler here comes Gurney down the leg-side is it going to be single wide yes Umpire Robinson had a little think about it
- B: Yeah
- A: Just pursed his lips and decided to single wide 26 without loss I think it was Ed Gibbins who just [laughter] you know that was a marriage that was never going to really mix he just took out the ear piece threw it away serious amount [1] of money these things cost just threw it across the field that was the end of that experiment 26 without loss as Gurney charges in this has been driven NOT QUITE TIMED BY RAHANE BUT HE'S GONNA get a couple of runs for it Woakes is in pursuit down past mid-off [1] you can just hear it didn't quite have that cleanliness of sound [1] off the bat and it brings him a couple of runs 28 without loss 6 overs gone more from you Phil Tufnell and then Alison Mitchell will come in

- B: Yeah not a great start for England not quite put it in the right areas of er for the fields they've had every time they've put a slip out they've it's gone through there or they've taken mid-wicket out they've managed to get it into those positions and England er just doing a bit of a bit of ball following at the moment
- C: Hello Mister July
- B: Hello missus what would you be
- C: Oh January
- B: January oh sort of rucked up
- C: Well yes I think that's my main thinking behind it for that the largest coats possible  
[laughter]
- B: [laughter] Yes
- C: An extremely large covering it sounds something like The 12th Man tapes doesn't it did you listen to those
- B: Yes yes
- C: The Birmingham cricket commentators' calendar
- B: Oh then there you go so it's been done already then
- C: No they haven't done it I'm surprised it's something they haven't thought of here's Finn bowling [1] then coming into the attack and he's bowling to [1] Dhawan who turns in square towards the square leg umpire Moeen picks up and singles taken 29 without loss the 7th over of the Indian innings chasing 207 Rahane 21 not out Dhawan 7 off the 14 balls that he has faced 24 runs coming off the last two overs so India suddenly stepping on the gas and 16 taken off that one James Anderson over has suddenly propelled the scoreboard forwards
- B: And they just seem to do it with ease don't they it's just sort of er when England sort of try and put the hammer down it seems risky
- C: Finn and now to Rahane's up on his toes dropped to ground quick single taken and there's a fumble in the pick-up Owen Morgan coming rushing in he was looking to do that quick one-handed pick up and an underarm dart at the stumps but India quick off the mark as well with the singles not as well where England was a little bit slow today perhaps they didn't put the Indian fielders under pressure and they're here and a mistake is made that could have been a very good run-out chance
- B: It might have just been home just er just dabbed it down it only went about ten feet away from them if you do go and you've got good communication and the eyes meet and you're off and you know your partner you can usually get in

**B.3** England v Australia 30<sup>th</sup> July 2015 BBC Radio 5 Live (3<sup>rd</sup> Ashes Test of 2015 series)  
(5 minutes, 892 words)

- A: It's the fastest Ashes 50 ever for either side  
 B: Really  
 A: And you'll never guess who holds the record Graham Yallop 35 balls at Manchester in 1981  
 B: 35 balls OK  
 A: Yes he's got one ball to the four of them or three  
 B: Someone well someone's been running er out to him I wonder what's someone's telling him he's got one of the er backroom staff there coming out there to him it was the twelfth man er actually with a pair of gloves saying come on [3] it's Wood isn't it I think coming out there with their gloves  
 A: Andrew what are the record chasers on this ground please just to er get it in the memory bank early  
 B: Finn's coming on replacing Anderson who bowled well deserved a wicket or two in that spell but as you know he's not got them it's not how you bowl needs a bit of luck as well and it didn't didn't er happen for him and Warner played him well more beer snake activity in the Hollies stand  
 A: Yeah it's lively over that side it's it's the venue that I used to love playing here for England you just get plenty of entertainment patriotic crowd they get right behind the pitch is always good to play on as well it always seems to help the England style of bowler well that Hollies stand it's er [1] it's quiet so far compared to er previous years here but I'm sure well it's only half past three isn't it it'll get lively  
 B: Warner's looking around the field there's a deep square leg a long leg there's three slips and Finn aiming to do better runs in over the wicket bowls full and driven and er well he's gonna get 1 so he gets to 48 he's not gonna break the record but er he could equal it [3]  
 A: Last fourth innings to win here is in fact the last fourth innings ever to win draw anything 23 for five South Africa 2008 Graham Smith  
 B: In that final test match  
 A: He did play well  
 B: Yep  
 A: The last time er er I was captain the last time I played  
 B: Moeen er sorry Monty had him caught short leg  
 A: Caught short leg no [...] right off his bluff  
 B: And he's not out  
 A: Not out [1]  
 B: Stinking decision  
 A: [laughter] Here's Finn tall BLACK HAIR BOWLS SHORT IT'S SKIED HE'S GONE FOR THE POOL SHOT IT'S GONNA BE CAUGHT [2] HE IS CAUGHT BY BUTTLER AND SMITH IS OUT AND FINN HAS THIS KNACK HE GETS PEOPLE OUT that was er a a medium-paced long hop really [2] and Smith has skied it going for the pool shot one of the least likely balls in this inning to take a wicket but it has done and Buttler lined it up got underneath it [1] and what a wicket and this crazy game moves on some more how does Finn do it he bowls good balls too don't get me wrong but he's just got this Botham-like knack of getting people out and there's an instance of it [1]  
 B: Well the Hollies stand are on their feet there to here [2] it was there to be hit I'm just trying to work out er work out how it's hit the top edge because it wasn't a a quick ball it just bounced a little bit it was right in place to play the pool stroke he's just got there too early I guess and tried to hit it a bit too high [1] it was a breakthrough that England were desperately after [2] you can see from the team and the body language they were starting

to look at that score and go wait a minute they're scoring too quickly a bonus wicket a huge error for Steve Smith Clarke now comes to the wicket we've seen the form that he's been in about this is a big innings for the Australian captain

A: Yes it is

B: This is a massive innings from the way that he's played in the series he just hasn't looked in any kind of form [1]

A: Confidence everything this this er er going forward I'm with you it's a big innings and he's got ten minutes to go till tea or nine to be exact and England again with their tails up and looking busy well that was that was a gift that really was

B: It was

A: What a present [1] and Smith is out for is it 8

B: 8 incredible

A: Just a just a long hop [2] well he averages 50 Michael Clarke [2] but he hasn't looked like a man who's averaging 50 in this series so far 38-4 7-32 not out 10 in the first innings and here's his first ball listen to the crowd Finn right there NOW BOWLS outside the off-stump and beats him he's also jumping up and down going on appeals for catches by Lyth at that four slip but no one else he's jumping up and down like a Jack-in-the-Box

B: Well that's flown through to Buttler [1] just watching that replay again he's right there to play the pull stroke [3] he just took his eye off the ball at the last second and thought there you go it's going into the Hollies stand

A: Yeah [3]

B: What a lift that's given the team what a lift it's given Steven Finn the next ball to Michael Clarke that's flown through

## C Football on TV (91 minutes, 10,000 words)

### C.1 Arsenal v Aston Villa 30<sup>th</sup> May 2015 BBC One (FA Cup Final) (38 minutes, 4296 words)

- A: Mertesacker up towards Walcott and Shay Given another interesting selection Given that only just got back in the Aston Villa side after Brad Guzan had a bit of a nightmare at Manchester City [2]
- B: Well I think it's a good decision Shay's been a [1] great keeper for many years and has that experience of big games and played ever so well of course in the semi-final deserves his place
- A: Benteke on towards N'Zogbia who was dealt with by Mertesacker [4] Westwood [4] good jump from Westwood [1] got the better of Ramsey flag is up against Benteke [1]
- B: Yeah just off [8] scrappy in the middle of the park Delph winning [2] it's close Guy maybe a yard half a yard [4]
- A: Christian Benteke has scored 12 goals in his last dozen games [1] reinvigorated since Tim Sherwood took charge of Villa he had gone nine games without a goal
- B: Well I think it took him a while to get his fitness back for sure er but also the way Tim has set up the team has definitely helped him [1]
- A: He's become the focal point again
- B: And he's also become the the target of many other clubs I'm afraid for Aston Villa supporters [1]
- A: His release clause was revealed this week 32 and a half million pounds will certainly buy the right to talk to him [7] a match winning performance in the FA Cup Final I think would have them battering down the doors at Villa Park [2]
- B: Well he's such a threat so powerful strong [2] a dying breed in many ways
- A: Here's Sanchez [2] couldn't get the ball completely through Monreal keeps the attack moving [2] lovely work from SANCHEZ [1] and it's deflected behind [1] Ron Vlaar did his job in front of Shay Given Kieran Richardson in the mix too that was menacing from Arsenal
- B: Well it's that man Sanchez good awareness always looking to go forward plays it to Cazorla I think it's Alan Hutton gets a terrific block at the near post [5]
- A: Here is Santi Cazorla [1] Arsenal corner [2] Given can't get near it [1] Benteke headed clear [2] and it will be another corner to the Gunners [1]
- B: That's really good defending there from Okore stuck to the task well didn't dive in early [2]
- A: He has been struggling with a knee problem there is a grimace there but I think it's one of determination rather than pain
- B: I hope so for his sake
- A: Land of the giants in there [2] a real tussle going on in the penalty spot and KOSCIELNY broke out of the crowd [8]
- B: This is a really good chance a good ball in from Cazorla [1] gets the run on him it's a poor header just gets that yard on [1] it's Benteke can't direct it [2]
- A: Koscielny a scorer here last May in Arsenal's from two down to winning 3-2 final win against Hull City [1]
- B: There was a lot of talk beforehand about Aston Villa's quality of set play and Arsenal struggling with that I don't think we expected it the other way around but can't switch off for a second [1]
- A: Mertesacker [1] here's Bellerin [8] Santi Cazorla pestered by Delph [5] Mertesacker [5] Okore's header then one from Westwood [4] Santi Cazorla [2] Mesut Ozil quiet in the game so far [2] good challenge from Delph but it will be a corner [2]

- B: It's that man Cazorla again popping up in little pockets he's in between the centre halves then he's in the centre circle making them play making them tick [1]
- A: Villa's supporters taking their first breather of the day relaxing the throats it's Arsenal fans in full cry now [7] Benteke beats Mertesacker [5] Santi Cazorla [4] beats Benteke and is taken out [1] free kick Arsenal it might be the first yellow card although to me John Moss's body language is suggestive of leniency [2]
- B: Well you know what I'm gonna say don't you it's a striker's it's a forward's tackle but great skill from this little magician [1] he's lucky to get away with that [1] he's going into the 18-yard box [1] a very dangerous area I think he's got away with one there Christian Benteke
- A: Will Aston Villa get away with it [3] Benteke at the moment having to do more defending [2] than attacking [4]
- B: It's actually been a good start from Arsenal Guy nice and confident on the front foot [3]
- A: Might be a chance for them here [2] not with that [2] they weren't dancing to Mesut Ozil's tune [2]
- B: It's a poor free kick really I always like to see Santi Cazorla on the free kicks he plays balls in with a bit more pace a bit more conviction [1]
- A: Since the German Ozil returned to fitness at the start of this year [1] he has reportedly been covering much more ground throughout games than he previously did in an Arsenal shirt there are stats to back that up we don't often notice him doing that because he always seems to be effortless in his work [1]
- B: Well he is graceful I think it's just 'cause he set himself such high standards in the past
- A: Well that was brilliant Santi Cazorla nearly got through combining with Sanchez again here now is Cleverley for Villa finding Benteke [1] and a chance maybe for RICHARDSON [1] TO DO SOMETHING USEFUL HERE [2] it's a nice chip [1] Benteke was invited to attack it positive stuff from Szczesny in the Arsenal goal [2]
- B: It was a good punch from Szczesny 'cause that man Benteke was bearing down on him Kieran Richardson waited and waited for him to get inside the box [1] Villa's first attack really of any note better [1]
- A: Confident start from the oft criticised goalkeeper
- B: Yeah just going back on that Ozil point I think his effort and commitment have never been in doubt for me it just he's not quite hitting the standards that we saw in him hit with Germany and Madrid in the last couple years and we know he's capable of more [1] it's it's difficult when a player comes for so much money of course but he has to show that form more often [2]
- A: What he has done this season is scored both at home and away against Aston Villa [2] Arsenal wins 3-0 at Villa Park and then five without reply at the Emirates [1] Paul Lambert only lasted two more games as Villa boss after that and we know the rest [1] let's not forget the work Lambert did though he's taking a bit of flak but laid the foundations by bringing a lot of the young Villa players [1] another free kick and this will bring the first yellow card of the game Tom Cleverley's gonna get it [3]
- B: It's a good decision from the referee he's let one go that's a cynical little trip from Tom Cleverley [3] I'm all for letting the players have one or two but not when it's cynical like that left him no choice there [2]
- A: Cleverley who's really come into form scoring goals for Aston Villa three goals in his last five games after not scoring in any of his first 31 games for the club [3] here's Sanchez [2] GOOD CHANCE GREAT SAVE GIVEN KEEPS IT OUT [1] Koscielny thought he'd scored in the cup final again [2] and the save might lead to something special for Villa with Grealish and Delph [2] Delph's down [1] Villa's free kick [3]
- B: Guy this is an absolutely wonderful stop from Shay Given [2] it's a clever little free kick from our man Cazorla again Sanchez dinks one in Koscielny thinks he's scored great



- reactions you can see him moving towards his left has to jump back the other way brilliant stop from Shay Given [1]
- A: Koscielny now back in his own box Szczesny's watched that one well and er he's quite happy to take the hit [1] without even a blink [2]
- B: Did well again there Szczesny nice and calm and confident coming to claim it was a poor ball in from Grealish
- A: The two goalkeepers have had good starts to their day [1]
- B: Well there's no doubt Arsenal have started a little a bit more confident which is understandable the way he finished the season [1] Villa of course finishing the season a bit more poorly needs to grow into the game a little bit [4]
- A: Monreal to Santi Cazorla Bellerin [4] he is quick [1] so is Keiran Richardson who is tracking him WELL BUT IS NOW BEING LEFT BEHIND AND IT'S INTO THE SIDE OF THE GOAL [5] lovely bit of determined work from the Spanish fullback [1]
- B: He gets a bit of luck here Guy good defending from Richardson falls back to Bellerin [1] puts the ball across [1] and it's Ramsey in there [2] can't quite get it on target gotta ride this storm Aston Villa it's a good spell for Arsenal [3]
- A: And Ramsey the man who won the Cup for the Gunners last year with the extra time winning goal against Hull City
- B: Well he drifts off that right-hand side and finds himself in those central areas quite a lot [6]
- A: And the ball has beaten N'Zogbia Arsenal's throw [6]
- B: What Arsenal's actually done is taken a little bit only little bit of sting out of the Aston Villa crowd because for the first five minutes we couldn't hear ourselves think [10]
- A: It's been a start of the game that has matched the mood in the stands [1] exciting nail-biting if you saw by the looks on the faces of those two sets of supporters that it is Arsenal that have been on top [3]
- B: Not worryingly no worryingly so for Aston Villa they've had a couple of half chances and of course the header but it's not completely dominant [2]
- A: Hutton on the ball and was just caught late by Sanchez his hand was offered by way of apology here's Cleverley [2] might just arrive the challenge that of Sanchez N'Zogbia [2] it's Benteke TO BRING IT DOWN he couldn't quite turn it looks as though he might [3]
- B: Every time that ball goes near Benteke in the box you can see the Arsenal defenders worry [1] it was a good touch from him he couldn't quite get the turn gotta get him the ball more [2]
- A: Bellerin [1] we've not yet seen Jack Grealish in the game young man of whom so much is expected [1] he has delivered quite a bit in recent weeks [7] I don't think though Danny is the sort of young player for whom this occasion would be er would be too much for him
- B: Well as I said earlier his his performance in the semi-final was [1] superb I think it's just of a case of Arsenal having the ball at the moment [7]
- A: Cleverley to Delph [1] who is everywhere for Villa [3] ran into trouble there though Ozil is away with it with support VLAAR WASN'T LOOKING it's over the top of the bar [2] Aaron Ramsey goes close again for the Gunners [1]
- B: When he does we talk about him popping up in central areas it's Delph who loses the ball in midfield and Ozil breaks away it's actually a poor ball not cleared properly by Vlaar [2] so many times this season we've seen Ramsey finish from there it's a real let-off that for Aston Villa
- A: It's not quite all Arsenal but it is advantage Arsenal [8] Cleverley [9] N'Zogbia miscontrolled it was pinged into him with a bit of pace [3] Bellerin [2] Ramsey [9] Westwood to find Richardson [3] there's Delph [2] Benteke [1] Westwood's screaming for the ball [1] on the left half of the pitch and on it now [2] Grealish [8] Szczesny out

- again very early and Benteke was being flagged off-side in any case [2] great tackle that from Delph
- B: He's brilliant at that he really is he spots danger so well and with his pace gets across Villa have just got the call careful to not put the ball in from too far away [1] the further away from the 18-yard box you're putting crosses in gives the keeper time to come out and catch them and not get too anxious
- A: What Delph's doing now Danny is he's timing those challenges only two bookings this season and that for a player who was good for double figures in his early years in the Premier League
- B: Yeah indeed [1] so fit so athletic all seems to be there at the right time
- A: Here's Mesut Ozil poking it on through to Walcott he skipped past Vlaar and let the ball go away [1]
- B: That time it was Cleverley hit-and-miss sloppy in possession you've got to be careful in those areas [1]
- A: Grealish was impeded there [1] just started to get onto the ball a little bit more [3] Tim Sherwood as is his style [3] he's kicking every ball down on the side of the field [4] a rather nervous looking Royal Highness [2] he's nailed his colours firmly to the mast which is most unlike the president of the Football Association but he's a fan
- B: At least he's honest huh [2]
- A: What a wonderful break with protocol [3] Walcott [3] keeps it well under pressure from Westwood [5] Ozil he's starting to have game [2] Alexis Sanchez and it was Hutton who spread himself [2] in the way of the shot [3] Okore Grealish [1] looks to me as if Arsenal are trying to raise the tempo here
- B: Well they are and it was great play from Mesut Ozil [1] turn and ball into Sanchez but they're just holding out at the moment Aston Villa great block from er Alan Hutton [3]
- A: Ozil to Santi Cazorla [2] Monreal [2] Cazorla OZIL WHAT A BLOCK THAT IS from Richardson [2] Walcott this time the player thwarted [3] free kick to Arsenal [3] you just wonder how frustrated Arsenal are going to get in the face of this determined Villa defending [2]
- B: He should score Theo Wolcott should score [1] now let's give Keiran Richardson credit for an amazing block [1] another great move by Arsenal though [1] Cazorla and Ozil
- A: They're looking so dangerous here's Bellerin [5] Ramsey [2] challenged by Vlaar [3] it's that trio of magicians that are really causing the problems Ozil Sanchez Cazorla world stars all [5] Bellerin [2] Delph does his defensive duty [1]
- B: Well it's relentless at the moment and you're right it is those three especially this little man Cazorla [1] everything starts with him [1] and then Ozil and Sanchez around the box with their little clever runs and clever passes [7] this is the block from Richardson [2] brilliant defending really is [1]
- A: Bellerin [1] Richardson again in the way a little less spectacularly [4] Santi Cazorla [2] Bellerin [7] OZIL'S GOT IT THROUGH the flag is up against Walcott though [2] and they find gaps where none seem to be [4]
- B: Again it's a clever play [1] he's a yard he's gone a yard early it's the right decision [1] it's very hard to plug so many holes when you've got that many quality players on the pitch all good with their movement all see pictures see their runs [2]
- A: That was Arsenal's Wenger's reaction to Kieran Richardson getting in the way of his team
- B: Well he's probably starting to feel like if they keep playing this well and don't score that they can't keep playing this well [2] that's the worry as a manager and as a player sometimes you feel like you've got to score during your best spell 'cause the other team will get their chance will come into the game at some point [2]
- A: Okore [1] just had to be careful the route back to Given was being monitored by Walcott [3] Richardson [5] ran out of time [1] Coquelin [1] I don't think we've mentioned Francis

- Coquelin's name up to this point [2] here's Ramsey [1] Ramsey on target but it's easy for Given [2] I think Coquelin's relative anonymity is due to the fact that there hasn't been much defensive midfield work for him to do
- B: You're spot on that's exactly why good covering there from Vlaar just to get a touch on er Ramsey's shot [1] we're not seeing enough of N'Zogbia and Grealish need to come and find the ball [2] 62% of their possession for Arsenal shows their dominance seven attempts three on target Aston Villa yet to have one [2]
- A: Through to Walcott [1] I think it would have been onside that time [2] Okore was there in the nick of time [5] Grealish just drifting infield a little bit more to get involved Delph's the man who's gone wide [8] Westwood [8] longest spell of possession that Villa have enjoyed for some time
- B: It's important to have some touches on the ball take a breather find your way into the game slow the game down a little bit stop Arsenal's momentum much better from Aston Villa
- A: Momentum on and off the field [1] there's a tremendous Arsenal noise around this place now [3] this is Delph [2] Delph is guilty of holding back Alexis Sanchez free kick and maybe a little bit more [4]
- B: He's a little bit unlucky there Delph though because he hasn't had a shout and that man Sanchez does not stop harassing closing people down running back [2]
- A: Other side of the halfway line and that would have been a yellow card [3]
- B: You always get away with a bit more as captain Guy [2] those few moments in the dressing room with the referee before just be a little bit nice
- A: There speaks the past master of the dark arts
- B: I've got away with many let me tell you [4]
- A: We knew that [4] there's Alexis Sanchez [4] Santi Cazorla back to Aaron Ramsey [1] Bellerin's there with him [3] Bellerin's ball in [1] thumped away by Vlaar a little uncertain that touch by Grealish [3] and it's a free kick for Villa [1] the pressure is relieved [2] I think he spotted a a hand ball here has he
- B: Yeah [1] just as he bounces up [2]
- A: There [7] takes all sorts doesn't it [1]
- B: I'm speechless [2]
- A: He's a regular [1]
- B: Similar to what you had on your last stag do that wasn't it [2]
- A: Aye [6] that's come off Richardson but it didn't go out [1] Ramsey thinks that should be handball against the Villa man [2] Westwood [5] Grealish [8] it's Cleverley finding Delph not the best first touch by but the second was good HERE COMES SCZCESNY [1] COME WHAT MAY [1] Cleverley [2] on the chase there [1] he's after Ramsey [3] he just got out of a tight spot really well
- B: Looks like he's made a decision Sczcesny when that ball's coming in I'm coming he nearly got that one wrong [1]
- A: I wonder if the mindset is that he'd rather take on Benteke further away from his goal line as far away as he can
- B: It's brave [1] I don't mind that from a goalkeeper look he's already on the go [4] got away with that one [4]
- A: Richardson will throw the ball back in for Villa [2] 32 minutes have [1] whizzed by here [1] and yet we haven't seen a goal Arsenal have come far and away the closer of the two teams to scoring [1] Shay Given with one outstanding save to keep out a Koscielny header [16] Per Mertesacker [3]
- B: It wouldn't surprise me if Tim's thinking of a formation change because they're so dominant in terms of possession at the moment Arsenal and chances of course [2]

- A: That's rash from Alan Hutton [1] his name will be taken now [2] Alexis Sanchez cops another one [1]
- B: See that's the problem when you're getting frustrated and you haven't got the ball you make silly decisions [2] now he's gotta spend [1] a large part of the game [1] watching every step and every tackle [2] it's late [1]
- A: It's a total misjudgement of where the ball was going to be
- B: Yeah [3]
- A: His eleventh caution of the season [3] he's been sent off again starts from the past for two yellows [1] here's Ramsey [2] Richardson in the way of another Arsenal corner [1]
- B: They've actually had some good joy from set plays Arsenal so it wasn't a particularly good ball in but not well defended [4]
- A: Time for the Arsenal fans behind that goal to crank up the noise again [8] there's his delivery [2] helped across Given didn't quite get it [2] he's got big Ron Vlaar to help him out [2] Given felt he was impeded
- B: Well whether he was or he wasn't Benteke has got done on the run again [1] he's got to be side-on so he can see the runner this time it's Mertesacker just gets a yard on him [4]
- A: He wants to be in action at the other end he wasn't quite alive to that ball coming his way though [3] Alexis Sanchez [4] got high up [1] N'Zogbia is on his way [4] Coquelin is in his way [1] no more round two and it's Coquelin who wins the ball for Arsenal [3] Ramsey lifting one for Walcott but it will go all the way through to Given who wasn't quite sure without overstepping the boundary [2] Grealish [3] Delph [3] Grealish roared on by the hordes in claret and blue [7] this a little shimmy from Westwood [2] Richardson TO BENTEKE HE'S TRYING TO FIND GREALISH [2] and that'll be a free kick for Arsenal [1] it was Westwood in [2] and it looks as though it's a real problem for Santi Cazorla [1] as he was caught by that challenge [1]
- B: I think he's just a little bit winded better from Villa [1] much more patient [2] falls on his back a little bit there Cazorla I think he's just winded [2] got men in the box much more patient with the build-up started off down on the right not the best header not the best header of the ball ever from Shay Given [1] well better to be safe [8]
- A: Yeah started off down the right with Alan Hutton and er ended up on the left-hand side but much more patient much more better than Villa [7] flag up against Ozil [8]
- B: It actually looks at the moment like Sanchez is going through the middle and Walcott on the left I'm not sure whether that's just temporary or [1] Arsene's made a switch we'll see on that one
- A: Maybe run at Hutton and Alan Hutton got a yellow card [2]
- B: Possibly possibly [2]
- A: Doug Ellis [1] Aston Villa's former chairman President now aged 91 [1] wasn't that their last Cup final success in 1957 [1] there was no way he was going to miss this [3] there's a show of dissent from the Villa owner Randy Lerner who's attending his first game since the three nil defeat against Arsenal in September could be his final game as owner of the club [1] coming from New York for this one [2] and he is not happy that Fabian Delph has been penalised for that one [2]
- B: Yeah he's got to be careful Delph so tenacious and so desperate to get the ball back for his team he's got away with a couple now one more and I think he will go in the book [4]
- A: He did actually get a yellow card there Danny [2] surreptitiously given by John Moss [4]
- B: So now he does have to be careful [9]
- A: Here is Coquelin [14] there is Sanchez there is Monreal [3] Monreal in [1] it's too deep [6] we've got a little bit of calm and I think it's the first time in 38 and a half minutes that we have had one [1]
- B: Yeah it does look like Theo is er deliberately out there on the left and I think you're spot on Guy that it will be to try and run at Hutton he actually hasn't had enough of the ball

- even though Arsenal have been dominant we haven't seen Theo on the ball that much in those central areas [1]
- A: Mind you if you were playing full back what would you rather have the pace of Walcott running at you or the trickery and wizardry of Sanchez it's it's a tough call anywhere [1]
- B: Well I'd rather not be playing full back in the first place but I'd rather I think Sanchez has more [1] variation can go both ways I'm not sure Theo will want to go on his left foot and cross it but [1] we will see [4]
- A: Mertesacker forced back to Wojciech Szczesny [2]
- B: He does of course have Acuna on the bench who played so well in the semi-final will feel unlucky not to be starting today [2]
- A: There's Coquelin [2] Walcott Hutton across [3] here's Monreal [2] good leap from SANCHE:Z WALCOTT [6] EAR SPLITTING NOISE FROM THE ARSENAL FANS [3] THEO WALCOTT'S GOAL SCORING FORM CONTINUES IN THE CUP FINAL [2] THAT WAS THUNDERED IN [2]
- B: Well Arsene Wenger take a bow because [1] he made that decision to switch [1] when it was Sanchez head up from a central area [2] back for the cross [3] played to Monreal yes he's on-side [1] crossed to the back post where Sanchez is [1] Walcott coming off that left side superb volley [1] on his weaker foot [3] good strike from Theo Walcott [1] calm kept it down [1] hits the target [2] no more than they deserve [1]
- A: There is a study in technique [1] eyes on the ball everything right about it [1] and on the balance of play to the scoreline is right too [1] Arsenal have been on top Arsenal are in the lead it is Arsenal one Aston Villa nil [2]
- B: It is deserved they've made the better chances they've been more dominant with the ball [4] I know we said he'd been a little well I said he'd been a little bit quiet before that we saw last week Theo's confident in front of goal [1] it's his first er sorry he had that the one block on the line from Richardson earlier but he made no mistake with this one
- A: And we've heard this song before one nil to the Arsenal [3]
- B: Sometimes with your weaker foot Guy you do concentrate a little bit more on the technique rather than go off your natural ability [1] it's a good ball from Monreal [1] you can just see here 'cause it's on his weaker foot he slows down and takes his time [1]
- A: By the way what a response that's coming from the Aston Villa supporters [2]
- B: They've been superb [2]
- A: That was the amongst the Arsenal contingent [4] getting in each other's WAY Bellerin and Koscielny it's a Villa throw [1] when Villa were here in the semi-final against Liverpool they were behind for only six minutes to Philippe Coutinho's opener [1] that was the only time they've been behind in an F.A Cup game this season [1] until today [6] Coquelin just KICKED by Delph who's frustrated at seeing another decision go against him not half as much as Villa's fans are judging by that row [2]
- B: Er that was a little bit unlucky [4] I actually think the referee has done OK in this first half [2]

**C.2 Barcelona v Juventus 6<sup>th</sup> June 2015 ITV 1 (Champions League Final)**  
(53 minutes, 5704 words)

- A: They've been in downtime for over two weeks they tied up the Italian title a month ago won the Cup final on May the 20th in Italy Barca had their foot to the floor until the last couple of games of the Spanish league season then won the Cup last weekend both remarkably injury free considering but er the players are bound to be carrying one or two creases and creaks [9] Barcelona throw-in [3] how critical will the absence of Giorgio Chiellini prove to be Juve have lost three games since October Chiellini has missed two of them [4] Neymar [3] Rakitic made a run into the box dealt with by Bonucci this is Messi [2] Dani Alves [3] Messi away from Vidal [3] Suarez just outnumbered goal kick [2]
- B: Talk about the two centre halves talk about Barzagli he's much happier playing in the three at the back that's where he's played most of his football and it's very different he's an experienced guy certainly since that opening 10 15 minutes where the movement was too much for Juventus and you thought they could possibly go under they got a bit of a grip kept themselves in this game grit and determination more than anything else [2]
- A: Tevez holding off Pique momentarily and getting a free kick here [15] delivery will more than likely be good [9] good delivery here clever movement a little block
- B: It can get you the game can change very quickly [8]
- A: With the back to his own crossbar by Gerard Pique [5] another set-piece to defend [8] Pique is head and shoulders taller than anyone in that Barcelona back four [2] Pirlo takes
- B: Away by Suarez this time [3] and Neymar has done well to hold on here's Rakitic breaking and Barcelona have got FIVE ON THREE IVAN RAKITIC HAS JUST GOT TO PICK the right option [2] he's picked Luis SUAREZ and Buffon makes the save and Suarez could have cut it back could have done but what a counter attack
- A: Brilliant [6]
- B: Lichtsteiner it is literally went down the moment Neymar won that very important little header to the right they had options either way Rakitic goes with Suarez [1] I think that one there if that goes back or even cuts it back I think they'd have a very similar goal to the one they've already scored Suarez has tried to beat Buffon with the outside of his boot a good effort [2] he could have made the extra man tell there [2]
- A: The danger of attacking Barcelona [5] attempt to steal a corner Dani Alves [2] here's Luis Suarez [3] SUAREZ AGAIN Bonucci couldn't get it clear Suarez had a bit of a rush of blood [3]
- B: He pulls the team I'd just like to see him take one of those and wrap this game up [7]
- A: Didn't win a single major trophy last season for the first time in six years Barcelona Luis Enrique survived a rocky spell at the turn of the year had to change all that forced to retrieve the triple crown that the former teammates had brought earlier six years ago and er Guardiola won six years ago [6] and he's offside [8]
- B: Just forcing it a little bit there [3] they're probably not really wanting that [...] thought it would go the other way [13]
- A: Jordi Alba to Neymar [7] Messi [3] Neymar Messi SUAREZ LITTLE MESSI
- B: Oh sumptuous build-up brilliant
- A: Didn't get what it deserved in the end from little Messi [2]
- B: What's a surprise there is that Messi places it over the bar [3] but lovely interplay there and then all of the sudden Suarez gets involved and just one of these is going to go back across the goal towards Neymar once more but yeah he knows that's another one of his three reasonable chances they've had in the space of a few minutes [6]
- A: Iniesta played forward towards Messi well seen by Bonucci quick is Bonucci and he's got it back [8] back in the zone Barcelona

- B: Yeah [4] just gotta tough it out they gotta just hang in there [2] mustn't lose their shape mustn't lose their discipline nobody diving in unnecessarily [3] they've just got to accept they've got good possession you keep your shape [2] you stay focused and you concentrate you don't make it easy for them
- A: This is where the yellow cards hanging over Pogba and Vidal are so dangerous [1] pass after Barcelona pass hinting at a tackle Iniesta Rakitic Alves [6] now Neymar lost his footing and Marchisio can benefit [3] won back by Jordi Alba Suarez good challenge that by Vidal [16] Lichtsteiner forward to Morata [2] away from Mascherano Jordi Alba caught up with him [2] I'm pretty clear if it comes to a leg race that Morata got the beating of Mascherano [2] Alba out to Suarez Lichtsteiner felt he'd won the ball [3]
- B: That time he does [1] too much of a nibble at Suarez [22]
- A: Never frightened to go back and then go forward again [3] never frightened to pass even in these areas of the field it's perilous at times it's what they do it's all they know [20] Neymar can't make anything of that but it's fallen for Marchisio and here goes Lichtsteiner [2] CHANCE FOR TEVEZ ON THE TURN TERRIFIC SAVE AND MORATA [4] HE SCORED IN EACH LEG HE SCORED IN THE SEMI-FINAL AGAINST HIS OLD CLUB REAL MADRID AND DIDN'T CELEBRATE BUT ALVARO MORATA HAS GOT PLENTY TO CELEBRATE NOW AND JUVENTUS ARE ON TERMS [4]
- B: They just might rue two or three of those opportunities that they've missed they'll come back for more of course they will but let's credit Juventus what about that for fabulous bit of skill vision awareness that back-heel from Marchisio puts Lichtsteiner in and it's a clever cut-back Tevez for the goal is a bit unlucky ter Stegen is saving it then comes off the inside of his wrist and goes back away right on the plate for Morata [1] who puts that in [3]
- A: 37-year old Gigi Buffon celebrates the goal by 22-year old Alvaro Morata Morata a Champion's League winner with Real Madrid a year ago when he came on as a substitute for the last 40-odd minutes [2] and now he's put Juventus right back into the 2015 final [5]
- B: We've hardly seen him in that forward position Morata he's really he's been so inhibited because of Neymar he played particularly well in the first 45 minutes the Brazilian of course you're behind it's a big game at some point you have to take the shackles off you've got to be brave and trust your teammates Marchisio finds him beautifully with his back-heel it's a really good goal very well worked similar to the Barca goal took their time lots of good play lots of quality passing [1] and a good finish [4]
- A: Messi [3] Jordi Alba still going forward at the top of your screen [2] it's Iniesta it's a little too sharp that for Suarez [3] well this man has made some pretty good saves for Juventus they are looking all the more critical now
- B: Great there brilliant there really good it's like everybody's under the ball and then a little spin and hit from Tevez and goalie makes the save and Morata's there he's on his toes thank you very much [6]
- A: Free kick to Juventus [4] for the first time all evening you feel as if the momentum is swinging away at the Italian champions [11] free kick it was Vidal caught by Jordi Alba [6]
- B: Waiting for the challenge and you can see there Vidal Jordi Alba's come in and he has come and [...] he takes the free kick tries to put it in the box [8]
- A: Finds the head of Morata he's off to it first and in fact it is Pique who couldn't quite control [3] the header and the Spanish call-up includes him along with six of this Barcelona squad [3] and it's Tevez trying to guide Juventus to victory Vidal is dispossessed Rakitic [1] intercepted by Pique

- B: Did great there Vidal and then just rushed the pass a little keep driving with the ball just keep it just really drove into that space [2]
- A: Bonucci Evra passed it to Messi oh he's got it back to Rakitic [2]
- B: They're on top of the game now in many ways this is when this newer this new-look Barcelona team counter-attacking very dangerously don't forget when they're being pressurised they can also transfer the ball very quickly to that front three we saw that against Bayern Munich when Guardiola went man for man at the back and they just slaughtered them but they gotta be careful about Juventus
- A: Slipped by Bonucci but sorted out with the help of Buffon [8] Morata to Tevez forward by Pirlo what a pass that could be taking it in his giant stride by Paul Pogba [2] Evra is up at his shoulder here's Patrice Evra [4] Pogba [2] played back towards Pirlo he just wasn't accurate enough [2] and here they come with Pique **LEADING A BREAKOUT** Messi on the ball three four for Barcelona Messi has found Neymar [4] Messi Pique is still in there [3] they've lost it now
- B: Just about recovered there because the ball from Messi to Neymar was just a fraction behind him just gave the black and white shirts a chance to get back but that is exactly what I mean you've got the natural tendency you're back in the game you feel you're at the opponent you go after them a bit more just be careful
- A: He's stretching out a bit there [1] a little bit of cramp because it's only his second game in the best part of a month part of an injury that he picked up in the semi-final hamstring problem [3] Iniesta fed fed in towards Lionel Messi even the Barcelona conjurer can't bring that one under his spell [10]
- B: Unlucky close similar to the ball Messi tried to Neymar in the first half great delivery just a fraction overhit we've got a real game on our hands now proper game proper final
- A: Just over an hour gone Barcelona led for now fifty of those minutes [1] Ivan Rakitic with the early goal cancelled out by Alvaro Morata [21] Evra caught in possession [3] he's got the presence of mind to turn [3] eleventh season for Patrice Evra in the Champions League fifth final [9] I'm not surprised Barcelona have had more passes than Juventus but it's just as many goals [2] Vidal [2] Morata [2] back to Marchisio HIT BY TEVEZ there were spaces there you know
- B: Yeah a chance there good numbers there really good ball initially from Lichtsteiner turned and fed into to Vidal and then carried it forward his run [1] and again it's a decent opportunity Tevez could have gone far post tries to whip it towards that near just got under it
- A: Going forward a lot more now from the right back number 26 Stephan Lichtsteiner he's carrying an injury needs an operation on his right ankle in the summer and he's playing on with the help of painkillers [3] this man Neymar's been a pain to him so far all night he's made a good challenge there but he's just starting to carry the fight the other way Lichtsteiner
- B: He is [3]
- A: Iniesta [3] wonderful ghosting run
- B: Oh
- A: Clever ball TOWARDS SUAREZ well seen by Gigi Buffon
- B: What a ball that is brilliant that is from Iniesta
- A: Just checking there aren't eyes in the back of that head
- B: Ah exactly fabulous [17]
- A: Xavi is among the substitutes [3]
- B: Great play that is he drove 40 yards that run infield and then there was just that momentary pause when he realised he had to knock that inside the defender to give Suarez any sort of chance [1] brilliant effort



- A: Pedro's pace is available from the bench if Suarez is feeling a bit leggy Juventus haven't got a great deal to change things Fernando Llorente the Spanish international forward who's a more robust type of striker change [6] but no need to change very much the way it's going for Juve at the moment [2] Evra [2] Pogba [2] it's well struck struck straight at ter Stegen [5]
- B: Good play from Patrice Evra again who's always tried to get forward and squeeze it back for Pogba the shot's a decent strike but always at the goalkeeper [6]
- A: Champion League Final in the balance
- B: Yeah for the first time [4]
- A: Good work by Vidal [8] he seems to have got his act together well since those early transgressions Arturo Vidal is such a forceful player and he's impacting the game he is now [2] Messi coming looking for the ball [3] Jordi Alba on his er his umpteenth run forwards of the night [21] it's out for a goal kick [4] live football on this channel tomorrow lunchtime we are in Dublin for [1] a prestige international friendly between the Republic of Ireland and England on air at 12:30 tomorrow lunch time the Aviva Stadium that game live on ITV Ireland versus England [6] passed by Jordi Alba but only as far as Pirlo let it run for Pogba [1] Mascherano can't get at it Dani Alves it was in fact here's Patrice Evra and got TO THE FAR POST [1] Vidal couldn't quite grow enough [2] Iniesta trying to tidy up he's conceded a throw-in Vidal doing a little bit of cheerleading down at the Juventus end at the Olympiastadion
- B: He knows he's very very close to getting the desired contact it was a kind of clipped cross by Patrice Evra [1] he just had to wait for it he just couldn't [1] get above it [2]
- A: It's spring eternal [2] and the travelling hordes from Turin Vidal's cross in towards POGBA trying to roll DANI ALVES DOWN HE WENT Pogba's convinced he should have had a penalty [2] hitting the ground in frustration [2] terrific ball from Bonucci finds Vidal Juve on top here [4] Pirlo [3] trying to switch it for Vidal who's in behind Jordi Alba whose recovery was rapid
- B: The reaction from Pogba was angry it's something the defender has got his arm around his waist [2] well Dani Alves certainly had his arm up and around his shoulder [1] was that enough to pull him to the ground maybe the ball in was always just a fraction behind Paul Pogba whether something had gone on a moment before that I'm not convinced there's enough there for a penalty [3]
- A: We're gonna get a corner [1] Rakitic to Messi Barcelona on the counter-attack Lionel Messi on the charge MESSI saved by Buffon IT'S IN IT'S LUIS SUAREZ IT'S BARCELONA BACK IN FRONT WHAT A RESPONSE [1] IT'S A FANTASTIC FINAL FANTASTIC CELEBRATIONS down in front of the Barcelona supporters Luis Suarez's first goal for five weeks is the most critical of his first season at Barcelona [1]
- B: Stunning and they've done that so often this season [4] Lichtsteiner is not he's moaning at Dani Alves about that Pogba decision once Messi gets in here in behind the midfield running at the defence with those options of Suarez and Neymar either side you know you're in trouble it's a decent stop in many respects from Buffon but Suarez was just alive just a bit sharper just a bit more aware of where that ball might drop [2] seen him hit plenty like that Buffon might feel that that save isn't good enough because Suarez is onto it quicker he reacts sharp fires into the roof of the net [3]
- A: He scored twice at the Etihad against Manchester City he scored twice [1] in Paris against PSG [2] significant goals on the road to Berlin from Luis Suarez and now one in Berlin [2] just the 25 for the season for him just the 121 now for the front three
- B: But just as Juve were getting on top of the game as you said and you were right you can almost sense that they felt that this was their moment of the evening [1]
- A: Suarez is in a bit of a bother here yellow card [1] he was late there on Bonucci [3]
- B: It's these three that have really come alive again [2]

- A: Now close Luis [3] free kick to Juve can they can they come back again [20] Andrea Pirlo with a free kick for Juventus [1] how high are Barcelona lining up here
- B: Poor delivery that he can do better than that and that
- A: Easy for Dani Alves in front of it is Iniesta waste for Juventus [5] they were on terms for less than 15 minutes [2] here's Jordi Alba [4] CREPT IN TOWARDS NEYMAR IT BOBBLED IN OFF HIS SHOULDER but he doesn't care [1] now is it handball I think it might be Juventus claim that he headed the ball onto his ARM [2] and a free kick has been given [1]
- B: It's an interesting one that one if you head it onto your own arm I mean what I mean er there's no intent to handle the ball there whether he throws his head at it and actually misses it and it hits his arm I'm not sure and he's saying it's that high up it's right up on the point of his shoulder [2] I think we're about to see he can't believe it's been disallowed [1] immediately the Italians went straight to the extra official behind the goal [1]
- A: Could be millimetres here you know
- B: I mean he should bury this he should put it in without [2] it comes up it falls down into his hands
- A: Yeah
- B: Is that deliberate that's not deliberate of course it's not [2] no way is that a deliberate handball in many respects that goal should just stand but listen if I was out there if I was in a black and white shirt I'd be going crazy as well
- A: I mean one thing you have to say about the handball rule the consequences of that handball are neither here nor there the fact that it's led to a goal that should not be any part of the deliberations it's simply whether it's deliberate meanwhile Lionel Messi [1] here's Neymar again [4] Dani Alves [1] and that's a corner [1] but it's still two one [1]
- B: Incredible he should be I mean he should be burying that that should be flying into the back of the net flying off his forehead sneaks in crawls into the far corner [2]
- A: It's the deflection that beat Buffon to it
- B: I'm just wondering if the officials didn't see the little nick off his forehead it but he just saw the hand maybe that's what they did [6]
- A: It wasn't a Thierry Henry handball was it [8] Rakitic with the corner [3] he did just about enough [5] he took a bit of a chance there [15] Bonucci [1] Pirlo [2] can they get Juventus moving again well seen by Mascherano Lionel Messi quick to get there
- B: Good challenge
- A: Tremendous challenge by Evra and a fair one too [1] Bonucci forward here goes Morata [4] Juventus throw [3] Tevez [2] now Paul Pogba [2] here's Vidal [1] Marchisio [2] lofted in towards the head of Morata and Dani Alves did so well against a man much taller than him
- B: He did
- A: He thinks he came last off Morata corner's been given [7] Evra and Bonucci are joining Morata in the middle [2] taken by Pirlo it WASN'T GOOD FROM TER STEGEN [1] and he I think punched it against Evra and then it ballooned up over to the crossbar
- B: There's another corner so it must have come off a Barca shirt but it's one of those ones because it came in a little flat at the near post ter Stegen wasn't confident and punched it against Iniesta [1]
- A: Pirlo again [2] away by Suarez he's done some sterling work in that area inside his own penalty box and now here comes the breakout five against three again it's Neymar [3] oh a slip by Jordi Alba [3] here's Suarez [2] Neymar again down he goes gets his free kick could have been an awful lot worse for Juventus there [7] just wiping your eyes in disbelief when you see the men over that Barcelona have on these breaks [3] the foul in the end is by Andrea Barzagli Xavi being readied for his 767th and final Barcelona

- appearance by the Luis Enrique's assistant Joan Carlos Ensue [11] what's going on inside their heads what's going on inside that head there's a duel within the match between Messi and Buffon maybe [3] Neymar volunteering but I think his in his er suggestion will be politely declined [8]
- B: It's a big wall some formidable players in there so he'll have to work hard to get past these [4]
- A: Into the last 15 minutes [2] compelling final [2] it's little Messi lifted it up but knocked down [3] a bit of a tame effort if truth be told
- B: It was yeah in the end [2] well they've had three or four situations second half where they had men over they've had four on three five on three and they haven't made the most of it it's most unlike them usually in those situations they're so clinical they're so good
- A: It was Iniesta he did pick up a minor injury in the Spanish cup final against Bilbao at the Bernabeu last weekend [3] this is the goal that separates the two teams [2] there's Xavi Hernandez the great Xavi Hernandez [2] he has played a part in every Barcelona game since the middle of March at the ripe old age here of 35 will come on his final appearance before [2] leaving the club for a new career in Qatar and he hit the outside of a post with a late free kick at the end of the Spanish Cup final it almost seemed written as if he had one final contribution to make maybe it will be on the biggest stage of all [4] his club inside of winning him his 25th major trophy [3] and here's Patrice Evra and now on by Tevez and then Morata Rakitic with a rather desperate clearance
- B: It's a poor one as well [3] he's better than that as well he should be able to knock that out for a throw-in last thing you want to do is give away another corner but [2]
- A: With the inside did that [4] Pirlo takes to Pogba FOR TER STEGEN it's good try by Pogba not far off the post he just couldn't quite direct the header on target [2]
- B: For the last two corners one at the near post ter ter didn't didn't look confident very casual there he came wondering realised he couldn't get it Pogba is miles above Pique [2] just needs to try and loop that one back into the far corner it had just a bit too much on it there the power in the air set which set up the Juve goal in the semi-final and indeed another one in the Italian cup final [3] Arturo Vidal will give way [2] to [2] the Argentine international Roberto Pereyra [2]
- A: Who is an attacking midfield player by instinct [6] Messi only forward towards Neymar [4] no flag here [1] Neymar coming back to LIONEL MESSI just lost his footing [1] grateful moment fell over himself
- B: Absolutely [5] not like him 'cause he's usually so sure-footed he's got everything under control [3]
- A: There's nobody or nothing like him [12] Suarez has gone down painfully after that aerial clash with Lichtsteiner [7]
- B: Could've been worse there could've been a knee right in the middle of his back [7]
- A: Barcelona haven't lost a European cup final since 1994 a record [2] Juventus were certainly threatening mid-way through this second half when Alvaro Morata put them on terms but Luis Suarez's goal has [2] changed the tide again in the match [3] Barca are ten minutes away [2] another free kick [11] the leading goal scorer in the Champions League at the moment Lionel Messi along with [1] Cristiano Ronaldo [8] Xavi with the free kick [2] Dani Alves was loitering or Jordi Alba it was at the far post here's Dani Alves [2] Messi now Busquets [3] go all the way back to Rakitic and here's GERARD PIQUE WITH A CHANCE [3]
- B: Did the right thing he waited for it to drop he could've maybe tried to attempt something a little bit sooner on that [1]
- A: Pretty imaginative stunning pass it was from Rakitic
- B: Yeah clever ball he's onside miles onside he waits he waits for it lets it settle and he just blazes it high over the crossbar [2] they're still in this Juventus if he could just muster the

energy if they can just find something [7] the statistics showing up eleven attempts Juventus have had maybe one more attempt just to test ter Stegen in these last few minutes

- A: Pereyra to Evra [2] Tevez [4] mazy run from Tevez good ball from Marchisio here is Lichtsteiner [2] now Pereyra [2] Lichtsteiner [1] chance to pick a cross Pogba is underneath it again Pique jumped against him [2] Dani Alves brings it away [3] it's a bit of a mismatch there isn't it [1] Pogba was taking on two and Dani Alves here he is the little Brazilian has won the free kick [3]
- B: And Pogba was always gonna be too strong for Dani Alves [1] and I think Dani Alves recognised it thought I'm gonna cross he was never gonna win that race he was happy to hit the floor there [1] I think he's a bit fortunate [15]
- A: Leonardo Bonucci [15] Juventus are gonna bring on the giant striker Fernando Llorente [16] Messi [3] Dani Alves [2] cut back towards Luis Suarez [2] oh Xavi almost got in there with a dream send-off
- B: Just looked as if he was gonna scissor-kick that almost Suarez falling with his right foot he was gonna throw himself acrobatically at it [2]
- A: Alvaro Morata has contributed far far more than his Juventus goal tonight and er another Spanish international striker of similar ilk and build Fernando Llorente comes on [1] beaten in a couple of Spanish cup finals by Barcelona in his long career with Bilbao [2] they need something from him now [3] nothing like as mobile as Morata but he is good in the air if Juve can find a cross er but not with that move
- B: Pereyra overhits that cross Marchisio
- A: Jeremy Mathieu will combat the arrival of Llorente big French international defender [2]
- B: They're preparing now we are in the closing moments we might have another five plus two or three stoppage we can expect a lot of balls knocked in around the penalty spot as Juventus become a little bit more dangerous and Mathieu bigger man again [3]
- A: Bonucci [1] swept forward towards Llorente easy though for Pique [1] Jordi Alba [1] Suarez is still down Juventus are [1] not particularly keen to stop [3]
- B: You never know what he's got that's the problem with Luis Suarez [1] he's a great player he's an amazing player but [1] he does hit the floor with every chance he can get but actually uh I tell you what that's a nasty one self-inflicted that can be nasty that can be a really serious one [1] honestly that's one where you can do your cruciate ligament absolutely like that you have to be very careful there [2]
- A: It's been a good sounding board for Luis Enrique Juan Carlos Insua has the reputation as being the technical coach [1]
- B: This is nasty this he gets one leg sort of trapped underneath oh that's painful very very painful [1] he just about got away with that I hope so he's sprained a joint in that kind of walk before and he's just taking the doctor through it [2] he doesn't want to come off
- A: It's easy to forget this is only his 16th ever Champions League game he didn't play in the competition in his Liverpool days [3] and what a first season he's had [1] with Barcelona since his belated introduction in late October [3] that's terrific from Pogba here's Llorente CHANCE MAYBE FOR PEREYRA IT JUST RAN AWAY FROM HIM [3] just needed the ball to break
- B: Yeah just wanted Llorente he needed to do that little shimmy whether he just turns it inside a little bit quicker to Pereyra [1] if you give it to him straight away I think the substitute would have had a little bit more time to deal with it [3]
- A: Pirlo [1] can Juventus create one more golden chance [2] Pereyra [1] back to Marchisio [2] now Pogba [5] it's a break for Evra [2] stumbled to the ground lost his balance at the crucial moment Dani Alves his clearance is charged down it rolls kindly for ter Stegen [2] er Patrice Evra is in the wars [5] when Barcelona outclassed Manchester United at Wembley four years ago to win their third European title in six years [2] they were well

set to defend that title until Chelsea ambushed them in the semi-final the following year they were then taken apart by Munich in 2013 out in the quarter-finals last season to Atletico Madrid [2] Pep Guardiola proved a hard act to follow [1] the succession made more difficult by the tragic death of Tito Villanova as Barcelona fans watched Real Madrid collect a tenth European Cup in Lisbon last year it was the end of the rope for Tata Martino it'll start who knows with a new dynasty some say Luis Enrique may still leave the club in the summer [3] seems highly unlikely under the circumstances [1] Tevez by MARCHISIO it's a scrambling save by ter Stegen it was on target by Claudio Marchisio [2]

- B: Good save because it bounces in front of him [1] he er was not er quite sure he sees it front of him later [1]
- A: We see waiting there Kingsley Coman who is only 18 years of age French forward
- B: They're still waiting they're not sure on Suarez how he is [3]
- A: Corner well dealt with by Pique has to jump again Rakitic with the cover [4] I thought that was just a long hopeful clearance but it turned out to be a great pass for Xavi but he's lost it and here's Llorente oh what a challenge by Mascherano [3] Messi restoring some order [4] how much added time I wonder [2] Barcelona are nearly there [14] Messi [1] tremendous control under pressure helped on by Suarez and here goes Lionel Messi good recovery by Bonucci
- B: Very good challenge [1] and the free kick has gone Juventus's way [2]
- A: Five added minutes [2] and here comes Mathieu for Rakitic [2] a defender for a midfield player and Mascherano may go out and just sit in front of the back four now if Mathieu moves in alongside Pique [6] he started it in the fourth minute and that goal from Iniesta's pass cancelled out by Alvaro Morata ten minutes into the second half and then Lionel Messi set up Luis Suarez [2] with just 20 minutes to go [3] Barcelona are four minutes away from that goal winning them another European title [6] we've had late dramatic goals in the last three Champions League finals [3] Sergio Ramos Arjen Robben Didier Drogba [2] is there another name to add to that list [14] Marchisio [2] up towards Llorente it's a good header too [1] here's Tevez [2] IT'S TEVE:Z just a tiny deflection on its way through to ter Stegen but it was straight at the goalkeeper in the end
- B: Carlos Tevez as soon as he jumped back on his right foot he's got it it's his luck tried to bend that in the far corner but [2] just er straight at the goalkeeper [9]
- A: Neymar Iniesta got there painfully Pedro is allowed to come on it was a foul by Lichtsteiner [7] there have only been seven European Cup trebles Liverpool in the 80s they won the European Cup the League title and the League Cup 84 [1] no club has ever won a European Cup treble twice [1] Barcelona are on the verge [4] AND HERE'S LLORENTE TRYING TO TURN TACKLED BY PIQUE and in the nick of time by Mascherano Pirlo had it then lost it then got it back but it's Suarez [1] and now Messi with Neymar up with him it's gone away from Coman [2] Messi to NEYMAR [2] couldn't quite squeeze it back into Messi [1] but Barcelona will be more than happy to settle for a corner [2]
- B: Just for a moment at the other end I thought the ball would go to Llorente it was just gonna drop to the onrushing Pogba [2]
- A: He's waiting to come on [3] Iniesta ready to go and collect the trophy I suspect along with Xavi [1] they certainly collected the Spanish Cup together last weekend [5] Messi [3] here's Neymar [4] only away as far as Mascherano [2] gets it back from Jordi Alba [2] Luis Suarez taken down by Lichtsteiner Suarez is on the ground again [11] no free kick in the opinion of the referee [2] here comes Pedro [2] Suarez is going to limp off [2] third Champions League final for Pedro [1] who has just renewed his contract with Barcelona when it looked as if he was set to move on [1]
- B: They do well to break away to this attack [4]

- A: [laughter] And that grimace will turn into a smile very soon very very soon [3] this was his goal [2]
- B: It was well taken from Messi I still think Buffon could have done a bit more with that [2] he was alive wasn't he anticipating that it might be coming back for him and he was there to knock it in [5] the thousands lucky enough to be able to say I was there [2] they'll welcome the giant trophy back to the Nou Camp [11] last few moments [2] it's a Juventus goal kick [1] in time added on to the added time [4] towards the head of Pogba [2] Bonucci [1] charged down by Dani Alves the foot was high Dani Alves holds his face [1]
- B: I think it was handball from Dani Alves it's the ref it's what the linesman seems to be flagging for
- A: It is a free kick to Juventus [3] yep [2] a little cute one in front of Bonucci's attempted clearance has gifted Juve maybe one last chance one Hail Mary [1] taken by Marchisio [2] Pique gets his head to the ball [2] forced away Messi can counter [1] Neymar just onside [1] now can they finish it off with a goal Pedro [1] it's NEYMAR [1] IT'S GAME SET AND MATCH BARCELONA [3] THE PERFECT FINALE [1] DELIVERED BY NEYMAR and HE is joint leading top scorer with Messi and Ronaldo in this season's Champions League [2] if anyone's gonna challenge Messi and Ronaldo for best player in the world in the years to come it may just be Neymar three goals in the quarter final against PSG three in the semi-final against Bayern and now a goal in the Champions League final itself [2]
- B: I had to wait until the 97th minute to sum it up finally when they've have those overloads so many of them in the second half but they really haven't made of the most of they do it with virtually the last kick of the game
- A: Barcelona are the best of the best again [1] best in Europe best in recent European history FOUR Champions League triumphs inside a decade nobody else has lifted the European Cup more than once in that time

## **D Football on the radio (57 minutes, 10,000 words)**

### **D.1 Arsenal v Chelsea 26<sup>th</sup> April 2015 BBC 5 Live (Premier League) (12 minutes, 2289 words)**

- A: There's so many Chelsea players that Alexis Sanchez is running into that it's almost impossible to pick a pass out they need to keep trying to get Bellerin in Monreal down the wide down the wide positions get that ball in the box but they need to flood the box get Ramsey in the box get Ozil in the box like I said before so that John Terry finds it almost impossible to try and pick somebody up
- B: I'm generously going to say to Jose Mourinho what he did was keep the ball in play but then they gave it to Monreal and then he patted the fullback on the shoulder he's enjoying this you see but Sanchez is over there [1] is this going to be a yellow card for Ivanovic I think it is
- A: I think I caught this about two minutes into the game
- B: Yes so Ivanovic is booked I mean er again he doesn't do a huge amount he's just trying to win the ball OK he's yes he's gone through the back of him er it was a yellow card
- A: Yeah
- B: But I think that was kind of an adding up of fouls throughout the day that Alexis Sanchez has bought off him Sanchez
- A: I mean essentially the second half has been poor of him but that's down to the excellence of Chelsea
- B: Yeah
- A: And the inadequacies of Arsenal here's Fabregas trying taking the ball out in front Fabregas in the centre of the Arsenal half onto Drogba Drogba PAST TWO DEFENDERS SHOTS wide [2] took a deflection it's a corner
- B: He's asking a question of Michael Oliver I'm not sure exactly what it is I think that he when he cut inside he feels it must moved onto yeah he thought it must have bounced off Koscielny's hand I mean that would be really unfair
- A: Very unfair
- B: Yeah I mean we had one in the first half with Gary Cahill there wasn't an penalty and it's exactly the same he's missed contact Koscielny's shoulder gets to the ball bounced a bit of a push with his hand I don't know exactly why he's asking the question
- A: Fabregas is taking the corner and of course that encourages Arsenal fans to rush down the stairwells and boo him and jeer him not that he cares Fabregas swings it in and Gary Cahill's good defensive header out of the way by Arsenal and er are they going to carry some threat in the remaining seventeen minutes of the game they haven't done enough Arsenal to merit anything more than nil nil [1] still look you can see Wilshere is there
- B: And Walcott
- A: Walcott was warming up they've got some great options
- B: Great options I mean er I mean you've got Welbeck Walcott great pace even Kieran Gibbs is a very attacking-minded full back he could change the game so it's er there's it's not a lack of options I think Steve there he just called back Danny Welbeck so I think that's the man who'll probably be coming on first
- A: About time too 0500 909 693 is the number to call if you want to speak to Ian Wright or Kenny on 606 er which follows the end of this commentary on 5 Live here's Cazorla for Arsenal and now back to Koscielny Koscielny wildly overhits that pass on the left beyond Monreal and it goes out for a throw-in [1] and the crowd is silent
- B: It is

- A: You know not totally silent but you know what I mean they're really quiet they're sitting back there and they're thinking like me nothing is going to happen here [1] er nothing that will threaten Chelsea's march to the league title
- B: Unfortunately Alan sometimes as players you need to do something to lift the fans now I'm sat here watching the game with you and I'm not exactly helping up you see it's a very kind of it's almost like a training match going through here so you know hopefully this change to Danny Welbeck will lift this crowd and get this game going interesting to see who he takes off Ivanovic snatches the ball off field away from Drogba a couple of bounces should take it through to Ospina and it does
- B: I think it'll be Ozil or Ramsey that he brings off
- A: Yeah
- B: If he takes out Ozil he could put Ramsey in mid-field next to Giroud and get Welbeck up there a bit closer to Giroud
- A: Well Ramsey's playing almost alongside Giroud at the moment here's Cazorla er Ozil Sanchez ahead of them down the left side for Arsenal on to Ozil once more looped into the penalty area and deflected away by Cahill and it's er out for a throw-in to Arsenal [1] Welbeck hasn't got his shirt on properly yet throw-in's been taken quarter of an hour left for play here at Five Live Arsenal nil Chelsea nil earlier Everton beat Manchester United 3 nil at Goodison Park here's er Ramsey just holding off a challenge finds Cazorla on now to Sanchez edge of the penalty area here tackled by Ramires beaten by Ramires and it's flipped here to Drogba here's Koscielny Koscielny with the cross to CAZORLA CAZORLA'S SHOT wide [2]
- B: Again Sanchez is in a really dangerous position maybe but he took the wrong option he had Monreal on the side of it acres of space he could have slipped him in a good through-ball across the box chose to go inside where all the Chelsea players were but eventually when that cross does come in from some brilliant play by Koscielny Cazorla pulled his shot wide
- A: And Welbeck is replacing er Coquelin so presumably Ramsey will sit a little deeper he is majorly retreating to a position er alongside Cazorla and Welbeck's going to play wide on the left
- B: I wonder if Coquelin is still struggling from the effects of that challenge from Didier Drogba earlier on
- A: Yeah I bet
- B: I mean it's an attacking minor change from Arsene Wenger and would probably be welcomed by Mourinho
- A: And Mourinho has got the ball again this time he gives it to er Ozil back by Ivanovic to take the throw-in for Chelsea er taken on the thigh by Mertesacker now Ramsey rushes forward trying to get away from Willian plays it to the right side and Bellerin Bellerin now twenty yards inside twenty-five yards inside the Chelsea half [1] a bit slow though Arsenal and then the move broke down Sanchez has switched to the right side at the moment he is tackled and it's cleared up to Drogba Drogba back to Ramires Ramires surges forward inside right channel good play by Ramires finding Willian Willian went well Hazard at the penalty edge so is Drogba both back to Fabregas and this is quite typical Chelsea in the second half if they're not absolutely certain of the path forward just keep the possession
- B: Yeah to be fair to Arsenal there they got they got er back well loads of numbers got back there very quick and er they didn't make it easy for Chelsea to counterattack Ramires tried to break through but as you said Alan you know it's just been the way it's panned out for Chelsea today when they're not one hundred percent they just keep the ball



- A: Yeah you know er they don't need to win the match I know of course they'd want to win here and win at Leicester and take the title on Wednesday evening but they don't need to win here
- B: I think you know it's one of Mourinho's great traits you know as good as the fairy-tale of winning at the Emirates and winning then winning next week all sounds he understands that these games are tough games and if it takes him two three or four games he won't mind so be it as long as he gets that trophy at the end of the season
- A: Here's Ivanovic bringing through the legs of er Danny Welbeck finding Ramires and now it's Matic Matic on to the far side of the field now it's Azpilicueta into Fabregas just over the halfway line left of the centre circle and back to Matic on to Azpilicueta so patient Chelsea just keep possession and if you can't be hurt well you've got the ball
- B: There's a lot of Arsenal fans here who are singing attack more and more with Chelsea but you can't get the ball off them take the initiative go at them
- A: Exactly
- B: They seem nervous they're standing up and allowing them to have the ball I mean I just don't know which one is more boring
- A: I don't think in this er display this afternoon Arsenal have been good they don't look to me a side to me that can actually damage Chelsea Courtois with a clearance upfield Drogba heads on Mertesacker clears left-footed on the volley and then it drops beyond beyond Ozil and headed away by Cahill now it's with Cazorla Cazorla to Welbeck a foot in from the left touchline plays it infield to Ramsey and on to Bellerin on the far side of the field Sanchez available I suggest he plays it Sanchez it's a one-two back to Bellerin Bellerin needs help again he's being hustled by two Chelsea players and the ball breaks out of play and it's an Arsenal throw-in a couple of yards from the corner flag eleven minutes left of play still nil nil Arsenal and Chelsea here at the Emirates the throw goes back to Sanchez [1] who arguably has been Arsenal's best player
- B: Yeah he's been by far Arsenal's best man [1]
- A: I don't think it's saying a great deal today because there have been all of very quiet performances in those red shirts of Arsenal
- B: Yeah
- A: Here's Ramsey now Ramsey ran away from Hazard but then he was met by Ramires so he turned back keeps the ball for Arsenal Ozil to the left side and Monreal Monreal to Welbeck Welbeck now cutting infield that's a decent ball to Ramsey Ramsey's shot hits an Arsenal player it hit er Giroud in a painful place [laughter] I'll not say anymore than that just use your imagination folks oh Willian was hustling there and he's farther I'll tell you what Monreal is very lucky
- B: If he won't get booked I'll be very surprised
- A: I mean really Willian was away
- B: He was away it was his opportunity for Chelsea to break and to be honest it was clever play here from Nacho Monreal he knew he lost control of the ball and it should be
- A: It should be a yellow card
- B: It should be a yellow card but from Monreal's perspective he did rather not lose the game now
- A: That's what I like about Chelsea today they look slow and then suddenly they see an opportunity and there's Ramires or Willian surging the pace
- B: Yeah Willian's been of the best instigators of that he's going to take this free kick right-footed driven in to Drogba Drogba heads it in towards Cahill in the penalty area it's intercepted by Mertesacker and cleared on to John Terry and Terry volleys it up-field a couple of bounces and it's behind for a goal kick [2] I don't know what the Arsenal fans er are singing there but it's it's not very nice [1] I do know something I haven't seen

Chelsea for a few weeks in the flesh Jermaine and I know they're getting a lot of flak for not being exciting why should they be I don't know what people want

- B: If you look at it from a footballing perspective I think there's been there's been some good performances
- A: Now here's an opportunity for Welbeck at the far side of the field just to the edge of the penalty area ARSENAL RIGHT WELBECK GETS ON TO THE DEFENDER PULLS THE CROSS back low Courtois couldn't hold it and it's behind for a corner [1]
- B: That's the difference that Danny Welbeck can make he plays on the shoulder at all times he's always threatening behind so you know what he can do he can stretch this Chelsea team if he gets an opportunity tried to cross it in Azpilicueta does what he always does he gets back and makes a block
- A: So corner to Arsenal eight minutes to go nil nil [1] taken left-footed swaying in into the hands of Courtois who dropped it but he took a terrible pressure from Mertesacker and that's really going to be a free kick [1] and Courtois er may need a little treatment the Arsenal fans aren't convinced that he's hurt
- B: I do think it was a freak hit Giroud kind of got himself yeah I think he turns an elbow into his stomach as he's come out to catch a ball but er I think this is going to slow down the game now obviously take as much rest as they possibly can get his treatment allow his team as you can see Gary Cahill over there having a drink John Terry over there a little bit of a rest and a chat with Walcott
- A: I just think these changes are being made very late by Arsene Wenger it's been clear since half-time they weren't getting anywhere
- B: At the same time from Arsene Wenger's point of view you have to you can't just chuck everyone on go for glory I mean I think he was brave enough taking Coquelin off er he's he's really disciplined in that role in making sure no one breaks forward
- A: He's taken er Giroud off this time so Welbeck presumably will go into a settled striking role Walcott down the left and Sanchez down sorry Walcott down the right and Sanchez down the left

**D.2** Barcelona v Juventus 6<sup>th</sup> June 2015 BBC 5 Live (Champions League Final)  
(45 minutes, 7711 words)

- A: Here's [1] Bonucci driving it forward towards Morata on the far side of the field the player who came on as a substitute for Real Madrid in their triumph last season in Lisbon against Atletico Madrid [1] and Evra was [1] er firmly into the challenge there [3] free kick to Barcelona and it's just tapped back to Dani Alves
- B: I think you'll see Juventus early on try to put a high pressure and you see the ball went up to Morata Evra was behind Vidal was pushing in behind and nothing to allow Barcelona to play out from the back
- A: That's a poor clearance by Mascherano the ball's in there HERE'S TEVEZ Tevez leaning back awkwardly shoots skied it put it over the crossbar
- B: Well you see there they're not allowing Barcelona to play the usual passing out from the back Tevez Morata and Vidal are pushing right on [1] and that's a really good tactic
- A: So the goal kick's taken this time Mascherano makes a a better effort at clearing the ball oh he's got it back and he slips on the surface but pre-game he just put it there just to show the nerve from Barcelona he miscontrols that ball and concedes a corner
- B: It's brilliant pressure from Morata as the ball gets played back to Mascherano he just slipped back a little [1] but when you put pressure on defenders they do get nervous [1]
- A: What a good start [1] er by Juventus here's Pirlo from the right with the corner swinging outwards header down towards the far post then it should be cleared by Mascherano LOSES THE BALL that's careless again from the Argentine but the ball skirts out of play and it's gonna be a throw-in to Barcelona and the fans behind me Barcelona team away to our right they will not have enjoyed these opening couple of minutes
- B: No they won't and it's funny really because there's probably er Barcelona fans are outnumbered in this stadium by Juventus fans it's a brilliant start from Juventus really on the front foot [1]
- A: That's a good ball to the left side out to Alba and Jordi Alba has Neymar in front of him the Brazilian and Neymar with a step-over and then he takes on the the defender on the outside there Lichtsteiner didn't know what was happening in front of him there and Neymar wins a throw-in the challenge came in from Morata Lichtsteiner must have had nightmares last night thinking goodness I'm up against Neymar tonight [1] throw-in taken by Alba to Neymar and back now to Mascherano Mascherano ignores Pique plays it away towards the far side and Dani Alves who's been heavily linked this last week with Manchester United [1] now Messi back to Alves and Alves moves forward he's half-way inside the Juventus half back to Busquets Busquets steps away from Morata and brings Pique over the halfway line with his pass on to the captain Iniesta Iniesta to Neymar a foot in from the left touchline and Iniesta has Suarez in view he's got Messi lurking slowly in the far side of the field but watch him burst into energy once the ball comes to him as it might do now Messi takes up possession for Barcelona drives the ball to the left side Alba with a volleyed pass into Neymar in the penalty area Neymar checks onto his right foot takes it in CHANCE FOR INIESTA BACK IT GOES RAKITIC SCORES BARCELONA TAKE THE LEAD IN THE 4TH MINUTE AND IT'S RAKITIC THE CREATOR WONDERFUL PASSING MOVE FROM BARCELONA NOT PARTICULARLY QUICK BUT INCISIVE AND INIESTA WASN'T SELFISH HE COULD HAVE SHOT AT GOAL HE CHOSE RAKITIC AND IT'S ONE NIL TO BARCELONA
- B: And that was brilliant that must have been 30 40 passes good possession from Barcelona in the middle of field but it was a switch of play from Messi from the right out to his left hand side to Jordi Alba [1] Neymar just reversed the ball back inside to Iniesta he just ran off the back of Vidal but it was the composure from Iniesta just to square he saw Rakitic

in the middle just to square the pass Rakitic with a really composed finish past Buffon brilliant start to the game [1]

A: Well that's not a bad start individually for Rakitic he was man of the match for Sevilla at last season's Europa League final er having started so well Juventus they've conceded the first goal and everybody's been talking about what might happen if Juventus were to score the first goal now the pressure's on the Italians

B: Oh the pressure will be on the Italians but we've just been watching that goal again and right when Iniesta picked the ball up in in the 18-yard box you think to yourself he's going to to shoot himself with the composure the see Rakitic out his out of the corner of his eye square pass tap-in for Rakitic brilliant Barcelona goal

A: Buffon with the clearance Juventus nil Barcelona one here in Berlin so er it'll not be a cautious Champions League final Busquets plays it er quickly to Messi but the referee had already blown his whistle free kick to Juventus who've gotta recover from this setback [1] right here's Vidal back to Barzagli Barzagli forward and poor control control was lacking by Morata but he's being helped out and Morata gets the ball back and now he's tackled by Iniesta Iniesta for Barcelona pulled on that's a free kick without question Vidal will be ticked off I don't think he'll be booked this early in the game [2] the referee quite rightly wants to call him back and say you know sonny do it again and you're booked

B: Er it's sensible from the referee Vidal actually won the ball but it was a tackle from behind when you're lunging from behind particularly in European football referees like to clamp down on that you saw the reaction on the Barcelona bench when he tackled from behind there they're all up on their feet

A: Alves hits it from right to left controlled by stellar fullback Alba on to Neymar who was very important in the build-up to Barcelona scoring first here er to Busquets to Pique on to Dani Alves on the far side of the field one of six members of this Barcelona team who played in the 2011 final [1]

B: We're not going to mention that from an English perspective don't mention it

A: There's Neymar again on the left for Barcelona to Alba and if there were any nerves in the Barcelona ranks when this game kicked off they did extinguish for that goal

B: Oh 100% they started a little bit nervous Mascherano slipped a couple of times but the minute they got into the rhythm they have set up the goal there must have been 30 35 passes consecutive passes I think the key for Barcelona is because Pogba and Marchisio play so narrow that switches a player on all that time [1]

A: There's a been a foul on er Dani Alves a free kick to Barcelona as a result [2] you know I think what Massimiliano Allegri would have said to them I'm sure he would have emphasised the need for his Juventus players not to concede an early goal but they've done it and now they've got to regroup [1] be mentally strong Juventus

B: I think what he would have been saying is look stay in the game for as long as possible don't concede early on now they have conceded

A: Here's Messi another glorious cross field ball Neymar passes it THAT CERTAINLY HIT THE HAND of the defender but I don't think it could be judged to be deliberate it certainly struck the defender's hand in the penalty area here's Morata on the break for Juventus he steps inside Mascherano lays it back there's A SHOT JUST OVER THE CROSSBAR from Vidal [1] what a great start to the Champions League final

B: Brilliant brilliant counter attack from Juventus it was Morata that went down the right-hand right-hand side Barcelona lucky it was Mascherano who the third time he's slipped now [1] Morata just pulled it back to Vidal I think he's gotta hit the target from there

A: Goalkeeper is taking it short by Barcelona confidently short and now it's forward and Messi he just eludes the Barcelona er the Juventus tackle by the way but the free kick is awarded anyway and Messi has the ball again and Messi is forward kicks the ball to the

right there's plenty of room for Dani Alves on the far side of the field he's only halfway inside the Juventus half into Messi to Neymar Neymar Neymar AGAIN EDGE OF THE PENALTY PENALTY AREA and the shot I was waiting to see get crashed into the net it just whistled over the crossbar

- B: Oh so close what a game this is Messi fizzed the ball into Neymar and his first touch was brilliant he cut inside as soon as it left his foot I thought that was going straight into the top left hand corner [1]
- A: Well you know how we were all praising Barcelona under Guardiola [1] and then he undoubtedly dipped but this is Barcelona back to their best Morata does well finds Vidal Tevez comes back from an offside position so the pass I don't think it was intended for him anyway it was intended for Morata it's back with ter Stegen the Barcelona goal keeper what a good to the far side of the field that was played like an Iniesta or a Xavi
- B: Well that's his strength ter Stegen is a brilliant distributor of the ball there's a great touch from Alves as well [1]
- A: Here's Iniesta out with Messi in an inside left position for a change Dani Alves all alone on the far side and not being marked at the moment and Mascherano plays it into the goal scorer Rakitic on to Dani Alves a yard in from the right touch line Rakitic once more [1] and now Pique Rakitic again almost standing on the halfway line this is typical Barcelona the surge of pace is also accompanied by just knocking the ball amongst themselves
- B: Well I think they just pick the right moments to inject pace into the team I think for the last week I've been thinking about this game and I've been thinking there's no way Juventus will keep a clean sheet so to win this game
- A: Wow that foot was high by Vidal on Busquets and the referee might well book Vidal after that tackle he warned him earlier and it is going to be a booking
- B: That's silly from Vidal I think that's frustration for actually being at fault for the Barcelona goal letting Iniesta run off the back of him he'd already been warned off by the referee just slid in recklessly just caught the ankles of Busquets but going back to my point I think before the game I always thought that they wouldn't be able to keep a clean sheet Juventus so I thought they would have to score two or three goals and that hasn't changed they have to go for goals
- A: Busquets did exaggerate the extent of the tackle but it was a foul tackle and therefore the second one in quick succession fully meriting the yellow card that was displayed by the Turkish referee eleven minutes gone here in Berlin wonderful opening to the game I mean from both sides but chances great Juventus nil Barcelona one a reminder that tomorrow the Republic of Ireland play England in Dublin and kicks off at 1 o'clock full commentary on Five Live and make sure you catch the Canadian Grand Prix commentary on the network Louis Hamilton is in pole position for the Grand Prix congratulations today to Frankie Dettori winning the Derby in Golden Horn and Serena Williams winning the French Open title her 20th Grand Slam title goodness gracious almost as good as Xavi
- B: A legend of tennis
- A: What a great tennis player [1] oh well that's unfortunately er for Evra he surely made a poor challenge on Messi took the ball off the Argentine but er the referee says no it's a free kick Barcelona free kick taken quickly and on now to Suarez we haven't seen much of Suarez kicks the ball to the left side and Neymar very important to Barcelona in these opening minutes Neymar moving infield plays it back here's Dani Alves Dani Alves chips it in towards Neymar headed away and Juventus have it with Pirlo and now Vidal oh VIDAL MAKES A MISTAKE SUAREZ IN THE PENALTY AREA Suarez tried to just flick the ball beyond the defender it is well after Juventus that he didn't manage to do that and it's at least temporarily cleared [1] 12 electrifying minutes played in this Champion's League final here's Messi he's in the mood Messi CROSSES NEYMAR'S THERE GOODNESS HE COULDN'T get his left foot under the ball if he had done it was two nil

- B: That was inches for Neymar he just made the run in behind Lichtsteiner Lichtsteiner was caught ball watching it was a brilliant pass from Messi just saw the run of Neymar just drifted it in behind Lichtsteiner [1] Neymar just slid in just slightly missed it
- A: Oh Barcelona get the ball away careless loss of possession here's Messi edge of the PENALTY INTO SUAREZ SUAREZ PULLS IT BACK SHOT BRILLIANT SAVE BY BUFFON Dani Alves all the way to two nil WHAT A SAVE FROM BUFFON [1]
- B: Well that's the best save I've seen in a Champions league final for a long time [2] it was brilliant play down the right-hand side as the ball came in it just fell to Dani Alves [1] Buffon was going to his right but he had to swing to his left with his left arm brilliant goalkeeping [2]
- A: It's a really scrappy game isn't it Bill you're really sorry you came
- B: It's boring isn't it
- A: [laughter] and is it right is it the first time you've actually seen Messi in the flesh
- B: First time I've seen Messi in the flesh yeah
- A: He's overrated so overrated isn't he
- B: I'm not impressed so far
- A: [laughter] he can't pass a ball particularly from right to left right here's Iniesta inside the centre circle on to Alba plenty of room down the Barcelona left he moves over the halfway line into Suarez Neymar Alba Neymar Suarez Neymar again oh Neymar's in the mood now he's being fouled goodness gracious this is Vidal again [2] oh he's protesting but I think the Juventus players are pretty nervous about this very very nervous [1] he's already been booked [2] they're trying to cry the referee er I think Suarez is now he shouldn't be talking to the er referee
- B: He needs to be careful Vidal because he's charging into tackles he's lost his head at the moment he's got the old red mist I think since that goal where he let Vid he let Iniesta run off the back of him he's completely lost his composure
- A: Well er he is close to being sent off we haven't even played 15 minutes yet one more bad tackle and he definitely goes
- B: I think if I was the Juventus manager I would be looking at my substitutes face thinking shall I bring him off because ten men against Barcelona that's impossible
- A: It would be frightening in terms of the scoreline Messi's going to take the free kick on the left side he's going to tap it to Rakitic back from Messi again into Neymar Neymar tries to cross the ball and hits er Morata who's back in penalty area defending for Juventus and it's behind for a corner
- B: It was kind of a free kick from Messi but it was er well it just ran off the back of Vidal I think if I was Allegri I'd be really concerned about the mental state of [1] Vidal [1] he's not in the game at all
- A: Well someone should not just a whisper in ear but shout in his ear corner to Barcelona Rakitic takes it right-footed DELIBERATELY LOW GOODNESS GRACIOUS it was hit left-footed by who was up there it was Alba and he wasn't picked up at all
- B: Oh it it was a brilliant invention again it's a corner kick but he saw the run of Alves on the edge of the box and he just run off the back of Carlos Tevez Juventus are really struggling here if they're not careful they could go two or three down [1]
- A: Now the ball's on their right side with Lichtsteiner who's had a very troubled opening quarter of an hour up against Neymar now to Vidal that was better from him Morata plays it to the far side Evra has to scurry to try to keep it in play he can't do so wasn't a great ball from the Spanish striker and it's out for a Barcelona throw-in which is taken and it goes to Rakitic back to Dani Alves away on the far side of the field and Alba drives it from right to left and the passing across the pitch so long but so accurate by Barcelona Neymar back to Alba they could be three up already

- B: Yeah definitely could be three up I think it's the switch play it's set in the switch switches from right to left and left to right because Pogba and Marchisio are playing so narrow it's something that looks like Luis Enrique's worked and planned for and the players are executing it
- A: Busquets to Iniesta back to Busquets and out to right side and the magical Messi into Busquets and back to Mascherano in the centre circle his mistake in the first minute almost led to a Juventus goal now it's Neymar again Neymar to Suarez Suarez back to the goal OH almost by Neymar that was brilliant from Barzagli just about making the interception next the troubled Vidal Vidal to Pogba on the far side of the field we haven't noticed Pogba Pogba moves to the halfway line slips the pass to his left to Evra Pirlo waits to see if the ball's gonna come back to him Pogba takes it on himself great work by Pogba into EVRA ONTO MORATA LEFT EDGE of the penalty area the pass was intended for Tevez but it's cleared by Barcelona that's just a reminder from the Italians that they can play a bit 17 minutes gone in the Champions League Final in Berlin that's on Five Live on the BBC it's Juventus nil Barcelona one [2] and here's Marchisio Marchisio back to [1] Barzagli and on to [1] Bonucci to the right side to Lichtsteiner [1] Barzagli Bonucci once more Barzagli Juventus with a spell of possession [1] but they're not making inroads so far er into the Barcelona half not threatening ter Stegen really here's Morata heading it back to Lichtsteiner the Swiss fullback can't bring the ball under control that's another barging challenge er by Vidal [1] how many he's obviously not listening to our commentary we are saying be careful [1]
- B: I think somebody needs to get a hold of him someone like a Pat Evra needs to get a hold of him and say you're costing our team at the moment with your discipline or lack of discipline
- A: Rakitic to Dani Alves on the far side of the field and Alves never needs any encouragement to rush forward down the right side in by Rakitic to Messi Messi slows down but beware Juventus now it's Iniesta and on to Alba Alba er not a great pass into Neymar but Neymar manages to play a one-two now was he fouled well he may have been but play continues Suarez went down that was a dive by the Uruguayan no question about that and Juventus bring the ball clear and here's Messi to Morata on to Pogba Messi not Messi Tevez is running down the inside right channel POGBA CROSSES ALMOST REACHED TEVEZ that was an important clearance behind by Barcelona corner
- B: It was a surging run down the left-hand side from Pogba we've seen how [1] when he opens his legs big long strides all right he's got that athleticism [1] he saw Tevez in the box it's brilliant defending from Mascherano last-ditch to clear the pass [2]
- A: So corner to Juventus [1] at the Barcelona end of the ground in terms of their fans from the left played it right-footed goes quite a distance but it's headed comfortably away by Busquets now it should be with Juventus again on the far side of the field and the ball bounces awkwardly for Pirlo and it's out of play for a Barcelona throw-in
- B: The encouragement for the adventures in these early stages where I think they're doing absolutely nothing so far where every time the ball's gone out to Morata or Tevez you have got to cause problems with the physical play in and around Mascherano
- A: Don't forget also er coming up for Five Live coverage tomorrow er Djokovic against Wawrinka in the French Open men's final it'll start on Five Live sports extra then it will move to Five Live and Mo Farah who's been in the news this week though he didn't want to be in the news this week he er runs in the Diamond League in Birmingham in the 1500 metres [1] all of those events particularly er Republic of Ireland against England you'll hear on Five Live or Five Live Sports Extra be listening here's Busquets [1] Busquets on to Rakitic it's a walking pace for Barcelona at the moment to Dani Alves on the far side of the field Messi hanging back and Messi just directing Dani Alves as he pulled a defender out of the equation for Dani Alves to move forward Alves has the ball again

inches into the right touch oh kicks it through the legs of a Juventus player who then fouls him and it's a free kick

B: It's Vidal again

A: Well surely Max Allegri is thinking rather than go down to ten men I must think about bringing him off [2] everything he does is threatening a second yellow card Alba on the Barcelona left that's the near side as we look out from our commentary position that's a really good commentary position slightly to the left of the halfway line but listen hey the world's media are watching on this game and everyone who cares about football across the planet is watching this game [1] here's Busquets there's no Sepp Blatter here Busquets to Iniesta Iniesta out to Neymar who's had a terrific opening 21 minutes that wasn't a great ball to Messi though and it's taken clear and cleared by Bonucci towards Tevez on the far side of the field Pique was marking him and Pique won out and plays it back to ter Stegen ter Stegen another glorious ball out to Alba you know a goalkeeper threading a sort of 50-yard pass like that so accurately [1] is wonderful

B: It's the modern-day goalkeeper they've not just got to be good with their hands they've got to be almost start the attacks you see it with Neuer van der Sar I thought was probably one of the best with both feet modern-day keeper

A: Here's Messi totally overshadowing Pirlo overshadowing Pirlo at the moment [1] and now Alba er that's overhit across aimed at Suarez and it flew to Buffon if it hadn't been for Buffon it would be two nil he made a great save

B: No it was better than a great save it was a world-class save the best save I've probably seen all season without a shadow of a doubt the way he moved his feet from going to his right and then with his left hand for stopping the shot from Dani Alves sensational save from the captain

A: Vidal back to Barzagli and now Pirlo and Pirlo knows it two Juventus players are to his left and he picks out one of them and now Pogba's hanging back there's the cross and it's er too high for Morata and goes behind for a goal kick Tevez had made a good run there

B: Yeah it's down that left-hand side I think because Messi who stays up when the left-hand side go forward there's there's definitely opportunities for Pogba for Tevez when he drifts out there to get in behind Dani Alves [2]

A: Juventus nil Barcelona one and we've played 23 and a half minutes here in Berlin not a great er clearance that by ter Stegen and it's with Vidal Vidal can't control it MORATA SHOOTS horribly he's under pressure and he shoots wide [2]

B: He was under pressure it was Alba the left back for Barcelona he got back in really quick the ball fell to Morata and I thought he was just going to bend it into the bottom right-hand corner [2]

A: Alba's just signed a new contract er for Barcelona he's now tied down till 2020 [1] Juventus nil Barcelona one you're listening to Five Live on the World Service on the BBC as you should be and I hope you're enjoying this 60th European Cup or Champions League final there was nothing wrong by that challenge by Bonucci on Suarez Suarez went down holding his back I'm sure he's OK and the ball's out of play on this near side of the field it'll be a throw-in to Juventus who are gradually just moving back into the game in a meaningful sense

B: I think they're having the best period of the game they're having a little bit of possession Pirlo is having a few more touches [1]

A: Suarez with a volleyed pass back to Dani Alves Dani Alves flicks it impudently to Messi Messi takes it off his chest holds off Pogba no Pogba's fouling him though the referee's decision goes the other way he thinks Messi was fouling Pogba [1]

B: He wasn't happy there Messi I think Pogba was just a little bit too strong for Lionel Messi there



- A: Free kick taken quickly by Juventus Evra up from left-back approaching the penalty area the Barca penalty area pulls the ball low into the box I don't think his colleagues were expecting it THEN THE SHOT WHIPPED IN GOODNESS GRACIOUS MARCHISIO WITH THE EFFORT was that tipped over no it wasn't they're appealing for a corner but it's a goal kick
- B: It's one of his strengths Marchisio he's got brilliant technique from outside the box 20 30 yards he always tends to get a good strike off [2] as the shot came in I think it was the block from Alba they were appealing it just came off Alba there was no touch from the keeper either
- A: The referee was right 25 minutes played and a great Champion's League final [1] Barcelona on the attack Dani Alves on the far side of the field wins a throw-in close to the corner flag
- B: It's the movement of Messi and Neymar and Suarez
- A: Though Suarez generally he's stayed in the central position presumably under instruction here's Messi back now to Rakitic he plays it to Mascherano in the centre circle and now it's on by Alba back to Iniesta Iniesta hardly ever runs as such he doesn't need to he's got the running in his vision now Messi again on the far side of the field Messi he scored one of the best goals I've ever seen last weekend in the defeat of Athletic Bilbao in the Copa del Rey stunning goal wasn't it
- B: Oh it was a stunning goal what I love about Barcelona they they slow things down they lure you into a false sense of security and then bang they up the pace and get the ball into the front three
- A: Here's Dani Alves on to Messi on the far side of the field he was walking now he rushes forward he's in the central position looks to pick out Neymar Neymar slips and heads it back carefully for Suarez teed up for Rakitic Neymar again the chip crossed into the penalty area slight panic there and NEYMAR shoots straight at the goalkeeper Buffon he saves [2]
- B: That was a poor header from Bonucci he was under no pressure whatsoever just headed it back into the danger zone [1]
- A: Marchisio for Juventus and he picks out Tevez on the half-way line but he's tackled and beaten by Busquets back it goes to Pique just moving across the half-way line now in the centre circle on to Dani Alves on the far side of the field Juventus nil Barcelona one Rakitic with the goal in the fourth minute of play and now [1] it's er knocked forward by Messi dinked away by Juventus but back into Barcelona's possession Mascherano finds Alba down the left side and he has to hang back and get the pass forward it goes to Neymar Neymar has had a really good game tonight Iniesta Alba Iniesta again and now to Pique Dani Alves is free down the far side and naturally the pass picks him out Dani Alves approaching the penalty area the Juventus penalty area crosses but hits Evra and it rebounds out for a throw-in to Barcelona level with the edge of the Juventus penalty area [1] Suarez rushes across takes the throw from Dani Alves plays it back to the fullback crosses and that comes off the defender and it's behind for a corner to Barcelona
- B: Pressure play from Barcelona it's better defending from Juventus the three midfield players in particular Pirlo they're stopping the ball getting into Suarez, Messi and to Neymar better defending from Juventus [1]
- A: And again they're in no hurry to take the corner er Barcelona [1] Messi's across there er it's just tapped short and back to Messi again and Messi perhaps prefers this angle and maybe he's thinking of a dash into the penalty area himself not quite but Messi gets the ball again he's tackled successfully tackled and it's a Barcelona throw-in it was Pirlo ironically who tackled Messi [1] Alves to take this throw 16 and a half minutes to halftime and it's been a really good first half of football in this Champions League final Messi again hits it straight from right to left accurately straight to Alba Alba ignores

Iniesta he's lucky to hit the cross back off a defender but now it's Lichtsteiner who runs it away and it's driven towards Morata skims off the head of Alba and drops to the feet of Mascherano Mascherano to Pique and Pique always seems to have space around him he's another one of these Barcelona players whose positioning is superb now Rakitic moves forward he's blocked and it's a free kick [2] Evra says it's a dive

B: Well it was a bit clumsy from Patrice Evra Rakitic just knocked the ball past him and we just run across the line of Rakitic Patrice Evra there the game has just slightly slowed down in the last five minutes I think Barcelona just drawing their breath [1]

A: It was a misplaced pass by Messi but it was a hard ball by Tevez so it's a free kick to Barca to Barcelona which Messi will take if they do slow down I'm not blaming them er you know the temperature was up in the 90s here today in Berlin it's cooled off now but it's still a beautiful summer's evening there's a foul on Suarez [1] er Bonucci was involved [2] well Bonucci is being spoken to by the Turkish referee and it's a free kick in a very good position for Barcelona it is towards their right-hand side halfway inside the half Messi takes it early and Buffon was aware alert to the danger caught the ball and now throws it out to Pogba and Pogba happy just to kick it into the shins of Mascherano and accept the resulting throw-in

B: I think what Juventus have done in the last five ten minutes is they've they've drawn little fouls out of Barcelona they've stopped the rhythm of Barcelona in the last minute Barcelona haven't been able to get hold of possession it's been a little bit stop-start and this suits Juventus more

A: Evra on the far side of the field Evra ambitiously looking for er Tevez the pass goes back from Pique ter Stegen controls it then finds Alba er didn't seem at all nervous the goalkeeper and now the ball's with Iniesta they passed their way out of a dangerous situation and then Pogba pushes over Iniesta and that's a free kick to Barcelona [1] which Iniesta takes to Busquets and now back to Pique [1] and on to Dani Alves Messi lurking to his right and Messi takes up possession now and the little Argentine he's not rushing forward he just er moves gingerly towards the centre of the position and I'm just getting a note that in the build-up to that goal all ten outfield players for Barcelona touched the ball towards the goal in the build-up fantastic team goal

B: Perfection that as a coach everyone on your team taking a touch of the ball passing and moving finishing with a goal

A: Iniesta and he sends the ball to the far side of the field now it's brought under control by Dani Alves in now to Busquets Iniesta Suarez makes the run he's ignored and Iniesta kept possession now he finds Neymar Neymar to Alba Alba pulls the ball back and that's intercepted and is cleared to safety up towards the centre circle headed back by Pique and then there's Pogba could have just brought the ball under control he hurried the pass forward and immediately hands possession back to Barcelona and it's now with Neymar 13 minutes to go to half-time Barcelona lead Juventus one nil they're not flattered by it now Tevez fouls Messi number ten against number ten [1] free kick to Barcelona [1] he takes a lot of flak doesn't he Messi

B: He does but he gets straight back up again and I think there's a lot of players that could learn a lot from him he gets kicked more than any other player probably in world football but he gets straight back up he never gets injured plays every single game never wants a rest

A: Dani Alves on to Suarez SUAREZ oh goodness almost got past his marker there Bonucci here's Barzagli and Barzagli clears it to Pogba Pogba is popping up on the right-hand side now and er that's a change of position [1] maybe that's under instruction from Max Allegri on the far side Morata now this is more promising for Juventus if they can keep possession just on the edge of the penalty area the cross played in by Evra it's cleared by Pique it goes out for a throw-in [2] level with the edge of the Barcelona penalty area you

- know I don't think ter Stegen has had a save to make yet you know he's dealt with some passes back by his own players but not a save to make
- B: You know he's had a couple of shots that's it
- A: Just over
- B: Just over the bar two or three shots particularly in the first ten minutes but apart from that it's just it's just been all about his brilliant passing out from the back really
- A: Juventus try to find a way back into this game and they've got a corner and that was well worked by Vidal he's calmed down a bit just as well for him [1] so Pirlo is gonna take the corner as he usually does it's from the left-hand side he'll play it right-footed Barcelona not giving him the ball but surely it's up to Juventus to get the ball in play right there and Morata finally does that so Pirlo now with the corner kick maybe intends playing it short [2] that's cleared initially now he steps back a couple of paces and now he plays it short and the cross hasn't come in yet instead it is played back to Marchisio Marchisio plays it DEEP and that was a good call by ter Stegen to er Pique he obviously said leave it even if it was in German Pique did as he was told and the goalkeeper had the ball [1] and he has the ball again they rarely belt the ball out from defence Barcelona that again was an attempted pass that one didn't quite come off from the goalkeeper and here's Tevez in towards Pogba at edge of the penalty area went down the referee decided it is not a penalty it was a free kick
- B: And there's four players surrounding the referee there [2]
- A: And Neymar left his foot high on Lichtsteiner and the referee has been surrounded by Juventus players [2] oh we don't need that all of them rattled all of them
- B: I think they wanted a foul on the edge of the box there Alves
- A: Yeah the Pogba
- B: Yes the Pogba situation I think they maybe want Neymar booked as well because Vidal's been booked his boot was up but it was nothing really Lichtsteiner made more of it [1]
- A: Yeah he did I'd love to see the Pogba incident again [1] in slow motion [1] in fact this might be it play has resumed no it's never it wasn't a foul it certainly wasn't in the penalty area anyway here is the said Pogba Pogba back being hustled on the far side er by Dani Alves Pogba does well to keep possession Pogba plays it back here's Pirlo Pirlo crosses it to the penalty area a little too high a fraction too high and it's behind for a goal kick
- B: Ah Mascherano did brilliant there because he saw the runner Marchisio and he just leant into Marchisio let the ball get over his head but we see the the Pogba incident before he just nicked it round Alba but there's no contact at all by the left-back from Barcelona Pogba went over too easily
- A: Alves' challenge there eight minutes to half-time in Berlin the Champions League final Juventus nil Barcelona one and thank you for listening to 5 Live on the World Service on the BBC you know there'll be more people listening today than have watched you in your entire career and that's just one tiny part of the World Service Phil
- B: I don't think there were as many people watching me in my career
- A: [laughter] Oh don't you worry there you were a greatly underrated player [2] and it's not just because you've got a hammer in your hand at the moment Neymar on to Alba Alba back to Neymar and Neymar from the Barcelona left finds Iniesta who appears to have lost his armband at the moment I can't see it it was obviously bright yellow earlier [1] anyway Messi has the ball and now it's to the captain Iniesta again on to Neymar into the penalty Iniesta it was that combination that led to the first goal ALMOST SLIPPED THROUGH the pass to Suarez didn't quite make it this time and it's to Pirlo for Juventus and Pirlo gives the ball away and now it's Messi Messi tackled successfully tackled and Pirlo this time makes a better attempt at a clearance he finds Tevez there's no control there by Juventus and Barcelona back in possession Alba to Mascherano Mascherano inside the Barcelona half spots a run from Suarez SUAREZ IS ONSIDE important

clearance away MESSI TAKES IT DOWN tried to tee up a volley but in the end he fouled the defender and it's a free kick for Juventus taken quickly out to Tevez [2] I'll tell you there aren't too many slow patches in the game certainly can't take your eyes off it here's Pogba Pogba gives it away under pressure Alba now to Mascherano and now Iniesta [1] Iniesta to Neymar Neymar just beyond the halfway line this time successfully challenged by Lichtsteiner Lichtsteiner wins the tackle in by Vidal to Pogba Pirlo little dinked pass to Pogba [1] better spell from the Italian champions [2] and now Pirlo tries to drive it forward that wasn't successful it's Rakitic the goal scorer into Messi and the way Messi took that ball he momentarily controlled with his chest his momentum took him away from Pogba who otherwise would've got a tackle in

B: Two people with Messi who so so quickly played into him as well

A: Here's Suarez Suarez approaching the penalty area SHOOT OH JUST WIDE INCHES WIDE FROM LUIS SUAREZ [3]

B: He caught Buffon by surprise there Luis Suarez on that right-hand side and I think it's the the quickness of the shoot it was a toe toe poke just past the post

A: They've just replayed it on the giant screens here and the gasps from the crowd it was so close from Suarez to two nil [1] one nil Barcelona lead Iniesta great ball to SUAREZ BACK TO NEYMAR MESSI'S AVAILABLE AGAIN COULDN'T PICK HIM OUT FALLS TO SUAREZ PUSHED AWAY BY BUFFON for a corner [2]

B: They did so well there Barcelona they won the ball back from a mistake by Lichtsteiner Juventus didn't play out from the back and then the three the three forwards for Barcelona are left upfield really good save from Buffon and that's three now he's made in this game

A: They fell behind in the fourth minute Juventus they've done well to make sure it remains just one nil but now as we enter the final five minutes of the first half a second Barcelona goal could spell good night for the Italian champions Rakitic takes the corner for Barca from the left played in well Pique was up there he didn't get his head to the ball and it's cleared by two successive headers out of the danger area for Juventus and here's Pogba Pogba on the halfway line suddenly submerged by Barcelona challenges and the Spanish champions have the ball back and it's with Messi oh goodness that has to be a yellow card for the tackle from Pogba [1] surely [1] Pogba on Messi yellow card Pogba

B: Messi did so well from there because that was a poor tackle from Pogba I actually think he'd give the ball away frustrated he'd run back I actually think he slipped into the tackle he did his left foot just give away I mean it was a tackle from behind but Messi got straight up shook Pogba's hand and said let's play football again [1]

A: Great I think the spirit er has been very good with the exception of Vidal but er he has calmed down which is good for him and good for Juventus [1] four minutes to half time you're listening to Five Live on the World Service on the BBC [1] Phil Neville alongside me here in our commentary position in Berlin this wonderful Olympic stadium now that was a misunderstanding between Dani Alves and Rakitic and Alves' pass went straight out of play for a throw-in to Juventus

B: I think we should cancel half-time and continue with the game I don't want it to finish

A: Let let's let's just play the 90 minutes as one don't interrupt it with er an interval sometimes that spoils games Messi back to Busquets Busquets lovely cushioned volleyed pass to Iniesta [1] Busquets is so over-looked yet he can play

B: He's the unsung hero he's he's the engine that makes everything tick never takes more than one or two touches [1]

A: Neymar

B: Sits in there lets the other players play

A: Here's Messi to Iniesta and the said Busquets er Busquets to Messi [laughter] three even strokes er er Messi and he just passes it away from them so they're out of the game temporarily Messi again and and Pogba Vidal rather was snapping at his heels and Messi

eludes Vidal again and he's brought down by Pogba no play continues the advantage is with Barcelona good refereeing good refereeing Messi again [laughter] oh he's such a pest you know if you're in the opposition such a pest now Iniesta left side er for Barcelona [1] back to Busquets and Mascherano Mascherano told by Pique to pass the ball back to ter Stegen who is like a third centre back the way he plays back to Pique to Dani Alves on the far side a lovely little dinked pass er to Rakitic who was far too optimistic with his pass that went to Juventus but now it's back with Barcelona almost back to Messi [1] on the left side though taken up by Patrice Evra two minutes to half-time now Pirlo challenged by Messi Pirlo holds off the Argentine Pirlo still being pestered by Messi plays it back to Bonucci and Bonucci just slides the ball in front of Buffon and Buffon couldn't get anywhere near the goal but he's made another great save now he's giving the BALL AWAY HERE'S A CHANCE FOR SUAREZ OH Neymar's cross was a little too high for Suarez he couldn't control it

- B: Oh it's too much of a gamble that from Buffon to play the ball out to his right-hand side across the face of his own goal [1] I think Allegri will just want the half-time whistle to be blown going at one nil he'll take that now his team has actually bounced back really well from a disastrous opening 15 20 minutes
- A: Marchisio on to the far side of the field now Evra er scurries forward shot driven in by Vidal the ball rebounds and the shot is on target from Marchisio but that's the first save ter Stegen has had to make
- B: There's Marchisio again [1] so dangerous from outside the box Marchisio's got a brilliant strike on him
- A: Slowly almost without being noticed he's become a really influential figure for club and country he's a much more important player for Italy er nowadays than he ever was here's Suarez for Barcelona and Suarez glides the ball to the far side to Messi Messi instant control Messi running at Pogba Messi running past Pogba Messi still has the ball faced by Evra now he's into the penalty area MESSI STILL GOING MESSI PULLS THE BALL BACK DOES HE OH he can pull the ball back but only to Buffon and not before it had crossed the line I was just thinking if he scores here where does this one stand in the all-time ranks
- B: That was like his goal against Bilbao a little bit

## E Tennis on TV (147 minutes, 10,000 words)

### E.1 Novak Djokovic v Andy Murray 1<sup>st</sup> February 2015 BBC Two (Australian Open) (41 minutes, 3160 words)

- A: We're talking about 155 in the world now he got to maybe 160 somewhere around there Tatsuma Ito a top 100 player from Japan in the final for the loss of three games and Kyle Edmond playing great so is Liam Brody and James Ward hit the ball well as well just outside the 1200 so well done Kyle [7] incidentally food for thought for Leon Smith who's now in Andy Murray's player's box here at the Australian Open the Davis Cup captain Kyle Edmond keeps playing this well and he's winning a lot of matches he might want to look at the second singles spot [1] too early for that John
- B: A bit early I mean James Ward has has been a very good Davis Cup player er and played very well obviously against the States last year against Sam Querrey it probably would be er be the matchup again if if they play so I think er Collin's going to do a lot play a lot of good matches to get rid of James Ward [13]
- A: Kyle is off to Tasmania to play another challenger this week so he's certainly grinding
- B: Hm [48]
- A: He seems to be er making a meal of this er ankle injury when he loses a point he seems to be yeah limping a little bit in between points but [28] oh no is he he's twisted his ankle [3]
- B: It wasn't a very good facial gesture there at his camp [1]
- A: He had the thumb in the first set
- B: Yeah
- A: The ankle at the beginning of the second he's looked over it is after he hits the ball and sees it's going for a loser though
- B: Well that's true [3]
- A: He's not gonna be fooled by anything [30]
- B: I suppose we'll see the trainer again maybe at this next change for a different ailment this time
- A: They should just have a surgical unit on the court curtains and the whole thing er we'll see if the trainer is called but doesn't look good for Djokovic at the moment first game he picked up what appears to be another injury [2] break of serve Murray 2 love second set [10] in the semi-final of course Andy Murray lost the first set on a tie-breaker to Tomas Berdych and then won the second 6 love [57] there are players that would've tried the hotdog there Murray's not one of them
- B: No [125] the ankle problem seems to have gone away now [4]
- A: Strange match isn't it very strange sort of mentally the way Djokovic is coming out with different sorts of things er you know with ailments during the first set and a bit [44]
- B: That's strange very strange passage of time again in this set [2] it's very difficult to know what's going on it's er it's just strange I mean Djokovic there looked up at his box and he's sort of wobbling with his feet and gave an expression almost like I can't do anything and then he he he goes and breaks serve and doesn't seem to be complaining about it anymore [laughter]
- A: Yeah very difficult to er make out er Heather Watson's watching the number one er the British number one who just won her congratulations Heather well done to you [1] a career high ranking of 38 she says I'm just so tired watching this tie-break every point is epic [laughter] I know it does feel that way every game seems to have its own er twist and turn
- B: It does

- A: But er er call me cynical but I I didn't understand that thing with Djokovic and the ankle because it's like every time he lost the point it hurt and when he won the point it was fine I mean that for me it's not [2] it isn't really meant as a criticism just as an observation but I'm not buying that John how about you
- B: Well
- A: Maybe I'm wrong
- B: Well it's difficult to buy it when when the person suddenly turns around and then plays three or four great points and breaks back er er has he called for the trainer I don't think he's called for the trainer again so I mean how bad is it but would you you won the first set why would you suddenly sort of drop a break by sort of making these sort of funny strange errors and sort of looking at your box as if like er these sort of movements hurt it's very strange I I don't understand now he's back again he's just broken back er very strange [2]
- A: Not everybody can be a Bjorn Borg on court show no emotion whatsoever not have any ups and downs [2] er in a five-set match the concentration does come in and and go again doesn't it
- B: Well that's but that's mental more this is these are sort of these physical ailments that er he's sort of picked up and you know his thumb and now his ankle and there he looks fine again [1] er I'll put it this way Andy Murray at the other end is not buying any of it [5]
- A: And of course ironically I mean Andy Murray's reputation over the last few years he er he's sort of one that a lot of times will suddenly you know grimace hold his ankle or his knee or something and then then run like a cheetah for the next game so it's a bit strange [86] as these two players dig themselves in and with all these microphones around you're gonna pick up one or two words the cameras pick up one or two words just ask him so our apologies you are getting in touch on social media [30] [laughter] [50] it's just like water acting on a rock
- B: Hm
- A: Just wears you down sort of imperceptibly grinds the opposition down does Novak Djokovic [28] oh wonderful hands not an easy ball to handle [1] and it's a hold Murray had two love in this second set all now [2]
- B: He did well there manoeuvred the ball well [5] to adjust there and then just [2] slide slid into that ball very good did that very well standard has dropped a bit in this second set first set was er absolutely magnificent but both players just dropped a slight bit from the level they were playing can't keep up that sort of standard for five sets almost impossible [79]
- A: Dangerous times now for Andy Murray as Djokovic has knuckled down [2] 24 shots and Djokovic didn't look like he was going to miss one [2] important ten or 15 minutes now for Andy Murray can't go two sets down
- B: No [18] er that's not wide enough [52]
- A: SURGICAL precision from Djokovic that's three games in a row and two breaks in a row for him he's 3 2 up after 25 minutes of this er second set I mean just to put Djokovic into some sort of historical perspective [2] he's looking to win his eighth Grand Slam championship which in the years in the days of Federer and Nadal you think oh well eight you know not so what but you sort of get used to these numbers an eighth title at Slam level would tie him with Agassi Connors Lendl Perry Rosewall these are the sort of names that he's up with and he has a long way to go just 27 years of age he's a week younger than his opponent Andy Murray today now if players were allowed coaches on court and he could call for Amélie Mauresmo what would she say to Andy now because this is a a difficult time for him
- B: Well I mean firstly she should tell him listen keep your mind together this is the first time that we've really seen him where you know he he's getting negative with his body

language and that's something that you just can't do at this level you can't hand your opponent a sort of a gift to show him how sort of worried you are although having said that Djokovic has been doing the same thing a couple of games previously but he managed to change it around so the first thing she would say that er that you're right in this match you should get your mind back in here this this is it's so evenly balanced the breaks of serve don't seem to make any difference in this match anyway so it's not like a normal men's match where a break of serve in a set so you think OK that set's over you don't feel that in this match it's still very close this set he's he's still not out of this set by any means [3] go back to where they just showed [INAUDIBLE] [5]

- A: Sunday evening in Melbourne Sunday morning in the United Kingdom the Australia Open men's final Andy Murray a set three two down to the world number one Novak Djokovic [2] plenty of ebbs and flows in this match more to come [2] now I don't think there's anything tactically that Murray's doing wrong he's just I think his level has just dropped a little bit mentally he's just gone off the boil a little bit in the second set after being that early break up [55] he's just looking a bit drained at the moment Andy Murray [2] and the other thing also as you mentioned he can't go down on the two sets to love and this set is obviously crucial for both players but more so for Murray Djokovic has got that set you know in his pocket Murray Murray knows this obviously you cannot go down two sets to love to Djokovic [18] that's good he needs to start reading his notes again at changeover I haven't seen him do that this match he was doing it a lot during the er Berdych match and sometimes John you have to wait for your energy to to rebuild again I mean this is already a quite long match what an hour and 42 minutes played and all the nervous tension that goes with it
- B: Er [19]
- A: Obviously this is a must-hold game [2] not a good start has to win this game [64]
- B: Djokovic is having a look at that on the base line [2] I think he's a bit hopeful on this one [2] a bit of a slow motion challenge and that's a point that Murray is making
- A: Bad drop shot too [5] Novak must have known that was good
- B: I think he just wanted to get a bit of time just to clear his head sometimes players do that tactically [69] it's really the first time he's done that in the match he's er he's he's stepped in a few times on the second serve but not really committing himself like he did on that return
- A: He's such a match player isn't he 15 40 and he's just just playing it right the whole time why not have a go at 15 40 nothing to lose sends a message [9]
- B: Well done
- A: Yes some hope
- B: Really needed that one right after that dodgy double fault the first point [1]
- A: You know who Djokovic reminds me of from the women's game reminds me so much in the way he plays matches of of Monica Seles who was a magnificent match player not necessarily the most physically gifted but just wonderful match player and they had it was actually er Seles's first coach was his first coach Jelena Gencic [1] who said er when she saw six-year-old Djokovic play that he's the greatest talent since Seles
- B: Wow
- A: And he's been through a few coaches along the way both of these guys have but Jelena was first, Niki Pilic [1] Novak Djokovic had to go to er Munich was four years based in Munich with Niki Pilic then there was Dejan Petrovic Riccardo Piatti Marian Vajda has been there every step of the way but not here I note Mark and Todd Martin have had a word or two as well but it's Vajda and now Boris Becker who are the impetus behind Novak Djokovic [1] never beaten in an Australian Open final and he's won four of them Murray has the memory of three bitter final losses here he's got to throw all of that out try and get the job done [2]



- B: But he's not out of this set by any means yet he's down a break 4 3 but we've seen so far that breaks that service holds are er not er haven't been easy in this match [1] he still can come back in this set [2]
- A: Now somebody has unfurled a banner on the court here and er [2] some sort of a human rights or a political protest whatever it is it's gone [3] you can see all the security that is required in an incident like this straight into the er routine there with players [2] being protected by security in the yellow shirts [1] just as we were talking about Monica Seles
- B: Oh exactly that's right
- A: And that terrible incident in Hamburg in the early 90s when she was er stabbed in the in the back so you can never be too careful you never know who's gonna have a word or two to say in a public arena but it seems to be er going on and whatever it was about I'm sure you can read about it I can't see from here [1] and they're being escorted out of the er Rod Laver Arena [2] slight delay in play there [38] just a minor delay here second set of this Grand Slam final the first Grand Slam final of the year French open coming up in Roland Garros May May June that's the one title that has eluded Novak Djokovic twice he's been in the final last year in 2012 it was the only thing missing off his magnificent resume which includes Davis Cup victory back in 2010 but er with the way Nadal is at the moment definitely not at 100% [2] Djokovic is er gonna have as good a chance this year as any other
- B: Yeah definitely [8]
- A: The Wimbledon Champion of course how important that victory over Roger Federer was 6 4 in the fifth because he'd lost the previous three Grand Slam finals that he'd contested
- B: Er
- A: That would have surprised and upset him [3] so two great players going head to head and I certainly put Murray in that in that er category at the moment with the whip hand er Djokovic so protest over here at the Rod Laver Arena people still being escorted out you can see just above Djokovic there somebody having a a a moan about something [2] the banner was taken away pretty swiftly but er they're gone [14] well it certainly broke the er flow of the match which er is fine for Murray because it wasn't particularly going his way
- B: Right
- A: Even though he just held serve for 3 4 a chance perhaps for Murray to clear his head and we start [19]
- B: OUTSTANDING point [4] both players here magnificent rally tough volley here to dig this one up and then the reflex volley very awkward right at his body did well there got the hands out in front [1] good start to the game [58] just off the line there seemed to shoot off skidded off the line [2]
- A: Djokovic off balance
- B: Oh what a point [2] so aggressive so accurate [59]
- A: He's got it he's back in [laughter] tremendous resilience he batters his way past the Djokovic defence a wonderful game [2]
- B: Well he set the tone there with an excellent first point a reflex volley very aggressive in this in that game he didn't wait for the charge he set the points up well went for it Djokovic guilty of two first serve misses in a row there 30 all old put himself under a bit of pressure but an excellent break of serve for Murray [16]
- A: Murray is surging forward at every opportunity now he was 2 love up in the second set then 4 2 down now 4 all [20] he's saying OK I'm right in the middle of doing it [laughter] [39] he's a tough boy isn't he he could have been out this Murray he said to his box when he was being encouraged just it's OK I got this he was 4 2 down and sure enough [2] he's got his nose in front [21] and that's away and the momentum absolutely with Andy Murray the first two points of the next game are gonna be so important [2] because

Djokovic is er he's on the back foot right now he's down never out because that's just not the way just the Djokovic is [1]

- B: It was a wonderful last couple of games there from Andy when when you look at it a set down of 4 3 break if he goes down two sets to love against Djokovic match not over but almost over and he comes out at 4 3 down and plays probably the most aggressive game he's played in the match on Djokovic's serve took some chances and had the belief in himself and came through and he played a superb service there at 4 all [2]
- A: Learning how to play matches takes playing them and when you think how many tremendous games these two 27-year olds have been in you can see the value of er er experience out there and Andy Murray three times has suffered losses in this Grand Slam final losses elsewhere as well he's had more than his fair share of victories as well but going back to his first Slam final 2008 U.S. Open against Federer remember the tears at Wimbledon which he recovered from to win the Olympic Games and then the US Open and then come back for Wimbledon it's just [2] it's a tough individual sport and how you handle the disappointments is er is the real the real learning curve [4] disappointing last year yes as he recovered from surgery but you know he made at least the quarter-final of each of the Grand Slams it wasn't exactly a bad year in fact he won three tournaments towards the end of it was really on a roll before Federer rather snuffed him out [3] so Djokovic all of a sudden serving to stay in the second set at 4 5 [16]
- B: This is really not helpful is it [15]
- A: Oh that's just too good [8]
- B: He came in a little bit early on that er in the rally for me you know he was gonna have to dig out a tough volley the approach has to be immaculate otherwise this is gonna come at you [25]
- A: Oh he's missed it
- B: It was way open wasn't it it really was unlucky [3]
- A: He knows [1] this is the time to attack and he certainly is and he's had real chances hasn't he opening two points [9] dust himself off but there's a positivity to him [13] [laughter] he's never overly comfortable with overheads is he
- B: No it wasn't a great overhead but that that one was pretty pretty close [1] he's probably got the poorest overhead of er all the players in the top ten or 15 [1]
- A: Just inside the line

**E.2 Jo-Wilfried Tsonga v Tomas Berdych 31<sup>st</sup> May 2015 ITV4 (French Open)**  
(34 minutes, 2209 words)

- A: He stood up admirably [1] and and he's chiselled out set points [54] er he composed himself nicely recomposed himself with some support from the crowd that he could have probably done without at that point [10] now this set point is on the racquet of the Czech [31] on we go [1] it seems the balloon has been popped here on Chartrier it might yet be Jo's day but not just yet  
[commercial break]
- B: Well there was a crowd of about 200 people watching the big screen out of one of the corridors just beneath our presentation position and there was a collective sigh of non when he put that rather lame shot in the net and so here's the other Frenchman Giles Simon who's off the mark so here we hear oui as as Simon breaks his duck at least we're assuming that's out is that out [1] it's out and so Wawrinka 3 Simon 1 [1] in the early stages on Suzanne Lenglen and will Tsonga hang on to win this by three sets to one that's the question that everybody on Philippe Chartier is asking let's go back to Nick [22]
- A: Well if Tomas Berdych wins it by three sets to two he'll have done something he's never done on the Grand Slam before come from two sets to love down played a five-setter here recently against another Frenchman Gael Monfils first round a couple of years ago he ended up losing that one [10] Monfils and Roger Federer who are due up next here on court Philippe Chartier probably increasingly concerned that they might not get on today [1] particularly if the er rain comes back [14] already rescheduled Maria Schova's Maria Sharapova's match here which was due on last to be first up tomorrow she's already gone back to the hotel [32] turn off your mobile phones [2] got ours turned off in the commentary box so Carlos Ramos wasn't talking to us [54] that was the steadying of the Tsonga ship that was much more like it now Fabrice is back with us having hotfooted it down courtside and moseyed his way to the other side of the court in the high expectation that er he was about to be conducting a winner's interview with Joe Wilford Tsonga you might still you might keep your questions I know you've been working hard on your questions you may well still need those but
- C: No
- A: It's gonna take a little bit longer
- C: Yes and my questions are not good anymore
- A: [laughter] He looked a little bit nervy didn't he in that tie-break for the first time
- C: Exactly I'm not sure if I'm gonna ask him this first if he makes it
- A: [laughter]
- C: But I just said er I was in the corner of the court ready to walk in when Jo served for the match and clearly he was nervous you can see his face in the corner when he was turning to the ball boys [13]
- A: I thought when he established that early mini-break when he took the point off Berdych's first serve that that might settle any tummy collywobbles that he might have had but actually having gone 3 love up in that tiebreak he then rather disintegrated [18]
- C: I think I think it was a big part in the tie-break when Berdych was [2] 3 4 down Tomas served two second serves in a row and one there was a return and one in the second shot Jo missed an easy ball without trying to do anything [1] and in my point of view it was probably the key moment in the tie-break [15] and also what I can say is once again being in the corner er of the court almost with the players I can tell you that the balls Jo and Tomas hit the balls unbelievably hard [18]
- A: Yes we've been keeping an eye on on [2] the productivity of er Berdych's second serve and and bit by bit it's becoming much more efficient he's winning more and more points

on that what was a profitable area for Tsonga a little bit less so at the moment [1] a game apiece [33]

C: Too good [8] you have to be strong mentally after losing the third set for Jo-Wilfred Tsonga going back into the battle [36]

A: Wild [1] yes [34]

C: Yes a couple of times many times I have to say that Berdych plays on purpose to Jo's forehand and another break point [2]

A: He's getting some good depth on those ground shots as well you see Tsonga wants to push forward but he's not being allowed [1] to break point [29]

C: O:h [1] it's right on the line

A: Yeah this is a re-energized Berdych [3] he is playing so much better now and he's ahead with a break

[commercial break]

Jo at the break talking to himself Fabrice just just telling himself er to relax to enjoy it I can see he knows he's tense at the moment [2]

C: Exactly he knows he could be out of this court already he could be [2] with his physiotherapist for the quarter-final relaxing for a massage but no he has to fight he has to relax

A: What the weather's doing [13]

C: And also what Joe said in the changeover is please help me help me I don't know if he was talking about his box sometimes the box can be a bit intense and put even more pressure but clearly Jo has to forget what happened at the end of the third set now to go back in the match [7]

A: These players here the two these couple of Frenchmen who know all about the pressures of playing at the home Grand Slam Nicolas Escudé Thierry Ascione [61] it's on the line [5] it's a little bit disconcerting there's absolutely no reaction at all from anyone here when Berdych hits the shot [2] you can still see the Eiffel Tower so that's probably a good sign there were some times down the years when you haven't been able to see it then you really know that it's raining [30]

C: What a sport tennis [2] on the emotional side when you see er what can happen in the mind of a player during a match during a two or three four five-hour match going up and down on the emotional side [34]

A: We talked a little bit about the nerves that that er Tsonga showed during that tie-break and serving for the for the match as well at at 5 4 Fabrice er but we need to acknowledge the game that Berdych has played and he's he's stepped up a couple of levels at the point he really needed to out that point of high crisis for the Czech

C: Exactly because what I'd like to say first is when Jo was leading two sets and a break it's [1] I would say because he played unbelievable tennis best tennis of the year for Jo Tsonga it was really very concentrated and he was moving so well on the court and when he dropped a little bit his level Tomas Berdych went through took his chance and now the match is very [1] balanced tough to know what's gonna happen [36] clearly on this point as he served the kick-back was very good but on the first forehand if Jo had the same ball in the first two sets he was killing his opponents he just went through the ball very easily not er the placement was not that good the intention wasn't good he didn't go for it and three four more shots later he lost the point [3] so once again intention intention for Jo very important [43] THAT'S THE WAY with the same serve as two points earlier but he went for it [32] not happy Jo he's doing all of them I don't know what he's talking about but that's clearly what he said probably because he's going close to the line Tomas Berdych at the moment [8]

A: Point for a double break [9]

- C: Three times in a row in this game on the outside Jo went for a kick wide around 140-150k [1] something he never did in the first three sets [1] normally was always mixing the speed [36]
- A: I'm not sure Berdych was entirely sure and er [7] this is what Tsonga didn't want to hear the second serve [16]
- C: The return of the serve was very very important in these four sets three two Berdych [commercial break]
- B: Well you can't see from that picture but there are some serious storm clouds gathering in the distance I don't know if that means we're gonna get some rain before too long and major storm clouds over Charrier and Giles Simon at the end of that first set on Suzanne Lenglen which he lost by 6 games to 1 to Stan Wawrinka but he's about to right the ship a bit in the second set 1 apiece and it's 15-all in the third game of that set but Jo needs to find something [2]
- A: Me and Fabrice are just speculating about whether he'll have to do the winner's interview with him needs to dig in here the Frenchman [21] well if this one is in he's he's played that shot well today [2] er but he has an obvious advantage down the right [5]
- C: As you said a couple of times before in the first two sets he once crossed he went down the line sorry [24]
- A: 198 kilometres an hour pressing 125 miles an hour [12] he's got himself ahead in this fourth set Berdych courtesy of the early break of serve [2] and rescued himself in the third set tie breaker saved himself [23] that was a bit more like the FIRST set Jo that was taking it on early [2]
- C: Jo has no longer he has no two options if he wants to win this match only one to stay aggressive on the court because now when he's moving back when Tomas Berdych can put his strong legs into the ground it's it's too dangerous for the French [12]
- A: Now for the first time in a while a bit of noise a bit of hope a bit of expectation amongst those in the posh seats those in the slightly less posh and [2] those in the not bad still break point for Tsonga [14]
- C: Oh well played by Jo what a comeback at this point
- A: What defence WHAT defence [2] we've been talking about his aggressive attacking game that's got him to where he is but that was all about brickwalling it [4] and we're back level in this fourth set [2] ten minutes away from three hours [2] and the weather's still being kindish to us [1] shortish break mid-match for some rain but we're lucky enough at the moment 3 all [9] just switching onto our coverage here on ITV4 today and [1] in the last couple of hours maybe a little bit more early on enough time for Elina Svitolina to eventually beat Alize Corne [2] as a result of the rain this is just the second match we've seen on court Philippe Charrier today [13]
- C: Oh oh oh [laughter] that's too good amazing
- A: Great great point [1] and you've got to applaud Berdych you've got to applaud his ambition [1] to to storm the net [2] to ask the bigger questions himself
- C: After the backhand volley he thought the point was won but no Joe was there [11] well played and we've seen just before the this point on the screen of your TV statistic of both players at the net today many many points won for Jo and Tomas [4]
- A: By the way if you if you're planning your early evening back home we're still hoping that we might get to see some of Gael Monfils against Roger Federer as slated next here [3] although that will depend entirely of course on whether this ends up being a four set match or a five set match [21] he's back ahead [2] Tsonga 4 3 [commercial break]
- It's been a pretty grim day to watch tennis weatherwise if we're being frank about it it's been cold it's been wet it's been chilly but there's no one leaving Charrier at the moment braving it out it's Berdych 3 4 on serve [68] that's just outrageous ball striking from

Tsonga [3] OK and another little glimpse back into the old days of the first set [2] when he was hitting without fear and frustrating the fourth seed [69] couple of wild shots once again Tsonga [1] making the most of the second serve [36] OH YES [2] THAT'S WHAT JO'S ALL ABOUT [5] and he's chiselled out another chance to break into the quarter finals [12] and we're back where we were an hour ago about an hour ago [2] Tsonga served after a break at 5 4 to win the match [2] now he's serving at 5 3 [21] Fabrice has left us he thinks it might be interview time fairly shortly he might be right [20] serving at 133 miles an hour [4] what on earth can Berdych do with that [14] same speed same outcome [2] THREE match points [6] after very nearly three hours [22] THERE ARE FEW FINER SIGHTS IN THIS SPORT THAN JO-WILFRIED TSONGA in full sail in Paris and once again he's a quarter-finalist at Roland Garros [2] and the fourth seed Tomas Berdych has been blasted off court by the home hero [3] and he only gives us that celebration now when it's a special win [1] and that's a special win he's come through in four sets 6-3 6-2 6-7 6-3 very nearly three hours of high entertainment on a wet Sunday evening

**E.3 Stan Wawrinka v Jo-Wilfried Tsonga 5<sup>th</sup> June 2015 ITV4 (French Open)**  
(52 minutes, 3344 words)

A: Well there's no question that Stan Wawrinka has er reinserted a new set of double As he's back ahead 4 3

[commercial break]

We've been watching both players struggle in the heat here over the last couple of hours we'll be making reference to Serena Williams and her troubles on this court yesterday we're hearing from Serena that she told us after that match she didn't go to her usual post-match press conference she just issued her statements instead and told us she'd rarely felt so poorly on the court and she's cancelled her practice session today and she's told her that she's not gonna practise at all tomorrow either ahead of her final against Lucie Safarova so Serena Williams wrapping herself up keeping herself in cotton wool before that final tomorrow she's suffering from the flu Williams against Safarova tomorrow afternoon here on ITV Sport [18]

B: Oh what a point from both players [1] talking about just a second ago a bit tired but the movement of the course at this point shows they still have a lot of energy [34]

A: The call's from Carlos Ramos [5] the call was a correct one it was long from Wawrinka [57] this is becoming a real wrestle in the sunshine er sort of mind over matter at the moment [10] both of them testing out each other's fitness mid-race almost [5] so still just the sense that there's perhaps a little bit more spring length in the stride of Tsonga [7]

B: And the crowd is pushing behind the French [35] what a forehand again [1] and Tsonga you can easily see returning second service intentionally in this game he was moving a lot he knows he has the perfect timing to get Stan's serve [1]

A: Given the opportunity he'll always walk around on to that forehand as well and he was given time and space to do it then [14]

B: That's wide [18] that's a real opportunity for sure [4] no first serve at all in this game [10] and a big second [35] he went for it [2] well done it's not his best shot backhand down the line but he tried to go it was a good option [39]

A: What's the decision [1] yeah it's a big one er you wouldn't know it from the Stan's face that [2] this is potentially an enormous moment [2]

B: Break point number five in the set for Jo [12] O:H just wide one two centimetres wide on the previous shot of Wawrinka important situation now for Jo this set will be very very close

A: [laughter]

B: That's tennis

A: What a match [2]

B: Not very successful both players on the break point [31] a backhand cross crosscourt Jo against Stan that is the best way for Jo to win the rally [2] when he's in this situation he has to find a way to move and to maybe go down the line to change the direction of the game [2]

A: No it's certainly not a pattern of play that Jo-Wilfried Tsonga wants to perpetuate [2] get it off his forehand as quickly as he can [9] well that's going to take a second opinion I suspect Wawrinka is walking towards the line quizzically hopefully

B: Yeah and er it's in [1]

A: What [5] oh no it's out it's out out [2]

B: Jo gave the point to Stan and the player said to Jo you have to be clear if you want to replay the point [1]

A: Well we're hearing that Hawkeye says it's out [18]

B: The first reaction of Jo was [2] to ask to replay the point but when the umpire checked the mark it was out [14]

- A: We are dealing in millimetres here [9]  
 B: And another break point for er Jo-Wilfried Tsonga [35] 212 kilometres per hour and wide this first serve  
 A: It's a smidge over 130 miles an hour back home [2] it's rapid [22]  
 B: And once again he tried to go down the line he knows he cannot stay on this backhand cross [1] he he has to go down the line and try to go with a short slice or drop shot [2]  
 A: [laughter] He's telling his coaches Escudé and Asian to calm down  
 B: Calm down  
 A: He's all right he's OK  
 B: Even more he said *la vie est belle* life is beautiful [laughter]  
 A: [laughter] Er that's great  
 B: It is beautiful but it's even better when you win [laughter]  
 A: [laughter] [4]  
 B: Oh what a crucial game won by Stan Wawrinka [2]  
 A: You really have got to tip your hat in his direction what a player what a competitor [commercial break]  
 Well somewhere to the South there's a hail storm brewing and er it's heading our way whether it hits the west of Paris or whether it misses us we will er we will just have to wait and see [1] we were thinking that this match this first semi-final might be might be done and dusted before the worst of the storm has arrived but the way things are going we've been on court for two and a half hours now still only concluded the first two sets er and down in the locker room somewhere Novak and Andy are doing whatever they need to do to keep themselves occupied they'll have half an eye of course on the television screens [2] they will know that it could be quite a while before they wander out here on Charrier [2] here's Tsonga serving to stay in this third set [8]  
 B: Oh it's too good [1] he is kicking down the line [4]  
 A: Actually been talking about it during the championships he thinks it's getting better it's it's not as loose as it used to be and certainly worked it to good effect in the win against Kei Nishikori on this court [1] still not necessarily the get-out-of-jail card for him [62]  
 B: Oh yes that's too good the way he wins this point Jo-Wilfried Tsonga [5]  
 A: He's not had too many opportunities in recent times to really get into this kind of rhythm to build the point construct the opportunity like he did just then [1] that's as good as it's got for a while beyond the extraordinary shot [2] extraordinary backhand and all but that was fabulous [14] it's touching [20] you can hear just how much effort it took to get round on that forehand the effort was worthwhile for Tsonga it squares things up [4] and Wawrinka is just having a word up to Magnus Norman his coach there he is on the the right-hand side finalist here in 2000 [1] he'll have memories flooding back whenever he sees Gurstav Gustavo Kuerten around this place Norman up in Wawrinka's player's box [54] if you come to the net you've got to do better than that surely [4]  
 B: He can [laughter]  
 A: Yeah and he knows it doesn't he  
 B: Yes [22]  
 A: Again just a little glimpse up towards Magnus Norman before [1] he er [2] selects the chosen ball [4]  
 B: And an ace on the line [1]  
 A: Good choice [2] he leads 6 5 [commercial break]  
 The cameras here haven't picked it up but there's a mad ferreting around going on in er Jo-Wilfried Tsonga's player's box at the moment because as he wandered back to his chair he looked up towards Escudé and asked Adrian and his his team and and held up his water bottle which was very near empty there's clearly a a special concoction in it an



- energy drink and they've in the player's box spent last minute desperately searching in everyone's bag for another bottle of this stuff [laughter] and judging by the panic on their faces I think Jo might be waiting for a while for a refill [1] and he's got he's got a big couple of minutes ahead of him here Fabrice serving to stay in this third set [1]
- B: Yeah and hopefully he has enough water to finish the set 'cause it's gonna be important er he will hopefully he's gonna win his service game and then after six points in the tie break
- A: And that's that pocket of Swiss they'll be up on their feet fairly shortly [28]
- B: Oh [2] the way he beat the ball once again Jo-Wilfried Tsonga it's just wonderful from the right to the left gives a lot of security good speed [70] I love this [7] so much power in the one hand racquet [33]
- A: And I don't think we've had a more important tie-break in these championships so far [4] this one is to decide [2] who takes a pretty significant advantage on the road to the final Fabrice
- B: And the one who's gonna lose this tie-breaker I'm not sure will find the energy to be back in the match [21]
- A: Remember Wawrinka rather fell apart in the second set tie-break but started this one much more confidently a lot more energy
- B: Yeah exactly he starts the second set tie-break there was many faults there he was down 5 0 very quickly [30] that is lovely but his backhand too long [8] not easy to return a first serve of Jo but when you are into the rally it's better to not to miss and to stay backhand to backhand crosscourt [16] Wawrinka overhead [2]
- A: It's a tough one he would have been looking right up into the sunshine [13] the weather has had a fundamental impact on this match from start to finish [1] sunshine just then having a particular impact on it [41] OH HO HO [1]
- B: HE MISSED this one after hitting this point perfectly [47] what a difference down the line backhand slice by Wawrinka this one was just perfect right in the corner [3] 6 6 this set tie-break is completely different [1] in this second set [15] nice one they want some time this one was with a lot of security [2]
- A: I'm sure you can hear the sounds of the the flags rattling against the poles above us here on these stands southerly winds picking up again which as we all know if you've been with us all afternoon suggests that the storms are also rapping towards us [7] so we're back on serve in this tie-break both of them have [1] won and lost mini-breaks [3]
- B: Er the points won on serve are completely different for both players Jo lost only two points on serve in the third set [2] Stan lost 16 [13] oh well
- A: The quality of the return
- B: Amazing just amazing this back hand return great opposition from Stan Wawrinka who has [2] now he has a mini-break [1] 4 3 two serves to come for the Swiss [36] OH what about this one [1] what about this one [1] beautiful backhand cross once again but tough for Jo to return down the line on his first service Stan Wawrinka he knows if he returns cross it can be a big danger but going down the line on the first serve return is very risky too [26] er Wawrinka it was not an easy ball to play in front of him
- A: No
- B: He just said OK I'll give you the ball tried to make this pass in such a big point [4] this game is full of technique strategy physical but also mentally tough [23]
- A: Oh [5] er no well it's been 27 years since the French last had a men's finalist Tsonga's going to have to go the long way now Wawrinka ahead
- [commercial break, pre-match interview with Andy Murray]
- As I know lots of you will be sitting at home at work waiting for Murray and Djokovic to take to this court but this is a contest of some ferocity some intensity as well right now thoroughly enjoying it [4] it's taken the best part of three hours to get through those first

- three sets [14]
- B: Come on Jo you have to stay in front in the beginning of this fourth set hold your serve he's trying scenarios so far in this match 'cause Wawrinka it was who won the first set it was fair he should have won the second but he lost it and Jo was the better player on the court in the third but lost the tie-break [31] yes well played but that was not enough and with this player of quality the quality of Stan Wawrinka and big trouble for the French [5]
- A: And Wawrinka was up 4 2 with a break of serve in the second set and he suffered a blister on his right hand all the energy seemed to be sapped away from him for a while but he's got it all back here [14] and as the flags rattle against their masts [3] Stan Wawrinka strikes perhaps decisively right at the start of this fourth set
- B: Yes I was talking about the scenario of this second and third set and especially the third where Wawrinka didn't even get one break point [2] Jo had six er couldn't convert one of them and now third break point in the fourth is converted by Stan Wawrinka [1] Jo will need a lot of energy to come back in this match he's very down mentally at the moment [3]
- A: We talked all along how he's worked on that mental strength working it out he's got to work it out now [22] there's a little camera flying across screen the camera that er Andy Murray will not be taking home with him there are others here on Chartrier [11]
- B: And well played Jo well played having been so slow in the opening game in the fourth and straight away good reaction [9]
- A: They're the kind of shots that camera gives us they are spectacular [19]
- B: Oh he was there on the ball with the backhand better than this [2]
- A: That's as much as er Wawrinka needed two opportunities to put this away he really ought to have put it away on the first [1] read it totally [6] now [...] [24]
- B: Oh well played well played Jo has come to the net good put some pressure on Stan [3]
- A: And straight away this time with a drop shot that does do the job he's got a couple of points to break back immediately [3] smart anticipation from Wawrinka he was on his way back almost before Tsonga hit the shot but in the end not enough and listen to this [31]
- B.: Third drop shot in this game [15]
- A: [laughter] How can you not be smiling watching this [2] this is what it's all about [26]
- B: Er he's trying everything he's giving everything because he knows er [2] being down two sets to one breaking the fourth and has come back to score right away just now in this game [3] the statistic is awful for Jo-Wilfried Tsonga only one break point [2] out of 13 [35] oh good he's so good moving around to return with his forehand good vision of the game from from Stan Wawrinka leading 2 0 in the fourth [37]
- A: It was a wonderful moment after he beat Nishikori on this court when he wrote his love for this place in the dirt on Chartrier you remember the end he's serving from now je t'aime Roland Garros and he lay flat on his back and he made the tee himself [3] he's gonna be scratching his adoration for this place in the muck again at the end of this then [2] time to get on his bike [10]
- B: It went down it went down just before the line [33]
- A: We're hearing by the way that the storms which were forecast to hit us mid-afternoon might just skirt by to the west of Paris we might get away with it [2]
- B: Good serve [2]
- A: He's still in this but it's Wawrinka 2 1  
[commercial break]

Yes an update on the weather forecast but a little earlier both me and John were predicting plague and pestilence and all manner of evil things hail stones the size of beach balls but it does look as if the storms are drifting by we've had an update from the ITV weather office i.e. Stu in the office downstairs and and I think we might be getting

- away with it Fabrice has been on Meteo France to check what do they what do they tell us
- B: Should be a bit better than this morning we may have a little bit of rain but er this morning when when I woke up it was more it was clear of rain and at Roland Garros at around 6pm [2]
- A: Wawrinka 2 1 [21] the service game right at the start of the set put under extreme pressure by the Frenchmen and here he goes again [7]
- B: Right on the line [1] break of serve again like in the first service game of the set [2] here Stan Wawrinka and Jo keep fighting [20]
- A: Oh [55]
- B: Oh oh oh [1] no way [1] it's tough for Jo you cannot do better in this rally
- A: No but but he's he's dealing with a man at the other end who's playing with a wand just look at this [1]
- B: He's two metres behind the baseline he can put his backhand down the line [1] almost in the corner [27]
- A: Now Jo-Wilfried Tsonga his 14th break point in this match [1] number taken so far one [2] and you would stake a fair amount of his fortune on doubling that total right here [5] it's not just been about Tsonga's inability to take the point it's about Wawrinka standing up and doubling in size almost when those moments have occurred Fabrice
- B: Yeah those big big top players the champions are amazing in those moments they're able to go for a bigger serve or the best shot in their pocket [9] oh it's his lucky day [1] lucky to see this ball go out of the court [2] there is the backhand [31] oi oi oi oi oi
- A: When you run so far around to get onto your forehand
- B: It has to be a winner
- A: Half of Paris was [laughter] waiting for Wawrinka to drop that ball in it was just acres of clay [1] look at that oh [2]
- B: And because Jo was so far out of the court it's back down back down on the line of Stan who was playing with a lot of safety security [15] uh not not sure if the second serve is out [7] yes it is another break point [2] it's strange because so far Wawrinka has played six double faults that's three times two on the same side of the court [14] oh no
- A: It's it's it's almost incredible 16 break points now and still just one taken [1]
- B: And I would say for Jo it's now or never [15] ace number 15 for Stan [1]
- A: And the allez you are hearing are from the Swiss French voices as opposed to French French [38]
- B: Well played [2] and it's right in the player [5]
- A: I think at this stage of the semi-final at Roland Garros I should probably forgive him that [41]
- B: Got the point in the end [1] won by Jo's strange one-hand backhand [24] no [1] I'll tell you as a as a as a player as a former player when you are in this situation it's very tough mentally to stay positive 17 break points for Jo he only converted one at the end of the second set [2] and since that period he's missed [8] let me find the number [8]
- A: Well whatever the number he was keen to clean that service line on the advantage side [1] however on this occasion [1] it's not a break point that he's thinking about it's a save point [1]
- B: Jo's missed the last twelve break points he had [2] or Stan
- A: Stan has saved them exactly depending on your point of view
- B: But mentally for Jo [laughter] it's not it's tough to stay positive I'll tell you [2]
- A: We're having a we're not supposed to be having a sit-down here but er [laughter]
- B: Yeah but you know when you lose when you're doing he needs twelve more points in a row you wanna go and take a seat [7]
- A: Well this is it's actually quite smart from from the umpire Carlos Ramos because as much

as [1] we ought to be getting on with this he's aware of the situation he's aware of just how much of a furnace it is out here on Charrier and he's giving the players as much time as they need to make sure that they are good and ready take on a bit more fluid towel themselves down [1] I like Carlos he was actually watching the Nadal Djokovic match from from the players' entrance a couple of days ago he wasn't working on it clearly didn't have a ticket but didn't want to miss it so he was just peeking around the door to make sure he got a good view now Tsonga on three in the fourth [5]

B: Let's see now [1] if Jo can recover keep fighting after losing so many opportunities to come back in this set

**E.4 Novak Djokovic v Andy Murray 6<sup>th</sup> June 2015 ITV4 (French Open)**  
(20 minutes, 1287 words)

- A: At 40 he moved inside the baseline to return that second serve a la Murray he has been going back a lot but changing it up just looking for a solution he's had such futility on those break points overall today and yesterday [1] and early yesterday of course [2]
- B: Trying to keep Novak within his sights here he can't let him [1] get too far ahead here huge returning game coming up here for Murray [25] stunning [2] glorious hitting from Djokovic [2]
- A: And the length of the world number one keeps just outstanding [2] his old coach a long time ago Ricardo Piatti he has to take a lot of credit for that he drilled it into Djokovic to keep the ball a good metre from the baseline [1] hours and hours of practising that have allowed him to produce it in the most intense moments [51]
- B: A little slip there from Novak but Murray not putting a foot wrong in this particular round great angle coming up [55] you don't become world number one by throwing yourself a pity party when things don't go your way what a response in this final set it's been from Novak if anything he's elevated his play to an even higher level [44]
- A: Somewhere in the men's locker room right now Stan Wawrinka sits watches [1] waits and wonders who is it gonna be tomorrow [11]
- B: Well it's Novak Djokovic who sits down in pole position in this year's French Open final 3 love

[commercial break]

It's not a working day downtown today here this weekend in Paris it's a beautiful day many are enjoying that park and many enjoying what they're witnessing here at Roland Garros on the Philippe Chartier court Murray won't be enjoying the scenario right now as he trails love 3 in his final set [5]

- A: It's just the one break of serve [3] he knows he can grind out another break [1] whenever he's got chances Murray has been able to capitalise on his break points they've been few but he's been rock solid on the big points he just has to keep holding serve here and just stay in the slipstream [5] just hope he can drive by for a pass [5]
- B: Well that was a a bit of gift from Novak you don't often get those in these situations to hold when you're serving well there's a lot of players in tennis where it's a lot easier than it is against Djokovic which tends to be an ordeal in itself each time
- A: [laughter] [78]
- B: Definitely a little more variety from Novak today in terms of his return position off that second serve [19] the return out but Murray into this final set and the game on the board [4]
- A: Champions respond in different ways one way that that Novak has responded in this fifth set is by upping his offence particularly on his forehand wing he's been averaging in the mid 70s mile per hour on his forehand side guess what the fifth set he's averaging 85 miles an hour he is ripping the cover off the ball in this set [15]
- A: So close [25]
- B: And again so close but so close doesn't beat the world number one trying to accomplish something that very few people have done in the game before by winning all four Grand Slams [38]
- A: Oh my that's outrageous [1] out:rageous [1] did this go outside the net post it nearly did [1] the angle Murray creates is fantastic [1] but Novak just says I'm just gonna take this up the line this point's over [5] and had had to be in the mid 90s that forehand that was a lightning bolt [6] nothing you can do [2] that's just too good Djokovic too good so far 4 1 he leads

[commercial break]

- B: Almost a year to the day that Amelie Mauresmo was hired by Andy Murray as his coach much was made of it and in recent weeks we've seen him play some of his finest ever tennis not just on clay of course because he's not been beaten yet fifteen and over perhaps even in his career and that run through in Madrid where he took out Raonic Nishikori and Nadal but he's playing a player right now who is simply the best [1] and he's playing that way as well what if anything can Murray do to stop this onslaught [27]
- A: That's wide that's exactly what Murray can and should do which is batten down the hatches in this points and just try to weather the storm Murray doesn't have a game that he can go nuclear he can't just try and come out here and blast the ball through Novak I mean Novak defends just as well as Andy does he just has to keep trying to grind this out and force Novak to play extended points and see if he can extract the unforced errors that's the only way for Murray [4] be offensive when you can be [1] and be a shock absorber when you have to be [10] if Novak keeps playing the way he has in this set he'll shake his hand and tell him it was too good [1] because that's what it's been so far [11] obviously Murray will rue his first service game in this set where he donated a bunch of unforced errors [3] that's in the rear view now [33]
- B: Well he'll be in there one day and in fact Nadal Andy Murray in the VIP section but he's playing an awful lot of points from very close to me right now [2] tough to impact Novak when you're that far behind the court [2] immaculate length from the world number one [12]
- A: Novak calling that one good so it will be a first serve [1] for Andy [21] it's a massive moment here for Murray 30 all he has to defend his serve [15]
- B: You almost got the sense when he took that return on at 30 love Djokovic that point and the scent of another break [3] the opportunity presents itself [42] as a tennis fan you cannot but revel at this man's greatness [13]
- A: What a response it's been [1] for Novak in this fifth set [1] made nine unforced errors towards the end of [1] the fourth set and he has tightened everything up in the best sense of that word and he has really got the grip on the match now serving 4 at 5 1 [23]
- B: A little bit like this contest so close and now it would seem so far for Andy Murray he's there [2] but he's not quite there [65] he's given everything he's made this a wonderful contest a fantastic memory for everybody over the two days [2] but it is Djokovic with three match points to get through to the French Open final once again [16] and it will give him the opportunity to become just the eighth man to complete the career Grand Slam [4] he deserves the opportunity to do that against Stan Wawrinka in the final [2] plenty of respect at the net as you would expect between these two great champions but Novak far greater in the final set he ran away with it [4]
- A: The fans saluting Andy Murray for pushing this match into a fifth set and having his best clay court season ever just the one loss here not much separated them for so much of a match he'll go to the grass healthy full of confidence for sure slightly disappointed today but he really shouldn't be in the end because this man just elevated his game to a level that really no one in 2015 can and has been able to match

## F Tennis on the radio (56 minutes, 10,000 words)

### F.1 Novak Djokovic v Andy Murray 5<sup>th</sup> June 2015 BBC Radio 5 Live Sports Extra (French Open) (40 minutes, 6988 words)

- A: Lost 15 won 15 Djokovic's record on clay played 15 won 15 everywhere you go he just won't let you beat him at anything
- B: [laughter] Yeah it's a great record for both players they're er oh I suppose the in-form clay court players it's hard to say er Stan Wawrinka is not an in-form clay court player after getting through getting through he's through to the final already
- A: He's peaking at the right time perhaps
- B: Yeah that's what it's all about isn't it who cares who wins the first couple of clay court tournaments of the year I mean Monte Carlo though it has been Rafa's hunting ground for many years is er is e:r you know it hasn't been the last couple of years and and Stan's won it and Novak's won it but it doesn't really mean much and the players will admit the first week on the clay I'm not too sure where my legs are I'm sliding and slipping and if I manage to get some form and a few matches in then fantastic but er it is the latter stages but they're are the big tournaments in Rome Madrid particularly but Rome is always a very good indicator of how a player is is going [1] and er Murray had a great run into that and of course didn't didn't want to risk his chances he wanted to stay fresh here which I think which has proved to be a good move [2]
- A: Yes now he's in the semi-final and he's taking on Novak Djokovic with those extra two or three days of rest time away from the courts [1] I'm sure very worthwhile he needs to find a way of breaking Djokovic's serve very quickly his punched backhand service return is long [2] and again he looks up high into the stands seeking inspiration Bunny Austin the last British man in a French Open final back in 1937 he lost to Henner Henkel in straight sets in the final forehand from Djokovic backhand Murray forehand Djokovic the backhand cross-court again from Murray the drop-shot from Djokovic into the net [3] struck that from a long way behind the baseline but he's been deadly with that at Roland Garros over the last ten or eleven days [2] he's deadly everywhere amazing record he's putting together [1] won 40 of his 42 matches in 2015 both those defeats beneath Grand Slam and Masters level [1] serves again serves an ace [1] down the centre with a bit of kick to move to 30 15 [6] and it's very tempting to start to think ahead and wonder just what Djokovic can achieve in this calendar year first Grand Slam in the bag and a set and a break up against Andy Murray in this French Open semi-final and there's another ace from Djokovic [2] Murray [1] swinging at thin air as Djokovic serves his fourth ace and moves to 40 15 and two game-points for a 5 3 lead and he's just taking all the drama and the fuss out of the occasion Djokovic which he does so ruthlessly wherever he's on tour the block's returned by Murray the sliced backhand the volley from Djokovic Murray into the net but with the exception maybe of a few overheads every part of his game looks secure it's so hard to build a case for his opponent he he will have to lose at some stage but it just looks so hard doesn't it Pat to see any holes in his armour as he moves into a 5 3 lead
- B: One of the really dangerous times for the opponent is when er starts coming in and doing these sort of volleys sneaking in hitting the drop-shot angle volleys to successfully be in touch [1] when he comes in and starts missing a few as he has done over his career that's the time we think oh you know you've got him in a way because he's gonna have to stay at the back of the court when he's sneaking in and feeling comfortable finishing off points boy where do you do where do you go there that's his weakest part of his game and he's hitting it to perfection [1]

- A: Boris Becker's been working his magic I'm sure 5 3 Murray into the net with a backhand as he serves to stay in this second set [2] and even though the [1] match and the scoreline is very very different to last year when when Murray played Nadal and was utterly thrashed er at the moment it it feels as if a straight sets defeat is inevitable but can he surprise us can he turn this one around Murray [2] he has love 15 and he's hit a horrible forehand and he's two points away from dropping the set [1]
- B: That was just almost out of the blue that wild one [1] it was he was going for the big winner [1] and he decided he wanted to put a little bit more top-spin on the ball and as clay courts do they don't always bounce consistently or you need the balls to hop just a little bit or hold up in the a bit of dirt that's been [1] accumulated due to sliding the slides across the court
- A: Murray love 30 down there's an ace but he looks a little bit flat and inhibited to me Pat given the occasion [5] 15 30 [2] Amelie applauding hard she hopes to be at Wimbledon Amelie Mauresmo [3] but can't say for sure with her first child expected in August [3] definitely gloomy overhead no imminent threat of rain I don't think [3] 15 30 this a [1] second serve from Murray it's on to the Djokovic backhand Murray with a short ball hits the forehand back at Djokovic who barely has to move another forehand from Murray Djokovic pushing Murray back behind the baseline now and Djokovic right into the corner that's BRILLIANT
- B: You're kidding me that is brilliant that's absolutely the right word for that Murray was about two feet a foot inside the baseline thumping balls Djokovic was back about six eight feet behind the baseline sort of semi-defending them and then from that position he hit it what seemed like a regulation backhand that went right into the corner backhand crosscourt corner just just absolutely brilliant
- A: Two set-points for Djokovic for a two sets to love lead Murray serves at 15 40 the backhand return from Djokovic Murray now attacking with a forehand he's got the overhead he'll let it bounce he'll SMASH IT OVER the baseline HORROR SHOW from Andy Murray [3] unbelievably bad from Murray there
- B: Wow
- A: And how much belief does he have he started well but it still wasn't enough and Djokovic has cruised through that second set in the end two breaks of serve he's won it 6 3 and that was a shot of a man who just does not believe today is going to be his day he needs to do something extraordinary if he's to avoid an eighth successive defeat to Novak Djokovic Pat
- B: Yeah absolutely it er I you know wondered what was going on that lob was literally [2] it was one of those ones that er you know at home if you're if you're a local tennis player and that ball bounced like that and you missed that smash you would be embarrassed everybody would sort of laugh at you your opponent would laugh or your partner would laugh how did you miss that let alone let alone [laughter] Murray no sun no wind involved there's a little bit of breeze out there but I think he just took his eye off the ball saw where Djokovic was I don't know I don't know what anyway I don't want to make excuses for him but there's a lack of concentration and as you said it's not a good it's not a good sign at all so
- A: No and this is the problem isn't it because he was competitive at the first seven games of the match but Djokovic just then suddenly with a bit of help from Murray admittedly he had played one bad game Djokovic played a fabulous game to close out the set and then you start to get a break down in the second and you know the recent history between the two and you know that Djokovic cannot put a foot wrong in 2015 and how it must be so hard to convince yourself that you're competitive and that you can really win this match [2]



- B: Yeah it is the only thing you can really do is to hang in there er you know see how you go in the first game or so and er literally just hold onto your serve and and take it one step at a time yeah looking too far ahead it's er pretty depressing if you wanna do that [1] Russel we should live in the moment we should just live in the moment I don't know why we think looking too far ahead my spiritual guru tells me live in the moment Pat
- A: So does that mean
- B: Have no fear so he should be living worrying about this very next point or playing this very next point OK
- A: So we're not even living in the third set yet
- B: No we're
- A: We're living in the changeover
- B: No we're living in a sauna right at the moment [laughter] in the corner of Roland-Garros the second the first tier here which is better than most of most of the commentating booths here but of course the all-England club is awesome but we are
- A: Yeah we are
- B: We're living in the moment we've got a couple of other smelly journalists here next to us as well
- A: Yeah Alistair Bruce-Ball I think is the er the next smelly man who's going to come in as I leave the sauna
- B: Yes
- A: I think I might just put a bit more water on the hot coals just to to fire it up a little bit more
- B: OK go on
- A: And I'll leave you to it
- B: Thank you I'm actually going to change my shirt I think I'll not show off sweat as much as Murray or Djokovic but I'm getting close and the players the court's been swept and the er lines are being dusted it's been watered but it's the cloud the cloud cover's come over it and it looks like that storm that's er well supposed to come later in the day is getting getting closer I think we'll get through this match though by the looks of it
- C: I know Pat I was just going to try and strike an optimistic note I said hey how about a thunderstorm play gets stopped Murray gets off court the whole momentum changes he comes back and wins the the next three sets but think that might
- B: Well
- C: Might be stretching it
- B: Well that's what he wants that's what he needs is is er certainly a bit of a rain delay or something like that or or a plank of scoreboard falling on somebody's head like it did like Tsonga and Nishikori
- C: Yeah
- B: That was unbelievable it fell down in the crowd and they had to stop for what 20 minutes or so I don't know why
- C: It was longer it was longer than that wasn't it they took them off for quite a while and it did change the er
- B: Change the momentum
- C: Yeah
- B: The momentum of the match it ended up going to Tsonga it was 6 1 5 1 up that happened and then Nishikori came in on the next three games after a half-an-hour break won won the third set won the fourth set so er there might be a few Scotsmen up there
- C: [laughter]
- B: With with a wrench loosening up some [laughter] there's Djokovic missing another smash that was a little trickier coming over his head again a very very make-able smash inside

the service box and it looks like the breeze is picking up here with this weather coming in imminent storm

- C: Yeah
- B: I suppose it's hail giant hail is expected
- C: That's almost impossible to believe considering the weather and the blue skies we've had [laughter] it's just
- B: It's like Melbourne weather
- C: Yeah
- B: It changes every five minutes though er er you expect it in Melbourne here it goes
- C: 15 all er start of the third set Djokovic has taken the first two sets 6 3 6 3 Murray with a cross-court backhand wide [2] er [2] so Murray turns and hollers to no one in particular because he's at the far end from the players' boxes at the moment frustrated with himself not going his way and that has so often been the case of course against Novak Djokovic since the Wimbledon final win of Andy Murray in 2013 first serve from Djokovic catches the top of the net and is out [2] so 30 15 can Andy Murray turn the tide against the best player in the world Djokovic backhand slice onto Murray's backhand it was a low ball for Murray to scoop up over the net then the forehand is pulled WIDE by Andy Murray [1] 40 15 [6] Djokovic just casually flicks a couple of spare tennis balls between his legs back to the ball boys behind him [2] sunshine is gone but the air is still thick muggy and sticky as Djokovic serves onto the Murray forehand lovely blocked slice return from Murray then the half-volley picks up from his bootlaces on the baseline crosscourt forehand from Murray LONG from Djokovic on the forehand and this is what Andy Murray probably needs is just a little lapse in concentration somewhere some let-up from Djokovic to try and get him back into the game Pat Cash has er decided to go and towel off having left the sauna so Miles Maclagan has boldly stepped in into the sweat box to continue our coverage here on Five Live Sports Extra [2] 40 30 Djokovic serve down the middle Murray block return with the forehand Djokovic skids into a forehand top-spin down the line and slides again onto his backhand side Murray his backhand lands just inside the baseline that's a short one for Murray Djokovic attacks and puts it AWAY CROSSCOURT to take the game at the start of the third set 6 3 6 3 he's had the first two sets and he holds serve at the start of the third to lead by a game er to love maybe Miles who might just reprise the conversation we were just having over on the other station Five Live telling the listeners across the UK that [1] Djokovic is close-up as you've been observing him today and not just from our our commentary box but court-side is just so relentless and and so good
- D: Er that's it and er as Russell was saying in here earlier he's it's so clinical he he he's just taken all the drama out of this match what you know what's a highly anticipated clash not just for us in Britain but around these grounds you could sense that you know this was the er first match was was the appetizer a pretty good appetizer at that but this was what the people were coming to see and Murray put out a challenge and and it's far from the fact that Murray hasn't played well this guy Djokovic is just so good at everything he does the movement is sublime the ease of power and you can see how he lasts for these long matches because it's such it's with such fluidity that he plays the power comes easily the movement as opposed to Murray who's also you know he's quick and possibly quicker than Djokovic but it just takes a lot more effort out of him it's just magnificent to see Djokovic up close
- C: Murray's taken the first point on his serve and that's the reason why Novak Djokovic is the world number one it is the reason why he could possibly complete the career Grand Slam here this year if he wins the French Open [1] which is what he's trying to do for the first time in his career it's the reason why he'll actually be on course for the calendar Grand Slam as well and that's certainly going to generate some interest if he does win

here going into Wimbledon and possibly the US Open later in the year Andy Murray's fighting hard though you'd expect that from him forehand down the line is a winner 30 love

- D: Yeah Djokovic if he does get the win here it's er he's gonna have to answer a lot of questions about that Slam and I'm I'm doubting myself a little bit I I had Murray down for the Wimbledon favourite and I think that just the grass favours him because he's a slightly flatter hitter of the ball skids through the court here Djokovic playing a lot more top-spin and that's a beautiful drop-shot backhand from er from Andy Murray it went inside the court he's sticking around but unfortunately the pattern has been has been that and then Djokovic has edged through and got the break
- C: Talking about that storm coming on the way as well as the sun disappearing now the wind has er really got up I mean you can really see it tugging at at Andy Murray's white T-shirt good service game so far 40 love down two sets though and then he he almost got blown off his feet there the wind gusted up you could see the loose bits of clay come flying back towards him there's a real breeze coming straight at Murray there Djokovic slams a forehand back at him lovely low slice from Murray just creeps over the net Djokovic long with the forehand down the line way long as well [1] so that's one game he's just got to hope hasn't he Miles for just one little opportunity one lapse in concentration and then then you know and then pounce on it and then then you know try and go from there
- D: That's absolutely it I mean the score is showing quite a routine match so far but there have been tense moments in it and let's not forget Novak Djokovic doesn't appear so at times but he is human and and you know getting this title is a massive thing for him and if Andy Murray can put some kind of speed bump in the way it might just unsettle things you can see Djokovic is often more tense than than he er he shows there's a bit of interaction from the box he's looking up earlier in the match he told some of the his supporters in the box to sort of sit down and chill out a bit it makes you a bit tense when you see the rest of them the rest of them all going crazy [1]
- C: Lovely forehand winner cross-court from Novak Djokovic as Murray loses his footing on the er first point of Djokovic's service game 1 game all third set Djokovic taken the first two 6 3 6 3 we will just keep reminding you as well that Stan Wawrinka is the player who awaits in the final it'll be his first French Open final he beat Jo-Wilfried Tsonga in four sets earlier on today
- D: He's also someone who's really been hoping for a slightly more bruising encounter than what we've witnessed so far [1]
- C: Yeah it's been a bit of a cruise so far for Novak Djokovic Murray cross-court backhand now with a backhand slice Djokovic [1] slice so both of them now going for the slices Murray's was evil there just dying at Djokovic's feet on the baseline into the bigger ground strokes now Murray just clips the top of the net then the drop-shot from Murray Djokovic comes HURLING IN gets the angle on it but can't quite get it over the net Murray takes the point
- D: A copy of the backhand drop-shot we saw just as we started out on the end smart play from Murray he's he's playing into the wind so that drop-shot dies very very quickly [1] he just needs to maybe look at those sort of options just to unsettle Djokovic's rhythm which is er as we've been saying pretty impressive at this moment in time
- C: 15 all 1 all third set [2] OK Novak Djokovic just gets a time violation there taking too long over delivering his serve he doesn't even he doesn't even look up [1] he just deals with it and then throws himself into the serve which Murray blocks back on the forehand but he's having to skid wide to his backhand side puts up the lob Djokovic tries to put away the first smash Murray gets that back Djokovic does him the second time though clean deep smash into the corner and Murray couldn't get that

- D: Yeah played them both with a little bit of care not easy when that ball's blowing around Murray as I said playing into the wind so give those lobs a good crack he's so good at finding that sort of yard from the baseline kind of length
- C: One hour 40 minutes played so far 30 15 on the Novak Djokovic serve [3] yet to drop a set in the tournament [2] and watching him again today you can see why second serve is deep Murray on the backhand with a good angle on that now on his forehand whips that cross-court bounces up off the net for Djokovic to attack CROSS-COURT and Murray finds the net with his forehand [2]
- D: Such an array of shots from Djokovic and just he has the ball under so much control he was able to accelerate but still hit it shorter couldn't give it that much height over the net it dipped quickly so many of his shots look as though they might be floating with the baseline they just dip at the last minute [1]
- C: 40 15 and it's an ace down the middle from Novak Djokovic so he continues his march towards the final at the moment [2] Djokovic leading by 2 games to 1 as you heard he's taken the first two sets 6 3 6 3 we've played just under an hour and three quarters so far it's cooling down a little bit the breeze is getting up but the match continues er to go [1] the same way Novak Djokovic in complete control [2] it must be extremely dispiriting to play against Miles when you know you're playing pretty well everything's coming back winners going past you you can't hit winners because he's retrieving everything else
- D: Extremely so we touched a little while ago on er you know that Andy was looking a little physically worn and I mean not to read too much into it because he he often looks that way and then two three hours later he's still going strong it takes its toll mentally which feeds through to the physical side just thinking you know how hard am I going to have to push how much is it going to take that's one of the unique things about tennis there is no exact finishing line there's no distance you have to run or no number of rounds or er not a set amount of time it's open-ended which is a huge mental challenge in itself if you start to doubt yourself which is what er Rafael Nadal used to get always to do on this surface now it's Djokovic and Djokovic has even gotten Nadal doubting in in in that area it's very very tough to stay positive to stay upbeat stick to your gameplan especially now 2 sets to love down this is you know I'm not not a betting man but you know in terms of odds Murray coming back now must be about as long as it gets right
- C: Yeah I'd agree going with serve in the third set Djokovic two sets up this is Five Live Sports Extra we've just gone past seven o'clock local time serve is curling away from Djokovic his forehand on the stretch he puts that in the net Murray's just gotta stick at it try and take this third set take it into a fourth get Djokovic doubting
- D: At this stage Murray playing with the wind so if he can get the this whole under his belt get to 2 all and just make a little assault on the Djokovic serve while he's serving into the wind
- C: Good first serve from Murray Djokovic can't get that back on the backhand
- D: It seems to come a go a little bit the wind and both players to be fair have made haven't really looked like they've struggled with it but if you can just get the ball up and and use those conditions a little bit he needs to take advantage of everything he can
- C: 30 love Andy Murray's serve again good first serve under Djokovic's forehand he timed the return nicely though then a very deep cross-court backhand from Djokovic goes for the drop-shot Murray's quick he gets there pushes that down the line Djokovic tries to go cross-court with the winner Murray can't get it [2]
- D: Again Djokovic with the ball on a string it wasn't a bad push up the line from Murray off the Djokovic drop-shot but he held that back end he held it and held it until Murray was a split second it was totally mistimed and then flicked it cross-court
- C: Agonisingly out of reach for Andy Murray just looking at spectators behind him with one woman in a shawl that really is gusting around in the wind it gives you some idea and

actually Murray having hit the serve in the net almost looked round as if he'd been taken slightly by surprise it's got very very breezy er all of a sudden deep second serve and Djokovic couldn't control that his backhand just goes long I thought that might fall awkwardly in on the baseline there but it didn't 40 15 [4]

- D: Somewhat caught by the depth of that second serve which Murray got on their radar it's a good 15 to 20 kilometres per hour behind the likes of Wawrinka Djokovic
- C: Fabulous first serve from Andy Murray to end the game big booming ace past Djokovic's forehand 2 games all in the third set [1] and Djokovic two sets to the good Djokovic of course the winner between the pair in the Australian Open final in January er they met in Indian Wells in the semi-finals Djokovic won that er he beat Murray in the final in Miami this year as well [2] and at the moment he's got Murray where he wants him [1] Murray though good positive body language at the moment bouncing around behind the baseline just thumps his left hand on his racquet strings and tells himself to to come on and get in there and he's got a forehand down the line here Djokovic can't quite put that away has another chance here with the forehand Murray on the move scoops it up with a big lob which will drop long [2]
- D: So seldom do we see Murray miss that sort of neutralising shot but a combination of a little bit of a breeze I don't think that's such an issue on that particular occasion but just the pressure that Djokovic continues to put to put on him he knows everything has to have be played with pin-point accuracy [1]
- C: First serve from Novak Djokovic into the net flips the ball out of his left pocket throws it up in front of him [2] Murray leaps forward into a forehand return beautifully deep that one onto the Djokovic backhand Djokovic with another looping backhand which lands just inside the baseline Murray's backhand cross-court trying to force Djokovic backwards here cross-court forehand from Murray then the backhand drop-shot Djokovic slides in angles it across court Murray pokes it down the line Djokovic gets a backhand volley on it it's just wide the lob backhand volley and it's 15 all [2]
- D: It just shows the Djokovic speed he slipped before he went for that drop-shot which was a very good drop-shot still got there in time [1] to play a great shot and I wasn't quite sure if that was going inside the service box or somewhere irrelevant [3] we may see more and more drop-shots from Murray it's a shot that has er at least got him in the game a bit [1]
- C: 15 all 2 all third set Djokovic leading by two sets to love whips a forehand down the line Murray got to it blocked volley by Djokovic incredible angle on that almost went sideways off the racquet for the winner
- D: Totally unnecessary angle but so well played that obviously just about curled back into the net Murray not completely out of court but a million miles away from there he would have definitely had to crash into the er umpire's chair if he was going to get anywhere near it [1] this man in his orange shirt Novak Djokovic it's just the ball feeling so good on his strings [2]
- C: 30 15 Djokovic first serve curling away from Murray's forehand down the middle ace 40 15 [3] well there have been two defeats for Novak Djokovic this year [1] one against Roger Federer in Dubai and one against the big-serving Ivo Karlovic in Doha [1] but at the moment the way he's playing certainly in the Slams he does seem nigh-on invincible forehand down the line from Djokovic Murray just trying to live with him at the moment cross-court forehand Djokovic down the middle of the court Murray crunches a backhand off off the Djokovic backhand Djokovic slams one down the line Murray somehow gets that back at full stretch he's going to try it again he can only scoop it up in the air takes a big PUFF because he's absolutely exhausted there and Djokovic puts the smash away into the open court and leads by 3 games to 2 [1] and he's closing in on an eighth win in a row against Andy Murray there's not really much more Andy can do

- D: No he's doing what he can Djokovic is just not allowing him a sniff and you mentioned the two losses he's had this year I saw one of them I didn't see the loss against against Karlovic but I can pretty much guess how how that went the Federer loss he was very much Federer was able to really mix up the rhythm it was a quicker court it has to be er it has to be said in Dubai one of the quicker surfaces of the year he took charge and served impeccably that day of course that's tough to do on a clay court because you get those free points but Murray to just find a way almost has to forget about his game for the moment and think more just how is he going to upset upset Djokovic's rhythm and there's no guarantee he'll be able to do that he won't be the first player to have tried [2]
- C: And Novak Djokovic is talking to a little bit of dried fruit again at the change of ends it looked like a box of grapes initially at the start of the match it might be dates or something like that whatever it is he'll stick with it it's working takes a few fluids on board it has cooled down a little bit here
- D: Yeah players not using the er ice ice towels anymore ice rolls whatever ice sausage rolls
- C: Ice yes that's right the ice sausage on the neck [1] so Djokovic leads 3 2
- D: See I told you now that it's cooling down now I'll probably bring one up here
- C: Yeah a nice warm one exactly but it's a bit more comfortable for the spectators as well they've seen Wawrinka beat Tsonga in four sets and they're watching a master class at the moment from Novak Djokovic as the breeze tugs at his orange shirt Andy Murray just loses control of the ball that he was bouncing before he served it hit his left foot and dribbled into mid-court and he didn't want to go and get that so the ball boy did it for him and he's taken another one went for everything on the first serve and [1] wallops it into the net [5] Djokovic relentless with the pressure Murray's ball toss goes slightly wrong in the breeze there might have just heard him apologise on our effects microphone slightly short with the second serve big backhand from Murray down the line another one cross-court into the net oh he's annoyed really annoyed with himself [3]
- D: It's the pressure again it's around this stage [1] it's happened with both sets he just made a couple of careless er errors you do feel I know when you're coaching against these top guys you feel how every point's so important when you eventually do get a free one it's such a relief it feels like such a gift
- C: Good forehand return from Djokovic Murray's forehand is down the line Djokovic's forehand loops up for the Murray backhand the slice from Djokovic Murray whips another forehand down the line that's deep and it's too deep for Murray with the forehand love 30
- D: Another error that one a no pace ball from Djokovic [3] and sitting in that president's box there you can see his big wavy hair now it's the three time past champion Gustavo Kuerten
- C: Oh yes
- D: And you wonder er I did ask him I asked him about Nadal but obviously things have changed since would you like to have a go at these guys or do you sort of think no I'm glad my time has gone
- C: Murray finds the first serve where he needs it tries to put it away cross-court Djokovic gets there with a backhand lob that goes long 15 30 Murray's got to fight for absolutely everything now under pressure on his serve if Djokovic breaks again that could be that [2] 15 30
- D: He's had some telling serves just the difference er in these two players capitalising on their short ball Djokovic just more potency in his strike
- C: First serve Murray again finds the target Djokovic GETS IT BACK AT FULL STRETCH AND MURRAY drags a backhand down into the net it is two break points he's cursing himself again and the errors just creeping in

- D: Well er it's the control over the ball again by Djokovic big serve 205 kilometres an hour and he's somehow not just managed to get a racquet on it but to put it in in an awkward spot it just continues to amaze what this man can produce on the tennis court [2]
- C: Djokovic is crouched poised like a panther ready to strike at the far end 15 40 two break points for a 4 2 lead and he already has that two set lead here against Andy Murray another massive first serve and Djokovic just pulls the backhand wide he wasn't far away though
- D: [laughter] you're right it is a massive serve it's not like he's got it late he actually got it too early pulled the backhand [laughter] wide on Murray's backhand side how clearly this man sees the ball [2]
- C: 30 40 one of the break points saved Murray scrambling to try and stay in this match at the moment against the man he just has not been able to beat for the last couple of years but then not many people have he's lost the ball toss again [1] second serve [2] spinning onto the DJOKOVIC BACKHAND and he's long this time Andy Murray is encouraging himself because he's saved two break points [2]
- D: Well he knows they're massive points the first one not so but that is a surprising miss from Novak Djokovic who's hardly put a foot wrong his second serve
- C: I don't think Djokovic could quite believe it he just stood there and stared down court as if well well that doesn't happen deuce Murray's first serve again is huge down the middle Djokovic at full stretch gets the backhand back managed to get another one back Murray puts it away mid-air with the backhand down the line and he really is between points talking to himself now because he knows the game is on here gotta hold his serve [2] to try and stay in this match trailing 3 2 in the third set [2] but he's two sets down from [4] so from 15 40 it's now advantage Murray another big first serve down the middle Djokovic's forehand just lands on the line then down the line Djokovic goes with a backhand Murray's back in this rally being forced to skid onto that right foot with a forehand Djokovic with a FABULOUS DEEP shot into the Murray backhand corner which Murray can only stab into the ground
- D: Yeah first serve back on the line and to to put it into perspective Djokovic is winning the same amount of points on his own second serve as Murray's winning on his first that's how well Djokovic has neutralised the first serve but it's still key that he makes it 'cause he's winning the percentage the chance of Djokovic winning the point on Murray's second serve is over 50% [1]
- C: Deuce Murray's first serve into the net [2] grumbles about something there [2] second serve for Andy Murray into Djokovic's backhand Murray with the backhand cross-court and Djokovic nets again a rare unforced error from the world number one advantage Andy Murray
- D: Well that was a a bit of an unusual point Djokovic looks er looks skyward judging from the players' shirts it didn't look breezy that particular moment it was a bit of a pushy return of serve [3]
- C: Advantage Murray trying to get it back to 3 all [2] in the third set [1] you can hear the effort being put into every single serve Murray again turns away in frustration because that first one goes into the net second serve sunshine's out again sits up for the Djokovic backhand onto the Murray backhand which is deep into Djokovic's backhand corner then Murray sends the next backhand down the line jumps into a forehand Djokovic taking the pace off with a slice Murray keeps the top-spin going down the line onto DJOKOVIC'S forehand which he gets completely wrong smashes it way out of court and it's back to 3 games all that is a hugely important hold of serve for Andy Murray
- D: Absolutely massive and he knows it big fist bump has a good look at Djokovic down at the other end of the court [2] and for the first time a couple of well for the first time this

- match there were a couple of errors there from unforced unexpected errors from Djokovic [2]
- C: Andy Murray's changing his racquet [1] I think Miles you're heading next door to the Five Live Commentary Box in just a second as the sunshine comes out again this is Five Live Sports Extra commentary continues here don't know quite how long this is gonna go can Andy Murray take it into a fourth set at least 3 all Djokovic serving Djokovic leading by two sets to love first serve is long [4] er Murray wipes that big black sweatband across his forehead caresses a little forehead down the line then off his back foot finds another forehand onto the backhand slice for Andy Murray cross-court this one Djokovic goes down the line another a backhand from Djokovic cross-court this time good defence from Murray with the slice er cross-court backhand from Murray brilliant defence from Djokovic down the line Murray got there Murray on his forehand moves Djokovic to the backhand side and then Murray leans into another backhand cross-court slice again from Djokovic drops just inside the baseline cross-court forehand from Djokovic again returned well by Murray DOWN THE LINE FROM MURRAY WITH THE BACKHAND BRILLIANT RALLY BRILLIANT WINNER he takes the point [5] hello again Pat Cash
- B: Hey yeah I've been watching with interest just in the café outside getting a bit of fresh air and and er it looks like Murray has sort of got over that bad patch that he's had he's hitting the ball much more cleanly now he barely got out alive didn't he over that last service game and the service game previous and er he seems to be hitting the ball well now
- C: Last rally was the longest of the match at 24 shots Murray though has just pushed a backhand slice wide and very demonstratively slapped his right thigh twice with his right hand
- B: Yeah well it's they're the sort of ones they're they're tricky you know a player like Murray is disappointed to to have missed those ones he's running he was defensive he was moving slightly backwards but er you know he would have expected to hit that one somewhere in the backhand corner
- C: 15 all on the Djokovic serve Djokovic with a backhand down the line then the forehand cross-court Djokovic slices low into the net [1] 15 30
- B: That's that sort of ugly backhand that I say ugly sliced backhand I think he'd be the first to admit that's not the prettiest shot there is and sometimes he does just clunk them and see look at his shirt look at the wind blowing on the shirt it's really swirly out there now [2] and er I was out having my seven beers er the cans were flying everywhere barbecue burned
- C: [laughter]
- B: Burned out
- C: 15 30 big first serve from Djokovic OH
- B: Oh
- C: THAT'S THE LINE did that catch the line Murray's backhand no called out called out [2]
- B: The white from the line had to be cleared there
- C: That would have been an awkward one had it just dropped in because Djokovic was scurrying backwards
- B: Yeah he let the ball go didn't he he didn't play the point [2]
- C: 30 all



**F.2 Novak Djokovic v Marian Cilic 11<sup>th</sup> September 2015 BBC Radio 5 Live Sports Extra (US Open)**  
(16 minutes, 3012 words)

- A: He always goes for it he just can't be reluctant to come in there on that shot right there he wasn't willing to take that extra step in take it a little bit more on the rise he can't be intimidated by Novak's ground strokes and any time Novak does that slidey thing out to his forehand or his backhand he has to be willing to take the next fall on the rise and come to the net [1]
- B: Jeff Tarango here with us on the 5 Live Sports Extra as Novak Djokovic holds the first game of the match he leads by 1 game to love beautiful day today isn't it who'd have thought with all that rain yesterday and really we need to get through the games the matches today don't we because there may well be rain the next couple of days [1]
- A: May well be [2]
- B: What do you think Jeff [1]
- A: 65% chance tomorrow 80% chance on Sunday
- B: OK [1] thanks for the good news Jeff
- C: [laughter] Thanks Jeff
- B: Nice little bit of er [2]
- A: Optimistic
- B: Yeah it's funny isn't it how the parallels work the first player that Serena Williams ever beat in a in a Grand Slam final was Martina Hingis 16 years ago in the final here in 1999 and just as Serena Williams goes out of the singles Martina Hingis wins the mixed doubles alongside Leander Paes [2] they've got a combined age of about 75 I think those two here's er Cilic now his first service game from the far end of the court Djokovic held for 1 love Cilic nets his forehand and you feel as though Cilic has got to get off to a decent start I mean 13 matches these two have played he's never won one of them
- C: [laughter] Yeah I would say he definitely has to get off to a decent start obviously this is not the best match-up for Cilic and I mean Cilic has the game to beat him but unfortunately for Cilic Djokovic just does everything a little bit better I mean maybe Cilic can serve a little bit harder and come out with a few more aces but as far as off the ground and the movement on the defensive position I think er Djokovic Djokovic is just a little bit better
- B: Well Cilic just did exactly what Jeff's been asking him to do he played a lovely backhand down the line came in played a very nice forehand dink volley Jeff brought Djokovic forward Djokovic lobbed and Cilic actually messed up the high backhand volley but the instincts and apart from the final execution that was a decent play
- A: Yeah that's what he should do he's just by the way he needs to make the sitter
- B: Yeah I I suppose the problem is he he he mustn't get [2] bothered by the fact that he didn't win that point it's just you know he needs to keep coming forward but the problem is he might keep coming forward and getting backhands right at his feet like that from Djokovic the line's just imprinted and he can't control
- A: Well that time he came forward before Djokovic started sliding and I think he has to wait until Djokovic is sliding then come forward Djokovic isn't gonna slide he's gonna hit a good pass
- B: Love 40 three break points immediately against Marin Cilic who serves down the centre he's 1 love down hits it forehand BIG cross-court and this time it is paddled into the net on the forehand side by Djokovic and Goran Ivanisevic described Novak Djokovic as like a shark the moment that he sniffs blood he goes and eats you [3]
- C: That's a pretty good analogy [laughter]
- A: Did you see that shark video

- C: For the tennis court
- A: Did you see that shark video
- B: No I haven't
- A: Oh my goodness the Australian one very scary
- B: OK I'm not watching that get it away from me 15 40 Cilic here break points down backhand hit down the centre by Djokovic who maybe he wants to strike here Cilic hits his backhand fluidly cross-court lovely shot that backhand from Cilic isn't it netted backhand from Djokovic and a note this is early pressure for Cilic but if he actually managed to dig himself out of trouble here that would be a real fillip for him wouldn't it
- C: Yeah absolutely I mean I he needs to hold serve [laughter] his first game so he can er you know get on the board and gain a little confidence in the beginning of this match so er especially if he gets gets out of a tight game yeah that'll build his confidence a little bit
- B: It's almost more helpful sometimes isn't it
- C: I think so yeah
- B: To win from love 40 down rather than to win 40 15 and then hold it would be a real er boost to the confidence one would suspect and probably a bit of a blow to Djokovic because obviously he thinks he's gonna break at this stage still has 30 40 returns to the forehand on to the backhand side of Cilic that's the better side I think of Cilic we'll get the thoughts of Jeff and Jill as we go on here and Cilic moving well side to side at the moment but that's where that ankle will probably getting tested in this match so far that he turned against Jeremy Chardy he's trying to hit holds from Djokovic here but he's gone long with the backhand has Cilic he's broken to 30 and Djokovic leads by two games to love [1]
- C: And those are the types of shots that he was going for that he loves that backhand down the line but those are the types of shots he was going for last year when he won this event and he was making all of those he was really just teeing off on everything hitting winners left and right and he has to do that to beat someone like Djokovic who defends so well now whether you can sustain that level again throughout a whole two-week event is pretty tough to do but so far I mean he's in the semis he's been lifting his level throughout every match but this is a tough match-up for him he didn't face Djokovic here when he won the title last year [1]
- B: That's right you know of course he would have done if er Djokovic had beaten Kei Nishikori in the semi-finals but he couldn't and Djokovic has not always been completely at home in this tournament he's reached finals he's won the tournament but he hasn't been as consistent here as say in Australia where he's been utterly dominant the last few years 15 love he leads against Cilic and it does appear that Djokovic if there has been any rustiness about his game over the past 10 days or so looks like he's cleaned that out [5] still bright blue sky up above [1] 5.30 in the evening here in New York serve out wide from Djokovic under the backhand side of Cilic he's got Cilic running all over the place already and this is ominous frankly for Cilic and his supporters 2 love and 30 love down and he he's struggling to stay with Djokovic here
- C: Yeah I mean he's really being very aggressive off off Djokovic's serve but the problem is when you're being that aggressive sometimes the ball can come back faster and that's exactly what happened in that last point [2]
- B: Jill Craybas here with us on 5 Live Sports Extra alongside Jeff Tarango as Cilic hits his backhand down the centre that's deep but he just can't seem to move Djokovic Djokovic is dominating most of the rallies but actually it's the Serbian player who flashes a forehand cross-court and wide this time [4] it's gonna be a big crowd again tonight it's not full by any means at the moment and people are queueing the entrances to get into the court having er arrived probably a little bit late heavy traffic in Manhattan today certainly holding everybody up but there's already people filing up the stairs at the top tier here

nobody in the top tier is worried about the the players as such and whether they get distracted 'cause they're not in the eyeline they're so high up [1] another backhand into the net from Cilic [3] Stan Wawrinka against Roger Federer to follow this match Djokovic [7] serves into the forehand slashed into the net by Cilic on the return he looks at his feet does Cilic and no real idea as how bad that right ankle might be he's got a heavy black strapping around it [4] not quite sure what Novak Djokovic is saying to Jake Garner the umpire here but they're having a little discussion about something Jake Garner's getting on his phone [4] wants to know about something anyway does Djokovic he's inquiring about but anyway he leads by 3 games to love what's your assessment at the early stages here Jeff [1]

- A: Well it doesn't look like Cilic is setting up very well his little feet kinda you know he has gigantic feet but I I say little feet when I'm talking about the little adjustment steps the players have to make to kind of adjust after the bounce to the to the spins and to the pace of the ball they're just not there yet he's not assessing the shots as well as he usually does Novak is actually changing the paces on him on his serve so I think that's throwing Cilic off but I also think that in the locker room that's the play against Cilic 'cause he's long and lanky and he likes to take big cuts at the return used to always kind of give him a different spin so that he's never timing it that well and you know it's pretty obvious that Novak's good at that [2]
- B: Yes pretty good er what do we think's going to happen in the second of these two men's semi-finals Jill who do you think's going to win that one
- C: Between Federer and Wawrinka er that's a tough one they know each other so well I I almost think they're gonna be moving to the open court 'cause they know where they're gonna be going but er I think oh my pick I was going Federer in four [1] that's my guess
- A: David just a side note on the Federer Wawrinka match what do you find more entertaining Federer playing his matches during this US Open or watching him warm up with Stefan Edberg
- B: That is a lot of fun actually we get
- C: [laughter]
- B: We get a commentary box position here
- A: Right
- B: When Federer and Stefan Edberg
- A: I stayed the whole time this time
- B: Yeah
- A: Steve kept saying Jeff we'll go get something to eat before the match I'm like no I wanna watch Federer warm up with Edberg are you crazy
- B: That's right and what they do is the moment that Roger Federer turns his hat the wrong way around you know that he's gone from normally languid super-smooth Federer to playful-trick-shots-on-the-way Roger Federer and that's exactly what starts happening backhand winner down the line from Novak Djokovic who is all business here 3 love up in the first set and that's what they were doing they were doing tweeners at each other through the leg shots and all sorts of stuff
- A: And the backhand slices can you find two better backhand slices than Edberg's and Federer's when they go back and forth to each other and then Edberg's at the net hitting backhand volleys and Roger is hitting them absolutely as hard as he can at Edberg to try to hit him and Edberg just cool calm and collected smiling going like yeah like that'll be the day kid
- B: They're basically just showing off against each other aren't they seeing seeing who can impress the other one the most while at the moment the man impressing inside the Arthur Ashe stadium is Novak Djokovic and I'm I'm afraid Marin Cilic has absolutely no answer at all here he's just put a a serve down it wasn't a very good 85 miles an hour it was sent

straight back at him onto the base line he couldn't control it this is love 30 and Cilic needs a couple of those 129 miles an hour a down the centre

A: I need a couple of those too Jill needs a lot of those

C: My God I never had any of those [laughter] I tried to break 100 think I only did it a couple times

A: Is that why you were complaining about your shoulder hurting

C: [laughter] Yeah

B: Cilic here is 3 love down 15 30 down he does have a big serve he does have a big backhand he is the defending champion he doesn't look like any of those things at the moment off the back of the edge of the line it looked like for me from Djokovic but no it's called out and he's not challenging so Cilic has got away with one there I think 30 0

A: Well I saw him move his hand up like he was gonna challenge and then I think he waved it off

B: I have to say Jeff from up here in the commentary box you're rather better at the line calls than I am

A: Well I agree with you I think that hit the back of the line

B: It's er it's it's not the easiest position to actually judge that accurately but that one did look as though it might have been worth challenging but anyway Djokovic has decided he's got enough in the bank here and he's at 3 love 30 all on Cilic's serve but he doesn't want to give Cilic any confidence because the moment the Croatian gets confident you're in trouble forehand swiped cross-court by Cilic don't forget he won ten sets in a row last year including a win a win over Rodger Federer in the semis to win the title and then beat Kei Nishikori in the deciding match he's got Djokovic out of court he:re but he's gone straight BACK AT HIM and he's punished because the backhand is sent spiralling back at his kneecaps by Novak Djokovic and Cilic can't control the volley and he kinda needed to win that point didn't he just for his confidence as much as anything

A: Well he needs to get his finger in the dam right where it's cracked immediately I mean this point if he goes down two breaks in the first we know what kind of a front runner Novak is this could just bust right open David [5]

B: Can Cilic stem the tide 30 40 3 love down this for a double break for Djokovic Cilic dominated that last rally unfortunately he picked the wrong way to go with the mid-court forehand Djokovic read it and pounced and that's a double fault double break 4 love [1]

C: Wow [laughter] I mean Cilic's first serve percentage right now is 25% that's that's a problem for Cilic he said in his pre-match interview he said he had to serve well and so far he hasn't been doing that and throwing in 85 miles an hour second serves

B: And there is a mental issue here isn't there Jeff the head to head is 13 zero

A: Oh 13 it's worse than Gilbert's curse against Lendl it's worse than Gerulaitis versus was it Borg or Connors that he lost 17 16 straight times [1] I think maybe both

B: Certainly wasn't good against either I mean they they've only ever played here at the US Open once and in one of the the best performances Cilic ever put up against Djokovic back in 2008 6 7 7 5 6 4 7 6 but it's 4 love at the moment here and you wonder how the ankle is for Cilic hits his forehand into the net and he just sort of jitters on his toes does Cilic as though he's not completely comfortable on his feet at the moment I know there was a big question mark

A: Coming out of two five-setters

B: Yeah

A: In a row

B: There was a big question mark before the Tsonga match as to whether he could actually play that match and they decided they'd go for it and well he got through it but against this guy I have no idea 4 love 15 love Djokovic who drop-shots in comes Cilic a couple

of big strides from the 6 foot 5 inch man from Croatia and he pops the ball cross-court on the forehand for a winner

- C: Well that movement looked pretty good from Cilic moving forward he got up there pretty quickly his ankle looked pretty good there but he does off the ground look like he's a little bit a step too slow right now Djokovic is defending so well I mean a couple of those points there off of Cilic aggressive ground strokes he defended hitting the ball on the base line [2] good serve there from Djokovic down the tee
- B: Djokovic the best mover you've ever seen Jillie
- C: I think so offensively and defensively some people move really well offensively but not so great when they're on the run and he does both tremendously [4]
- B: Jeff's thoughts in a moment forehand wide from Cilic 40 15 for love Djokovic [2]
- A: E:r I think Michael Chang was the best mover I ever saw
- B: Better than this guy
- A: Yeah
- C: Better than Djokovic
- A: Yes
- B: Michael Chang's downstairs I may go and tell him that
- C: [laughter]
- B: He'll be really pleased
- A: Well the problem is I had to see Michael Chang every weekend in the juniors and then every week in the pros my whole life so maybe I'm just a little scarred
- C: [laughter]
- B: Yeah well I think that Marin Cilic is a little scarred just at the moment and it's something to do with the guy to his left because he sits down after 17 minutes of play love 5 down [3]
- A: If I had to play Djokovic

## G Horse racing on TV (52 minutes, 10,000 words)

### G.1 Grand National 6<sup>th</sup> April 2013 Channel 4 (10 minutes 5 seconds, 2004 words)

- A: They come in steadily [4] they're off they jumped away for the 2013 running of the John Smith's Grand National [2] the 40 runners hurdle their way to the first with Becauseicouldntsee and the grey Swing Bill prominent with Ballabriggs and Soll and Cappa Bleu and Chicago Grey down the inside with Rare Bob Mr. Moonshine and Big Fella Thanks Saint Are and the Oscar Time chases them as they prepare to rise
- B: And it will be Ballabriggs right out in front with Across The Bay as they got over the first fence all the leaders are safely over and they are all safely over the first fence Lost Glory was last with Chicago Grey at the back of the field they go over the second and Across The Bay with Balthazar King on the outside er the first two over the second fence again they are all safely over they are all going towards the open ditch fence number three Balthazar King on the outside of Across The Bay first two and then Teaforthree Across The Bay hit the fence pretty hard there was also a mistake by Chicago Grey right at the back of the field together with Lost Glory as they go towards fence number four Balthazar King will have the lead by a couple of lengths he crossed over that and again all the leaders were safely over indeed it looks as though all 40 have safely gone over the first four fences
- C: And this the one before Becher's and Balthazar King the leader Across The Bay is right up there with the leader so too is Quel Esprit Imperial Commander Oscar Time to the inside Auroras Encore is racing down the centre The Rainbow Hunter back in mid-division further back to Tarquinis and now the field are facing up to Becher's back up there the back marker is Chicago Grey so it is Balthazar King the leader from Across The Bay Quel Esprit Imperial Commander and then Teaforthree Oscar Time is there to the inside Auroras Encore Sea Bass back in mid-field just watching the back markers going over Becher's and they are ALL OVER BECHER'S now for the Foinavon Balthazar Across The Bay Oscar Time Quel Esprit Soll just in behind them and then comes Teaforthree and Sea Bass is just off the leaders there was a bad mistake towards the back from Viking Blond and now the back marker is Ninetieth Minute the Canal Turn is coming up and Across The Bay will take off in front of the Canal Turn from Balthazar King Oscar Time Sol Quel Esprit and then Teaforthree followed by Sea Bass Auroras Encore and Swing Bill Imperial Commander Always Waining and Ballabriggs and now they are coming up towards Valentine's
- A: Treacle has come down the Canal Turn the Rainbow Hunter was also another faller at the Canal Turn and Ninetieth Minute is getting tailed off Big Fella Thanks has also come down as they took the Canal Turn a bad mistake at the next before the ditch by Auroras Encore but it's Across The Bay who leads Balthazar King racing in second and then Oscar Time and the grey Quel Esprit leads another grey Swing Bill who's also right up there with Soll through on the inside Teaforthree and Ballabriggs Forpadytheplasterer made a bad mistake as they crossed over that open ditch also very slow Viking Blond at the back of the field together with Lost Glory as they go towards the one before the Melling Road Balthazar King led Across The Bay over in second and Soll on the inside just in third and Oscar Time is in fourth position followed then by Swing Bill and Quel Esprit who's towards the inside next is Imperial Commander in company with Sea Bass Tatenen is gone at the back of the field Tatenen is out of the race as they cross over the Melling Road and go towards halfway of the National Across The Bay Balthazar King Soll and Oscar Time

- B: And Ninetieth Minute is being pulled up and incredibly there are 35 horses still going in the John's Smith Grand National and Across The Bay leads as they approach the 13th from Balthazar King with Soll tracking the leaders and Oscar Time with the orange sleeves Teaforthree in the stripes is next and then Quel Esprit as they move towards the fence which will be the second last in a circuit's time and it's Across The Bay giving Henry Brooke a great ride out in front he leads by a couple of lengths from Balthazar King in the red jacket who hopped over in second under Richard Johnson watching the stragglers go over Viking Blond is tailing off Lost Glory is towards the rear with John Collin What A Friend Major Malarkey Chicago Grey and Mumbles Head as Across The Bay leads them over the 14th Balthazar King still sitting in second then a brace of greys Quel Esprit with a red cap from Swing Bill Oscar Time and Teaforthree and Soll and Imperial Commander with the black and white on the outside track there by Casey Walsh and Sea Bass Brother Ruby is next door and On His Own as they go to The Chair Across The Bay from Balthazar King and S?oll made a bad mistake was impeded and COLBERT STATION HAS UNSEATED AP Colbert Station has gone at The Chair they go to the water it's Across The Bay from Balthazar King Oscar Time and Teaforthree and Quel Esprit and Swing Bill Auroras Encore Imperial Commander and then Soll Roberto Goldback is next then On His Own Sea Bass and Cappa Bleu and Join Together and Mr. Moonshine He Was A Bit Short Of Daylight on the inside then they race back towards the mid-field where the likes of Tarquinius sit and further back to Always Waining and Ballabriggs Forpadytheplasterer as Sunny Hill Boy's well towards the end and What A Friend is last of those still going as they head down towards the Melling Road and the long run down towards the 17th it's still Across The Bay from Balthazar King Teaforthree On His Own and Sea Bass shadowing each other and getting closer they rise at fence 17
- C: Across The Bay towards the outside of Balthazar King and then Teaforthree there between horses as they crossed over that next plain fence Joncol is totally tailing off and Lost Glory is being pulled up at the back of the field going on towards the next plain one Across The Bay on the outside dived that it made the mistake from on the inside Oscar Time Roberto Goldback was not fluent over that Chicago Grey another mistake and What A friend jumped it slowly and is immediately pulled up going over the open ditch Across The Bay Teaforthree followed by Oscar Time and then Balthazar King Auroras Encore and Soll Swing Bill Sea Bass and then On His Own followed by Tarquinis and Mumbles Head and Cappa Bleu as they go over another plain one Across The Bay has got a lead of about three lengths [2]
- A: So as they go towards the one before Becher's Across The Bay is the leader by about three lengths being followed by Teaforthree and then Auroras Encore Tarquinis and Mumbles Head as they jump the one before Becher's Becauseicouldntsee is being pulled up back in the pack and they go over that and Sea Bass made a mistake there they go now towards Becher's Brook and Forpadytheplasterer also made a bad mistake it's Across The Bay who leads the field towards Becher's Teaforthree in the mix with Oscar Time Auroras Encore Balthazar King and then Sea Bass a mistake there from Across The Bay watching the mid-fielders going over it over in mid-field Tarquinis with Swing Bill and then Cappa Bleu being followed then by Own His Own and Rare Bob and then further back to Mr. Moonshine and there at the Foinavon fence and over the Foinavon and it is Across The Bay and Teaforthree up the inside looking back Weird AL made a bad mistake at the Foinavon so they go towards the Canal Turn then and it is Teaforthree and Across The Bay just in behind is the dark jacket of Soll being followed by Oscar Time Auroras Encore Balthazar King Sea Bass Swing Bill and then Cappa Bleu and now they are about to face Valentine's a whole host of them pulling up Ballabriggs pulled up Weird AL pulled up Forpadytheplasterer has been pulled up and so too has Quel Esprit

- B: And Joncol is another one who has also been pulled up and On His Own is gone er back in the field at Valentine's going over the one after Valentine's five out Across The Bay led Oscar Time Teaforthree Auroras Encore Tarquinis made a mistake Saint Are also made a mistake Harry the Viking is also being pulled up at the back of the field as they go towards the final open ditch Across The Bay and Oscar Time on the inside Teaforthree and Auroras Encore were the first four followed by Cappa Bleu and then on the inside is Soll next in the field is Balthazar King then towards the outside Sea Bass and then Tarquinis and at the back of the field Mr. Moonshine has been pulled up as they go over the third from home in the National it's Across The Bay on the outside of Teaforthree and through on the inside is Oscar Time and that's the first trio as they go over the Melling Road that group of them being followed by Auroras Encore who's now in fourth Balthazar King is next in the field but still many chances as they go towards the final two fences
- C: It's Oscar Time for Ireland and Teaforthree for Wales and they lead the National field as they head around towards second last Auroras Encore is chasing them in third er then Across The Bay and behind these Cappa Bleu trying to make some progress towards them and then Rare Bob who is staying on Sea Bass is being driven along at about seventh place as they race towards the penultimate fence Teaforthree's striped jacket driven along on the outside of Oscar Time and then followed by Auroras Encore with some three to four lengths to make up and then in behind these Rare Bob and Cappa Bleu and a bad mistake from Across The Bay Sea Bass and Swing Bill are next and it's Teaforthree who goes on down towards the last from Oscar Time and Auroras Encore Teaforthree went on top of it joined by Auroras Encore running a huge race on the outside the eleven-year old as they race towards the bend in the Grand National and it's Auroras Encore for Sue Smith and Ryan Mania Teaforthree is chasing Oscar Time is back in third a furlong to go in the National Auroras Encore with a loose horse for company is four lanes clear from Teaforthree Oscar Time is now beaten off and it's Auroras Encore for a huge shock in the National the eleven-year old is driven out her first ride for Ryan Mania and a win for Sue Smith AURORAS ENCORE WINS THE JOHN'S SMITHS GRAND NATIONAL Cappa Bleu is second Tea For Three third Oscar Time fourth Rare Bob fifth then Swing Bill Soll Tarquinis Saint Are Always Waining Major Malarkey Join Together Sea Bass and Casey Welsh next and Across The Bay Balthazar King Quiscover Fountaine and Any Currency
- D: No Encore needed Auroras Encore has won the big one for Sue Smith and Ryan Mania Ryan Mania's first ever ride in the Grand National and it is a winning one it is a first winner for Sue Smith who's done best at winning seventh [2] twice previously 66 to 1 last year's Scottish Grand National runner-up he proved he had the stamina then and he's proved it here again with this monster performance



**G.2 Grand National 11<sup>th</sup> April 2014 Channel 4**  
 (9 minutes 55 seconds, 2124 words)

- A: The takers are about to be rethreaded just better be joined up now Battle Group is some way behind the others and planting himself again being pulled forward to join the others they're walking in and this time they're off and Battle Group has not gone with them he has refused to start Battle Group is already out of the race he's planted himself at the start and Golan Way is already a long way behind the others Hunt Ball is also right out the back and so too is Monbeg Dude as Teaforthree is right up there in the firing line and so too is Across The Bay as they prepare to rise at the first
- B: And the grey Rose Of The Moon is also among the leaders as they take the first fence Twirling Magnet was a faller at the first and quite badly hampered Golan Way in the process but the rest seem to have gone over it safely on to fence two they come Wayward Prince up with the leaders with Across The Bay in a noseband and The Package towards the outer er Burton Port has come down at fence two a horse galloping away loose none the worse and now they come to the big ditch Prince De Beauchene red cap up the inner Long Run is prominent the leaders go streaming out over the ditch we've lost Big Shoe at the ditch Big Shoe unseated on to fence four they go Across The Bay Long Run Wayward Prince just ahead of Rose Of The Moon and The Package leaders over safely Chance Du Roy made quite a bad mistake Alverado is towards the rear with Bucker's Ridge and Golan Way Tidal Bay is well back at this stage also towards the rear Last Time D'Albain back Cruise Home and Vesper they take the fifth
- C: And as they jump the fifth it was long running Touchdown just in front there from Monbeg in second then came Rose Of The Moon with Across The Bay next in the field from Wayward Prince then Teaforthree then Culvert Station just in front of Mr. Moonshine then down towards the inside fast on the rails they come towards Becher's with Across the Bay as the leader as they took Becher's gently bunching on the inside and er might have lost one on the inside there as it went over Becher's Brook as they head down towards Foinavon it's Across The Bay who leads the way from Long Run and then came up inside Prince De Bauchene just in front of the announcers as they make their way towards the Canal Turn then Wayward Prince Balthazar King The Package and Teaforthree chase up with One In A Milan next to the field is Rocky Creek and then Golan Way The Rainbow Hunter as they take the Canal Turn now and Golan Way is down by the Canal Turn and TIDAL BAY HAS BEEN BROUGHT DOWN TIDAL BAY'S DOWN at the Canal Turn and also been been unshipped there is Our Father as Across The Bay and Long Run lead and LONG RUN'S GONE AT VALENTINES
- A: Long Run is down at Valentines and Mountainous is also down at Valentines and The Rainbow Hunter gets only one fence further than twelve months ago he's gone as well as they go to the fence after Valentines Across The Bay left in a clear lead from Mr. Moonshine in the blue and yellow Colbert Station is tracking them with Rocky Creek in the red white and blue Prince De Beauchene still prominent towards the inside then Rose Of The Moon who's leading a cluster of greys as Across The Bay safely takes the ditch Teaforthree back in midfield with Double Seven who made a mistake on the run down towards Beecher's first time Kruzhlinin and Vesper Bell still towards the rear with Shakalakaboomboom and Lion Na Bearnai and Chance Du Roy and Buckers Bridge as they step out over the next Swing Bill meanwhile is in mid-division Walkon is another one who's towards mid-division as they go over the Anchor Bridge crossing and heading back towards the grandstands with Across The Bay leading the field from Colbert Station and then Rose Of The Moon and Rocky Creek and Mr. Moonshine and Prince De Beauchene Pineau De Re is tracking The Package Balthazar King in a red jacket is out

wide from Wayward Prince Monbeg Dude is towards midfield tracked there by Hawkes Point Swing Bill Walkon as they swing on in to face the next

- B: So it is Across The Bay who has got the lead now by around about a length and a half or so as he paces up on towards the next fence in the home straight racing in second is Colbert Station and then towards the inside in third position is Mr. Moonshine who's racing alongside one of the greys Rose Of The Moon and then Balthazar King as they cross over that fence Pineau De Re made a very bad mistake and badly hampered One In A Milan both of them have survived very hard driven now is Vintage Star who's been well off the bit for about half a mile Vesper Bell's made blunders and has dropped right out the back of the field as they go to the fence which will be the last in a circuit's time Shakalakaboomboom was very slow over that fence so they now come on towards the 15th which is The Chair and it's Colbert Station who's now tracking the leader Across The Bay Across The Bay hounded by loose horses as he comes into his take-off stride but he's away to Colbert Station in second Teaforthree is down Teaforthree has gone on the inside as the only one to come down at The Chair so they go towards the 16th water it's Across The Bay who leads by three lengths Colbert Station over in second and then Mr. Moonshine is over in third and then towards the inside Prince Devotion is in fourth Rose of the Moon is in fifth as they go into the turn Double Seven and Wayward Prince carried out is Across The Bay Across The Bay the leader was carried out by loose horses he has now rejoined but he's now lost a great deal of ground about 40 lengths one would imagine as they make the run on towards the Melling Road and a new leader sweeping around the outside it is Rocky Creek and Noel Fehily who have now come through to head the field to Mr. Moonshine Prince De Beauchene and Colbert Station in the firing line with Name with Name on the outside Name Of The Moon Rose Of The Moon I should say and then after these the white cap of AP McCoy on Double Seven Wayward Prince is being driven and then Pineau De Re making ground so to is Hunt Ball
- C: Over fence 17 they go and Colbert Station was just ahead Across The Bay is now toiling having been badly hampered and Quito De La Roque well behind as they come to they come to the 18th Rocky Creek just about led the field over it from Colbert Station Double Seven is much closer McCoy in the white cap The Package Mr. Moonshine behind them as they come to the ditch the 19th Prince De Beauchene One In A Milan in the yellow jacket tracks them watching the leaders go over it a mistake from One In A Milan Shakalakaboomboom blundered there Quito De La Roque is just about last of those still going as they move on towards the next Rocky Creek from Mr. Moonshine and Colbert Station took it in third and Double Seven Shakalakaboomboom meanwhile has been pulled up Rose Of The Moon is still going not far off the lead and also still going the likes of Vintage Star Monbeg Dude very patiently ridden in midfield as they go on towards the fence before Beecher's
- A: And at the 21st fence it was Rocky Creek who led the field as they jump the one before Beecher's from Mr. Moonshine in second and Double Seven then Colbert Station The Package in behind those with Balthazar King and Vintage Star is next in the field up the inside Prince De Beauchene still there in touch along with Pineau De Re as they take Beecher's for the second time bad mistake on the inside from One In A Milan and he's down One In A Milan is gone at Beecher's for the second time as they make their way down to Foinavon and out in front Mr. Moonshine with Rocky Creek these the first pair from Prince De Beauchene close up behind with Pineau De Re Double Seven is with the leading group as well and the Balthazar King next in the field is The Package Vesper Bell's tracking those through then Rose Of The Moon and Chance Du Roy from Monbeg Dude and Alvarado then came Walkon next in the field is Hunt Ball then Swing Bill behind that one is Vintage Star Lion Na Bearnai is trying to make a bit of ground Colbert

Station's gonna be pulled up at the back of the field Wayward Prince is the last one going as they jump Valentine's

- B: Also pulled up is Triolo D'Alene Quito De La Roque has been pulled up most of those still going they've got safely over Valentine's then Mr. Moonshine in the colours carried successfully twelve months ago is out in front from Rocky Creek goes over Pineau De Re almost a faller when just beginning to struggle it looks as though Vintage Star is pulling up at the back of the field as they move on towards the next Mr. Moonshine and Rocky Creek pretty much together Double Seven red cap getting closer and then Pineau De Re and The Package and then towards the outside Balthazar King Lion Na Bearnai has been pulled up as they move on er now towards the third last Mr. Moonshine and Rocky Creek take it as one Chance Du Roy right behind them with Double Seven McCoy only a couple of lengths off the lead others out the back of the field that are still going but tailed off include Hawkes Point and Raz De Maree as they go over the Anchor Bridge crossing and heading towards the last five-and-a-half furlongs of the Crabbie's Grand National Rocky Creek with Pineau De Re in a white jacket joining him Balthazar King coming up there on the outside Wayward Prince unseated tailed off for the third last Double Seven meanwhile is close up in fourth Mr. Moonshine is back to fifth and then Chance Du Roy as they turn for home and the final two fences
- C: And it is Rocky Creek on the inside who has now taken the lead a 12th ride in the race for Noel Fehily he is outside Pineau De Re seventh ride here for Leighton Aspell as Walkon is going to be pulled up before the second from home Richard Johnson and Balthazar King towards the outside will take no one in third and then AP McCoy and Double Seven is over in fourth as they race on now towards the 30th and final fence in the Crabbie's Grand National and it's Pineau De Re who comes to the final fence with Leighton Aspell they have a lead of three lanes over Balthazar King over in second Double Seven is now into third Rocky Creek is in fourth and then Chance De Roy is in fifth MONBEG DUDE IS IN SIXTH SWING BILL IS NOW HE'S IN SEVENTH AS THEY RACE DOWN ON TOWARDS THE ELBOW IT'S PINEAU DE RE WHO IS NOW CLEARING AWAY HE'S OUT IN FRONT BY SIX LENGTHS AS HE GOES AROUND THE ELBOW TO BALTHAZAR KING IN SECOND PLACE AND ON THE OUTSIDE IS DOUBLE SEVEN BUT WITH ANOTHER 150 YARDS TO GO IN THE CRABBIE'S GRAND NATIONAL IT IS PINEAU DE RE FOR DR RICHARD NEWLAND THE SEVENTH RIDE IN THE RACE LEIGHTON ASPELL WILL BE A WINNING RIDE AS PINEAU DE RE WINS THE NATIONAL BALTHAZAR King was in second and Double Seven was in third Alvarado stayed on for fourth followed by Chance Du Roy Rocky Creek Monbeg Dude and these were followed home at long intervals by Swing Bill and to the inside Raz De Maree first number 29 Pineau De Re second number 9 third number 14 fourth number 37 and a photo finish for fifth place [2] first number 29 second number 9 third number 14 fourth number 37 and a photo finish for fifth place

**G.3 Grand National 11<sup>th</sup> April 2015 Channel 4**  
(10 minutes, 1865 words)

- A: Bob Ford and Spring Heeled have been very revved up in the preliminaries so they're being called forward [2] and he's let them go they're away for the 2015 Crabbie's Grand National Court By Surprise Saint Are amongst the leaders both forward towards the inside followed by River Choice and also up there is Wyck Hill and Godsmejudge is not too far behind them as they race on towards the first fence The Great Portrait King is also amongst the front-runners and Across The Bay as they take off at the first here's Richard Hoyles
- B: Around the ground for the first time Bob Ford Gas Line Boy is a faller at the first Gas Line Boy and Ely Brown is down also down is Al Co. we lost three at the very first fence as they race towards the second Bob Ford out in front from Portrait King and Saint Are as they take that a mistake by Super Duty back in the field First Lieutenant is towards the rear early on as they head towards the open ditch number three Bob Ford leads over it from Portrait King Saint Are right by an unseated rider Rubi Light a very bad mistake by Corrin Wood who's brought to a complete standstill and I think will be pulled out before taking the fourth so over the fourth Rebel Rebellion leading from Across The Bay as they step over that towards the back of the field Super Duty as they make their way down towards the wonderful Becher's Brook Rebel Rebellion leads the National from Soll Portrait King as they head towards the fifth and Ian Bartlett
- C: The Great Portrait King is up with those as well Court By Surprise and Saint Are and Soll just in behind the leading group of runners as they head now down towards Becher's Brook and as they come on towards it now Rebel Rebellion and Rebel Rebellion leads from in second place Portrait King as they come over it from Bob Ford towards the inside River Choice is down there Monbeg Dude had to jump the er fallen horse as they move now onto Foinavon and it is Rebel Rebellion with about a two-length lead at this stage to Bob Ford Portrait King and Soll Shutthefrontdoor right in behind them and then comes Across The Bay towards the outside Many Clouds in behind those from Oscar Time and then comes Royale Knight and Dolatulo as they jump now Canal turn Rebel Rebellion out in front the leaders are getting away and Balthazar King is down Ballycasey has been brought down Lord Windermere in well back in the field Super Duty is the back marker as Rebel Rebellion takes over Valentine's and we rejoin Simon
- A: Yes Rebel Rebellion clear of Bob Ford on the right Portrait King the grey Across The Bay is there also following these leaders is Soll er AP McCoy has had a lovely run around so far green and yellow hoops white cap just to the left of your picture he's well in touch at about seventh or eighth place at this stage Super Duty er behind them with the Rainbow Hunter on the outside is er Court By Surprise and Rocky Creek also up on the outside not too far off the leaders there is the 20-times champion jockey well in touch as Rebel Rebellion leads them over the next clear of Portrait King they sail over going back Alvarado is in the mid-field at the moment The Druid's Nephew is midfield Godsmejudge in the midfield as well as they cross the Melling Road and now head back towards the home straight and Rebel Rebellion leading the way on the right is Soll Portrait King Across The Bay and Rainbow Hunter on the extreme left is Rocky Creek then Court By Surprise alongside Shutthefrontdoor Saint Are is still there Many Clouds towards the inside as they return towards the next plain fence looking further back in the field Godsmejudge Owega Star on the inside is Chance Du Roy well back is Cause of Causes Super Duty has lost a lot of ground ride out the back with Tranquil Sea coming to the next then Rebel Rebellion is over in front followed by Soll Portrait King Across The Bay Saint Are on the far side with Many Clouds then Godsmejudge and Shutthefrontdoor now on towards another plain one the one before The Chair er this is the 14th Rebel

Rebellion a tremendous round of jumping so far most of them have landed safely over that and now they're on towards the biggest fence on the course in the Crabbie's Grand National Rebel Rebellion leads Soll towards The Chair fence preceded by a loose horse they're followed by Portrait King Many Clouds on the inside in the nose there then after these Saint Are Across The Bay out wide The Rainbow Hunter wide of Shutthefrontdoor still well in touch Oscar Time is right there as well then Godsmejudge followed further back by Royale Knight er Alvarado on the inside as they clear the water The Druid's Nephew and Rocky Creek still in the race then Court By Surprise Bob Ford around the inside of Alvarado further back Dolatulo lots still standing followed then by Wyck Hill then after these is Lord Windermere and Spring Heeled towards the back of the field with Pineau Du Re who is well back last year's winner at the moment also towards the rear Monbeg Dude Nina Carberry is amongst the back markers on First Lieutenant also towards the rear Tranquil Sea and then Super Duty as they return across the Melling Road with about 29 still standing on to the second circuit The Rainbow Hunter in the firing line with Rebel Rebellion and Saint Are here's Richard

- B: Unioniste fell on the one before Becher's first time around but as many as 29 heading out on the second circuit headed by Rebel Rebellion Saint Are The Rainbow Hunter towards the outside The Druid's Nephew getting involved just behind the leader Shutthefrontdoor still travels comfortably enough towards the inside Portrait King there hasn't been er many a lapse in the race in the last mile or so but Court By Surprise has just been pulled out before the one before the ditch The Rainbow Hunter leads over this ditch by a length or so The Druid's Nephew in second place Saint Are is third Rebel Rebellion Soll Portrait King Shutthefrontdoor and Rocky Creek side-by-side Many Clouds right up the inside as they take the one that heads them down towards er Becher's Brook Tranquil Sea right at the back of the field in company with Lord Windermere Super Duty's continuing so this is the one before Becher's The Rainbow Hunter and and on the outside The Druid's Nephew are the front two with Soll as we go back to Ian
- C: Saint Are just in behind those Shutthefrontdoor and then comes Many Clouds they will not be taking the Canal Turn on this circuit it will be bypassed as they head then now down to Becher's Brook and Soll has come through with The Rainbow Hunter and The Druid's Nephew Many Clouds and then Saint Are Shutthefrontdoor in sixth position and Portrait King in behind those as the tail-enders get over it now and they come on er towards Foinavon in behind the leaders is Royale Knight and then Night In Milan and Mon Parrain just in behind that as The Druid's Nephew in the red and white now is the leader as they're waved around Canal Turn and it is the blue of Soll the red and white The Druid's Nephew Shutthefrontdoor Many Clouds Saint Are in behind those then Portrait King The Rainbow Hunter Oscar Time and Night In Milan from Rocky Creek and Royale Knight Mon Parrain and Alvarado Godsmejudge and Dulatulo Pineau Du Re just in behind those to Owega Star as they jump Valentine's and we rejoin Simon
- A: And The Druid's Nephew led over Valentine's from Soll in second Saint Are Many Clouds McCoy has had a dream trip on Shutthefrontdoor on the outside he's got every chance as they clear the next THE DRUIDS NEPHEW SLITHERS TO THE GROUND AND IS OUT OF THE RACE and it leaves Many Clouds and last year's winning rider Leighton Aspell with the lead but right there in second is AP McCoy on Shutthefrontdoor over the next Soll and Saint Are at third and fourth then Portrait King followed by Oscar Time Night in Milan and then further back Pineau Du Re is making up some late ground now over the next Many Clouds Shutthefrontdoor just over that Portrait King is a faller there and it's Many Clouds The Hennessy winner Leighton Aspell looks around for dangers he's got a length and a half over Shutthefrontdoor in second Saint Are is third and then towards the outside Royale Knight the stable companion of Pineau Du Re getting into it a very steady step followed by Soll Night in Milan Pineau Du Re closing up the

inside then Monbeg Dude in a red cap from the rear followed by Rocky Creek and Alvarado they head on then to the final two fences in the 2015 Crabbie's Grand National and Many Clouds leads Shutthefrontdoor on the inside the far side now under the champion jockey followed by Saint Are THIS IS THE SECOND LAST FENCE MANY CLOUDS LIFTS OFF ABOUT A LENGTH AND A HALF CLEAR OF SHUTTHEFRONTDOOR AND SAINT ARE THEY'RE AWAY FROM ROYALE KNIGHT AND SOLL AND MONBEG DUDE WHO'S RUNNING ON BUT MANY CLOUDS COMES TOWARDS THE FINAL FENCE UNDER LEIGHTON ASPELL TWELVE MONTHS ON FROM HIS VICTORY ON PINEAU DU RE SAINT ARE INTO SECOND PLACE NOW MCCOY ASKING FOR MORE ON SHUTTHEFRONTDOOR MONBEG DUDE IS STILL STAYING ON THEY MAKE THE LONG RUN-IN NOW AND MANY CLOUDS STILL OUT IN FRONT BY TWO OR THREE LENGTHS TO SAINT ARE MONBEG DUDE STILL STAYS ON THEN SHUTTHEFRONTDOOR A FURLONG LEFT TO GO PASSING THE ELBOW MANY CLOUDS BY THREE LENGTHS TO SAINT ARE MANY CLOUDS IS GETTING TIRED SAINT ARE STAYING ON DOWN THE OUTSIDE MANY CLOUDS BY TWO LENGTHS BY A LENGTH AND A HALF HERE COMES THE LINE IT'S LEIGHTON ASPELL BACK-TO-BACK GRAND NATIONALS HE WINS ON MANY CLOUDS MANY CLOUDS HAS WON THE NATIONAL FOLLOWED IN SECOND BY SAINT ARE Monbeg Dude in third Alvarado fills out for fourth again then Shutthefrontdoor and Royale Knight followed by Cause of Causes Tranquil Sea further back Chance Du Roy many finishers Pineau Du Re Owega Star Mon Parrain amongst the tail end is Spring Heeled Oscar Time First Lieutenant never showed for Nina Carberry then Night in Milan also Dolatulo and Rocky Creek was well beaten as well [2] would you believe it Leighton Aspell who retired at one stage came out of retirement he won last year's Grand National on Pineau Du Re he won the Hennessy Gold Cup earlier this season on this horse Many Clouds er Many Clouds was disappointing in the Gold Cup [2] he's bounced back to win the big one two Grand Nationals for the

**G.4** Royal Ascot St. James's Palace Stakes 16<sup>th</sup> June 2015 Channel 4  
(2 minutes, 348 words)

A: So we're set and away for the St. James's Palace Stakes Latharnach is dropped in in the early stages Aktabantay Make Believe these to the fore on the outside is Consort Gleneagles just tucked in behind Make Believe as they run through the first furlong and it's Consort who's taken to the front now by Frankie Dettori who's seeking his 50th Royal Ascot winner Make Believe in second place the early pace doesn't look overly strong Aktabantay in the blinkers driving up the inside on the near side then Gleneagles and Latharnach at the rear of the field racing uphill all the way at this point of the track and now passing the five furlong marker Consort by a length to the French Guineas winner Make Believe Aktabantay on the near side in third then the English and Irish Guineas winner Gleneagles in the blue and orange jacket back in fourth place and Latharnach still the back marker about to run into the final turn here about to swing right-handed with three furlongs left to cover and Consort dictating the pace here it may pay to be handy Make Believe is there Aktabantay on the inside then Gleneagles and Latharnach as they run down the home straight and approach the last two furlongs Consort quickening from the front Make Believe is not picking up so well Gleneagles on the outside now beginning his run as they head down towards the final furlong and a half CONSORT AND FRANKIE DETTORI CHASED DOWN NOW BY GLENEAGLES AND RYAN MOORE ON THE OUTSIDE AS THEY ENTER THE FINAL FURLONG AND GLENEAGLES STRIKES THE FRONT FROM CONSORT RUNNING ON IS LATHARNACH IN THIRD PLACE BUT RACING UP TOWARDS THE LINE WHAT A GORGEOUS COLT THIS IS AND GLENEAGLES WINS THE ST JAMES'S PALACE drew away to win by two and a half lengths won it comfortably tight second Latharnach on the outside of Consort then Aktabantay and Make Believe didn't pick up when the pressure was applied might have found the ground a bit too quick [2] but no worries for Gleneagles

**G.5 Royal Ascot King's Stand Stakes 16<sup>th</sup> June 2015 Channel 4**  
 (1 minute 40 seconds, 322 words)

- A: As the last one slots in set it's very close as they're settling at the gate and they're away Shamal Wind perhaps one of the slowest Sole Power towards the back over on the far side as Take Cover blasts off in front from Gold Dream on the far side Nose Bended Hog Street down the near side blue and yellow jacket a step ahead from Lancelot Du Lac they're followed by Musney who's pretty keen on the heels of the leaders followed over the far side by Robot Boy Wind Fire and that group with G Force as well and then Sole Power behind these towards the back of the group is Jack Dexter as well as Spirit Course and Shamal Wind on the near side Lancelot Du Lac and Stepper Point still Rengali Justice Day Pearl Secret jumps who's driven along at the back Take Cover still leads the way to Gold Dream Medicean Man putting a run on the far side in the dark blue jacket Muthmir and Sole Power now beginning to pick up far side white jacket red stripe sleeves INSIDE THE FINAL THIRD MEDICEAN MAN FROM GOLD DREAM MUTHMIR ON THE NEAR SIDE SOLE POWER NOT QUITE GETTING THERE RACING TO THE LINE MEDICEAN MAN GOLD DREAM POKING UP IT'S TIGHT MEDICEAN MAN AND GOLD DREAM in a photo Muthmir probably third running on Pearl Secret Soul Power never quite reeled them in this is a tight one here if we can have another look at it Medicean man on the far side such an Ascot specialist Gold Dream on the nose Gold Dream Gold Dream may just have edged out Medetian man Muthmir in third Pearl Secret will cross the line in fourth in the claret colours [1] as Sole Power and his bid for the hat trick only fifth this time and then a whole group of horses including Take Cover Robot Boy Jack Dexter



**G.6** Royal Ascot Prince of Wales Stakes 17<sup>th</sup> June 2015 Channel 4  
(2 minutes 10 seconds, 418 words)

A: They're off they race away [1] and Ectot is dropped in towards the rear of the field as Gailo Chop white sleeves out to the right is the first one to go through Criterion a yellow jacket is chasing him through and then Free Eagle with the red cap a length-and-a-half behind those and runs in third position Western Hymn is next Frankie Dettori the dark blue sleeves racing two or three off the running rail making progress followed by the green colours of The Grey Gatsby the light blue of Spielberg is next a little free maybe in the early part of the race the blue and yellow of Cannock Chase is next as they turn right-handed and begin the uphill run towards home about seven furlongs to go Ectot and The Corsican are the last couple of runners as Gailo Chop moves down the side of the course shows in front he's about two lengths ahead of Criterion in second place then Free Eagle who continues to hold third with The Grey Gatsby in fourth position now just edging ahead of Western Hymn behind those is Cannock Chase and Spielberg they're followed through by The Corsican and Ectot is the back marker just past halfway and Gailo Chop only by a length now as Free Eagle has moved into second position Criterion comes next Frankie on the outside of the field the dark blue sleeves on Western Hymn then The Grey Gatsby Cannock Chase is next as they begin the run towards the home chase er straight Spielberg following Ectot making progress on the outside of The Corsican every one of them with a chance in this great race as they move into the straight Gailo Chop continues to lead Free Eagle moving into second on the right is Western Hymn in behind those The Grey Gatsby Criterion backing on against the running rail Cannock Chase trying to get out Spielberg's holding him in The Grey Gatsby COMING WITH A CHALLENGE FREE EAGLE IS LEADING AS THEY HEAD FOR THE CLOSING STAGES WESTERN HYMN IS COMING TO JOIN HIM THE GREY GATSBY IS A LENGTH OFF THEM IN THIRD POSITION IN BEHIND THOSE CANNOCK CHASE BUT IT'S FREE EAGLE SHOWING IN FRONT THE GREY GATSBY IS TRYING TO GET TO HIM AND HE'S MAKING PROGRESS FREE EAGLE SHOWS IN FRONT THE GREY GATSBY IS CLOSING WITH EVERY SINGLE STRIDE FREE EAGLE JUST I THINK TO THE GREY GATSBY Western Hymn narrowly in third position [1] from The Corsican

**G.7 Royal Ascot Gold Cup 18<sup>th</sup> June 2015 Channel 4**  
 (4 minutes 35 seconds, 808 words)

A: They're ready and they're off the 2015 running of the Gold Cup [1] two-and-a-half miles and breaking out pretty smartly Forever Now to be in the front rank early along with Havana Beat The Nose Bandit Forgotten Rules the dark jacket just sitting on the outside of Bathyrhon in dark green and they're followed close to the rail by Kingfisher they're through their first furlong Kingfisher the purple white seams the purple with orange seams Simenon just in behind and Vent De Force Richard Hughes is making a a move to get prominent now the blue and yellow to the outsides Trip to Paris is just a little bit worse than mid-field at the moment Tac De Boistron is also held up at the back in company with Mizzou now that's the green colours towards the back of the field with Scotland and Jim Crowley Windshear is also just worse than mid-field the maroon with the black armlets and the hands of Sean Levey as they're back onto the racecourse proper and at the head of affairs it is Frankie Dettori onboard Forever Now Forever Now leading by a little over a length to Vent de Force and Richard Hughes in second Havana Beats sitting in third in company with Forgotten Rules and then in fourth place just behind that one fifth place Kingfisher Bathyrhon and Maxine Guyon on the outside followed by the white-faced Trip to Paris and Windshear as the crowd give them a a big cheer Simenon is next in the hood with the gray Tac De Boistron the fluorescent yellow on the outside Mizzou one from last and Scotland held up to get the trip by Jim Crowley last of all about twelve lengths behind as the field are about to take the right-hander and it's Frankie Dettori that has the advantage on Forever Now Forever Now by two lengths to Vent to Force the Sandown winner last time up Forgotten Rules on this quicker ground is settled in third position they've completed a mile in the Gold Cup Havana Beat in fourth then Bathyrhon who's just run a little bit free then Kingfisher and Ryan Moore on seven winners for the meeting that's followed by Windshear on the rail on the outside of Windshear Trip to Paris and Graham Lee looking for his first Royal Ascot winner Tac De Boistron is following Trip to Paris just coming past Windshear Simenon and then Mizzou and finally Scotland as it is still Forever Now that has led from the outset leading them down towards Swinley Bottom by a three-length margin to Vent de Force in second place Havana Beat is settled in third his stablemate Scotland still in last position on the outside of Havana Beat is Forgotten Rules Pat Smullen and Dermot Weld Pat Smullen is fairly close to this pace as they continue on Bathyrhon is in fifth position as they reach Swinley Bottom and come inside their last mile in the Gold Cup still in mid-field at the moment Tac De Boistron the grey with Windshear Simenon no move yet also Mizzou and Scotland is still in last place Dettori dictating on Forever Now with Vent de Force who's only a length away in second spot as they just start to quicken a little bit to the outside Forgotten Rules the unbeaten Forgotten Rules with Havana Beat on the inner Bathyrhon for Pia Brandt is next with with on the rail Kingfisher and Ryan Moore Tac De Boistron to the outside then Trip to Paris Mizzou towards the back of the field is just getting shaken along with Windshear close to the rail Simenon and finally Scotland as the field come back towards us and as they now come towards their final half mile in the Gold Cup and Forever Now Frankie is trying to wind it up Hughes is getting at Vent de Force in second going particularly well in third place at the moment Forgotten Rules Pat Smullen sitting motionless at this stage Havana Beat to the inner Kingfisher goes past Bathyrhon into fifth place then Trip to Paris Simenon Mizzou Windshea Scotland and Tac De Boistron can't get involved as they run now towards the final two furlongs it is Forever Now challenged by Forgotten Rules Vent de Force weakening Trip to Paris improving to the far side GETTING INVOLVED ALSO BATHYRHON LEANING ON KINGFISHER SIMENON STAYING ON MIZZOU DOWN THE OUTSIDE TRIP TO

PARIS ON THE INSIDE FORGOTTEN RULES BATHYRHON SIMENON GETTING INVOLVED AS WELL TRIP TO PARIS GETS TO THE LEAD ON THE RUN TO THE LINE FROM FORGOTTEN RULES BATHYRHON AND SIMENON AND THE SPORTING NATURE OF THE CONNECTION'S REWARDED TRIP TO PARIS TAKES ASCOT GOLD FOR GRAHAM LEE AND ED DUNLOP second Kingfisher flying home ahead of Forgotten Rules [1] Simenon Bathyrhon was next ahead of Scotland

**G.8** Royal Ascot Coronation Stakes 19<sup>th</sup> June 2015 Channel 4  
(1 minute 40 seconds, 301 words)

- A: Racing for the Coronation Stakes Local Time is the slowest of the nine fillies away from the stalls [1] as Arabian Queen and Silvestre De Sousa go through the lead early on Miss Temple City in second Found with the blue and orange on the cap is to the right of those showing in the fourth position now Yasmeen has come through to take second red cap is Sperry next and then Irish Rookie in the grey jacket just ahead of Ervedya in the green colours Local Time next to the slow starter and last of all now is Lucida as they race down the side of the course approaching the end of their third furlong they're going strong here Silvestre De Sousa and Arabian Queen out in front by two lengths to Yasmeen in second Miss Temple City wide of those in the mainly black jacket then comes Found in fourth position from Sperry Irish Rookie Avedure Local Time and Lucida they're on their way to the turn it's still Arabian Queen out in front by two or three lengths Yasmin in second Miss Temple City in third Found is a length off them in fourth position being moved to the outside for her challenge behind those is Irish Rookie and they're followed through by Sperry and Ervedya heading down to the two marker still Arabian Queen in front here's Found towards the right now coming through with her challenge Miss Temple City running a massive race between them Lucida nearest to us coming on strongly Found and Ryan have grabbed the lead inside the last furlong here's Ervedya in the green jacket unleashed by Soumillon Ervedya coming on strongly to get some ground Lucida closing on those Ervedya to just Found Lucida Miss Temple City [1] and behind them Arabian Queen

**G.9** Royal Ascot Diamond Jubilee Stakes 20<sup>th</sup> June 2015 Channel 4  
(1 minute 20 seconds, 236 words)

A: And they're off for the Diamond Jubilee Stakes [1] Brazen Beau got away well towards the stand side towards the centre Ansgar in a pink jacket however is the overall leader to Astaire in a sheepskin nose band Due Diligence is close up in the blue and orange and then Brazen Beau from Wandjina and Brazen Beau is running a solo towards the stand side running rail and three distinct groups with Pearl Secret pulling hard in rear in the centre cluster behind Music Master and Wandjina and Tropics and the grey Glass Office Ansgar is still leading the larger cluster Mustajeeb in the blue and white tracks him with Astaire and Moviesta Lucky Kristale Gordon Lord Byron er Brazen Beau still running that solo Caspar Netscher and Undrafted in touch and the two groups now converge and still Brazen Beau runs alone as they head down towards the last quarter of a mile Astaire being joined by Mustajeeb they've headed Ansgar Brazen Beau Music Master the green sleeves then Wandjina down towards the final furlong in the Diamond Jubilee and it's Brazen Beau for Australia on the near side HERE GOES FRANKIE ON UNDRAFTED ON THE FAR SIDE FROM ASTAIRE AND MUSIC MASTER UNDRAFTED BRAZEN BEAU TOWARDS THE NEAR SIDE TRIES TO PEG HIM BACK UNDRAFTED WINS THE DIAMOND JUBILEE UNDER FRANKIE BRAZEN BEAU IS SECOND ASTAIRE is third [1] close fourth Mustajeeb Music Master and Wandjina

**G.10** Goodwood 2.35 Bonham's Thoroughbred Stakes 31<sup>st</sup> July 2015 Channel 4  
(2 minutes, 333 words)

- A: Sylvestre De Sousa and out wide Convey a little slow to stride along [1] with Johnny Barnes is Crescent for Qatar on the outside of the white emblazoned Kool Kompany who's often a front runner going forward again here Bridget Hughes in the green jacket with the yellow armlets Malabar is third then Hathal in fourth place Latharnac on the outside in the all royal blue and Crescent back on the inside maroon cap that's Frankie Dettori and those colours again riding Moheet this time Room Key is in the last quartet followed by Johnny Barnes Aktabantay and finally Convey swinging right-handed and now passing the four-and-a-half furlong point from the finish just approaching the four furlong marker and it's Kool Kompany that leads the the field in this Bonham's Thoroughbred Stakes Crescent in second Malabar visor on for the first time in third Latharnac on the outside of Moheet and then Hathal as they straighten up for the judge they're followed by Room Key who's locked away on the inside Aktabantay is wider ahead there in the headgear is Johnny Barnes and the pink cap Convey still last Kool Kompany continues to dictate matters here from Crescent Malabar's got not much room on the rail er in behind these Latharnac a little wider now begins to unwind under William Buick but Hughes is going for home on Kool Kompany he skips two lanes clear Malabar going after the leader it's Kool Kompany chased down by Malabar Latharnac goes a bit flat Convey is picking up well out wide but Malabar gets past Kool Kompany with a 100 yards left to go and the visor working his magic here for Fehily MALABAR wins the Bonham's Thoroughbred Stakes cleared away from Kool Kompany then Latharnac and Convey who made a bit of a late effort [1] a late dash Room Key then Moheet Johnny Barnes Hathal Aktabantay and Crescent at the back of the field [1] Malabar wins at 6 to 1 slightly eased in grade here

**G.11 Goodwood 3.10 Betfred Mile 31<sup>st</sup> July 2015 Channel 4**  
 (2 minutes, 380 words)

A: And they're away racing for the Betfred Mile Ocean Temp has ridden vigorously on the near side the grey [1] The Rectifier going forward ahead of Ocean Temp has under Timmy Murphy Belgium Bill and Baltic Knight in the green jacket are handy so too are Ayaar and Basem just tracking them in the all-blue of Godolphin Red Avenger on the outside So Beloved is back on the inside in the midfield Chil the Kite the inner of Munaaser and Bronze Angel is out wide and towards the centre is Donncha in amongst the runners Loving Spirit towards the back of the field with Bronze Angel and also Lincoln and GM Hopkins is caught a little wide in the dark sleeves alongside Magic City Big Baz and Two For Two are the last two The Rectifier followed by Baltic Knight and then Ocean Temp is around the inside of Belgian Bill So Beloved is in fifth place followed by Ayaar then Basem on the inside of last year's winner Red Avenger a couple of lengths further back then to Chil the Kite followed by Munaaser Lincoln is out wide black and yellow jacket wider is Bronze Angel in the dark blue sleeves then GM Hopkins Magic City Two For Two and Big Baz at the tail of the field still The Rectifier out in front Baltic Knight throwing down a challenge second then Belgium Bill in the light blue cap coming there followed by Ocean Tempest So Beloved Ayaar Basem's being hard ridden then Red Avenger out wide Bronze Angel with Donnacha The Rectifier is joined by Belgium Bill Belgium Bill gets by The Rectifier So Beloved and then Ayaar Basem staying on too late So Beloved and BELGIUM BILL FIGHTING IT OUT UP TO THE LINE AND SO BELOVED IS GETTING UP SO BELOVED IN THE HANDS OF DANNY TUDHOPE just wins from Belgian Bill then The Rectifier Basem and Munaaser fighting it out for fourth probably then Magic City and Ayaar further back Chil the Kite and trailing back to Big Baz and Loving Spirit well David O'Meara has broken his Goodwood duck [1] and it couldn't be in a much more valuable race the Betfred Mile So Beloved and Danny Tudhope [1] who's not been long back from an injury

**G.12** Goodwood 3.45 King George Stakes 31<sup>st</sup> July 2015 Channel 4  
(1 minute 40 seconds, 296 words)

- A: It'll take less than a minute to air to be sorted here Dikta Del Mar and Line of Reason making up the line for this King George Group 2 Stakes [1] five furlongs easy five too Out Do being held nearest to us on hold and they're away and first away Justineo on the far side in the dark green jacket Take Cover Caspian Prince and they go forward with Cotai Glory on their right and Justineo is burning the turf on the far side from Take Cover Caspian Prince and then Cotai Glory they're chased in the centre by Goken Move In Time Muthmir blue and white jacket Kingsgate Native further back also further back Justice Day then Line of Reason towards the right the Nose Bandit Out Do towards the extreme right further back Katowi Salt Island is completely outpaced Movie Star towards the far side Justineo leads the way followed by Take Cover Caspian Prince Muthmir now coming with a run on the far side the blue and white jacket from Cotai Glory and Move In Time stays on Muthmir gets to Justineo Take Cover trying to rally then Move In Time towards the centre they RACE TOWARDS THE LINE TAKE COVER FINDING MORE MUTHMIR STICKING HIS NECK OUT AND GETS THERE MUTHMIR wins the King George from in second Take Cover who fought on bravely then Move In Time and Cotai Glory and Justineo what a pace Justineo went Line of Reason was next followed by Kingsgate Native Caspian Prince and at the back Goken and Salt Island who was completely outpaced in the early stages here while Muthmir has defied a penalty [1] showed a little bit of class to win great run by Take Cover in defence of his crown last year



**G.13** Newbury 3.25 19<sup>th</sup> September 2015 Channel 4  
(1 minute 15 seconds, 223 words)

- A: Dutch Masterpiece is just about the slowest of them to get away [1] as Justice Day Musical Comedy Caspian Prince and Elysian Flyer are the first ones to show Ridge Ranger in behind those some Justice Good with the white cap and then Wind Fire and Kingsgate Native from Steps and Rathaath together and Dutch Masterpiece at the rear of the field they've already completed two furlongs the light blue and brown of Caspian Prince leads to Justice Day purple jacket red cap on the right then is Musical Comedy behind those Elysian Fly being ridden along with now the light blue of Ridge Ranger getting into contention behind them Dutch Masterpiece is beginning to close then Kingsgate Native heading down already to the last furlong as they do so Justice Day Caspian Prince and the light blue jacket of Ridge Ranger this trio together STEPS IS A LENGTH BEHIND THEM AND CLOSING IN FOURTH PLACE WINDFIRE COMING IN ON THE FAR SIDE RIDGE RANGER IS JUST IN FRONT WINDFIRE STEPS COMING TO JOIN THEM JUSTICE DAY THERE AS WELL THE FOUR OF THEM HIT THE LINE TOGETHER they're about two lengths clear from Dutch Masterpiece back in fifth [1]
- B: Photo finish photo finish
- C: A fantastic finish and I think Steps has got up under Jamie Spencer [1] he's having a good day is er Jamie

**G.14** Ayr 3.45 19<sup>th</sup> September 2015 Channel 4  
(1 minute 40 seconds, 342 words)

A: The last horse and they're off and racing [1] so they get away to a big roar from the crowd Astrophysics one out Boom The Groom and also Poyle Vinnie over on the far side all congregating towards the centre bar two and they are Red Pike and Tanzeel who are chancing their arms down the stand side Boom The Groom Astrophysics lead out in the centre Don't Touch not far away Glory Awaits as well action towards the right-hand side early on with also Hoof It tracking that with Highland Acclaim and Toofi right down the centre Sound Advice is also racing handily with Highlands Colori Rivellino and Rene Mathis's white face Heaven's Guest in midfield for Majestic Moon then Blade Algar Lad held up Buckstay and company with Professor Dinkum Diamond Golden Steps Ninjago and the two on the stand side still headed by Red Pike and Tanzeel wide across the course Boom The Groom as Glory Awaits takes over Astrophysics and Hoof It Highland Acclaim joins the group that are coming up the centre Don't Touch prominent in that group with also towards the far side Poyle Vinnie as they make their way down inside the final furlong Hoof It over on the far side Poyle Vinnie down the centre with Don't Touch Toofi is finishing off strongly along with Ninjago then Highland Colori right down the middle Don't Touch and on the far side Hoof It between the pair the green jacket of Toofi ALSO FIGHTING ON POYLE VINNIE THEY GO FOR THE LINE DON'T TOUCH HAS WON THE AYR GOLD CUP REMAINS UNBEATEN Don't Touch Poyle Vinnie Ninjago Toofi Buckstay next Rene Mathis from Highland Colori Golden Steps never quite got to them Glory Awaits faded and then Highland Acclaim is next home Don't Touch's biggest house to date and when it came down to the inches where it mattered he prevailed again [1] Don't Touch hands off bids will be flying in for this horse unbeaten in four Poyle Vinnie I think has possibly got up for second

## **H Horse racing on the radio (50 minutes, 10,000 words)**

### **H.1 Sandown 3.50 Bet 365 Gold Cup 25<sup>th</sup> April 2015 RacingFM (7 minutes 10 seconds, 1333 words)**

A: They've got away from the start [1] with Rocky Creek leading at the first of the 24 obstacles number two is a ditch Ely Brown is in second position Unioniste Grandad's Horse Le Reve Bally Legend and The Package are close as they take this open ditch which they're all over safely Wonderful Charm is at the rear of the field and now two circuits to go in this Bet 365 Gold Cup and it's just Ely Brown the orange and beige colours Will Kennedy shows in front Rocky Creek blue and red jacket furthest from the running rail is just about in second place The Package green-sleeved jacket shows third Le Reve and Grandad's Horse in the black colours the next then Unioniste Paint the Clouds is behind those as they turn right-handed for the first time and race away downhill towards number three Bally Legend is in mid-division Roalco De Farges right up towards the outside of runners at the moment Wonderful Charm and Duke of Lucca and Guess Again are towards the rear of the field as they head down to this plain fence then number three on the side of the track Ely Brown and Lost Legend are towards the rear of the field as well they are all over that safely enough and are turning into the back straight Paint the Clouds the well backed favourite Paint The Clouds he'd be about seventh or eighth position on the outside of the white jacket of Lost Legend but in front it's Ely Brown this Unioniste has moved now to take second place as they jump the first of the seven in the back straight Rocky Creek is behind him The Package Granddad's Horse Bob's Worth Le Reve the next group of runners now they move on to number six which is another open ditch Ely Brown outjumped by Unioniste who's taken up the running they move to the water Rocky Creek Grandad's Horse The Package Le Reve Roalco De Farges then Paint The Clouds dark blue and yellow jacket as they move down to the water Vic's Canvas goes round the outside of runners blue and yellow colours he's with Bob's Worth Bally Legend with those Guess Again comes next and is followed by Return Spring and then Lost Legend on the inside who's tracked through by Wonderful Charm as they come to the railway fences for the first time Duke of Lucca red jacket yellow cap at the rear green sleeves of Just a Par is also towards the back of the field taking the middle of the railways and quickly down now to number ten Unioniste up and over safely got over that one and leads them now on quite a long run to the pond fence number eleven Ely Brown is running in second place Rocky Creek in third The Package just ahead of Le Reve yellow with blue sleeves Grandad's Horse one of the longer-priced runners black and yellow colours is next and then comes Paint the Clouds who races alongside Royale Knight Roalco De Farges Return Spring Bally Legend then comes Vic's Canvas just in behind Bob's Worth they're followed by Algernon Pazham who's followed by Duke of Lucca who's proceeded by Wonderful Charm Just a Par and Guess Again who's got the black and white checks yellow sleeves at the rear of the field as they've now almost completed one circuit they jump over the pond for the first time or they have about two miles still to go in the Bet 365 Gold Cup and Unioniste and Sam Twiston-Davies continue to set the pace Ely Brown in the orange on the left touch down virtually level with Unioniste as they all take that one safely slight error from Duke of Lucca towards the rear heading now on towards 13 which is another open ditch towards the right nearest to us the white spots on red sleeves is Rocky Creek Le Reve with the cheekpieces next to him then The Package right in behind them Paint the Clouds with Grandad's Horse then Roalco De Farges who's followed through by Bally Legend and then Algernon Pazham Bob's Worth's with those and then comes Return Spring behind Lost Legend and Vic's Canvas Return Spring losing a few places there Duke of Lucca still at the rear of the field with

Just a Par and Wonderful Charm just about a length or so ahead of that and now Le Reve has moved through to take second place Ely Brown loses positions Rocky Creek and The Package are third and fourth then Ely Brown from Lost Legend and behind Lost Legend comes Paint the Clouds as they run on down towards this next plain fence Grandad's Horse is towards the outside of runners with Roalco De Farges as Unioniste up and over that one safely and they all appear to have got over it all right Le Reve is running in second place as they head down the back straight the last time The Package is a length and a half behind in third and then Rocky Creek Grandad's Horse and Lost Legend and Paint the Clouds with those Roalco De Farges running in it for the third time is next as they jump over this next plain fence they're followed through by Bally Legend Guess Again and Vic's Canvas and Just a Par starting to make progress another plain fence Unioniste up and over safely main group getting over it now Ely Brown has dropped to the rear of the field the last of the open ditches 17 coming up Unioniste up and over safely a good three-length lead now as they head down to the water about a mile to go he's followed through by Le Reve and then comes Lost Legend the white jacket in third place Paint the Clouds is just in behind them from The Package and then Grandad's Horse Ely Brown has pulled up Royale Knight's well behind Return Spring's under pressure there's only six to jump from here it's Unioniste the grey yellow jacket still bowling along there in front Le Reve and Lost Legend and then towards the right is Paint the Clouds making his run now as they move to five from the finish behind those is Vic's Canvas and Algernon Pazham and Grandad's Horse and Guess Again on the right making progress Bally Legend just in behind those then Bob's Worth and Just a Par and Roalco De Farges three to jump in the Bet 365 Gold Cup it's still Unioniste Le Reve is two lengths behind in second but having to be worked on to keep up Paint the Clouds is coming through against the running rail into third place Guess Again around the outer coming into it stylishly now black and white jacket yellow sleeves Grandad's Horse is next followed by Lost Legend the blue jacket of Vic's Canvas running on from Algernon Pazham there and Bally Legend and Just a Par and now Paint the Clouds throws out his challenge and takes it up from Le Reve Unioniste has weakened but look to the right Guess Again and Paul Townend coming into it strongly Vic's Canvas Ruby Walsh has moved into fourth position three in line as they come to the second last LE REVE OVER IT SAFELY FROM IN SECOND POSITION GUESS AGAIN PAINT THE CLOUDS IS FURTHEST FROM US JUST A PAR IS RUNNING ON STRONGLY FROM THE REAR OF THE FIELD THE GREEN SLEEVES DON'T COUNT HIM OUT OF IT HEADING DOWN TOWARDS THE LAST NOW LE REVE JUST TO IN SECOND PLACE GUESS AGAIN JUST A PAR VIC'S CANVAS FURTHEST FROM US BETWEEN THEM IS PAINT THE CLOUDS IT IS JUST A PAR SEAN BOWEN HAS GOT A GREAT TUNE OUT OF HIM THIS IN THE CLOSING STAGES JUST A PAR HAS WON THE BET 365 GOLD CUP VIC'S CANVAS SECOND Le Reve in third and Paint The Clouds was fourth

**H.2** Newmarket 3.00 3<sup>rd</sup> May 2015 RacingFM  
(1 minutes 10 seconds, 194 words)

- A: Supplicant and Eastern Impact and Accession towards the left got away well Shore Step and Secretinthepark and Zanetto and Gamesome with Bahamian Heights are showing good pace Dinkum Diamond and Go Far in behind them and then comes Bahamian Heights further back towards the left look at Huntsman's Close he's going OK Don't Have It Then is behind this and then comes Seeking Magic Blaine at this stage about five behind him but it's nearside Shore Step leading Secretinthepark in second Zanetto in third place the red sleeved Eastern Impact Accession on the extreme left Foxtrot Romeo Go Far Dinkum Diamond in behind Eastern Bahamian Nights and Boomerang Bob Blaine is going to be last he's well out of contention Eastern Impact at this stage from Secretinthepark Huntsman's Close trying to join them Shore Step is still there Bahamian Heights behind those Zanetto's still running on strongly Eastern Impact there with the red sleeves Jack Garrity THE HUNTSMAN'S CLOSE DARK JACK IN THE FAR SIDE OF HIM EASTERN IMPACT BEING JOINED NOW BY HUNTSMAN'S CLOSE so that is on the nod Zanetto led by them in third position [1] and they're then followed in by Accession

**H.3** Newmarket 3.40 3<sup>rd</sup> May 2015 RacingFM  
(1 minutes 40 seconds, 299 words)

- A: And er [1] Lucida broke a little bit awkwardly by the looks of things [laughter] and Terror is towards the back of the field as they begin to settle on the left the red is Tiggy Wiggy following her is Qualify and they're having a little solo race as the others all come towards the right in the standside rails Queen Nefertiti and the white-sleeved jacket of Red Star blue with a white cap of Local Time Tiggy Wiggy about second at this stage as she comes over to join the others Malabar is next from Fadhayyil yellow blue and white on the cap and then Jellicle Ball and pink colours moving ahead of Qualify Lucida towards the back of the field Kevin Manning just moving around round the outside so he doesn't get traffic problems and they've Legatissimo towards the right with Terror and Osaila at the back of the field already well past halfway red jacket on the left is Tiggy Wiggy the white sleeves Red Star against the running rail between them is Local Time Fadhayyil a length away in fourth position then comes Fadhayyil and just in front of her Queen Nefertiti Malabar there with a chance and they head then down two furlongs it's a wide open Guineas Tiggy Wiggy now LUCIDA ON THE EXTREME LEFT KEVIN MANNING MOVES HER DOWN THE CENTRE FADHAYYIL IS THERE MALABAR NEAREST TO US THEN FADHAYYIL STAYING ON INTO THE CLOSING STAGES LUCIDA IN THE BLUE JACKET HAS SHOT TO A TWO-LENGTH LEAD TIGGY WIGGY IN SECOND HERE COMES THE RUN-IN NOW LEGATISSIMO LEGATISSIMO THE BLUE AND ORANGE IS COMING HOME THE STRONGEST AS THE CROWD CHEER FROM LUCIDA AND GETS RUN A DOUBLE IN THE GUINEAS Tiggy Wiggy behind Local Time finished in third place The Malabar was fourth

**G.4** Ascot Prince of Wales Stakes 17<sup>th</sup> June 2015 RacingFM  
(2 minutes 5 seconds, 412 words)

A: At the rear of the field is Gailo Chop white sleeves is out to the right he's the first one to go through Criterion a yellow jacket is chasing him through and then Free Eagle with the red cap a length and a half behind those and runs in third position Western Hymn is next Frankie Dettori the dark blue sleeves racing two or three off but running well making progress followed by the green colours of The Grey Gatsby the light blue of Spielberg is next a little free maybe in the early part of the race the blue and yellow of Cannock Chase is next as they turn right-handed and begin the uphill run towards home about seven furlongs to go Ectot and The Corsican are the last couple of runners as Gailo Chop moves down the side of the course shows in front he's about two lengths ahead of Criterion in second place and then Free Eagle who continues to hold third with The Grey Gatsby in fourth position now just edging ahead of er Western Hymn behind those is Cannock Chase and Spielberg they're followed through by The Corsican and Ectot is the back marker just past halfway and Gailo Chop only by a length now as Free Eagle has moved into second position Criterion comes next Frankie on the outer of the field the dark blue sleeves on Western Hymn then The Grey Gatsby Cannock Chase is next as they begin the run towards the home chase er straight Spielberg following Ectot making progress on the outside of The Corsican EVERY ONE OF THEM WITH A CHANCE IN THIS GREAT RACE AS THEY MOVE INTO THE STRAIGHT GAILO CHOP CONTINUES TO LEAD FREE EAGLE MOVING INTO SECOND ON THE RIGHT IS WESTERN HYMN IN BEHIND THOSE THE GREY GATSBY CRITERION BACKING ON AGAINST THE RUNNING RAIL CANNOCK CHASE TRYING TO GET OUT SPIELBERG'S HOLDING HIM IN THE GREY GATSBY COMING WITH A CHALLENGE FREE EAGLE IS LEADING AS THEY ENTER THE CLOSING STAGES WESTERN HYMN IS COMING TO JOIN HIM THE GREY GATSBY'S A LENGTH OFF OF HIM IN THIRD POSITION IN BEHIND THOSE CANNOCK CHASE BUT IT'S FREE EAGLE SHOWING IN FRONT THE GREY GATSBY IS TRYING TO GET TO HIM AND HE'S MAKING PROGRESS FREE EAGLE SHOWS IN FRONT THE GREY GATSBY IS CLOSING WITH EVERY SINGLE STRIDE FREE EAGLE just standing to The Grey Gatsby Western Hymn narrowly in third position [1] from The Corsican

**G.5 Ascot Gold Cup 18<sup>h</sup> June 2015 RacingFM**  
 (3 minutes 45 seconds, 695 words)

A: Tac De Boistron is also held up toward the back in company with Mizzou and that's the green colours towards the back of the field with Scotland and Jim Crowley Windshear is also just worse than mid-field the maroon with the black armlets in the hands of Sean Levey as they're back on to the racecourse proper and at the head of affairs it is Frankie Dettori on board Forever Now Forever Now leading by a little over a length to Vent De Force and Richard Hughes in second Havana Beat sitting in third in company with Forgotten Rules and then in fourth place just behind that one fifth place Kingfisher Bathyrhon and Maxime Guyon on the outside followed by the white-faced Trip To Paris and Windshear as the crowd give them a a big cheer Simenon is next in the hood with the grey Tac De Boistron the fluorescent yellow on the outside Mizzou one from last and Scotland held up to get the trip by Jim Crowley last of all about twelve lengths behind the field are about to take the right-hander and it's Frankie Dettori that has the advantage on Forever Now Forever Now by two lengths to Vent De Force the Sandown winner last time up Forgotten Rules on this quicker ground is settled in third position they've completed a mile in the Gold Cup Havana Beat in fourth then Bathyrhon who's just running a little bit free then Kingfisher and Ryan Moore on seven winners for the meeting that's followed by Windshear on the rail on the outside of er Windshear Trip to Paris and Graham Lee looking for his first Royal Ascot winner Tac De Boistron is following Trip to Paris just coming past Windshear Simenon and then Mizzou and finally Scotland as it is still Forever Now that has led from the outset leading them down towards Swinley Bottom by a three-length margin to Vent De Force in second place Havana Beat is settled in third his stablemate Scotland still in last position on the outside off Havana Beat is Forgotten Rules Pat Smullen and Dermot Weld Pat Smullen is fairly close to this pace as they continue on Bathyrhon is in fifth position as they've reached Swinley Bottom and come inside their last mile in the Gold Cup still in mid-field at the moment Tac De Boistron the grey with Windshear Simenon no move yet also Mizzou and Scotland is still in last place Dettori dictating on Forever Now with Vent De Force who's only a length away in second spot as they just start to quicken a little bit to to outside Forgotten Rules the unbeaten Forgotten Rules with Havana Beat on the inner Bathyrhon for Pia Brandt is next with on the rail Kingfisher and Ryan Moore Tac De Boistron to the outside then Trip to Paris Mizzou towards the back of the field is just getting shaken along with Windshear close to the rail Simenon and finally Scotland as the field come back towards us and as they now come towards their final half mile in the Gold Cup and Forever Now Frankie trying to wind it up Hughes is getting at Vent De Force in second going particularly well in third place at the moment Forgotten Rules Pat Smullen sitting motionless at this stage Havana Beat to the inner Kingfisher goes past Bathyrhon into fifth place then Trip to Paris Simenon Mizzou Windshear Scotland and Tac De Boistron can't get involved as they run now towards the FINAL TWO FURLONGS IT IS FOREVER NOW CHALLENGED BY FORGOTTEN RULES VENT DE FORCE WEAKENING TRIP TO PARIS IMPROVING TO THE FAR SIDE GETTING INVOLVED ALSO BATHYRHON LEANING ON KINGFISHER SIMENON STAYING ON MIZZOU DOWN THE OUTSIDE TRIP TO PARIS ON THE INSIDE FORGOTTEN RULES BATHYRHON SIMENON GETTING INVOLVED AS WELL TRIP TO PARIS GETS TO THE LEAD ON THE RUN TO THE LINE FROM FORGOTTEN RULES BATHYRHON AND SIMENON AND THE SPORTING NATURE OF THEIR CONNECTIONS REWARDED TRIP TO PARIS TAKES ASCOT GOLD FOR GRAHAM LEE AND ED DUNLOP second Kingfisher flying home ahead of Forgotten Rules Simenon er Bathyrhon was next [1] ahead of Scotland



**G.6 Ludlow 2.10 Welcome Back to Ludlow Juvenile Maiden Hurdle 7<sup>th</sup> October 2015**  
 RacingFM  
 (3 minutes 35 seconds, 771 words)

- A: First to begin out in the centre is Duke of Medina Duke of Medina the first to rise and land pops over in front by about a half length to Duke Street who took that in second and Fast Scat towards the near side in third and Dylan Storm in fourth position the back marker is Or So they've negotiated the first of eight flights of hurdles and quickly they race on towards flight number two and there's nothing to choose between Duke of Medina and towards the near side Duke Street so the two market leaders are duelling for the pace as they head up the home straight for the first time Fast Cat has settled in third position Dylan Storm is fourth and in the rear of the five-runner field Or So Kieran Woods has anchored that one at the back and is content to wait at the rear of the field as they pass the enclosures then swinging away right-handed down the side of the track where they'll approach flag number three and the blue and yellow of Duke of Medina and Gavin Shean towards the inside of the blue and grey of Duke Street and Will Kennedy just sitting a little bit deeper out a couple of lengths back to the yellow jacket of Fast Scat then the blue and red of Dylan Storm and the hoop jacket of Or So at the rear of the field they've taken flight number three away down the side of the track they go about to turn into the back stretch to head off to the two flights over there flights four and five [1] and no change up front and nothing to choose between Duke Street and Duke of Medina are still pretty much anchored together across the grandstands they go two lengths back back to Fast Scat and this is DG Noonan and then three lengths to Dylan Storm and Aiden Cumlin and three parts more to Or So and Kieran Woods approaching the fourth flight of hurdles then in the opening here at Ludlow and nothing to choose between Duke of Medina and Duke Street as they rose and landed together and press on towards flight number five next to the field is Fast Scat and then behind those towards the back of the pack is Dylan Storm and also Or So here is the last one on the back stretch and probably the slightly better leap on this occasion by Duke Street who gets away and leads up by three parts of a length on landing so Duke Street to Duke of Medina racing in second place as they swing down the side of the track they're about to swing right-handed to head back towards the home straight three flights of hurdles await them down there and er pressing on up front it's Duke Street who shows the way Duke Street in front by a neck to Duke of Medina racing second a length and half back to Fast Scat racing third hustled along now Or So in fourth position and Dylan Storm now at the back of the five-runner field Or So coaxed along by Aiden Culman so it's the front two who continue to channel the best as they continue to take the turn towards home Duke Street and Duke of Medina still not much to choose between the two as they head off towards this third last flight of hurdles flight number six of the nine down towards it they come then Duke Street and Duke of Medina in a locked together then past that point of departure at the third last Duke Street over in front only by a half length Duke of Medina shaken up but so too Duke Street he's the second last then Duke Street's pricking his ears at it and seems to have a little bit more left here he got away by a length and a half Duke of Medina now comes under pressure in second and tries to respond one flight of hurdles to go then Duke Street near side Duke of Medina far side to within half a length again they're on the run towards the line now Duke Street being driven out leads on by a couple of lengths half a furlong to go Duke Street Duke of Medina tries to respond they're well clear of Fast Scat but racing up towards the line it's Duke Street who is going on to win the Welcome Back to Ludlow Juvenile Maiden Hurdle Duke Street wins to Duke of Medina in second [1] Fast Scat has finished in third

**G.7 Nottingham 2.30 EBF 32Red Nursery Stakes 7<sup>th</sup> October 2015 RacingFM**  
 (1 minutes 5 seconds, 244 words)

A: They race away Spike got a decent start just a little slow to go was First Party they settle down early doors Spike is the one who shows the way to Celebration racing second Tribesman close up near side followed by Ample who's nestled in fourth position about two lengths off the leaders right behind the front runners er behind those First Party trying to make up for that slow start and also towards the back is Storm Melody through the first couple of furlongs then at pace Tribesmen towards the near side the cross-patterned jacket of Spike and over on the far side Celebration right behind them the red and green of Ample followed through by Storm Melody and then First Party is beginning to struggle though down inside the final furlong-and-a-half already Tribesmen towards the near side Celebration the far side now being drawn out for an effort is Ample who's finishing off well in the hands of Sean Levey they're back inside the final furlong now Ample might have just hit the front but sticking to her guns is Celebration and towards that near side trying to run on Storm Melody well inside the furlong now Ample still there Storm Melody near side between horses Celebration they race up towards the line AMPLE'S DONE ENOUGH JUST Ample got there it was tight for second maybe just Celebration in front of Storm Melody who finished third and a gap to the fourth

**G.8** Nottingham 3.05 EBF 32Red Casino Maiden Stakes 7th October 2015 RacingFM  
(1 minute 50 seconds, 381 words)

A: Mr. Turner was very slow to go not the best away [laughter] Ferentina they settle down early doors Barocco got a good start from the wide draw also away pretty well is Antiocho as they settle down early doors and towards the inner Mengli Kahn has got a good sit just behind the leading group is Across the Stars followed through then by Daikeek who races into fifth place that's rode through by Mr. Turner and then Opposition who races centre field a little bit deeper out of that one Sennockian Song is followed through by Ashjan who races through towards the back of the field Ferentino is next then Rubensian who's second last and the overall back marker as they leave the back stretch behind them is Opposition so taking the left-handed turn they're inside the five and it's Brorocco who continues to show the way Brorocco to Antiocho racing second and then three parts to Mengley Khan travelling on a tight right on the fence Across the Stars is shadowing him has to follow through a little bit deeper out by the striped cap of Daqeeq as they head back down the straight Sennockian Song next from Mr. Turner and between horses West Drive back towards the final three furlongs they come now and it's still Brorocco who's showing the way Antiocho in second is poised to challenge for Luke Morris near side picking up nicely Daqeeq far side of the course Mengli Kahn shaken up behind those Across the Stars next Sennockian Song trying to run on and then West Drive they're back inside the final two Brorocco off the front hard to pass Mengli Khan is now drawn out for an effort three deep of those near side Daqeeq still being asked to pick up then Across the Stars they're followed through by Antiocho they're down towards the final furlong now and it's Mengli Khan who's gone on Mengli Khan this big powerful colt is beginning to get the upper hand here Mengli Khan opened up by four to five in second Daqeeq Across the Stars runs on late but racing up towards the line Mengli Khan is going on to win Across the Stars for second Daqeeq finished third [1] and a little gap to the fourth

**G.9** Nottingham 3.35 EBF Stallions 32 Red Nursery Handicap Stakes 7<sup>th</sup> October 2015  
 RacingFM  
 (2 minutes, 440 words)

A: First to begin is Rioca in the black and white hooped jacket showing the way for Luke Morris by a length to Bathos in the dark green racing second followed through by Machine Learner racing third and the pale blue of Viren's Army in the brown jacket of Daryl Harold held up last of the five runners by a pack and about seven lengths off the pace leaving the back stretch behind them and starting the turn they're inside the final six so they're through the first three furlongs and it's Rioca who continues to dictate a decent pace leading up by two lengths to Bathos racing second third place tucked in behind them a little bit deeper Machine Learner followed through by Viren's Army on the fence and the overall back marker continues to be Dal Harrauld so no change at all as they leave the back stretch behind them and start the turn heading back inside the five Rioca it is then who leads to the halfway point in front by a couple of lengths to Bathos who's still close up in second place followed through Machine Learner a little bit wider out and sticking to the inside fence Viren's Army is next and Dal Harrauld will have to pass them all to win as they head back down the straight they're back towards the final three-and-a-half furlongs now Rioca's still there he's not asked the horse to quicken yet Luke Morris behind him near side Machine Learner moves along the side Bathos behind that one on the inside Viren's Army just being shaken up and at the back of the field Dal Harrauld back towards the final two-and-a-half they come then Rioca trying to see them off from the front has been joined by Bathos near side Machine Learner's jockey's in overdrive Jamie Spencer behind that one Dal Harrauld picking up and that's followed by Viren's Army they're back towards the final couple and inside it they go Ricoca on the fence claimed by Bathos Machine Learner has now hit the front but here's Dal Harrauld with a big effort down the outside Dal Harrauld has come through to tackle Machine Learner Rioca kept going on the fence the last one to challenge is Viren's Army back in fifth now Bathos has done his running they're inside the furlong now it's Dal Harrauld who's gone on but here is Viren's Army beginning to blast home towards the near side VIREN'S ARMY GETTING UP THERE VIREN'S ARMY GOT THERE JUST to Dal Harrauld in second pretty tight in the end for third Machine Learner and Rioca [1] and Bathos

**G.10** Wincanton 2.25 Bruton Novices' Handicap Hurdle 16<sup>th</sup> October 2015 RacingFM  
(4 minutes 40 seconds, 993 words)

A: They walk their way through the first furlong or so [1] with East Hill racing on the outside of the black and yellow colours of The Cider Maker they'll think it's a home schooling session the Tizzard pair as they race together with in third place The Kvilleken and the grey Loch Garman held up early on one more flight of hurdles in the back straight for them to negotiate East Hill the white and green colours on the outside of The Cider Maker they pop over it three lengths clear from The Kvilleken and the green colours with the dark check pieces and last of the quartet is the grey Loch Garman as they prepare to turn out of the back straight and they'll run down the side of the racecourse on the long run towards flag number three The Cider Maker narrowly with the advantage of the inside by a neck from East Hill in second The Kvilleken in third place and if anything the pace is even steadied still further and Loch Garman is restrained to the back of the field so side-by-side the Tizzard pair make their way down the side of the racecourse The Cider Maker under Richard Johnson who's poised on 98 wins for the season with chances this afternoon on the inside of East Hill racing in third place is The Kvilleken and last of the quartet Loch Garman as they breeze their way up the home straight for the first time The Cider Maker by a neck or so East Hill in second place as they reach the first up the home straight The Kvilleken guessed at it sprawled on landing retains his feet but should really know better and last of the four is Loch Garman as the ground staff rush to repair the flight of hurdles that The Kvilleken made a mess of as they head on towards the fourth [1] East Hill and the Cider Maker The Kvilleken in third place didn't lose much ground by that mistake and jumps that far more fluently and Loch Garman is at the rear of the field so they've taken their time to get past us to this point and East Hill the outside of the quartet is going to pass us with a narrow lead The Cider Maker in second place is half a length away The Kvilleken in third after that scare at the third flight of hurdles and the last of the quartet is Loch Garman as they swing right-handed towards the flight of hurdles on the side of the course and this is number five [1] East Hill on the outside of The Cider Maker The Kvilleken in third and still in fourth place is Loch Garman so they rise at the next flight of hurdles where Loch Garman just ran down it slightly but at this pace the couple of errors that have been made so far haven't cost the culprits er too much ground as they turn into the back straight and still it is the Tizzard pair East Hill and The Cider Maker a neck between the two The Kvilleken is two lengths away in third and a further length back to Loch Garman as they step over the first down the back once again Loch Garman just tending to jump left-handed as the race has progressed and they're now back to their point of departure with very little change since we jumped away East Hill and The Cider Maker have disputed the lead throughout although it's hardly been a a tooth-and-nail fight as The Kvilleken's in third place and Loch Garman in fourth The Cider Maker accelerated into that slightly again Loch Garman ran down the flight of hurdles it's just cost him a couple of lengths at each of those flights so far down the back he's just beginning to develop now The Cider Maker beginning to press on with in second place is East Hill third for The Kvilleken and Loch Garman still plenty close enough here so the steady pace means that all four runners have every chance and they've now got this long run to the second last The Cider Maker out in front attended by East Hill The Kvilleken and the outside Loch Garman now beginning to close up as well as the four runners separated by just a couple of lengths turn down the side of the racecourse it's The Cider Maker cutting out the running East Hill a big price just a neck down The Kvilleken still waiting in the wings as is Loch Garman as two by two they make the turn back towards home it's going to turn into a little bit of a dash under these fast conditions here this afternoon and The Cider Maker spins off that turn first one just to be asked then East

Hill The Kvilleken is pushed along as now the dash begins Loch Garmin the grey is travelling up fairly strongly but just hanging to the left once more THE CIDER MAKER POPS OVER FROM EAST HILL AWAY TO THE RIGHT-HAND SIDE IS LOCH GARMAN NOW BEING ASKED FOR AN EFFORT THE KVILLEN IS THE ONE THAT WAS CAUGHT FLAT-FOOTED FIRST DOWN TOWARDS THE LAST EAST HILL COMING BACK AT THE CIDER MAKER LOCH GARMAN TRYING TO JOIN IN THE KVILLEN STILL NOT DONE NECESSARILY WITH EITHER AS THEY HEAD TOWARDS THE LAST THE CIDER MAKER AND THEN EAST HILL THE KVILLEN TOWARDS THE LEFT LOCH GARMAN THAT COULD BE ONE MISTAKE TOO MANY EAST HILL ON THE OUTSIDE OF THE CIDER MAKER THE KVILLEN'S TRYING TO CLOSE IN THIRD EAST HILL FOR THE SHOCK HERE FROM THE CIDER MAKER IN SECOND PLACE AND THE OUTSIDER OF FOUR EAST HILL wins the dash to the line it's a one two for Colin Tizzard and his first winner of the season East Hill has beaten The Cider Maker The Kvilliken [1] and Loch Garmin

**G.11** Wincanton 3.00 Wincanton Handicap Chase 16<sup>th</sup> October 2015 RacingFM  
(4 minutes 45 seconds, 898 words)

A: And Tangolan as they arrive at the first of the fences Tangolan just puts in an extra stride there and was joined by Polisky is just a little bit cautious as they head on towards the second which is the first of the open ditches Gentleman Jon out in front leading by half a length from Houston Dynamo in the blue and white as they approach the second Tangolan again spent longest in the air and landed in a little bit of a heap at the back of the field is still well in touch early on but his jumping has been a little bit lethargic as they head on towards the third [1] Houston Dynamo Gentleman Jon THAT TIME TANGOLAN TO THE OTHER EXTREME he took off a stride earlier than Conor Shoemark expected Conor was whispering sweet nothings in his ear but fortunately returned to the plate with a partnership intact but it's been a chancy early session for Tangolan who skies the ditch and has on the back foot from the word go here Gentleman Jon it is who leads Houston Dynamo Polisky in third place and er Tangolan is taking some chances despite his experience over fences this campaign [1] as they head on towards the fence at the side of the course Gentleman Jon out in front from Houston Dynamo Polisky is in third place Tangolan heads the back of the field and again it just appears his confidence has been affected he drags his back legs through that [1] so the other three continuing on their merry ways but the feature of the race early on has been Tangolan's jumping or lack of it as out in front Gentleman Jon leads Polisky moves through into second place now Houston Dynamo's in third and Tangolan seven lengths back as they head towards the first of the home straight Gentleman Jon from Polisky in second place Houston Dynamo in third Conor Shoemark's trying to administer a reminder to Tangolan as they head on towards the middle one up the home straight [1] which they all take with out in front Gentleman Jon by a length from Polisky Houston Dynamo in third place Tangolan still seven lengths behind last er Tangolan's got a little bit of a run now before the next fence which is the water so possibly his best chance at closing up on the three in front until the next jump appears as out in front Gentleman Jon makes the turn Polisky and Houston Dynamo Tangolan trying to edge closer the water jump looms Gentleman Jon in black and yellow looking for a double for Colin Tizzard who had a one two in the opening race over in second is Polisky Houston Dynamo is third and Tangolan jumping marginally better but his weight's continuing to land on his haunches and that's costing him momentum even if he's managed to clear the fence OK Gentleman Jon by a length from Polisky and just beginning to up the ante slightly Houston Dynamo's in third Tangolan a further three lengths away Houston Dynamo missed that out in third place and Gentlemen Jon is trying to stretch them here Polisky will want to produce late won't mind this in second place Houston Dynamo and Tangolan and at the back of the field another open ditch Polisky almost jumping right up to Gentleman Jon once again Tangolan lacked a bit of heart on the approach to that and he's really been struggling and that gap's reopened Gentleman John from Polisky Houston Dynamo in third place Tangolan a further six to seven back so out in front Gentleman Jon for Noel Feeley still Polisky travels strongly Sam Twist and pink cap rose again just about alongside Houston Dynamo is in third place and er Tangolan is now ten lengths down exiting the back straight there are four fences to take Gentlemen Jon out in front Polisky blue and pink colours in second Houston Dynamo despite that mistake at the second down the back is still in touch as they head toward the cross fence Tangolan seven lengths further back Gentlemen Jon Polisky on the outside Houston Dynamo gaining to the bottom of it and that's cost him ground again this time he receives a reminder from David Noonan as a further fallback to Tangolan turning in Gentleman Jon Polisky is in second place Gentleman Jon galloping on well Polisky just being humoured along as they race towards

the third last Gentleman Jon Polisky in second Houston Dynamo and Tangolan three from the finish Gentleman Jon AWAY TO THE LEFT-HAND SIDE POLISKY PUT IN AN EXTRA STRIDE THERE HOUSTON DYNAMO YET ANOTHER MISTAKE AND OUT IN FRONT GENTLEMAN JON HAS POLISKY OFF THE BRIDLE AND POLISKY DOESN'T ALWAYS FIND A GREAT DEAL IN THOSE CIRCUMSTANCES CAN HE RALLY THIS AFTERNOON GENTLEMAN JON OUT IN FRONT POLISKY IN SECOND PLACE IS TWO LENGTHS DOWN GENTLEMAN JON SHAKEN UP POLISKY IS TRYING TO MOUNT A CHALLENGE HERE GENTLEMAN JON INTO THE BOTTOM OF IT BUT SO IS POLISKY WHO LANDS STEEPLY HOUSTON DYNAMO AND GENTLEMAN JON DRIVEN OUT WILL MAKE EVERY SINGLE YARD OF THE RUNNING FOR NOEL FEELEY AND A DOUBLE FOR COLIN TIZZARD back with a bang in Wincanton this season Polisky is only second Houston Dynamo third Tangolan [1] credit for Conor Shoemark for getting him round but his jumping let him down



**G.12 Fakenham 2.15 Dereham Conditional Jockeys' Selling Handicap Hurdle 16<sup>th</sup> October 2015 RacingFM**  
(4 minutes 10 seconds, 933 words)

A: In the red and blue colours and over the first takes it safely and they're not hanging around early on here Full of Beans going on for Nelly The Elegant in the red sleeves and cap in second then we have Valentino Oyster parked up on the rail in the white cap and body out wide of this one with the star is Staff Sergeant being followed through by Maid of Tuscany with the noseband towards the inside Nebula Storm is in the yellow colours then we have Angenola in the orange with the blue cap and the yellow armlets one from the rear and the back marker is the outsider Kheskianto with the red cap over the second down the side of the track and now we have a new leader in Nelly the Elegant and Allen Johns has gone on so we are seeing a good gallop for this seller moving on by a couple of lengths to Full of Beans six times a winner at Fakenham all those wins have been over fences just the one win over hurdles on his CV as they race down the far side the gap between first and second's about six lengths now in third place towards the outside of runners is Staff Sergeant who's in the headgear that one's in third as they take their third flight towards the inside giving it plenty of daylight as Valentino Oyster and Tom Bellamy and nose-bounded Mate of Tuscany has er sat comfortably in mid-field just being ridden along is Angelola towards the outside of Nebula's Storm Kheskianto ridden patiently under David Pritchard taking another left-handed turn then and at the moment four lengths now the advantage of Nelly the Elegant over her rivals on the inside is Full of Beans out wide of Full of Beans is Staff Sergeant as they take their next flight and again they all jump it safely Angenola just being ridden along running a bit lazily maybe just finding things a bit quick round here at the moment just tracking Maid of Tuscany who's upside Valantino Oyster Nebula Storm the favourite sits at the rear but ridden patiently by George Gorman and Kheskianto has made up a couple of places going the shortest way around heading to the home straight once again and it's Nelly the Elegant out in front by three to four lengths moving on from in second place Staff Sargeant Full of Beans just get getting to hurry up things happening quite quickly for him at the moment they come to what will be their final flight in a circuit's time Full of Beans losing his position has now moved back to pretty much er second last but the leader is Nelly the Elegant then moving nicely is Made of Tuscany on the outside of Staff Sargeant then Valentino Oyster Cascianto Nebula Storm on the outside of that one the two who were really struggling are Full of Beans and also Angenola getting reminders as they head down the side of the track then well inside the final seven furlongs Nelly the Elegant then who's ensured a good gallop here he's moving on by still three lengths at the moment from Maid of Tuscany who's on the outside of a ridden along Staff Sergeant Nebula Storm is suddenly improving there followed by Kheskianto the others are really struggling Valentino Oyster's come under pressure still being ridden along is Angenola and Full of Beans is tailing right off as they head down the far side and three more flights of hurdles still to be jumped Nelly the Elegant then still leading by three lengths from Maid of Tuscany in second Nebula Storm is certainly improving towards the outside in the yellow they're clear of Kheskianto who's on the outside of Staff Sergeant as they take three from the finish and the first five roll over a mistake by Valentino Oyster just being passed by Angenola and Full of Beans is continuing so heading towards the final half mile of the contest then and Nelly the Elegant still the one they've got to catch but still traveling pretty well is Made of Tuscany under Shane Quinn in second Nebula Storm still in touch if good enough they're clear of Kheskianto heading towards the final two flights Nelly the Elegant still leading here takes it safely enough but only two lengths to the good now Maid of Tuscany appears to be travelling pretty well Nebula Storm is trying to

hang in there they're clear of Kheskianto Staff Sargent and the others inside now the final couple of furlongs one flight left to go Maid of Tuscany looks to be full of running and starts to go by Nelly the Elegant Nebula Storm is trying to respond and looks the challenger now beginning to stay on again as they head towards the final flight and down the home straight a furlong and a half left to go Maid of Tuscany out in front by a couple of lengths NEBULA STORM IN SECOND THEN WE HAVE NELLY THE ELEGANT AND MADE OF TUSCANY WHO'S BEEN TRAVELLING WELL THROUGHOUT THE CONTEST JUMPS THE LAST SAFELY AND GOES OVER FROM NEBULA STORM IN SECOND PLACE AND IT'S THE PHILLY MADE OF TUSCANY won for trainer Neal Moholland and jockey Shane Quinn that wins it nicely Nebula Storm is in second place then came Nelly the Elegant in third place followed by Kheskianto and better today [laughter] we've had a four at the last Staff Sergeant has gone down [1] and the others still finishing including Anginola

**G.13 Fakenham 2.50 Hal Halton Novices Chase 16<sup>th</sup> October 2015 RacingFM**  
(6 minutes, 1305 words)

- A: They're off and they are racing for race number two the Hal Halton Novices Chase just a five then going about town round as they head toward their first of 16 fences and heading down towards the first The Society Man and Cat Gary are the first two The Society Man almost overjumped it there they're not going any sort of early gallop Minella Forfitness is quite keen on the inside in the two-tone purple colours towards the outside is Cat Gary in third position then we have Hammersley Lake white colours black cap Mesut is at the back of the field as they jump the second Mesut jumped it with plenty of daylight but he's already gone further than he did at Thornwell as he unseated the rider at that fence last time on his first start in the UK The Society Man then white sleeves red and yellow diamonds is out in front by about a length to Cat Gary having a second start over fences had a look at them back at Kempton on Boxing day of last year Minella Forfitness has had a win round Bangor over fences already it's his sixth start over fences as they jump the first of the open ditches then we have Hammersley Lake one win on tour over hurdles it's been a long time since he's had a win in the white colours and the black cap and the colours of Michael Buckley and Mesut sits at the tail of the field so they're taking the first few fences and head towards the home straight for the first time The Society Man having a 30 second start over fences yet to win one leading up by a length and a half to Cat Gary and Nick Schofield in second place then we have Minella Forfitness who's back in third as they take their next Hammersley Lake and Cat Gary just jumping out to their right slightly and Mesut is in behind them now the fence right in front of us here by the winning post The Society Man and Cat Gary just popped it safely they're not going that hard that early so they're all popping safely so far Minella Forfitness is in third position then we have Hammersley Lake who's got one behind and that's Mesut and Jack Quinn who sits probably about six or seven lengths off the pace so still two circuits in front of them as they head towards the side fence their first fence on the second circuit and it's The Society Man who has the advantage of about a length Cat Gary is left of shot in second and on top there outside The Society Man little bit short of Minella Forfitness in third still er plenty keen enough under Adam Poxon and behind this one we have Hammersley Lake who sits in fourth place under Peter Carberry and Mesut and Jack Quinn still sits patiently at the back of the field two more fences down the back straight then and they're still going a very sensible early gallop here Cat Gary on the outside of The Society Man and they'll jump it probably together maybe Cat Gary just touching down HAMMERSLEY LAKE'S GONE HAMMERSLEY LAKE HAS FALLEN THERE and er out of sight fallen and Peter Carberry so just four left standing now Cat Gary his big rival in the competition has come out of the race and he now leads and he wasn't that fluid himself over that fence from in second place The Society Man Minella Forfitness is in third and then we have still ridden patiently at the back of the field er Mesut as they head towards the open ditch so gallop hasn't been that strong we have lost one Hammersley Lake then out of the contest he is becoming a bit frustrating as they head towards the open ditch down the side of the track Cat Gary then in front I think would like to go a bit faster on the outside of The Society Man is still upsides then we have Minella Forfitness in third place a little look over the shoulder by Adam Poxon to see where Mesut is and Mesut's only a couple of lengths behind no more than six lengths off the pace Hammersley Lake continues riderless I think Peter Carberry is up OK as well so heading into the home straight still well over a circuit to go The Society Man and Cat Gary still upsides as has been the case pretty much from the outset three lengths clear of Minella Forfitness in third whose jumping hasn't been quite as fluent as one or two of the others just getting a reminder that The Society Man as Cat Gary starts to increase the

gallop in front Mesut still travels well enough as they jump the fence right in front of us Cat Geary over safely three lengths clear from Minella Forfitness in second ridden along is The Society Man in third and then we have Mesut who's now beginning to make a little bit of headway around the outside of The Society Man so on to the final circuit well inside the final mile then and they've still got five fences left to jump Cat Gary moving on by a couple of lengths jumping's been OK and as he heads towards the next fence can he keep it up with Nick Schofield on board Cat Gary measures the fence and pops over safely Minella Forfitness is still quite keen in second place and towards the inside Mesut who's relegated The Society Man to last place taking another left-handed turn two more fences down at the far side of the track and Cat Gary by a couple of lengths to Minella Forfitness in second place then we have Mesut who's not that far behind in third then six lengths back to The Society Man as they jump their first fence down the far side the one that caught Hammersley Lake out and these four all jump it well as they head towards the final fence down the back straight three from the finish Cat Gary and Minella Forfitness running wide Mesut still appears to be travelling pretty well as they take their next fence they're clear of The Society Man who is still continuing under reminders at the back of the field so taking the left-handed turn heading towards the final open ditch two from the finish and they're inside the final three-and-a-half furlongs they go Cat Gary still full of running is moving on by four lengths now to Minella Forfitness in second then Mesut's in third place now how will the leader jump this open ditch Cat Gary that's a fine leap he took it really well there Mesut made a mistake pecked on landing so Minella Forfitness is the only one anywhere near Cat Gary but he's got five lengths to make up and Cat Gary his jumping is warming up nicely he's got one more still to take he's about six lengths clear now from Minella Forfitness in second place Nick Schofield steals a peep over his shoulder he likes what he sees he's about eight lengths in front Minella Forfitness is trying to stay on in second there's a battle on for third The Society Man is outside Mesut final fence then Cat Gary could leap again at the last still six to seven lengths clear from Minella Forfitness in second place then there's Society Man over in third BUT UP TOWARDS THE LINE IT'S CAT GARY'S SECOND TIME OVER FENCES he did it pretty well and he'll learn a lot from the experience Minella Forfitness was in second place The Society Man ran on again for third [1] and last to finish was Mesut

**G.14 Fakenham 3.25 Rosalie Monbiot 80th Birthday Celebration Novices' Hurdle 16<sup>th</sup>**  
 October 2015 RacingFM  
 (5 minutes 5 seconds, 1102 words)

A: Romulus du Donjon is one of the early leaders that's the horse with the light blue headgear and the noseband touching down with the other horse with the noseband in the yellow out wide that's the mare Supreme Hope Until Winning is sitting in third place that's your favourite the maroon jacket with the striped sleeves being tracked in the orange by Who You For then towards the inside is Wings Attract with a red cap the back pair Platinum Proof on hurdling debut in the blue colours and that widest of all one of four trained by Dan Skelton today here Charlie's Oscar blue with the yellow hoops heading towards their second flight they're going a steady early tempo mistake at the back of the field by Platinum Proof having his first start over hurdles as mentioned and he suddenly jumped like he was not used to it as they begin their swing towards the home straight still well over two circuits in front of them they've jumped two of the eleven obstacles so far Romulus du Donjon going the shortest way around the grey upsides is Supreme Hope first time with trainer Neil Mulholland who's already had a winner today then in third place is Until Winning he's on the outside of of the one with the red cap on the far rail that's Wings Attract fifth place is Who You For the back pair are Platinum Proof and also Charlie's Oscar Platinum Proof not quite as fluent as the others so far they got two circuits still to go eight flights of hurdles to jump in the Rosalie Monbiot 80th Birthday Celebration Novices' Hurdle and they're pretty well bunched up it's Romulus du Donjon just about holding a narrow advantage but Supreme Hope is pretty much upsides in those yellow colours these two are stride-for-stride Romulus du Donjon is carrying that seven pound penalty for a win at Market Rasen they head towards their next flight they jump it nicely together Until Winning is an interesting one was in excellent form over fences last season switching back over hurdles today one would think he's a pipe opener for some big tasks this season towards the inside is Wings Attract who's promised a lot already over hurdles out wide we have Charlie's Oscar who's er widest of all of Who You For who's waited with in the orange colours and on the inside is Platinum Proof heading towards their next flight down the back straight and now it's Supreme Hope who's moved on by a length wasn't quite as fluent and Romulus du Donjon is towards the inside has allowed the mare to go on in front and in third place still Until Winning and Paddy Brennan towards the inside is Wings Attract out wide is Charlie's Oscar up in trip and over hurdles for the first time Who You For is still sitting there just on the inside of Charlie's Oscar and then we have Platinum Proof who's now at the tail of the field but still in touch as they head towards their next flight of hurdles coming towards it here then good leap by the leader and Supreme Hope measured it well still leads by a length to Romulus du Donjon who's on the inside rail then we have Until Winning in third place with towards the inside Wings Attract then we have on the outside Charlie's Oscar towards the rear Who You For he's got one behind and that's Platinum Proof a long run towards their next flight which will be five from the finish that will be the final flight in a circuit's time and it's Supreme Hope who is moving on by three lengths now to in second place Romulus du Donjon on the inside in second and in er third place not quite as fluent as the others Until Winning travelling strongly is Wings Attract on the rail there is Who You For in touch still is Charlie's Oscar and a bit of a gap developing now to Platinum Proof a first ride here in the UK for Mr Tim Donworth and it seems our horse is now really starting to struggle so the pace has picked up they're onto their final circuit well inside the final mile and Supreme Hope on the outside of Romulus du Donjon Until Winning ridden into that one jumped it like a chaser there on the inside ridden along on landing was Who You For tucked in behind is Wings Attract and then we have Charlie's

Oscar it looks like Platinum Proof might well be pulled up as they race towards the final three flights still some way from the finish and maybe Romulus du Donjon now starting to move on by half a length to Supreme Hope in second Until Winning giving plenty of daylight on the outside as Supreme Hope begins to fade widest of all is Charlie's Oscar towards the inside is Wings Attract and Who You For just struggling to go the pace Platinum Proof has been pulled up so a long run towards their final two flights of hurdles Romulus du Donjon has got plenty of experience still travelling well under the penalty on the outside is Until Winning in second about a neck behind they're the front two they're being followed by Wings Attract who's still in touch then comes Charlie's Oscar who's just about in touch as well and then comes Who You For and Supreme Hope two from the finish Romulus du Donjon is still travelling pretty well in front under Daryl Jacob moving on by a length now from Until Winning in second but now coming in between runners is Wings Attract a positive move by Tom Messenger these three have gone on now from Who You For and then we have Charlie's Oscar so challenging now Wings Attract has GONE ON FROM ROMULUS DU DONJON IN SECOND PLACE THESE TWO HAVE OPENED UP BY A GOOD SIX TO EIGHT LENGTHS NOW FROM UNTIL WINNING WHO CAN FIND NO MORE THEN WHO YOU FOR GOOD BATTLE BETWEEN THESE TWO WINGS ATTRACT NEAREST TO US THE RED CAP THE GREYS ROMULUS DU DONJON COMING TO THE FINAL FLIGHT THEN WHO JUMPS IT BEST THEY'RE BOTH OVER TOGETHER AND IT'S WINGS ATTRACT ON GOING ON TOP FROM ROMULUS DU DONJON WHO'S TRYING TO BATTLE BACK BUT UP TOWARDS THE LIGHT WINGS ATTRACT WILL WIN from Romulus Du Donjon who lost little in defeat in second then came Who You For Until Winning Charlie's Oscar [1] and last to finish Supreme Hope

## **Acknowledgements**

I owe sincere gratitude to my supervisor, Professor em. Dr. Udo Fries. His open-mindedness towards my idea, the freedom he awarded me and his patience were invaluable. My gratitude also goes to Professor Dr. Daniel Schreier, who did not hesitate to act as a referee in spite of his many duties as Chairman of the English Department.

I am deeply indebted to my parents. They laid the foundations. I am also deeply grateful to my wife, Olivia, for her unwavering support and encouragement. Without her, none of this would have been possible.